









**A TEXT – BOOK  
OF  
INDIAN HISTORY**



# A TEXT - BOOK OF INDIAN HISTORY

*WITH*

*GEOGRAPHICAL NOTES, GENEALOGICAL TABLES,  
EXAMINATION QUESTIONS,*

*AND*

*CHRONOLOGICAL, BIOGRAPHICAL GEOGRAPHICAL  
AND GENERAL INDEXES.*

**THE REV. G. U. POPE, D.D**

*THIRD EDITION.*

*WITH SIXTEEN MAPS*



**Asian Educational Services**  
**New Delhi**

PRICE Rs 135

FIRST PUBLISHED 1880

FIRST AES REPRINT 1979

PRINTED IN INDIA \*

PUBLISHED BY J JETLEY

FOR ASIAN EDUCATIONAL SERVICES

C-2/15 SDA NEW DELHI-110016

PRINTED BY A K PROCESS DELHI

# TEXT-BOOK OF INDIAN HISTORY;

WITH

GEOGRAPHICAL NOTES, GENEALOGICAL TABLES,  
EXAMINATION QUESTIONS,

AND

CHRONOLOGICAL, BIOGRAPHICAL, GEOGRAPHICAL, AND  
GENERAL INDEXES,

FOR THE

USE OF SCHOOLS, COLLEGES, AND PRIVATE STUDENTS.

BY

THE REV G. U. POPE D.D.

PRINCIPAL OF BISHOP COTTON'S GRAMMAR SCHOOL, A. (LIVERPOOL)  
FELLOW OF THE MALAYA UNIVERSITY

Και οἱ ἴσθιν ἡμῖν ταμιεῖσθαι ἐξ ὅσον βολομθα ἀρχὴ ἐλλείπειται  
πειδὴ περὶ ἐν τῷδε καθίσταμεν, τοῖς μὲν ἐπιβουλευμένοι τοῖς ἐμὲν αἰεθῆναι δὲ  
το ἀρχθῆναι ἂν ὑφ' ἑτέρων αἰ τοῖς κινδύνον εἴσαι, ἐπὶ αἰ τοῖς ἄλλων ἀρχομεν

THIRD EDITION.

WITH SIXTEEN MAPS

LONDON

W. H. ALLEN & Co., 13 WATERLOO PLACE, S.W.

PUBLISHERS TO THE INDIA OFFICE

1880.

---



## P R E F A C E.

---

THIS book is strictly a manual for students, and everything has been sacrificed to the one object of making it thoroughly useful in this way.

The author has long been engaged in educational pursuits in India, and has had considerable experience of the requirements of the Indian Universities; and he has aimed chiefly at producing such a manual as might be sufficient for those who are preparing for these University Examinations. Even for others, however, it may be found useful, as containing a carefully digested epitome of the subject.

The difficulty of bringing so wide a subject within convenient limits has been very great; hence the author has felt it necessary, in general, to omit anecdotes and details of sieges and battles, and to say what he had to say in the fewest possible words.

It is to be hoped that those who use this text-book will be induced to read for themselves the very excellent works in which almost everything connected with Indian history is to be found.

---



The chief of these are indicated below. The writer has made use of them freely ; while he has tried to go to the very sources of information where he could do so. The literature connected with the history of British India is exceedingly copious and valuable.

Among the sources of British Indian history must be mentioned the following :—

- (1.) The various "Records of Government," issued regularly by the Supreme and Local Governments in India. Those published by the Bombay Government are singularly useful. The reports of the Panjâb Administration are invaluable.
- (2.) The "Collection of Treaties, Engagements, and Sunnuds relating to India and Neighbouring Countries," compiled by Mr. C. U. Aitchison, with introductory remarks, is a most useful work.
- (3.) The files of the *Friend of India*—the famous Serampore newspaper—for the last twenty years afford complete and most trustworthy data, not only for current events, but for almost every portion of Indian history. They abound in able monographs.
- (4.) The volumes of the *Calcutta Review*, though unequal in merit, and uncertain in tone, are nevertheless a mine of information. Some of the most eminent men in India have been among the contributors to that valuable work.
- (5.) Twelve volumes of "Annals of Indian Administration"

---

## PREFACE.

---

have been published at Serampore by Dr. G. Smith  
These are of much practical utility. •

- (6.) The following are standard works, to which the writer acknowledges his great obligation. They should be read by every one who wishes to understand Indian history :—

- |  |                             |
|--|-----------------------------|
| 1. Wheeler's History of India . . . . .  | } In connection with        |
| 2. Mrs. Spier's Life in Ancient India . . . . .                                | } ch. i. of this text-book. |
| Republished as Mrs. Manning's Ancient and<br>Medieval India a most useful book |                             |
| 3. Elphinstone's History of India: Edited by<br>Mr. Cowell . . . . .           | } Ch. ii., iii., iv.        |
| 4. Brigg's Muhammedan Power in India<br>(Ferishta) . . . . .                   |                             |
| 5. Keene's Mogul Empire . . . . .  |                             |
| 6. Grant Duff's History of the Mahrattas . . . . .                             | Ch. v.                      |
| 7. Murray's History of British India . . . . .                                 | Ch. vi.                     |
| 8. Thornton's British Empire in India . . . . .                                | } Ch. vii, viii, ix., x.    |
| 9. Auber's Rise of British Power in India . . . . .                            |                             |
| 10. Malletson's French in India . . . . .                                      |                             |
| 11. Orme's Hindûstân . . . . .   |                             |
| 12. Cunningham's History of the Sikhs . . . . .                                | Ch. xi.                     |
| 13. Wilks' Mysôr . . . . .   | Ch. xii.                    |

- (7.) The books mentioned under are also of great value:—

1. Malcolm's Central India.
  2. Tod's Râjastân.
  3. Kaye's Life of Metcalfe.
  4. Metcalfe's Despatches.
  5. Malcolm's Life of Clive.
  6. Gloig's Life of Hastings.
  7. Kaye's Life of Malcolm.
  8. Martineau's British Rule in India.
-

9. Hamilton's Gazetteer.
10. Marshman's History of India.
11. Hunter's Annals of Rural Bengal and Orissa.
12. Meadows Taylor's Manual of Indian History.

The three last I had not seen till after the publication of the first edition of this text-book.

The list might be greatly extended; but these are books which every real student should possess. They will introduce the reader to others.

No pains have been spared to make the indexes, tables, &c., complete.

The author will be thankful to receive any hints from those who use this manual, in order that in a future edition it may be more thoroughly adapted to its purpose.

OOTACAMUND, SOUTH INDIA,  
October 5, 1869.

---

#### ADVERTISEMENT TO THE THIRD EDITION.

THE whole work has been thoroughly revised, and some additional sections have been added. The author acknowledges his obligations to many judicious and kindly critics, to whose suggestions this volume owes several important alterations.

BANGALORE,  
January 1870.

---

## CONTENTS.

### INTRODUCTION.

	PAGE
PART I.—POLITICAL DIVISIONS OF INDIA . . . . .	1
PART II.—SKETCH OF THE GENERAL GEOGRAPHY OF INDIA . . . . .	20
PART III.—ARRANGEMENT OF THE SUBJECT . . . . .	32

### CHAPTER I.

ANCIENT INDIA . . . . .	35
-------------------------	----

### CHAPTER II.

THE HISTORY OF THE VARIOUS AFGHAN DYNASTIES . . . . .	50
---	----

### CHAPTER III.

THE MOGUL EMPERORS OF INDIA . . . . .	82
---------------------------------------	----

### CHAPTER IV.

A SUMMARY OF THE HISTORY OF THE DAKHAN . . . . .	144
--	-----

### CHAPTER V.

THE HISTORY OF THE MAHRATTAS, FROM THE BIRTH OF SIVAJI . . . . .	160
--	-----

### CHAPTER VI.

THE PORTUGUESE IN INDIA . . . . .	244
-----------------------------------	-----

## CHAPTER VII.

	PAGE
THE HISTORY OF THE EUROPEAN COMPANIES . . . . .	258

## CHAPTER VIII.

THE RIVALRIES AND WARS OF THE FRENCH AND ENGLISH . . . . .	276
--	-----

## CHAPTER IX.

THE FOUNDATION OF BRITISH POWER IN BENGAL . . . . .	298
---	-----

## CHAPTER X.

THE GOVERNORS-GENERAL OF BRITISH INDIA . . . . .	322
--	-----

## CHAPTER XI.

THE PANJÂB . . . . .	419
----------------------	-----

## CHAPTER XII.

THE HISTORY OF MYSOR . . . . .	443
--------------------------------	-----

CONCLUSION . . . . .	473
----------------------	-----

---

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS ON INDIAN HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHY . . . . .	481
---	-----

CHRONOLOGICAL TABLES OF INDIAN HISTORY . . . . .	499
--	-----

BIOGEOGRAPHICAL INDEX . . . . .	511
---------------------------------	-----

GEOGRAPHICAL INDEX . . . . .	535
------------------------------	-----

GENERAL INDEX . . . . .	565
-------------------------	-----

LIST OF MAPS . . . . .	575
------------------------	-----

---

# M A P S.

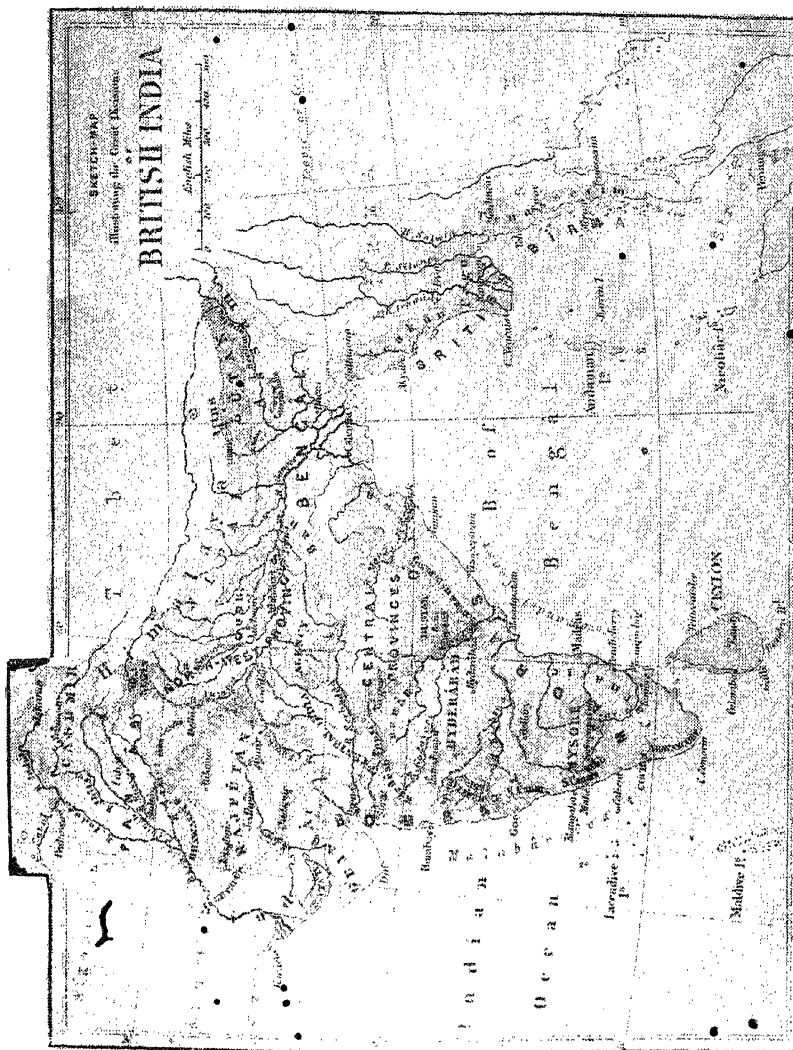
		To face page
BRITISH INDIA . . . . .	Intro. § 1 . . . . .	1
BENGÂL . . . . .	Intro. § 8 . . . . .	3
BOMBAY . . . . .	Intro. § 18 . . . . .	12
MADRAS . . . . .	Intro. § 16 . . . . .	10
AFGHÂNISTÂN . . . . .	Chap. ii. § 1 . . . . .	50
BIERMA . . . . .	Intro. § 15 . . . . .	10
CENTRAL INDIAN AGENCY . . . . .	Intro. § 12 . . . . .	7
CENTRAL PROVINCES . . . . .	Intro. § 13 . . . . .	8
NIZÂM'S DOMINIONS . . . . .	Intro. § 20 . . . . .	14
NORTH-WESTERN PROVINCES . . . . .	Intro. § 9 . . . . .	4
MAHRATTAS . . . . .	Chap. v. § 2 . . . . .	161
MYSÔR . . . . .	Chap. xii. § 1 . . . . .	443
OUDH . . . . .	Intro. § 11 . . . . .	7
PANJÂB . . . . .	Chap. xi. § 1 . . . . .	419
RÂJPÛTÂNÂ . . . . .	Intro. § 36 . . . . .	28
SIND . . . . .	Chap. x. § 125 . . . . .	384







### SKETCH-MAP



# INTRODUCTION.

## PART I.—POLITICAL DIVISIONS OF INDIA.

§ 1. OUR subject is India, and more especially **BRITISH INDIA.**

Under this name is included the immense tract from Peshâwar, and the Suleimân and Hâla mountains, on the N.W., to the banks of the Salwin and the island of Singapore on the S.E.; and from the Himâlayan chain on the N., to Cape Comorin, or (including Ceylon) to Dondra Head in the South.

This is a vast and varied field.

§ 2. The accompanying sketch-map should be carefully studied and copied.

It will be well to observe the following particulars:—

(1.) The latitude of *Singapore*,  $1^{\circ} 15' \text{ N.}$ : *nearly on the equator.* Longitude,  $104^{\circ} \text{ E.}$

(2.) The latitude of Peshâwar, the British frontier cantonment on the N.W.,  $33^{\circ} 57' \text{ N.}$  Longitude,  $71^{\circ} 40' \text{ E.}$

(3.) The latitude of Dondra Head, the most southerly cape of Ceylon,  $5^{\circ} 56' \text{ N.}$  Longitude,  $80^{\circ} 30' \text{ E.}$

(4.) The latitude of Cape Comorin, the most southerly cape of the Peninsula of India,  $8^{\circ} 4' \text{ N.}$  Longitude,  $77^{\circ} 30' \text{ E.}$

INTRO. § 1, 2.

Boundaries.

Singapore.

Peshâwar.

Dondra Head.

Cape Comorin.

## INTRO § 3-7.

**The Bengal Presidency.****Extent of India.**

§ 3. India extends about 1,900 miles from north to south, and 1,500 miles from east to west, and contains 1,500,000 square miles.

From Karachi in Sind to the east on borders of Assam is 1,800 miles.

**Population.**

§ 4. Its population is about 187 millions; and varies from 600 to a square mile in Bengal, to 10 in some of the hill districts.

**Grand divisions of India.**

§ 5. In this vast territory we must distinguish:

I. *The British dominions* strictly so called;

II. *Provinces under British protection, and more or less dependent upon Britain;*

III. *Independent States*, in alliance with Great Britain, and acknowledging her as the paramount power;

IV. A few small spots belonging to other European powers.

It will be useful to the student to have a connected account of the political divisions of the country before approaching its history.

**Political divisions of British India.**

§ 6. The British dominions in India are divided into Presidencies, Vice-presidencies, and provinces under Commissioners. There are three Presidencies.

**The Bengal Presidency.**

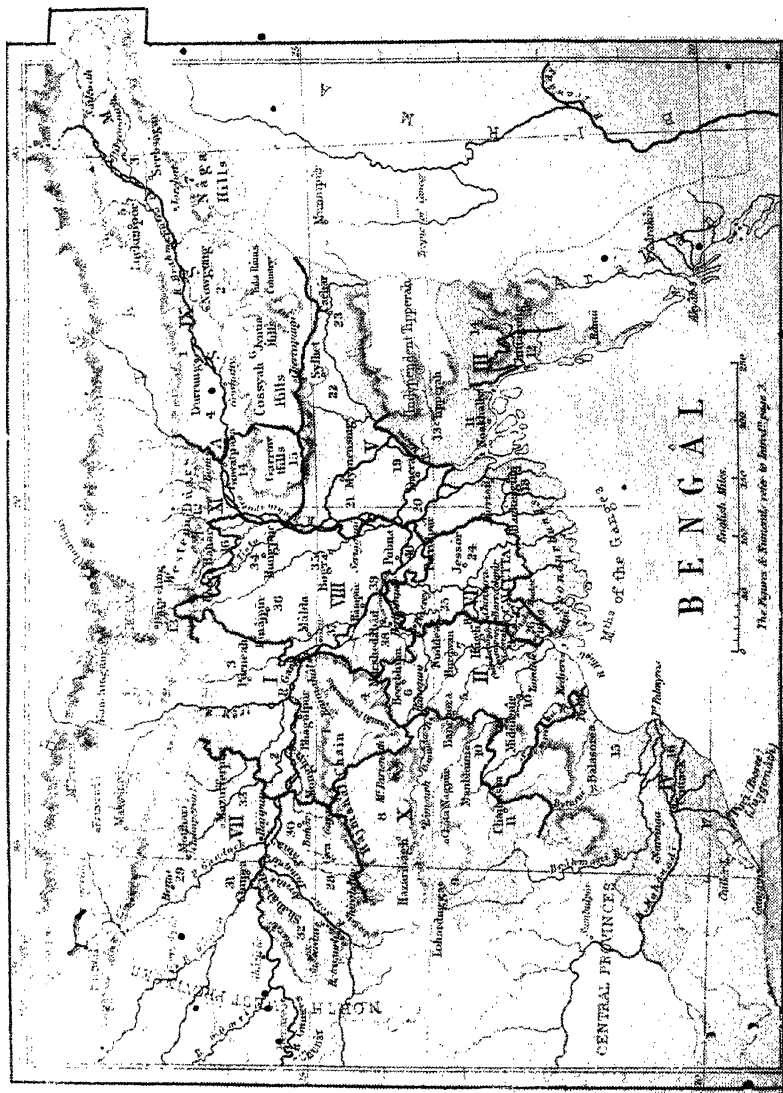
§ 7. (I.) **THE BENGAL PRESIDENCY.** (See map.) Of this *Calcutta* is the capital, and here the Viceroy and Governor-General, whose authority is supreme over all India, resides. The Governor-General's legislative council makes laws for all India in general, and for all but Madras, Bombay, and Bengal in detail.

Every act of the subordinate councils must be confirmed by the Governor-General.

**The home Government.**

The Secretary of State for India can advise Her Majesty to *veto* any act of the Governor-General's Council. The Secretary of State for India, with his council of fifteen members, is thus supreme.





# POLITICAL DIVISIONS OF BRITISH INDIA.

- 3

## Sub-divisions of Bengal.

INTRO. § 8.

§ 8. In this Presidency,  
(1.) BENGAL itself has been under the Lieutenant-Governor since 1853. His control extends over Bihār (Bahar) and Bengal proper, Orissa and Assam.

The number of divisions here is eleven, and of districts fifty-six.

The following is a table of the sub-divisions of the Bengal territory. (See map.)

Bengal.  
Comp. ch. x.  
§ 145.

DIVISIONS.	DISTRICTS.	DIVISIONS.	DISTRICTS.
I. BHĀGULPŪR (Boghlipūr).	1 Bhāgulpūr. 2 Monghyr. 3 Purneah (Purnia). 4 Santāl Pergun- nabs.	VII. PATNA.	28 Gya (Gaya). 29 Chhampārān. 30 Patna. 31 Sarun. 32 Shāhābād.
II. BURDWĀN.	5 Bancoora. 6 Beerbhūm. 7 Burdwān. 8 Hāgli. 9 Howrah. 10 Midnāpūr. 11 Noakhally. 12 Chittagong. 13 Tipperah.	VIII. RĀJSHĀHĪ.	33 Tīrhāt. 34 Rungpūr. 35 Bogra. 36 Dinājpur. 37 Mālda. 38 Mūrshedābād. 39 Rājshāhī. 40 Pubna.
III. CHITTAGONG.	14 The Chittagong Hill Tracts.	IX. ASSĀM.	1 Durrung. 2 Nowgong. 3 Seebsāgar. 4 Kāmrup. 5 Lakhimpūr. 6 Cossyah and Jyn- tia Hills.
IV. CATTACK. (Ch. v. § 56.)	15 Balasōr. 16 Cattack. 17 Puri (Pooree). 18 Backergunj. 19 Dacca.	X. CHOTA. NĀGPŪR. (Chuttia.)	7 Nāga Hills. 8 Hazaribāgh. 9 Lohardugga. 10 Manbhūm. 11 Singbhūm. 12 Western Duars.
V. DACCĀ.	20 Furrīdpūr. 21 Mymensing. 22 Sylhet. 23 Cachār. 24 Jessōr. 25 Nuddea.	XI. COOCH BIHĀR.	13 Darjeeling. 14 Gowāpara. 15 Garrow Hills. 16 Cooch Bahār.
VI. NUDDEA.	26 The 24 Pergun- nabs. 27 The City of Cal- cutta.		

## INTRO. § 8, 9.

## The North-Western Provinces.

## Population.

The total population of this province is above 40,000,000. It is considerably larger than France: being more than two hundred thousand square miles in area.

## Sikkim.

Sikkim is independent. Dārjiling (a favourite sanitarium) was purchased in 1835. On the south-west frontier are twenty-one Mehāls, or small districts, and the Cattack tributary Mehāls now number nineteen. These mostly came under England in 1803.

## Orissa tributary States.

These latter are—

- |               |                 |                 |
|---------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. Angul.     | 8. Dhenkāl.     | 15. Nayāgarh.   |
| 2. Athgarh.   | 9. Hindol.      | 16. Pāl Laharā. |
| 3. Athmallik. | 10. Keonjhar.   | 17. Ranpur.     |
| 4. Bānki.     | 11. Khandāpārā. | 18. Tācher, and |
| 5. Barambā.   | 12. Morbhanj.   | 19. Tigariā.    |
| 6. Bod.       | 13. Narsinhpur. |                 |
| 7. Daspallā.  | 14. Nilgiri.    |                 |

## Cossyah and Jyntia.

Connected with Assām are the *Cossyah* and *Jyntia* hill territories, in which are many semi-independent chiefs; and the Garrow country, with which we have little intercourse.

The flourishing tea-plantations of Assām have attracted an immense body of immigrants, chiefly from Lower Bengāl, the highlands of Beerbhāt, and the Santāl country generally.

## Munnipūr.

The state of Munnipūr pays no tribute.

## Cooch Bahār.

Cooch Bahār, in 1772, became tributary, paying half its revenues to the British, in return for the expulsion of the Bâtias.

## Tipperah.

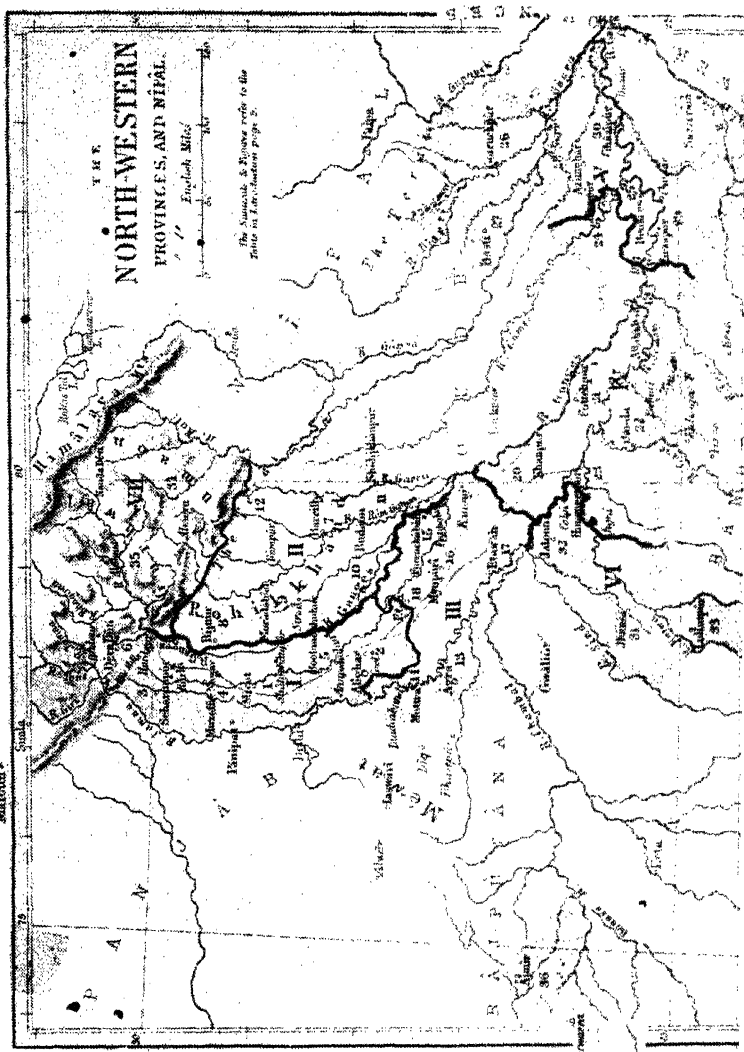
Here is independent *Tipperah*, which was never subjected by the Moguls, and is perfectly independent.

## North-West Provinces.

§ 9. (2.) The NORTH-WEST PROVINCES are also under a *Lieutenant-Governor* (since 1834): its capital is ALLĀHĀBĀD.

## Extent.

This territory extends, as seen in the map, along the banks of the Jamnah and Ganges, including *Allāhābād*, *Āgra*, and *Bendres*, the heart of the ancient Hindūstān. Delhi has now been put under the Panjāb Government.







## North-West Provinces. The Panjāb.

INTRODUCTION

It contains thirty-six districts, under seven Commissioners.

Here are the Rājās of Gurhwal and Shahpūr.

There are also here nineteen Hill States, to which the British Government has conceded the right of adoption has been conceded by the Paramount power (§ 21).

The following is the table of the sub-divisions of the North-West Provinces —

DIVISIONS	DISTRICTS	DIVISIONS	DISTRICTS
I. MIRAT	1 Mirat * 2 Aligarh 3 Saharunpūr. 4 Muzaffar Nagar 5 Boolandshahpur 6 Dera Dūn 7 Bareilly * 8 Bijnor 9 Moradabad *	IV ALLAHABAD	19 Allahābād * 20 Khānpūr * 21 Fatehpūr. 22 Banda. 23 Hummeerpūr. 24 Jounpūr 25 Benāres * 26 Gorakhpūr.* 27 Basti
II. ROHILKHAND.	10 Budāou 11 Shāhjahānpūr. 12 Terāi 13 Āgra * 14 Muttra * (Mathura)	V. BENĀRES.	28 Azimgarh. 29 Mirzāpūr.* 30 Ghāzīpūr. 31 Jhānsi. 32 Jaloun. 33 Lullitpūr. 34 Kumāon. 35 Garhwāl. 36 Ajmīr (Rājputāna).
III. ĀGRA (or AGRAH)	15 Furruckabad * 16 Mynpūr. 17 Etawah 18 Etah	VI. JHĀNSI.	
		VII KUMĀON.	

The places marked \* are the great cities.

The population of this great territory is about 30,000,000. It is nearly equal in area to Great Britain.

§ 10. (3.) The PANJĀB is under a Lieutenant-Governor, and is divided into thirty-two districts, under ten Commissioners. (Comp. ch. xi. § 46.)

The Panjāb.  
[Map, p. 394.]

## INTRO. § 10.

## The Panjāb.

Kashmīr.

Sikh protected  
states.

Bhāwalpūr.

(Comp. ch. xi.  
§ 1, &c.)

There are six Cis-Satlaj States, to whose rulers the right of adoption has been given. (§ 24.)

*Kashmīr* and the Trans-Satlaj States may be here mentioned.

The treaty of Umritsūr, 16th March 1846, put Gulab Singh in possession of *Kashmīr* (ch. xi. § 34), between the Indus and the Ravi. The Mahārāja died in 1857 and his son, Rumbir Singh, succeeded. The right of adoption has been granted to him.

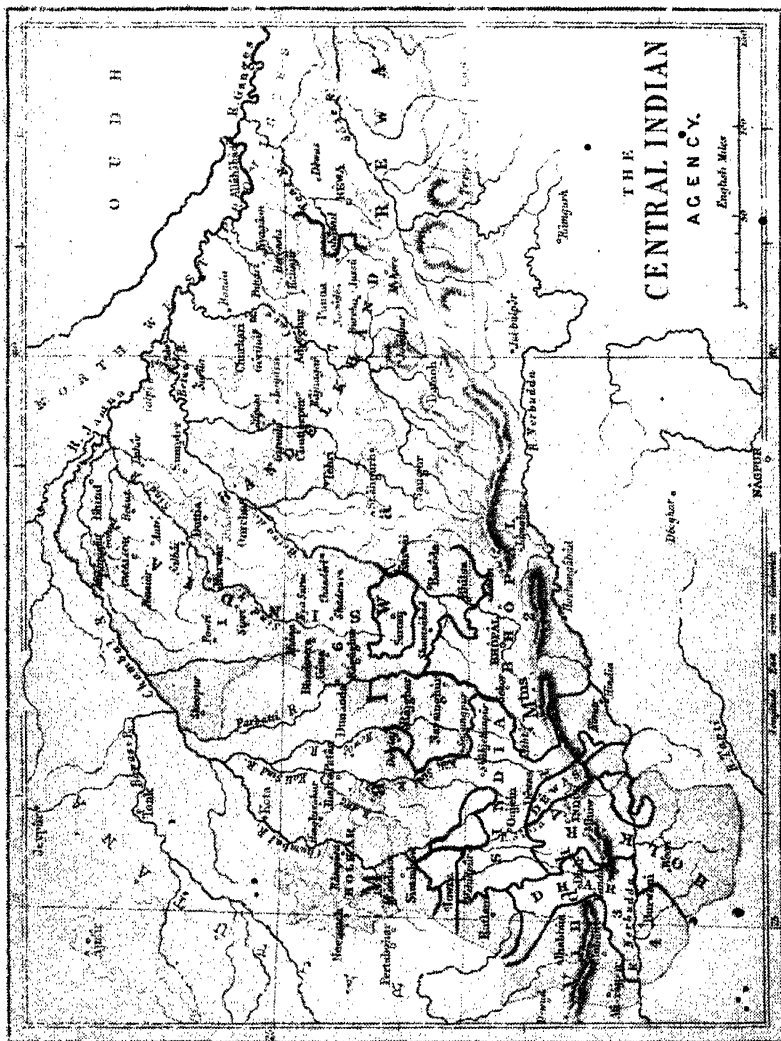
There are also the Rājās of *Kapurthala*, *Manu Chamba*, and *Sukhet*, and the Sirdārs Shāmshīr Sir Sindhanwāla, and Tej Singh, who are included in the list in § 24.

The Khān of Bhāwalpūr is protected by the terms of a treaty made in 1838. He receives a pension for his services in 1849. (Ch. xi. § 35.)

The following is a list of the sub-divisions of the Panjāb territory :—

DIVISIONS.	DISTRICTS.	DIVISIONS.	DISTRICTS.
I.	1 Delhi.	VII.	19 Rāwal Pindī.
DELHI.	2 Gurgaon.	RĀWAL PINDĪ.	20 Jhilm.
	3 Karnāl.		21 Gujarāt.
II.	4 Hissar.		22 Shāhpūr.
HISSAR.	5 Rohlak.		23 Mūltān.
	6 Sirsa.	VIII.	24 Jhung.
	7 Umbāla.	MŪLTĀN.	25 Montgomery.
III.	8 Lūdiāna.		26 Muzaffirghar.
UMBĀLA.	9 Simla.		27 Dera Ismael
	10 Jullindhur.	IX.	Khān.
JULLINDHUR	11 Hushiarpūr.	DĒRAJĀT.	28 Dera Ghāzi Khā
(JULINDAR).	12 Kanra.		29 Bannu.
	13 Umritsūr.	X.	30 Peshāwar.
V.	14 Sealkōt.	PESHĀWAR.	31 Kohāt.
UMRITSŪR.	15 Gurdaspūr.		32 Hazara.
	16 Lāhōr.		
VI.	17 Ferōz-pūr.		
LĀHŌR.	18 Gujarānwāla.		





# POLITICAL DIVISIONS OF BRITISH INDIA.

7

## Oudh. The Central India Agency.

INTRO. § 11, 12,

The population of this territory is nearly 15,000,000. It is about the size of Italy.

§ 11. (4) OUDH is entrusted to a Chief Commissioner, under whom are four Commissioners, with twelve districts. (See map.)

Oudh.

DIVISIONS.	DISTRICTS.	DIVISIONS.	DISTRICTS.
I. LUCKNOW.	1 Lucknow. 2 Oonao. 3 Durrâbâd.	III. FYZÂBÂD.	7 Barnitch. 8 Fyzâbâd. 9 Gonda.
II. KHYRÂBÂD.	4 Sitâpûr. 5 Hurdut. 6 Mahmud.	IV. BAINWÂRA.	10 Salâmpûr. 11 Peshawâr (Prawâr). 12 Roy Bareilly.

The population is 8,500,000. It is about equal in extent to Holland and Belgium together.

§ 12. (5.) The CENTRAL INDIA, or INDÔR, AGENCY. Here are no less than seventy-one states.

Central India Agency.

The large district includes Mâlwah, Bandêlkhand, and other districts between the Chambal and the Jamnah. The principal tributary States of Central India are six in number:—Gwâliâr, Indôr, Bhôpâl, Dhâr, Dêwas, and Jowna.

Six states.

The agent to the Governor-General in Central India resides at Indôr. This is the capital of the Mahârâja Holkâr. (Comp. ch. v. § 160.) Connected with this are *Dêwas* and *Bagli*. He has besides seven agencies under him. These are:—

Governor-General's agent and seven subordinates.

1. The political agent at Gwâliâr. This is the capital of the Mahârâja Sindia. (Comp. ch. v. § 161.)

Sindia's dominions.

2. The political agent of Bhôpâl. (Ch. v. § 96.) This is the capital of the Râni of Bhôpâl. Connected

Bhôpâl.

## INTRO § 12, 13

## The Central India Agency.

(Ch. x. § 102.)

Bhil Agency.

Deputy Bhil  
AgencyWestern Mál-  
wah.

Gtina.

Bandélkhand.  
(Comp. ch. x.  
§ 70.)

Opium.

Central  
Provinces.

with this are the petty districts of Rājghar, Narsinghūr, Kilchipūr, Kurwāi, Muxudanghar, Muhammadghar, Patharea, Bisōda, and Larāwat.

3. The Bhil agent and political assistant. Under him are Dhār, Jhabbā, Ali Rājpur, and Jobutt. (Ch. v. § 165.)

4. The Deputy Bhil agent. Under him are Mānpūr (a British Pergunnah), Burwāi, and other smaller districts.

5. The political agent of Western Málwah. He superintends Jowra, Rutlam, Sita-mhow, Sillāna, and Jhalra Patān.

6. The political agent of Gtina. Under him are Rāgūghur, Ghurra, Parone (or Narwār), Omri, Bhadowra, Dunāoda, and Sirsi.

The political agent of Bandélkhand. These states are thirty-five in number, and include Rēwa, Oorcha, Duttia, Sumptur, Punna, Churkarī, Chatterpūr, and Adjyghur.

Opium is one of the great products of Málwah. The revenue from this was 21,660,600 rupees in 1868-69.

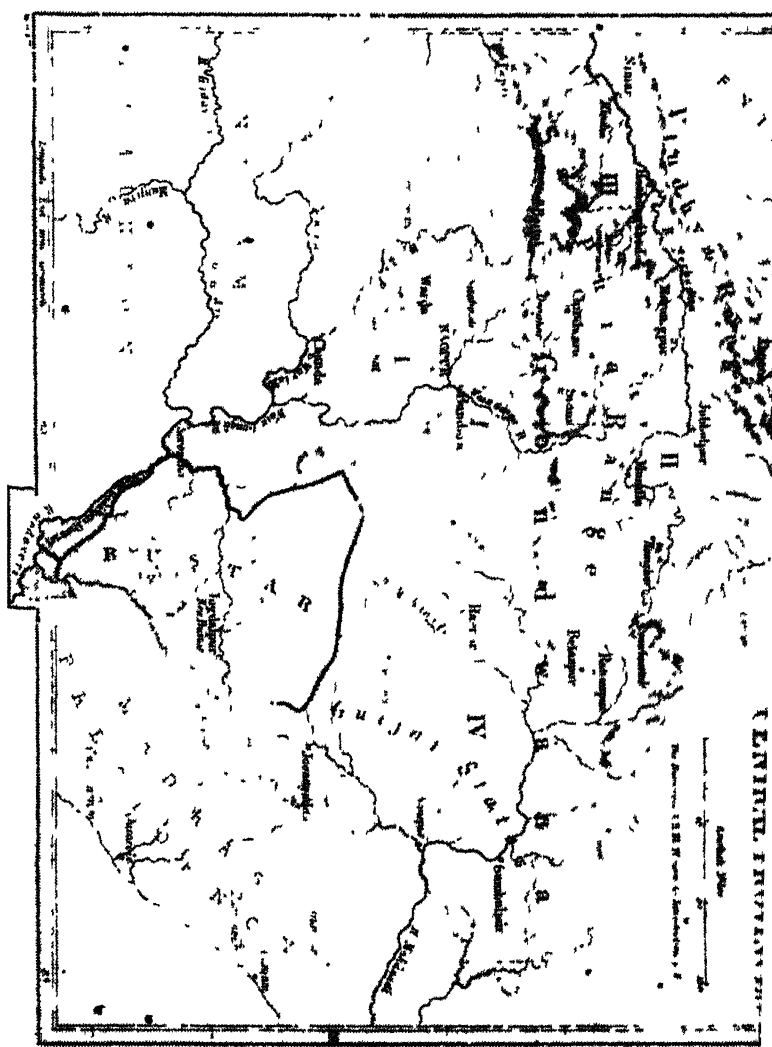
Education, railways, and other products and means of civilisation, have effected slow but real changes in this whole district.

§ 13. (6.) The CENTRAL PROVINCES. These include a great portion of the table-land of Central India. Here the Narbaddah, the Tapti, the Mahānadi, and several important tributaries of the Godāvari, have their rise. Here was the kingdom of the Eastern Mahrattas, founded by *Raghujī Bhonslé* I. (Ch. v. § 45-159.)

It is about the size of the Madras Presidency, or as large as Great Britain and Ireland together.

It is divided, as shown in the following table, into four Commissionerships, in which are eighteen districts and fourteen Feudatory Chieftainships.

# UNITED STATES







## Rājputāna. Mysōr.

INTRO § 13-14.

COMMISSIONER-SHIPS.	DISTRICTS.	COMMISSIONER-SHIPS.	DISTRICTS.
I. NĀGPUR.	1 Nāgpūr. 2 Bundara. 3 Chanda. 4 Wāda. 5 Jubbulpūr. 6 Sagar. 7 Dumoh. 8 Soni. 9 Mundla.	III. NARBADDAH.	10 Hoshungābād. 11 Baitūl. 12 Narsingbur. 13 Chundwāra. 14 Nimar. 15 Raipūr. 16 Belaspūr. 17 Simbulpūr. 18 Upper Godāvari.
II. ●JUBBULPŪR.		IV. CHATTISGARH. (Raipur.)	

The population is a little above 2,000,000.

The chief feudatories are the *Bustar Rāja*, the chief of a wild tribe of mountaineers, *Kharond*, and *Makrai*.

This province is called *Gondwana*, as being the residence of the Gonds (or Khonds, who are nearly identical), an ancient race, of simple habits, though some of their tribes have been guilty of offering human sacrifices. (Ch. x. § 133.)

**RĀJPŪTĀNA.** This immense region stretches from 23° to 20° north latitude, and from 64° 30' to 78° 15' east longitude, and contains an area of 123,000 square miles, with a population of about 10,000,000. It consists of twenty provinces, of which two, viz., Ajmīr and Mairwarra, are British territories, while the other eighteen states are independent, under British protection, with a political agent immediately under the Governor-General. (Comp. § 36.)

Rājput

These are under the N.W. Provinces.

§ 14. (7) **Mysōr** (Mairūr) is under a Chief Commissioner, and though geographically within the limits of the Madras Presidency, is directly subject to the Bengal Government.

In regard to military matters Mysōr is under Madras.

Mysōr Comm. Map. Chap. 11. § 1.

## INTRODUCTION.

INTRO. § 15, 16.

## Birma. The Madras Presidency.

-The following are the divisions of Mysôr:—

DIVISIONS.	{	I. NANTIDRUG,
		II. ASHTAGRAM,
		III. and NAGAR.

The population is nearly 4,000,000. (See ch. xii.)

Kûrg.

The district of Kûrg (Coorg) is under the Mysôr Government. Its length is about 60 miles, and its breadth about 40. It lies on the summit and slopes of the Western Ghâts, on the south-east of Mysôr. Its chief town is Markâra.

Here the Kâverî rises.

Coffee is cultivated with success in this district.

The population is about 113,000; of whom 30,000 are of the Kodaga or ancient Kûrg tribe.

Birma.

See Map.

British Birma  
(Burmah).

§ 15. (8) The BRITISH POSSESSIONS IN BIRMA. Population 2,300,000. This comprises all the maritime districts on the east side of the Bay of Bengâl. They consist of *Arakân*, *Pegu*, and the *Tenasserim* provinces. (Comp. ch. x. § 79, 140.)

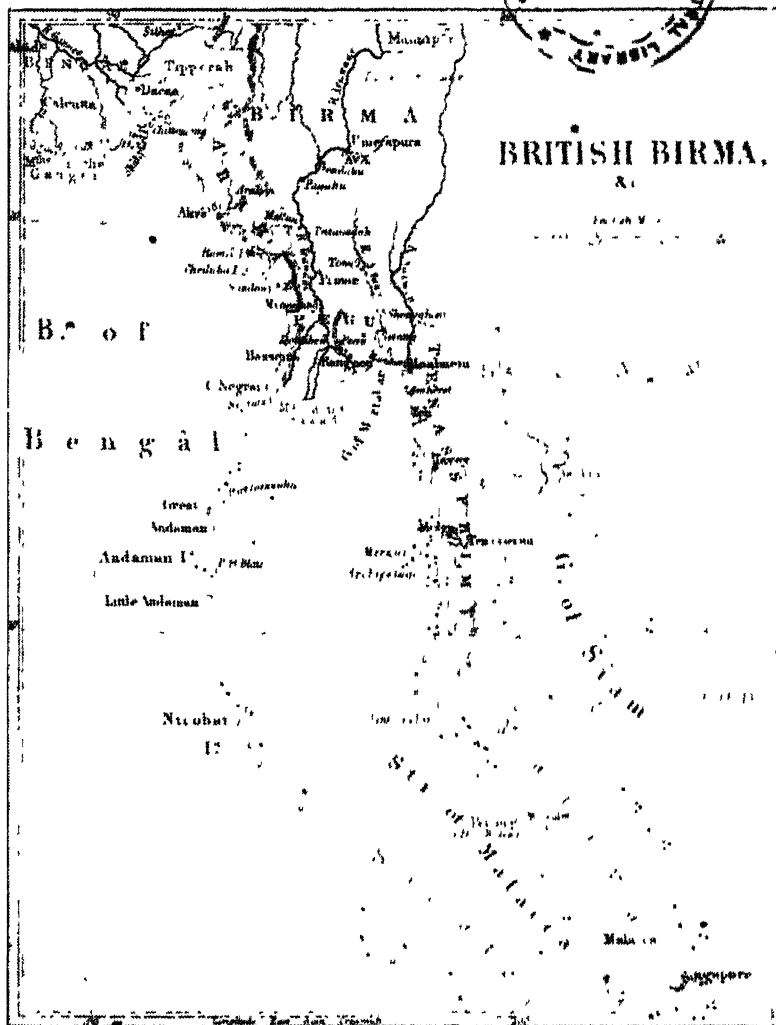
The following is a table of the Commissionerships and Divisions of British *Birma*:—

DIVISIONS.	DISTRICTS.	DIVISIONS.	DISTRICTS.
I. PEGU.	{	II. TENASSERIM.	{
III. ARAKÂN.	{	IV. ARAKÂN.	{

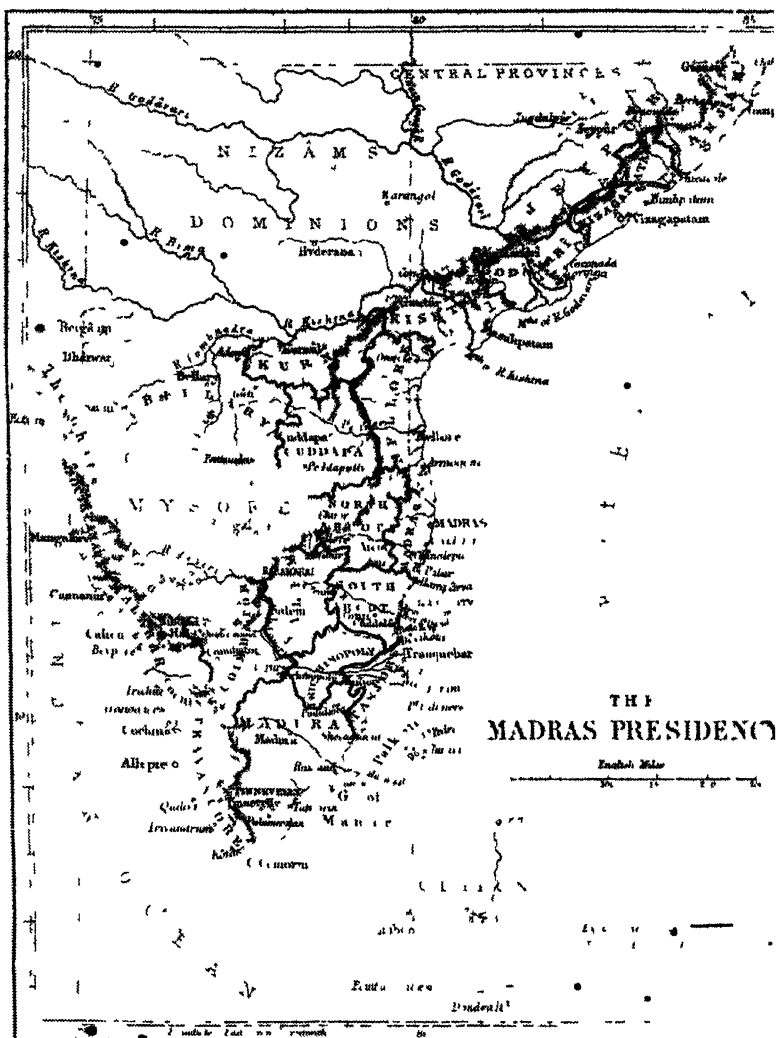
The population is about 2,500,000.

Madras Pre-  
sidency.

§ 16. (II.) The MADRAS PRESIDENCY. (See map.) Population 26,500,000.









# POLITICAL DIVISIONS OF BRITISH INDIA.

11

## The Madras Presidency.

INTRO. § 18.

This includes twenty Collectorates. Within its limits are the protected states of—

(i.) TRAVANCORE. Population 1,000,000. (Comp. ch. x. § 61.) Protected states.

(ii.) COCHIN. Population 300,000. (Ch. x. § 64.)

(iii.) VIZIANAGARAM and JEYPUK. These are both in the Vizagapatam district.

Vizianagaram is under a Mahārāja, Gajapati Rāj. It contains eleven Tālūks, and a population of 570,000.

• Jeypur is in the hills, forming the Eastern Ghāts. Here are found the Khonds, Kols, and Savars. (Ch. x. § 133.) Its population is about 400,000. Or, Konda.

(iv.) PUDUCHOTA. Population 60,000.

The Rāja is often called the Tondimān Rāja. His estates have been guaranteed to him as a reward for services rendered by his ancestors during the wars in the Carnatic.

The following are the Collectorates of MADRAS. There is but one Commissionership:—

DISTRICTS.	DISTRICTS.
1 Madras City.	12 South Arcot (Cuddalōr).
2 Ganjam (Chitterpore).	13 Tanjore
3 Vizagapatam.	14 Trichinopoly.
4 Godavari (Coconada, Rāja-mandri).	15 Madura.
5 Kistna (Masulipatam, Guntūr)	16 Tiruchelvi (Palumcottah).
6 Nellore.	17 Coimbatōr
7 Cuddapa (Kadapa).	18 Salem.
8 Bellary (Ballari).	19 South Canara (Mangalore).
9 Kurnul.	20 Malabar (Calicut, Cannanūr, Tellichéri).
10 Madras (Chingleput).	21 The Nilagiri Plateau. (Under a Commissionership.) (Ootacamund.)
11 North Arcot (Chittūr, Arcot).	

The area is a little more than that of Great Britain with Ireland.



INTRO § 17, 18

## The Bombay Presidency.

French Settlements  
Ch vii § 7; viii.  
§ 31.  
Ch vii § 7, xii.  
§ 25.  
Ch vii § 7.  
Ch vii. § 7, ix.  
§ 8.

§ 17. There are also the French settlements of—  
(i.) *Pondicherry*, on the Coromandel coast;  
(ii.) *Mahé*, on the Malabár coast;  
(iii.) *Káricál*, on the Coromandel coast;  
(iv.) *Chandernagór*, on the Húgli; and  
(v.) *Yanáon* (Yanam) on the Orissa coast, 6 miles from Coringa, on the Godávari. They have a total population of about 229,000.

The Bombay  
Presidency.

§ 18. (III.) The BOMBAY PRESIDENCY. (See map\*) This includes twenty-one Collectorates. Within its limits are,

Protected  
states  
Ch v § 122.  
Ch v § 47.  
Katch.  
Comp. ch. v. §  
122.

- (i.) The Gaekwár of Baróda. Population 330,000.
- (ii.) The four Kolhápúr Rájas. Population 500,000.
- (ii.) The Ráo of Katch. Population 500,000.

NOTE—KATCH is governed by a Ráo and chiefs whose tribe name is Jharejas. It came fully under the subsidiary system in 1819. There has been great difficulty in repressing female infanticide there. The most populous town is *Mandari*.

Gujarát.

- (iv.) The petty states of Gujarát. Population 400,000.

Among these are—

- 1 Páhlunpúr, Radhanpúr, and many petty states around.
- 2 The *Máhi-Kánta*, divided among many petty chiefs, of which the Rája of Edar and Ahmednagar is the chief.

Its area is 4,000 square miles.

- 3 The *Réva Kánta*. Here is the Rája of Rájpála.

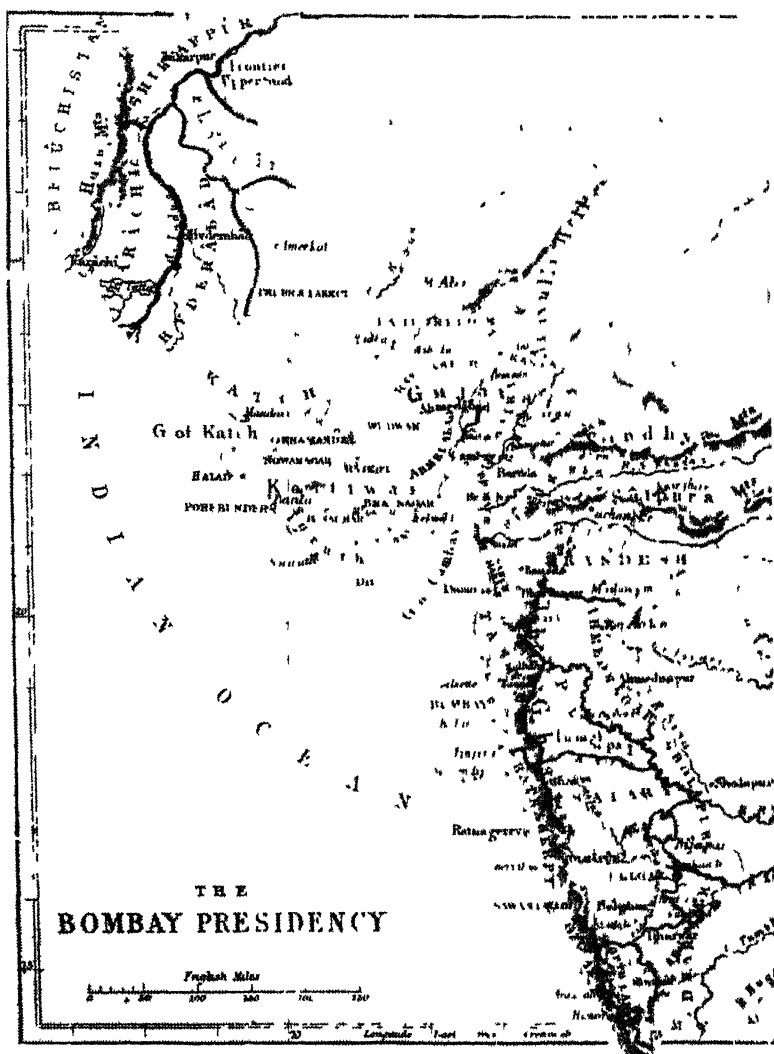
Lesser chiefs are those of Dêoghar Bâria, Mohan, Lunâwára, Sonáth, Bálasinór, and others.

"This beautiful province for hundreds of miles may vie with the finest parks in England, covered with verdure and the most luxuriant vegetation."

Káthiwar.

- (v.) The petty states of Káthiwar. Population 1,500,000.

NOTE—A large portion of the *Káthiwar* peninsula belongs to the Gaekwár of Baróda. But there are several chiefs who hold





# POLITICAL DIVISIONS OF BRITISH INDIA.

13

## The Bombay Presidency.

INTRO § 18, 19.

their territories directly as feudatories of the British Government. These are the chiefs of—

- |               |                |
|---------------|----------------|
| 1. Jūnagar.   | 4. Porebunder. |
| 2. Nowānagar. | 5. Wudwar; and |
| 3. Bhāonagar. | 6. Rājkot.     |

To the first three the right of adoption has been conceded (§ 24.)

(vi.) The Satārā Jāgirs. (Ch. v. § 166.)

(vii.) Sāwant-Wādī. Population 120,000.

(viii.) Southern Mahratta Jāgirs. Population 420,000.

Or, Wād.

These are—

- |          |              |
|----------|--------------|
| Jamkandī | Nargund.     |
| Kunwār.  | Sangli.      |
| Mirāj.   | Savanūr; and |
| Mūdhōl.  | Shedbād.     |

The following is a list of the Commissionerships and Collectorates of the BOMBAY PRESIDENCY. (See map.)

DIVISIONS.	DISTRICTS.	DIVISIONS.	DISTRICTS.	DIVISIONS.	DISTRICTS.
I NORTHERN COMMISSIONERSHIP	1 Bombay Island 2 Ahmedabad. 3 Kaira 4 Panch Mahals 5 Broach 6 Surat 7 Tanna 8 Khandesh.	II SOUTHERN COMMISSIONERSHIP	9 Puna 10 Ahmednagar 11 Solapur 12 Katulgarh 13 Balapur 14 Dhule 15 North Saunara 16 Satara	III SOUTHERN COMMISSIONERSHIP	17 Karachi (Westerly Mouth of the Indus) 18 Hyderabad (On the Arabian Branch of the Indus) 19 Shikarpur (Very populous) 20 Frontier Upper Sind. 21 Bhurr and Parkur

The population is about 13,000,000. The area slightly exceeds that of the Madras Presidency.

Here the chief languages are the Marāṭhī and the Gujarātī

§ 19. There is also the Island of Goa, which, with a small tract of surrounding country, and the towns of *Diu* and *Daman*, are the sole remainder of the vast Portuguese dominion in the East. The population of this feeble remnant of "Portuguese India" is about 500,000.

Portuguese  
India  
(comp Ch. vi.)

## INTRO. § 20. &amp;c.

## Berâr. Straits settlements. Ceylon.

Berâr.  
See map of  
Nizâms terri-  
tories.

§ 20. BERÂR is managed by the British Resident of Hyderabad for the Nizâm. Cultivation is rapidly on the increase.

DIVISIONS: { I. OOMRAWUTTY (AMRAVATI).  
II. ARÔTA.  
III. MIKHUR (MAIKER).  
IV. WOON.

Its population is one million and a half. (Comp. ch. iii. § 16 [13].)

It is a little larger than Denmark.

Of this district as of the whole territory of the Nizâm, Hindûstânî may almost be regarded as the vernacular language.

Straits Settle-  
ments.

§ 21. There are besides these the "Straits Settlements," of which there are three—Singapore, Penang, and Malacca. These were transferred to the English Colonial Office in 1866; and with them the history of India is no further concerned. (Comp. ch. vi. § 13, 20; ch. x. § 82.)

Ceylon.

§ 22. Ceylon does not fall within our subject, being a British Crown colony, having no political connection with Peninsular India. A slight sketch of its history and geography will be found in § 37.

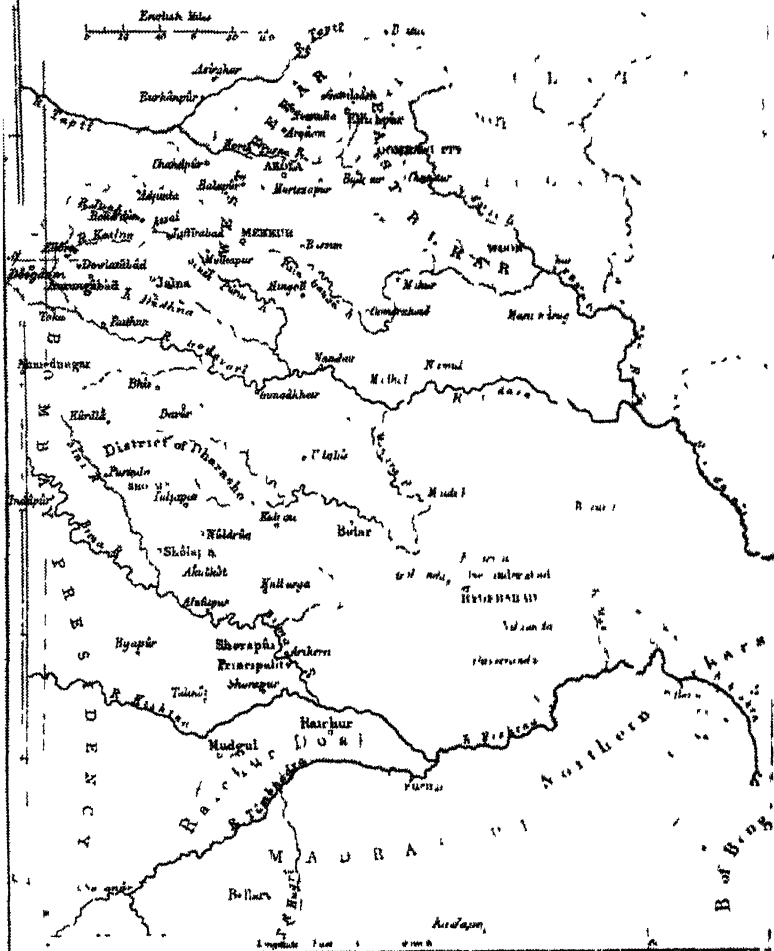
Progress of  
British power.

§ 23. Chapters vii, viii, and ix. will show how rapid and how wonderful in every way has been the attainment by Great Britain of this dominion.

We subjoin a table, giving the date of the acquisition of each portion of the Indian Empire:—

1	Madras (with five miles round)	1639	Ch. vii § 6, l.
2	Bombay	1669	Given by Portugal to Charles II. in 1661 Ch. vii § 6, q.
3	Fort St. David	1691	Ch. viii § 6
4	Calcutta and villages around	1696	Ch. viii § 6, r
5	The Twenty-four Pergunnahs	1757	From Mir Juffi. Ch. ix § 11.

English Miles





## Acquisition of British Indian Territories.

INTRO. § 23.

6	Masulipatam and surrounding country ...	1758	From the Nizâm. Ch. ix. § 14.
7	Burdwân, Midnâpûr, and Chit-tagong ...	1760	From Mir Kâsim. Ch. ix. § 16.
8	Bengâl, Bahâr, and Orissa ...	1764	From Shâh Alam II. Ch. ix. § 28.
9	The Five Northern Circârs ...	1764	From Shâh Alam II. Ch. iii. § 16.
10	Chingleput (round Madras) ...	1765	From the Nuwâb of the Carnatic.
11	Guntûr ...	1788	From the Nizâm of Hyderâbâd. Ch. x. § 21.
12	Baramahâl (Salem) ...	1792	From Tippû. Sir T. Munro.
13	Dindigal ...	1792	Do. Do. Ch. x. § 22.
14	Malabâr ...	1792	Do. Do.
15	Kanara, Coimbatôr, Wynaad, and the Nilagiri Hills ...	1799	After Tippû's fall. Ch. x. § 12, xii § 56
16	Ceded districts of Hyderâbâd ...	1800	The Nizâm, for subsidiary force. (Ch. iii. § 16.
17	Tanjôr ...	1800	By consent. Ch. x. § 44.
18	Furruckâbâd ...	1801	Ch. x. § 30.
19	Ceded Districts of Oudh ...	1801	Do
20	The Carnatic ...	1801	For debts. Ch. v. § 44.
21	Kuttack ...	1803	Conquest. Ch. v. § 134.
22	Delhi, Agra, Bandêlkhand ...	1803	Lord Lago's conquests. Ch. v. § 135.
23	Cessions from Nipâl ...	1815	Ch. x. § 74.
24	Pûna and Tracts of Mahratta territory ...	1818	Ch. v. § 165.
25	Arakân, &c. ...	1821	Ch. v. § 79
26	Cachâr ...	1832	Lapsed. Since famous for tea-plan tations.
27	Assâm ...	{ 1833 1839 }	{ Lapsed.
28	Kûrg ...	1831	Ch. x. § 90.
29	Butân (the Dûars) ...	1841	Taken in consequence of aggressions
30	Kurnûl ...	1841	Treason in the Nuwâb. Ch. x. § 112
31	The Cis-Satlaj States ...	1848	
32	Sînd ...	1848	Ch. x. § 125.
32	The Jallindhur Doâb (Panjâb) ...	1845	Ch. xi. § 34.
34	The Panjâb ...	1848	Ch. xi. § 44.
35	Pegu ...	1852	Ch. x. § 140.
36	Tula Râm's Hill Districts of Cachâr ...	1853	Lapsed.
37	Berâr ...	1853	Ch. iii. § 16 (13).
38	Nagpûr ...	1854	Ch. x. § 144.
39	Jhânsî ...	1854	Ch. x. § 147.



## INTRO. § 24.

## The Feudatories of England.

40	Oudh	...	1856	Ch. x. § 150.
41	Penang, Malacca, and Singapore	...	1824	Transferred to the Colonial Office in 1866. Ch. x. § 82.

## Feudatories.

§ 24. This slight sketch of Indian Political Geography would not be complete without a more definite statement of the FEUDATORIES of England. (Comp. ch. x. § 187.)

1	Adjyghur Râja	...	Bandêlkhand. C.I. Agency. § 12; ch. x. § 70.
2	Akalkôt Râja	...	Mahratta. Ch. v. § 45 and 166.
3	Alîpura Jaghîrdâr	...	Bandêlkhand. § 12.
4	Bansda Chief	...	Gujarât.
5	Baonî Nuwâb	...	Bandêlkhand.
6	Banswâra Chief	...	Râjpûtâna. § 36.
7	Bîja Chief	...	Hill State. Panjâb.
8	Behri Chief	...	Bandêlkhand. § 12.
9	Behut Jaghîrdâr	...	Bandêlkhand. § 12.
10	Bilaspûr Chief (Kuhlôr)	...	Between Satlaj and Jamna. Panjâb.
11	Benâres Râja	...	Hindû. Ch. ix. § 36; x. § 4, 11.
12	Beronda Râja	...	Bandêlkhand. C.I. Agency. § 12.
13	Bagul Chief	...	Hill State in Panjâb.
14	Bhōpāl Begum	...	Mâlwah. C.I. Agency. Ch. v. § 48, 163; x. § 102.
15	Bhâonagar Chief	...	Bombay. Kâttiwâr Peninsula. § 18.
16	Bughat Chief	...	Hill State. Panjâb.
17	Budjî Chief (Bhujee)	...	Hill State. Panjâb.
18	Bhartpûr Mahârâja	...	Jât Principality. § 36; ch. v. § 137; x. § 82.
19	Bikanîr Mahârâja	...	Râjpûtâna. § 36.
20	Bijâwar Râja	...	Bandêlkhand. § 12.
21	Bîja Chief (Beejah)	...	Hill State. Panjâb.
22	Bûndî Râja	...	Râjpûtâna. Ch. v. § 163.
23	Bulsun Chief	...	Hill State. Panjâb.
24	Banganpully Jaghîrdâr	...	Madras Presidency. Cuddapa.
25	Buscalûr Chief	...	Hill State. Panjâb.
26	Bustar Râja	...	Nâgpûr. Central India.
27-32	Six Kalnjîr Chobeys	...	Bandêlkhand. § 12.

# POLITICAL DIVISIONS OF BRITISH INDIA.

17

## The Feudatories of England.

INTRO. § 21

33	Kambay Nuwáb	...	Gujarát.
34	Kashmir Maharája	...	Sikh Ch. x. § 7.
35	Churkari Rája	...	Bandékhand. C. I. Agency. § 12.
36	Chamba Chief	...	Trans-Satlaj State. Panjáb. § 10.
37	Chatterpúr Rája	...	Bandékhand. C. I. Agency. § 12.
38	Cochin Rája	...	Hindú. § 16; ch. x § 64.
39	Cooch Bihár Rája	...	E. Bengal.
40-54	Sixteen Chiefs, Tributary Me- hals	...	Cuttack.
55	Dewas Chief (Puar Rája)	...	Málwah. C. I. Agency. § 12.
56	Dhár Chief, Rája	...	Málwah. C. I. Agency. § 12.
57	Dhamí Chief	...	Hill State. Panjáb.
58	Dholapúr Rána (Góhud)	...	Ját. § 36; ch. v. § 137.
59	Dhurwiji Chief (Jaghrdar)	...	Bandékhand. § 12.
60	Dojana Nuwáb	...	North-Western Provinces. Delhi.
61	Durkoti Chief (Thákúr)	...	Hill State. Panjáb.
62	Dharampúr Chief	...	Gujarát.
63	Dungarpúr Chief	...	Rájpútana. § 36.
64	Dudékár of Ját	...	Mahratta. Ch. v. § 166.
65	Duttia Rája	...	Bandékhand. C. I. Agency. § 12.
66	Edar Chief (Thákúr)	...	Gujarát. Mili-Kanta. Bombay. § 18.
67	Furridkót Rája	...	C. I. Satlaj State. Panjáb.
68	Gerouli Jaghrdár	...	Bandékhand. § 12.
69	Gurhwál Rája	...	N. W. Himalayas. Faithful in the mountains. Intro d. § 9.
70	Gackwár of Baróda	...	Mahratta. § 18; ch. v. § 122 89.
71	Górhár Jaghrdár	...	Bandékhand. § 12.
72	Holkár Maharája	...	Mahratta. § 12; ch. v. § 160 75.
73	Haiderábád Nizám	...	Muhammedan. Ch. m.
74	Jaisalmir Chief	...	Rájpútana. § 36.
75	Jeypúr Maharája	...	Rájpútana. § 36; ch. v. § 102. v § 163.
76	Jhind Rája	...	C. I. Satlaj State. Panjáb. Ch. vi § 9.
77	Jhalláwar Rána	...	Rájpútana. § 36.
78	Jigni Jaghrdár	...	Bandékhand. § 12.
79	Joobul Chief	...	Hill States. Panjáb.
80	Jumghar Nuwáb	...	Kátiwar. Gujarát. § 18.
81	Jochpúr Chief	...	Rájpútana. § 36; ch. v. § 102; v § 163.
82	Jowra Nuwáb	...	Central India Agency. Malwa.
83	Jussú Jaghrdár	...	Bandékhand. § 12.
84	Karond Rája	...	Central Provinces.
85	Keonthul Chief	...	Hill States. Panjáb.
86	Kerowli Chief	...	Rájpútana. § 36.
87	Kishnagar Chief	...	Rájpútana. § 36.
88	Khulna Chief	...	C. I. Satlaj State. Panjáb.

89	Kolhápúr Rája	...	Mahratta. § 18; ch. v. § 47.
90	Koomharsein Chief	...	Hill State. Panjáb.
91	Koonhiár Chief	...	Hill State. Panjáb.
92	Kcta Chief	...	Rájpútána. § 36.
93	Kothar Chief	...	Hill State. Panjáb.
94	Kothi Jaghirdár	...	Bandélkhand. § 12.
95	Kunnya Dhâna Jaghirdár	...	Bandélkhand. § 12.
96	Kapurthala Rája	...	Sikh Protected. Trans-Satlaj. § 10.
97	Katch Rao (Cutch)	...	Mahratta. § 18.
98	Loyassi Jaghirdár	...	Bandélkhand. § 12.
99	Loharoo Nuwáb	...	North-Western Provinces. Delhi.
100	Makrái Chief	...	Central Provinces.
101	Malleir-Kotla Nuwáb	...	Cis-Satlaj State. Panjáb.
102	Múdhól Chief	...	Bombay. Southern Mahratta.
103	Mandl Chief	...	Trans-Satlaj. Panjáb. § 10.
104	Mungal Chief	...	Hill State. Panjáb.
105	Myhere Chief	...	Bandélkhand. § 12.
106	Mylóg Chief	...	Hill State. Panjáb.
107	Mysore Mahárája	...	Chapter xii.
108	Nabha Rája	...	Cis-Satlaj State. Panjáb. Ch. xi. § 9.
109	Nagôde Chief (Oucheyra)	...	Bandélkhand. § 12.
110	Nahun Chief (Sirmúr)	...	Hill State. Panjáb.
111	Nalaghar Chief (Hindôr)	...	Hill State. Panjáb.
112	Nambalkur of Phultun	...	Mahratta. Ch. v. § 166.
113	Nowánagar Chief	...	Káttiwár Peninsula. § 18.
114	Nyagion Rehai Jaghirdár	...	Bandélkhand. C.I. Agency. § 12.
115	Oudipúr Mahárája (Mêwâr)	...	Rájpútána. § 36; ch. x. § 102.
116	Pahari Chief	...	Bandélkhand.
117	Patowdi Nuwáb	...	North-Western Provinces. Delhi.
118	Páhlunpúr Rája	...	Gujarát. Bombay. § 18.
119	Pudukôta Chief	...	Hindú. Carnatic. Madras P. § 16.
120	Punna Rája	...	Bandélkhand. C.I. Agency. § 12.
121	Pant Prithi Nidhi	...	Mahratta. Ch. x. § 166. Bombay P.
122	Pant Suchêo (Panna Cotte)	...	Mahratta. Ch. v. § 166. Bombay P.
123	Pratabghar Rája	...	Rájpútána. § 36. R. Agency.
124	Five Putwurdhuns	...	Mahratta. Ch. v. § 166. Bombay P.
125	Pattiala Mahárája	...	Protected Sikh State between Jamna and Satlaj. Ch. x. § 8.
126	Radhanpúr Nuwáb	...	Gujarát. Bombay Presidency.
127	Rájpipra Chief	...	Between Kándesh and Gujarát. Bombay Presidency. § 18.
128	Rámdrug Chief	...	Bombay.
129	Rámpúr Nuwáb	...	Rohilkhand. The descendant of the Rohillas. Ch. ix. § 26.

## The Feudatory States.

IN 1870, 24.5

130	Réwa Râja	...	Bandelkhand	£ 12
131	Sâwant-Wâdi Chief	...	Mahratta	Ch. x £ 100
132	Sirôhi Chief	...	Rajpûta	£ 35
133	Shâhpûra Râja (Intro. § 9)	...	North-Western Provinces, A. R. V. 100. secondarily on Siraj Mah. Ch. x £ 20.	
134	Sindia Mahârâja	...	Mahratta	Ch. x £ 10.
135	Sohâwul Chief	...	Bandelkhand	£ 12
136	Sukhêt Chief	...	North-Western Provinces, Sikh.	£ 10.
137	Suchoen Nuwâb	...	Near Sura	Gujarat
138	Sundûr Chief	...	Ceded Districts	Ch. x £ 40.
139	Sumptur Râja	...	Bandelkhand	Ch. Agency. £ 12.
140	Sirdâr Shamshir, Sindhu-wâla Sing	...	Sikh	Panjab. £ 10.
141	Farila Chief	...	Bandelkhand	£ 12.
142	Tehri Chief (Garcia), and Husht Bhyu Jaghirdârs (4)	...	Bandelkhand	£ 12
143	Tâj Sing	...	Sikh	Panjab. 100
144	Touk (Tank) Nuwâb	...	Rajpûta	Ch. x £ 150.
145	Toreu Chief	...	Rajpûta	Ch. x £ 150
146	Travancore Mahârâja	...	Hindû	Ch. x £ 60.
147	Turoch Chief	...	Hill State	Panjab.
148	Ulwar Chief (Machôri)	...	Rajpûta.	£ 36.

§ 25. The following table exhibits twelve of the chief FEUDATORY STATES:—

	SQUARE MILES.	POPULATION.	AREA AT INCOME.
1 Nizâm of Haidarâbâd	95,037	10,000,000	£1,650,000
2 Mahârâja Sindia, of Gwâlîar	...	2,000,000	1,100,000
3 Gaekwar of Barôda	4,390	1,710,000	600,000
4 Mahârâja of Jeypûr	15,250	1,000,000	500,000
5 Mahârâja of Travancore	6,800	1,200,000	1,500,000
6 Mahârâja of Kashmir	25,000	700,000	1,000,000
7 Mahârâja of Jôdhpûr	35,000	1,700,000	350,000
8 Mahârâja Holkâr	8,000	500,000	500,000
9 Mahârâja of Pattiâlâ	5,000	1,500,000	300,000
10 Mahârâja of Oudipûr	11,000	1,100,000	200,000
11 Mahârâja of Bhârtpûr	1,000	700,000	200,000
12 Begum of Bhopâl	6,000	600,000	200,000
Total	...	...	6,150,000

## INTRODUCTION.

## PART II.—SKETCH OF THE GENERAL GEOGRAPHY OF INDIA.

§ 26. After this brief survey of the political relations of Great Britain to this country, we may proceed to a somewhat closer examination of the general geography of India.

(I.) INDIA, in its widest acceptance, includes both the great peninsulas separated by the Bay of Bengal. It is divided into—

(i.) FURTHER INDIA, or India beyond the Ganges, consisting of the Indo-Chinese peninsula, and the islands of the great Indian Archipelago.

(ii.) HITHER INDIA, or India within the Ganges: Hindûstân, and the Dakhan.

§ 27. This latter territory is divided into—

[1.] The *Himâlayan region*, occupying the slopes and valleys between the various ranges of those sublime mountains.

Here are the districts of—(1) Assam, (2) Bhutân, (3) Sikhim, (4) Nepâl, (5) Kumaôn, (6) Gurhwâl, (7) Sirmûr, and (8) the famed valley of Kashmîr. See sketch map, page 1.)

India.

Further India.  
(Ch. x. § 79, 82)

Hither India.

Himâlayan  
region. § 83.

Hill districts.

North-Western India.

INTRO § 24, 30

Along the southern boundary of Nepāl is the Terāi r'āmyānt, a long narrow belt of low land, covered with jungle and very deadly.

Ch. x. § 181

Among the hills and valleys of this region are found the aboriginal tribes (of uncertain origin) called Kākā, Kākā, Dhimal, etc., Kākā, etc., Lhopo, Kwant, and many others.

§ 28. [2.] The great plain extending from the Brahmaputra to the Indus, and from the Himalaya mountains to the high table-land of the Southern peninsula. This includes- (1) Bengāl, (2) Bihār, (3) parts of Orissa; (4) Oudh, the ancient provinces of (5) Alāhābād, (6) Agra, (7) Idāra, (8) the Panjāb; and (9) part of Sind.

The great northern plain.

Compare § 8, 9 10, 11.

This region is watered by the Brahmaputra, the Ganges, the Jamna, and the Indus, with their numerous and important tributaries. (See sketch map.)

Rivers. § 24.

This was anciently divided into *Hind* (the) and *Pūr*. From Alāhābād eastward was the *Pūr* r'āmyānt. Hence the kings of Bengāl were sometimes called *Pūr* kings.

§ 29. [3.] The desert between the Arāvali hills and the Indus, comprising portions of Rājpūtāna and Sind. This belongs to the great plain, but differs from it in physical character, being for the most part barren. (See map).

The North-Western desert. § 29.

§ 30. [4.] The Dakhan or Southern Peninsula. This is a vast table-land, possessing an average elevation of 2,000 feet above the level of the sea. (Ch. xv.)

The Dakhan

Its northern border consists of the Vindhya chain (from 2,000 to 3,000 feet high), a tract of high country from the border of Gujarāt to the Ganges, between the 23d and 25th parallels of north latitude.

Its boundaries.

There is the Vindhya chain, at its base flows the Nerbudda; south of it is the Sāthpurā range, and then

The fourfold boundary.

the Tapti, completing the "*fourfold girdle round the waist of India.*"

The Eastern and Western Ghats.

§ 31. From the extremities of this transverse boundary two chains called the Western and Eastern Ghâts run to the south, and join at the Nilagiri table-land (in north latitude  $11^{\circ}$ ), whose highest peak is 8,760 feet. (See sketch map.)

The Coasts on the west and east.

§ 32. [5.] The lower land between the Eastern and Western Ghâts, and the sea on either hand. This belongs to the Dakhan, but historically must be considered apart from it.

Northern  
Sirkars.  
(Ch. iii. § 16.)  
Carnatic.  
(Ch. vii. viii.)

a. From the mouth of the Mahânadî to the Krishna are the *Northern Sirkars*.

b. The region between the Krishna, the Eastern Ghâts, and the Ghâts after their union at the Nilagiris to Cape Comorin, is the Carnatic, sometimes divided into northern, central, and southern. The name is a mistake, a mere corruption of *Karnâtaka* (the Kanarese country), with which it has really no connection.

Western coast.  
(Ch. v. vi. xii.  
x. § 61.)

c. The narrower district between the Western Ghâts and the sea is divided into—(a) the Konkan, (b) Goa, (c) Kanara, (d) Malabâr, and (e) Travancore with Cochin. This is the region connected with the names of Sivaji, Albuquerque, Hyder, and Tippû. Its harbours have been visited by ships from all the mercantile regions of the earth.

Some slight notice of necessary geographical particulars is given as each district is mentioned in the history.

Mountains.

§ 33. We may now take a separate survey of the mountains of India.

The Himalayas.

(I.) The *Himâlaya* range (=abode of snow), the escarpment of the plateau of Central Asia. This is the highest chain in the world. North of Afghânistân it is

# GENERAL GEOGRAPHY OF INDIA.

23

## The Mountains of India.

INTRO. § 33.

called the Hindû Koosh. The northern is the Kailâsa range. The highest peaks are—

- (1.) Nanda Dêvi in Kumaôn . . . 25,740 feet.
- (2.) Dhavala-Giri in Nipâl . . . 26,561 "
- (3.) Mount Everest, Nipâl . . . 29,000 "
- (4.) Kunchinganga " . . . 28,020 "
- (5.) Jumouri " . . . 26,500 "
- (6.) Chimalari " . . . 28,941 "

These numbers  
are variously  
given.]

This chain has forty peaks exceeding Chimborazo in height (21,424 feet).

(II.) The *Vindhya* mountains. These extend through Bihâr, Allâhâbâd, and Malwah, along the north bank of the Nerbudda, to the neighbourhood of Broach. They nowhere exceed 6,000 feet in height.

The Vindhya.

(III.) The *Western Ghâts*, extending from the Tapti to Cape Comorin. (Comp. ch. v. § 4.)

Western Ghâts.

The Bhôr Ghât is the pass that leads from Bombay to Pâna. The Great Indian Peninsula railway ascends this Ghât by an incline whose ascent is 1,831 feet.

The Palni hills, near Madura, are an offshoot of these.

(Palni.)

(IV.) The *Eastern Ghâts* extend, but not continuously, from Orissa to the Nilagiri plateau, where they join the *Western Ghâts*. One of the highest peaks in Southern India is Doddâ-betta (= *big-hill*), on the Nilagiris, which is 8,760 feet high.

Eastern Ghâts.

To the south of these, about sixty miles distant, are the *Anaimallî* hills (Anai-malai—*Elephant hill*), which are almost unexplored. Here is a peak about 9,000 feet high.

On the N.W., between the Nilagiris and Mysôr, is the valley of Wynad (Wainâd), celebrated for its coffee plantations.

(V.) The *Sulaimân*, with the *Hîla* mountains, run from north to south, dividing India from Afghanistan and Belûchistân. The highest peak, Tukht-i-Sulaimân, is 11,000 feet high.

Sulaimân and  
Hîla moun-  
tains  
(Solomon's  
Throne)



## INTRO. § 34.

## The Rivers of India.

The Sāthpurā  
range  
(Ch. v. § 2)

Aravallis  
(Comp. § 36)

Sewalik hills.

Rājmahāl hills.

The Garrows.

The Shevarāyoys.  
(Siva-roya.)

## RIVER SYSTEM.

The Brahma-  
putra.

The Ganges and  
its tributaries.

(VI.) The *Sāthpurā* hills divide the basins of the Nerbudda and the Tāpti.

They are called also the *Injādrī* mountains.

(VII.) The *Aravalli* mountains cross Rājputāna from south-west to north-east.

(VIII.) The *Sewalik* hills, a sub-Himālayan range, between Sirmūr and Gurhwāl.

(IX.) The *Rājmahāl* hills are to the north of Mūrshedābād, at the bend of the Ganges, southward, dividing "the lofty plateau of Central India from the valley of the Ganges."

(X.) The *Garrows* are to the east of the Brahma-putra, where it takes its great southern bend.

(XI.) Near to Salem, in the Carnatic, are the Shevaroy hills, the highest point being 5,000 feet.

§ 34. The river system of India consists of the following:—

(1.) The *Brahmaputra*. This rises in Tibet, flows due east, under the name of the Tsanpu, skirting the Himālayas, then west, and south-west, and south, through Assam and Eastern Bengāl; where, near Dacca, it is joined by many streams, and takes the name of Mēgna. Then, joining the Ganges, and many smaller rivers, it rushes with a mighty tide into the Bay of Bengāl.

(2.) The *Ganges* and its tributaries. The various streams that form the *Ganges*, and its great branch, the *Jamna*, rise beyond the Himālayas. These unite at *Allāhābād*, to which place steamers ascend.

The Bhāgiratī and Alcananda, which rise in Gurhwāl, unite at *Dēvaprayāga*, and form the Ganges.

*Tributaries of the Ganges:—*

a. On the north:—1, the N. Bhāgiratī; 2, the Rām Gangā; 3, the Tista; 4, the Gāmṭī; 5, the Gōgrā; 6, the Gunduk (or *Sālagrāmī*); 7, the Kōsi.

## The Rivers of India.

The H<sub>2</sub> and H<sub>2</sub>O concentrations in the gas phase are increased by 50% and 100%, respectively, and the results are shown in Figs. 10 and 11. It is seen that the H<sub>2</sub> and H<sub>2</sub>O concentrations in the gas phase have a significant effect on the reaction rate. The reaction rate increases with increasing H<sub>2</sub> and H<sub>2</sub>O concentrations in the gas phase.

*Tributaries of the Sea* -

[illegible]

**Tributaries:—**

The five rivers of the Panjáb are

1, the Kábul.	}	w. a unité at Trimu Ghât ;	} All the same.
2, the Jhilam (Hydraspes) ;			
3, the Chináb (Acesines) ;	}	w. a unité at Abas Nêr ;	
4, the Ravi (Hydraotes) ;			
5, the Bias (Hyphasis) ;	}	= Ghara.	
6, the Satlaj.			

(4.) The *Narbadda* (Narmada=*softener*) rises in the Gondwana near the Sôn, at *Ommerkantak*, flows from east to west, and forms a part of the great division between Hindustân and the Dakhan.

(5.) The *Tāpti* rises in Gondwāna, and flows nearly The Rajp.

## INTRO. § 84.

## The Rivers of India.

Northern  
Purna

The Mahānadi.

The Godāvari.

Tributaries of  
the Godāvari.  
(Ch. v. § 2.)The Kishna.  
(Krishna =  
black)Tributaries of  
the Krishna.  
(Ch. xii § 1)[Bhadra = cres-  
cent]  
(Ch. v. § 15.)

(Ch. v. § 2.)

east to the sea near Sūrat. The Northern *Pūrna* is its only tributary of importance.

(6.) The *Mahānadi* (= great river) rises in Gondwāna; and after a winding course of 550 miles, flows, by many mouths, into the Bay of Bengāl, near Kattack.

Its only important tributary is the *Tēl*.

(7.) The *Godāvari* rises in the Western Ghāts, at Trimbak near Nāsik (about 53 miles from the Indian Ocean), and runs across the peninsula, in a generally south-east direction, to Rājamandri and Coringa.

*Its tributaries are:—*

- |                        |                        |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| 1, the Wain-Gangā;     | 4, the Pain-Gangā;     |
| 2, the Manjira;        | 5, the Northern Warda; |
| 3, the Southern Pūrna; | 6, and the Indravatī.  |

(Wain = Vāna, an arrow = the arrow Ganges.)

NOTE.—The *Dādhnā* is a small tributary, on which stands Aurgābād.

(8.) The *Krishna* [*Kishna*] rises at Mahābalēshwar, near *Satārā*, and flows across the peninsula to near Masulipatam.

It is 800 miles long.

*Its tributaries are:—*

- | On the north,                            | On the south,                     |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| 1, the Bhīma;                            | 1, the Gutpūrba;                  |
| 2, the Sina;                             | 2, the Malapūrba;                 |
| 3, the Musī; (Haider-<br>ābād is on it.) | 3, the Tūnga; } = Tūm-<br>bhadrā. |
| 4, and the Nīma.                         | 4, the Bhadrā;                    |
| (Ch. v. § 2.)                            | 5, the S. Warda;                  |
|  | 6, and the Hugrī.                 |

NOTE.—1. Bhīma = terrible. It rises about 40 miles N. of Pūrna, and passes within 20 miles of it.

2. The Sina rises 20 miles W N W. from Ahmednagar, and falls into the *Pāni*.

3. There are two small rivers called the *Mūta* and the *Mālā*, at the junction of which stands *Pāni*. These streams after their union fall into the *Bhīma*.

4. The *Vāna* rises near the *Krishna*, and joins it near *Satārā*.

## Rivers of India.

INTRO § 4

(9) The *Pennâr* rises near *Nimdale* in Mysôr, north to *Gûti*, then east, divides the Northern and Central Carnatic; and falls into the Bay of Bengal near *Nellôr*. The Pennâr

(10) The *Pâlar* rises near the *Pennâr*, flows through Mysôr, and the Central Carnatic, past *Arcoor* to the sea, near *Sâdras*. The Pâlar

(11) The *Câverî* (*Chaberie*) rises in *Kârs*, flows through Mysôr, forms an island on which stands *Seringapatam*, divides *Coimbatôr* from *Salem*, at *Curâr*, turns east, forms the island of *Srirangapatam* near *Trichinopoly*; thence is divided into two branches, of which the northern is called the *Coleroon*, and falls into the sea at *Dévikôti*, while the other splits into many little streams, reaching the sea at *Nagapatam* and *Tranquebâr*. The Câverî

The *Bhavânî* (*Bowânî*), which rises in the *Nîlagiris*, is one of the tributaries of the *Câverî*. The *Moyar* again is an affluent of the *Bhavânî*.

(12.) *Lesser rivers* are—

(a) The *Lûni* rises near *Âjmir*, and falls into the Rann of *Katch*. This is a salt river. The Lûni

(b) The *Banas* rises in the *Aravalli* hills, and falls into the Rann of *Katch*.

(c) The *Mâl* rises in *Mâlwah*, near *Mîndû*, and falls into the Gulf of *Cambay*.

(d) The *Vaigai* rises in the Western Ghats, and flows past *Madura* into the Gulf of *Manar* near *Râmnad*.

(e) The *Tâmbarapûrî* rises in the Western Ghats, and flows past *Palamcottah*.

(f) The *Pundr* (or *S. Pennâr*) rises among the *Nallidurg* hills, in Mysôr, and flows into the sea at *Cuddalôr*.

(g) The *Gundigâma*, which rises in the ceded districts, and divides the N. Carnatic from the N. Circars.

The Gundigâma

INTRO. § 35, 36.

## Rājputāna.

The Sabmurika  
[or Bahmini] rises in  
Brahmani

(h.) The *Sabmurika* rises in Bihâr, and flows into the Bay of Bengâl near Balasôre.

The Byturni  
[or Bahmani] falls into the Bay of Bengâl near Pt. Palmyras.

(i.) The *Brihmani* (or Bahmini) flows into the Bay of Bengâl near the Mahânadi.

(j.) The *Byturni* falls into the Bay of Bengâl near Pt. Palmyras.

§ 35. As certain parts of India will not come prominently and separately before us in the history, we give here a general sketch of their history and geography for reference.

These are—(1) Rājputāna, (2) Ceylon, (3) The lesser islands on the Indian coast.

Rājputāna.

§ 36. *Rājputāna*. (See Intro. I. § 13.)

A. This immense district is divided into twenty provinces or states.

Imperial possessions in Rājputāna.

Of these (1) AJMER and (2) MAIRWARA are imperial possessions.

Eighteen are separate and independent states, under British protection.

They are—

## I. Rājput principalities:

(Ch. v. § 133)

1. Mēwâr or Oudipûr, (Ch. iii. § 6);

2. Jeypûr;

3. Mârwar or Jôdhpûr;

4. Bâulî, (Ch. v. § 136);

5. Bikanîr;

6. Kôta;

7. Kerowlî;

8. Kishnagar;

9. Jeisalmîr;

10. Ulwar (*Machêri* or *Mêwât*).

11. Sirôhî; (In the S.W.)

12. Dungarpûr;

13. Banswâra;

14. Pratâbghar;

15. and Jhallâwar.

Mârwar =  
Sind.

## II. Jât principalities:

Divisions of  
Rājputāna.

16. Bhartpûr, (Ch. v. § 137);

17. and Dholapûr or Gôhud.  
(Ch. v. § 137.)

# ARRANGEMENT OF THE SUBJECT.

33

## Contents of the History.

INTRO § 30.

- ii. The Ghaznivides. A.D. 977-1152.
- iii. The Lāhōr Muhammadans, and especially Muhammad of Ghōr, whose slaves founded the empire of which Delhi became the capital.
- iv. The Muhammadan power in Delhi, from Kutub-dīn to Ibrahim Lodi.

The next grand division is—

THIRDLY, *The history of the Mogul Empire from A.D. 1526, the (first) battle of Pānpat, to the death of the last Mogul Emperor, Muhammad Bihādar, A.D. 1859.*

The student must consider—

FOURTHLY, *The history of the Dakhn; and especially the rise, revolutions, subdivisions, and attempts of the Muhammadan powers in the Dakhn, from A.D. 1291, the invasion of Alāh-ud-dīn Khiljī, to the present time.*

We come to—

FIFTHLY, *The history of the Mahrattas, from the birth of Sivaji, A.D. 1627, to the present time.*

It will now be expedient to turn to—

SIXTHLY, *The Portuguese in the East, from A.D. 1498, when Vasco-de-Gama landed at Calicut, to the present time.*

Of lesser importance are—

SEVENTHLY, *The other European Companies who strove to obtain a share in the Eastern trade, to A.D. 1744.*

This prepares us for—

EIGHTHLY, *The rivalries and wars of the French and English East India Companies, terminated by the surrender of Pondicherry to the English, A.D. 1761.*

34	INTRODUCTION.
INTRO. § 39.	General hints for students.
	<p>The student must then turn to—</p>
Ch. ix.	<p>NINTHLY, <i>The foundation of British power in Bengdl, the events of 1765, and the interval to the appointment of the first Governor-General.</i></p>
	<p>This leads to—</p>
Ch. x.	<p>TENTHLY, <i>The Governors-General of British-India, from Warren Hastings, 1774, to the present time.</i></p>
	<p>A separate chapter must be given to—</p>
Ch. xi.	<p>ELEVENTHLY, <i>The history of the Panjáb ;</i></p>
	<p>And to—</p>
Ch. xii.	<p>TWELFTHLY, <i>The history of Mysôr.</i></p>
	<p>NOTE.—In these twelve chapters the student's attention will be directed to four points:—</p>
	<p>(1.) HISTORICAL FACTS, which must be distinctly mastered, and the student must accustom himself to re-state them in his own language. Compare the Chronological Index.</p>
	<p>(2.) PERSONS. The student must not pass over any person of historical importance, without obtaining a fair view of his entire history. Here the Biographical index will afford help.</p>
	<p>(3.) PLACES. These must be looked for on the map, and the foot-notes studied. The Geographical index must be referred to.</p>
	<p>(4.) CONTEMPORARY EVENTS. No matter of Indian history is thoroughly known till it is inseparably connected in the mind with its corresponding event in European history.</p>

CHAPTER I.

ANCIENT INDIA.

FROM THE EARLIEST TIME\* TO THE BEGINNING OF  
AUTHENTIC CHRONOLOGICAL INDIAN HISTORY AT  
THE RISE OF THE GHAZNIVIDS.

PART I. HINDÛ LEGENDS AND TRADITIONS.

§ 1. It has been said that, in the history of India no  
date of a public event can be fixed before Alexander, B.C.  
327; and no connected relation of the national transac-  
tions can be attempted until after the Muhammadan in-  
conquest 7000 1021 A.D.

The ancient history of India is the subject of this  
book. It is a history of the people of India, and of the  
land which they inhabit, from the earliest times to the  
present day.

—§ 2. The most ancient Hindû books are the *Vedas*,  
written in the sacred language of the Hindûs, the Sans-  
krit, and supposed to have been arranged in the present  
form about 1400 years B.C.

The Vedic system of religion, consisting mainly of the  
worship of the personified elements, is now entirely  
obsolete in India. [See GEN. INDEX. VEDA.]

The Sanskrit is the most copious and refined of all

Frederick  
Hindley

London  
England

Printed  
Varanasi

The Vedas  
written by  
Veda  
Date B.C. 1400  
The Vedas  
from Egypt,  
1400  
The Vedic  
system

Sanskrit  
G. 1. 12



The Institutes  
of MANU.  
(*Mānava-  
Dharma-  
Śāstra.*)

[Building of  
Solomon's  
temple, B.C.  
1012.]

Facts to be  
gained from  
Manu.  
Castes.

The twice-born.

Common origin  
of races in Eu-  
rope and India.  
Indo-Germanic  
languages.

Ārya = noble  
[Ārians,  
Āryans.]

Changes in  
castes.

languages; and contains a vast store of interesting and valuable literature, proving that the ancient Hindūs were not inferior even to the Greeks in mental powers.

§ 3. The next work of consequence is the Institutes of *Manu*, the Hindū lawgiver, with which the student should make himself acquainted. He gives an account of the condition of Hindū society at the time he wrote, which is variously stated, from B.C. 900 to B.C. 300. But the materials are older than the work itself; and it may be supposed to represent mainly the state of things in India (*i.e.* in the N.W. Provinces and the Panjāb), ten centuries before the Christian æra.

§ 4. In connection with *Manu* may be noted—

(1.) The division of the ancient Hindūs into the four *castes* of Brāhmanas, Kshatryas, Vaisyas, and Sūdras; or the *sacerdotal*, the *military*, the *industrial*, and the *servile* classes.

(2.) The three first classes are called "twice-born" (a title given to all who have been invested with the sacred thread), and were evidently conquerors from Central Asia, while the Sūdras were, it would appear, a conquered race.

(3.) The proved philological fact of the common origin of the Sanskrit, Zend, Greek, Latin, Gothic, Slavonic, and Keltic languages seems to show that the ancestors of the various tribes of men, who use dialects belonging to this great family of languages, have spread abroad from some central home, whence the twice-born found their way as immigrant conquerors into Hindūstān. This ancient people called themselves ĀRYAS. The original inhabitants were, for the most part, driven into the mountains, where they now dwell. By their conquerors these were called DASYUS, or *slaves*.

(4.) This ancient system of caste has been much

changed. There are more than 150 different castes in India at this time, with innumerable subdivisions.

Of the ancient castes the Brâhmins, perhaps, alone remain; and they have departed in many essential respects from the rules and practices of their forefathers. They seem to have acquired their power over the minds of the other Hindûs by slow degrees, making use of their opportunities as the teachers and priests of their religion.

Brâhmins.

(5.) The religion of Manu is mainly Vêdic, and essentially different from modern Hindûism; in this, and in every other respect, the Hindûs having deteriorated since the days of Manu.

Vêdic religion.

(6.) In one particular the Hindû social system has been little altered since the days of Manu. The village communities, forming little republics, still exist, and manage their own affairs as far as they are permitted, having rude municipal institutions, effectual for the purposes of government and protection.

Village communities.

These townships are under *Headmen*, who are supposed to possess the confidence of both the Government and the people; and who hold a portion of land from the Government, while they also receive fees from the people.

Village functionaries.

Besides the headman there are an accountant, a watchman, a money-changer, a smith, a barber, and other functionaries, who receive payment from the village revenues.

§ 5. The first notice we have of the Hindûs in Hindûstân is in a passage of Manu, in which two tracts of country, called *Brahmâvarta* and *Brahmarshidvâsa*, are spoken of as the early residences of the people.

Ancient homes of the Hindû race.

The *Brahmâvarta* is the tract between the Sarasvati and Caggar (or *Drishadvati*) rivers, about 100 miles to the N.W. of Delhi. Here the Âryans were settled probably before 1600 B.C. The *Brahmarshidvâsa* is the country to the east of this, up to the Jamna, with all to

Brahmâvarta.

Brahmarshidvâsa.

## CHAP. I. § 6, 7.

## The Solar and Lunar Races. Râma. The MAHÂ BHÂRATA.

[=*the land of the  
anjas.*]The importance  
of these places.The Purânas.  
Solar and  
Lunar races.

Râma.

Râmâyana.  
Chap. iv. § 8.

B.C. 1200.

The MAHÂ  
BHÂRATA.  
Probably  
written 240 B.C.  
Pândus and  
Kurus  
(About 59 miles  
N.E. from  
Delhi.)

the north, including North Bihâr. Here dwelt the ancient princes and sages of Hindû mythology. Here was the magnificent Sanskrit language perfected. Here the decimal notation was invented. This is the HOLY LAND of India.

The *Madhyadîsu* (=middle land) extended from Allâh-âbâd to the Satlaj, and from the Himâlayas to the Vindhya.

§ 6. The Purânas (ancient mythological works) begin with *Oudh* (Ayodhya), whence the princes of the Solar and Lunar dynasties sprang. The former were supported by the Brâhmans, and the latter by the Kshatriyas.

Râma, whose history (which seems to be of Buddhist origin) has doubtless some foundation in fact, is the great hero of the Solar race. His story is told in the *Râmâyana*, an epic (composed by the great poet *Vâlmiki*, probably in the second century, B.C.), of which versions exist in all the languages of India. He invaded the Dakhan, which he found filled with monkeys, i.e., with Gonds, Kols, Khonds, and other uncivilised aborigines, by whose aid he conquered *Rivana*, the king of Lankâ or Ceylon. (Perhaps B.C. 1200.) Traces of this expedition exist. [See GEN. INDEX: RÂMÂYANA.]

His kingdom probably merged in that of which, in later days, Kanouj was the capital. Sixty princes of his race are enumerated. It must be borne in mind that Hindû works contain no trustworthy chronological data.

§ 7. The MAHÂ BHÂRATA is a legend (composed by a second Vyâsa), of the Lunar dynasty.

It gives an account of the war between the kindred families of the Pândus and Kurus, assisted by many tribes, speaking different languages, for the territory of *Hastinâpûra*. Krishna, now worshipped as an incarnation of Vishnu, was an ally of the Pândus. He had founded a principality in Gujarât. This war raged pro-

## ANCIENT INDIA.

39

### The Mahabharata.

## CHAPTER 18

ably between 1400 and 1300 B.C. The great battle was fought at Tandahwar, 30 miles west of Delhi. The Sanskrit name for the place of battle is Kurukshetra (the field of the Kurus).

1400 to 1200.  
 11. Antempera-  
 12. 14. BELLS,  
 15. 16. PRIORS

The plain between the Saraswati and the Janina where are Jivar, Varan, Tanishwar, and Paurat, has been the scene many of the battles between of India.

The successors of the Padias seem to have resided in both the ancient name of wauk was *Isapari* & *Pawari*, & others are mentioned in legendary histories. (See *THE INDIAN MANUSCRIPTS*)

§ 8. In the *Mahā Bhārata* mention is made of the  
king of *Magadha*, or *Bihar*

Poster "Hühner!"

He was the head of many chieftains.

(2) The thirty fifth anniversary of the birth of the Mahābhārata war was marked in the form of a Panchayat, the whole region flourished. Śhiva Muni, the son of the great sage of Bālikā, the most widely extended region in the world. It is probably the best place in the world.

**Sahā-dāya.**  
The origin of  
Hinduism  
(Comp. 111)

(3) The sixth king from Ajāta-Satru was Nandī, of the Nāga dynasty.

Nazis.  
About 400 n.c.

The name *Nāga* or *Takshaka*—serpent, was given to the tribe from which sprang the kings of this dynasty, because a serpent was their national emblem, perhaps also an object of their worship. They were Aryans allied to the Scandinavians, and perhaps entered India in the seventh century, *s.c.*

(4) The ninth from Nanda was Chandragupta, called Sandracottus by the Greeks (p 20). He was the founder of what is called the *Mauvian* dynasty.

(Handragupta.  
315 B.C.

(5) The third from Chandragupta was the famous patron of Buddhism, Ashoka (c. 250-220), who assumed the name of *Piyadasi* (= beloved of the gods). Edicts of his favouring Buddhism, have been found sculptured on rocks in Cattack, Gujarat, and elsewhere.

Amks the  
patron of  
Isid/ism.  
n 200-220.  
§ 11.

The most celebrated of these are—(1) At Gernar near Jhaghar, (2) At Ailpur-da-Gira, near Peshawar, (3) At Dhanu<sup>1</sup>, in Orissa, and (4) In Lathu or pillars at Delhi and Allahabad.

["the Indian  
Constantine."]

The Buddhist tope (stūpa) or shrine at Sanchi was commenced in a c. 255

Under these kings, Magadha rose to great eminence. Splendid roads ran across the country from Palibothra (probably on the site of, or not far from, the modern Patna) to the Indus and to Broach. Maritime expeditions introduced the Hindû religion into Jâva in a.c. 75.

**Magnolia**

40	ANCIENT INDIA
CH I § 9-11	The Hindû religions.
The two great Æras or B C 56 A D 78	<p>§ 9. The æra of Vikramāditya, King of Ouje n ur Mâlwa, is B C 57, and that of Sâlvâhâna, whose capital was Parthun on the Godâvarî, is A D. 78 (§ 23)</p> <p>The former is current in Hindûstân, and the latter in the Dakhan</p> <p>The Hindu legends tells us that about two centuries before the Christian æra a race called the <i>Amikulis</i> (= the genera- t i o n ) a t t a c k t h e B u d d h i s t s . O f t h e s e th e P a m a r a s w e r e t h e c h i e f . T h e y p r o p a g a t e d H i n d u i s m a n d w i d e . T h e B u d d h i s t s r e t r e a t e d t o C e y l o n . F r o m t h e P a m a r a ( c o n t r a c t e d t o P a r ) s p r i n g V i k r a m a d i t y a . T h e r e h a v e b e e n s e v e r a l k i n g s o f t h i s n a m e</p>
The Agnikulas	
The Pramaras (=Puars)	
The Hindû religions	<p>§ 10. The present Hindû religion, or the aggregate of the religions which go under the name of Hinduism, mainly spring from the Purânas and other poetical works we have mentioned</p> <p>Three gods, Brahma the Creator Siva the destroyer, and Vishnu the preserver, are acknowledged, though the worship of Brahma is almost unknown</p> <p>Deified heroes, such as Râma and Kîshna, are worshipped as incarnations of Vishnu. The wives, concubines, attendants, children, and even vehicles of these gods and demigods are worshipped. Thus 333,000,000 of beings are included in the Hindû Pantheon.</p> <p>Demon worship the remains of the Scythic religion of the aborigines still prevail very extensively and has even invaded the Brahmanical system. It seems almost certain indeed that Siva and his wife (so much worshipped under the names of Kâlî, Durgâ and Bhavânî), are Scythic intruders into the Hindu system. They are not Arian.</p> <p>The worship of Siva under the form of the Linga is very ancient. In its origin and ceremonies it is free from indecencies, and probably originated in the worship of hills and rocks.</p> <p>The religions of the Buddhists and Jains have been at times extensively prevalent in India</p>
The three great divinities.	
Demigods.	
Demons.	
Buddhism. § 8.	<p>§ 11. Buddhism originated in S Bahâr at Gayâ (Gya). Its founder was Sâkyâ Munî or Gôtama, who died 543</p>



42	ANCIENT INDIA.
CH. I. § 13, 14.	Indian Dramas; and the Purāṇas.
<p>(Comp. ch. iv. § 5.)</p> <p>Sanskrit literature.</p>	<p>authors were the real refiners of that exquisite language. They were much persecuted in Madura, and finally rooted out from there by <i>Kīṇa Pāṇḍiyōn</i>, their leaders being impaled, probably in the eleventh century.</p> <p>§ 13. The chief Sanskrit works have been referred to in the preceding sections. There are, however, innumerable important compositions extant in Sanskrit in almost every department of literature, especially, excelling in whatever can be evolved by contemplation.</p> <p>Indian civilisation was very ancient, and of a high order.</p> <p>If we accept the pictures of ancient Hindū manners contained in the oldest Sanskrit poems, we shall conclude that the old Hindūs were, in habits and feelings, not unlike Homer's Greeks. The use of animal food and of intoxicating liquors was allowed. Polygamy and polyandry existed. Gambling was a most prevalent vice. Nothing, however, can surpass the refinement and chivalrous feeling exhibited in Kālidāsa's exquisite compositions.</p> <p>The Sanskrit dramas still existing are about sixty. Of these the most celebrated is the <i>Sakuntalā</i> of Kālidāsa (the Hindū Virgil), who probably lived in the fifth century. (A.D.)</p> <p>Kālidāsa is sometimes said to have flourished at the court of Vikramāditya (a.c. 57), and to have been one of the nine gems of his court.</p> <p>The great epics are the Rāmāyaṇa and the Mahā Bhārata. (§ 6, 7.)</p> <p>The latter contains upwards of 100,000 lines. An exquisite episode in it, called the <i>Bhagavat-gītā</i>, (=the divine song,) contains some of the finest philosophical poetry that has ever been composed.</p>
<p>Kālidāsa.</p> <p>Epics.</p> <p>Purāṇas.</p>	<p>§ 14. The <i>Purāṇas</i> are inexhaustible storehouses of mythological lore. They are the sources of the popular religion of India.</p> <p>There are eighteen major, and eighteen minor Purāṇas. They are not older than the eighth century of the Christian era. some of them much later.</p>

§ 15. The Hindus have ever been attached to the philosophy of *Philosophy*, and six systems of philosophy, which were recognised by the Hindus, though more or less inconsistent with their religious tenets. These systems, greatly modified by Western influences, still possess much power over the minds of the people in all parts of the land.

In these are discussed, with great subtlety, most of the metaphysical questions which have exercised the intellect of the philosophers of ancient Greece and of modern Europe.

Of these systems the *Vedānta*, which is a system of Pantheism in its modern form, teaches that there is really nothing existing but the Supreme, and that all souls are finally to be absorbed into the Divine essence. This is the only philosophy which exercises a much practical effect on the minds of the people at the present time.

## PART II. INFORMATION REGARDING INDIA FROM EUROPEAN SOURCES.

§ 16. The references in ancient writers to India are vague. Solomon's apes, peacocks, and ivory, came probably from Ceylon. Hindū merchants in very ancient times sailed westwards, and the harbours of the Malabar Coast and of Ceylon were crowded with vessels from the west; but we have no authentic details of those times. The conquest of India by Bacchus is mere poetical fable. The expeditions of Semiramis have no authentic foundation.

Ancient Writers on India.  
[1 Kings x. 22.]

### § 17. SESOSTRIS.

It is difficult to say how much confidence should be placed in the account given us by Diodorus Siculus of the conquests of *Sesostris*. He was a king of Egypt in

Sesostris, 1305 B.C.



44	<i>ANCIENT INDIA.</i>
CH. I. § 18, 19.	<b>Invasions of India.</b>
<p>The ancient Persian invasion, 518 B.C. [Darius=Dariusus; or Gush-tasp]</p> <p>The Panjâb under Persia.</p> <p>Skylax, the Persian admiral.</p> <p>The ancient Greek invasion—Alexander the Great B.C. 334-323 [Indus, or Sindus.] Herat.</p> <p>Gujarât.</p>	<p>1308 B.C. Aiming at universal empire, he fitted out a fleet of 400 ships, which conquered all the regions from the Red Sea to India.</p> <p>Meanwhile, he himself led an army by land across the Ganges to the Eastern Ocean. His conquests, even if real, had no permanent result.</p> <p>§ 18. DARIUS, THE SON OF HYSTASPES. B.C. 518-435.</p> <p>Raised to the throne of Persia by chance or artifice, he was a worthy ruler. He conquered Eastern Kâbul, the Panjâb, and part of Sind. He aimed at something more than mere conquest: he desired to fuse the conquered provinces into one homogeneous empire. He divided his empire into twenty Satrapies, of which India was one. The Indian tribute is said to have been paid in gold, and to have amounted to £1,290,000 sterling—a sum equal to 2-5ths of the whole tribute paid by the other nineteen.</p> <p>Darius contented himself with the conquest of the Panjâb; but under his direction, Skylax, his admiral, explored the Indus, sailing down the stream into the Indian Ocean, round Arabia, up the Red Sea, to Egypt.</p> <p>This was nearly the period of the first propagation of Buddhism.</p> <p>§ 19. Alexander the Great, the conqueror of Persia, after the defeat and death of Darius, passed on towards India, ever the goal of each conqueror, whose wealth was to recompense the soldier for all his toils. In 330 B.C., he founded the important frontier city of Herât, and wintered at "Alexandria apud Caucasum," probably Beghrâm, near Kâbul. He then founded the Bactrian kingdom.</p> <p>After three years spent in these Scythic regions, he passed through the Khyber Pass, crossed the Indus at Attock in April 327 B.C., and encountered and defeated Pôrus near Gujarât between the Jhîlam and the Chinâb,</p>

<p align="center"><b>ANCIENT INDIA.</b></p>	<p align="center">45</p>
<p align="center"><b>The Invasion of Alexander the Great.</b></p>	<p align="center"><b>CHAP. I. § 19.</b></p>
<p>near the spot where the Sikhs sustained their last crushing defeat. (Ch. xi. § 42, 43.)</p> <p>Taxiles, who then ruled over the country from the Indus to the Jhilam, seems to have aided Alexander.</p> <p>Pórus, too, whom Alexander treated generously, became his faithful ally.</p> <p>From thence he advanced to the banks of the Satluj, being intent upon the conquest of Magadha, of the magnificence of whose capital, Pataliputra, he had heard. But his soldiers refused to advance, and with deep sorrow and mortification he again turned his face towards Greece. His first care was to construct a fleet to convey his troops down the Satluj to the Indus, and thus home. But first he erected twelve altars on which he offered sacrifices to the gods of his system. The army then embarked with more pomp than to the river, and sailed down the stream with extraordinary pomp.</p> <p>At or near the mouth of the Indus was an ancient city called Patála, whose site cannot be ascertained. The Rája of this region treated Alexander with kindness, and he remained there for some time. He then sent his Admiral Nearchus to proceed by sea, while he himself with a part of the army marched back through Bactriana, or Gedrosia. Nearchus sailed on the 19th September 326 B.C., and arrived at the mouth of the Euphrates, after a voyage which is considered to be one of the most memorable in ancient history. He joined Alexander, who died in 323, at Babylon.</p> <p>Alexander's views were enlarged. Added to his wonderful military genius was a wish to connect all nations by the ties of commerce and mutual self-interest. His conquest of India, if he had been permitted to complete it, would doubtless have been a great benefit.</p> <p>This was the period when the Hindús had reached their highest point of cultivation.</p>	<p>Taxiles (Taksas) was an ancient king and Takshashila, a city in the Panjab. (Map xi. § 9.)</p> <p>For a perusal of the account of the Indian race, Alexander commenced to return the fleet on the Indus.</p> <p>The Greek admiral Nearchus had sailed.</p> <p>Page 323</p> <p>The greatness of the great conqueror.</p>

## CH. I. § 20-22.

## The Greeks in India.

The Indo-Bactrian kingdom.

Chandragupta and Seleucus. B.C. 312.

[Ptolemy - probably from Ptolemy = eastern people east of the Saraswati.]

Megasthenes

Fall of the Greek kingdom of Bactria.

Descendants of Chandragupta.

The Andhras.

Karna.

Bengal.  
(Comp. ch. II. § 19.)

§ 20. The Indo-Bactrian kingdom on the death of Alexander fell to Seleucus, one of his ablest generals, who became King of Syria. Chandragupta was then King of Magadha, having taken *Pataliputra* (Palibothra) from the Rāja of the Prasii. (§ 8.) He is said to have been the illegitimate son of the preceding king, by a woman of the barber caste, whose name was *Murā*, and to have possessed extraordinary ability and energy. From his mother's name his race is called the Mauryan. Against him Seleucus marched, and a great battle was fought, with what issue is uncertain; but a treaty was made, and Seleucus gave his daughter in marriage to the Indian king, and gave up to him the provinces east of the Indus for a subsidy of fifty elephants.

Megasthenes was appointed the Greek ambassador at the Court of Palibothra. He has given full accounts of the state of India at that time. The stories of the grandeur of Chandragupta, of his army, and of his capital, are well-nigh incredible.

The Greek kingdom of Bactria became independent under a rebel called Theodotus, and finally fell under a Saka-Scythian (or a Tatar) tribe from Transoxiana about B.C. 126.

Numerous coins belonging to these kings have been found in the Panjāb and in the Trans-Indus provinces. Among these kings were Theodotus II., Euthydemus, Demetrius, Eukratidas I and II.

§ 21. The family of Chandragupta retained the kingdom for ten generations, and were followed by three Śūdra dynasties, the last of which, the *Andhras*, ended in A.D. 436. (§ 8.)

The name of one of these kings, *KARNA*, survives in Sanskrit books as a synonym for liberality.

§ 22. In Bengal, a dynasty of Vidya kings preceded one of Pāla kings, which was followed by one of Śēnas: which last was subverted by the Muhammadans in A.D.

Dynastic changes

[H I § 23-26]

1203. They are said to have reigned over great part of India. Their capital was Gour, from A.D. 785 to 1040. But there were contemporary dynasties reigning in Kanouj, Delhi, Ajmir, Mēwār, and Gujarāt, of which little is known certainly.

The *Vijayas* were of the medical tribe. Their capital was Nuddea. *Adisura*, of this dynasty, persuaded the Brahmins from Kanouj to whom Hindūism was reformed in Bengal. From them are descended the Brāhmins of Bengal.

- § 23. We come then to Vikramāditya in Oujain (§ 9), whose successor after many generations was Raja Bhōja (from whom Bhōpāl takes its name), who reigned till about the end of the eleventh century.

Oujain or Ujain

Many legends are connected with the name of VIKRAMĀDITYA (=the sun of victory). He seems to have ruled over Māgadha, Mālwa, and Telingāna, and to have been of the Andhra family. (Comp. § 9, and chap. iv. § 12.)

§ 24. The grandson of Bhōja was conquered by the Rāja of Gujarāt. But Mālwa recovered its independence, and was finally subdued by the Muhammadans in A.D. 1231. (Ch. ii. § 23.)

Mālwa.

§ 25. Gujarāt in the second century had a Rājput dynasty called the Balabhi princes (who drove out the SĀHs, a race of Parthian (?) invaders), who at length emigrated in A.D. 591, and founded the kingdom of Mēwār. They are thought to have been driven out by Persians under Noushervān (A.D. 531-579). (Comp. ch. iii. § 6, 12.)

Gujarāt.  
The Balabhis.

§ 26. The Chauras, also Rājputs, succeeded in Gujarāt. Their capital was Anhalwārā, now Pattan (A.D. 746-931). To these succeeded the Salūkis, who were finally subdued by Allā-ud-dīn-Khulji in A.D. 1297. (Ch. ii. § 16.)

The Chauras.

The Rathôrs.

§ 27. In Kanauj, the Rathôrs obtained power in A.D. 470, and retained it till subdued by the Musalmâns in A.D. 1193. (Ch. ii. § 16.) The Rathôrs founded the present dynasty of Mârwar.

In Kanauj originated the dialect of Hindi called hence the Kanauji.

§ 28. The following table will assist the memory :—

## ANCIENT HINDŪ STATES.

1 MAGADHA	...	§ 19-21.
2 MĀLWĀ	...	§ 9, 24.
3 GUJARĀT	...	Sâhs, Balabhîs. Chauras § 20.
4 MĒWĀR	...	§ 25.
5 KANOUJ	...	Rathôrs. Ch. II. § 16, 17.
6 BENĀRES	...	Subverted 1193.
7 MITHILĀ	...	Kingdom of Râma. Oudh.
8 DELHI	...	Subverted 1195 A.D.
9 AJMĪR	...	Do do.
10 MĀRWĀR	...	The Rathôrs. § 27.
11 SIND	...	Conquered by Muhammad of Ghôr.
12 KASHMĪR	...	Ch. XI § 7.
13 PĀNDYA kingdom of MADURĀ.	...	Ch. IV § 5, 6.
14 CHŌLA of KĀNĪPURAM ..	...	Ch. IV § 7.
15 SĪRA of TRAVANCOR	...	Ch. IV § 8.
16 BALĀLA of DWĀRA SAMUDRA.	...	Ch. XII § 2.
17 WARANGAL ..	...	Ch. IV. § 12.
18 PAITHUN—SĀLIVĀHANA ..	...	Ch. IV. § 94.

## TABLE OF PLACES HAVING DIFFERENT NAMES.

§ 29 The following Table will be of use to the Student :—

Allāhābād	...	S Prayāg— <i>conf. &amp; see.</i>	
Amū R.	...	Oxus.	
Arcot	...	Arkaton Basileion	.. Ptolemy.
Bihār, South	...	Magadha	... § 8.
North with Oudh	...	Mithilā.	
Bilūchistān	...	Gedrosia	{ Alex. marched through it towards the close of the summer of 325 B.C. —
Bils R. (Beas)	...	Hyphasis, Hypanis.	

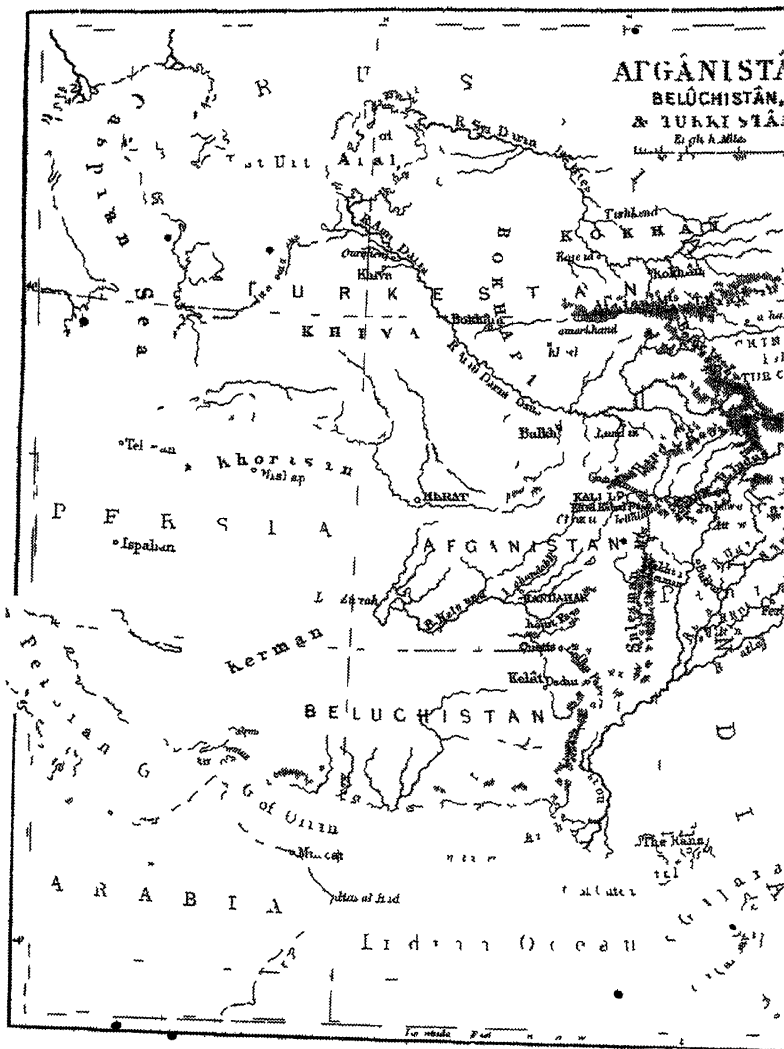
Table of places having different names.

CHAP. I.

Broach, Barôch, Barûch .	Barvaga	{ In the Periplus. Ch. I. § 14.
Barcolôr	... Tindis	Periplus.
Ceylon	... S. Lanka, an. Taprobane .	Ch. I. § 6. Introd § 37.
Cochin	... Ceylon	... The Periplus.
Chambal	... Sambar	... Arrian.
Chinâb R.	... Acesines	
Delhi	... Indraprastha.	
Déogiri, Déoghar	... D. natdad	... Ch. IV § 16.
Jamna R.	... Parichius	... S. no say the S. no.
Jhâm R.	... Hydaspes	
Helmund R.	... Elamandrus.	
Herât	... Artachana.	
Himâlaya M.	... S. Himavat	
Hindûstân	... S. Bâkita Varsha.	
Hindûstân proper	... S. Madhya Desa (- middle region).	
Hûglî (Hooghly)	... Megasthenium.	
Kâbul—River	... Cophenes.	
Kanouj (Canouje)	... Kanyâkubja.	
Khiva	... Kharism, Chorasania	... Ch. II § 22.
Kôtar, in S. Travancore	... Kottara metropolis	... Periplus.
Mangalore	... Musiris	... The Periplus.
Masulipatam	... Mesolia	... D.
Midnapûr	... Tamluk, or Tâmrakupti	
Nelisuram	... Nolkunda	The Periplus.
Oudh	... Ayodhya, or Kâshala.	
Oudh, and part of the } Lower Doâb	... S. Panchâla.	
Pantin (Panthin, Pyetun)	Plinthana (?)	In the Periplus.
Pattan	... Anahwâra, Nehrwalla	{ Ancient capital of Gaudârat Ch. I. § 26. II, 19.
Pahbothra	... S. Pâtaliputra (Patna?).	
Quilon	... Coulan	
Ravi R.	... Hydrantes.	
Sâtlaj R.	... Hysudra.	
Sâtpura Hills	... S. Injâdri.	
Sirkârs, Northern	... Kalinga	... Perhaps the classical Kalinga was Orissa.
Solimân M.	... Imaus Mons.	

NOTE.—Besides these sources of information *Fa-hian* and *Hsüan Thsang* Chinese Buddhist travellers in India, the former in the beginning of the fifth century (399-414), and the latter in the seventh century (629 to 645), and their travels have been translated from the Chinese. The latter gives an account of the manners of the people, corresponding with that of the Greek writers.

50	AFGHÂN DYNASTIES.
CHAP II §1-3 A D 1001.	The Afghâns.
<p>Struggles of Hindûs against Muhammadans 1001-1740</p> <p>Afghans fol- lowed by Tatars</p>	<p style="text-align: center;"><b>CHAPTER II.</b></p> <p style="text-align: center;">THE HISTORY OF THE VARIOUS AFGHÂN DYNASTIES THAT RULED IN INDIA UNTIL THE TIME OF BÂBER, 1526, THE PRE MOGUL MUHAMMADAN PERIOD.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">PART I—SUMMARY; 664-1526</p> <p>§ 1. From about the beginning of the eleventh century of the Christian era the history of India is chiefly occupied with the struggles of the Hindû races against Muhammadan conquerors of various tribes. This period lasted about 750 years (from 1001 to 1740) from the first expedition of Muhammad of Ghaznî to the taking of Delhi by Nâdir Shâh.</p> <p>§ 2. The general name <i>Afghâns</i> (=Pathân) may be given to the Muhammadan invaders and rulers of Northern India before the establishment of the Mogul (or Mongul) dominion by Bâber in A D 1526. Of these there were seven dynasties. Their history is given in this chapter. Thirty-four Muhammadan kings are enumerated from Muhammad of Ghôr to Ibrâhîm Lôdî, both included. The name Afghân belongs to the various warlike tribes inhabiting the mountains of Ghôr and other districts bordering on Kâbul and Persia. They were originally fire-worshippers, and then became converts to Muhammadanism.</p> <p>§ 3. The following is a summary of this portion of Indian history.—</p>





10

11

12

13

14

15

AFGHÂN DYNASTIES.		51	
Afghan dynasties.		CHAP. II. § 3.	
		A.D.	CONTEMPORARY EVENTS.
§ 4.	Introductory: the birth of Muhammad ...	569	Justinian, Emperor of Constantinople, 527-565.
	Hijra, or flight of Muhammad to Medina ...	622	
	Conquest of Persia ...	632	Edwin V Bretwalda slain by Penda, c. 632.
	First appearance of Muhammadans in India, under		Tarik landed at Gibraltar. 711
	(I.) Muhâlib ...	664	Battle of Xeros, and death of Roderic, 712.
	(II.) Muhammad Kâsim Invades Sind	711	The Muhammadan conquest of Spain by Târik and Mûsa, at 713, 714.
	The Muhammadans expelled from India ...	750	
			Charles Martel's overthrow of the Saracens, between Poitiers and Tours, 732 A.D.
			(Charlemagne, 800)
			Alfred the Great, 871-900.
I.	THE GREAT VINDAS.	996 to 1186	
§ 5-15.	Alptegin, a Tûrki slave, Muhammadan governor of Khorâsân, being deprived of his government, flees to Ghazni, where he makes himself independent	961	King Edgar, 959-965.
	Sabaktegin, son-in-law of Alptegin, succeeds	977	
	Jaipâl, King of Lâhôr, and probably Râjpûts King of Delhi, attacks Sabaktegin and is defeated. The Muhammadan dominion is extended to the Indus	978	Hugh Capet, 987-996.
	Mahmûd of Ghazni, son of Sabaktegin, succeeds	996	
	His twelve expeditions into India ...	1001 to 1024	Massacre of Danes, 1002.
			Danish kings in Britain: 1013 to 1042.

52	AFGHÂN DYNASTIES.		
CHAP. II. § 3.	Afghân dynasties.		
		A.D.	CONTEMPORARY EVENTS.
	<p>In the tenth of these, Lâhôr and its territory were permanently annexed to the Ghazni-vide dominions ...</p> <p>Death of Mahmûd of Ghazni ...</p> <p>Muhammad succeeded, and was dethroned by Mas'ûd I. Beirâm, the Ghazivide ...</p> <p>Ghazni sacked and burnt by Allâ-ud-dîn Ghôri ("the burner of the world") ...</p>	<p>1022</p> <p>1030 {</p> <p>1030</p> <p>1118</p> <p>1152</p>	<p>Canute the Great, 1016-1035. Macbeth murders Duncan, 1039.</p> <p>The Norman Conquest, 1066. The Crusades, 1095 to 1270.</p> <p>Henry II., the first of the Plantagenets, 1154-1189.</p>
<p>II.</p> <p>§ 16.</p>	<p>THE GHÔRIANS ...</p> <p>Muhammad Ghôri, or Shahab-ud-dîn, invaded India repeatedly, till his death ...</p> <p>First Muhammadan King of Delhi.</p>	<p>1186 to 1206</p> <p>1153 {</p> <p>to {</p> <p>1206 {</p>	<p>Constitutions of Clarendon, 1164. Conquest of Ireland, 1172. John, 1199-1216.</p>
<p>III.</p> <p>§ 18 to § 30.</p>	<p>THE SLAVE KINGS ...</p> <p>(I.) Kutb-ud-dîn, the first independent Muhammadan ruler in Delhi ...</p> <p>(II.) Âram ...</p> <p>(III.) Altamsh ...</p>	<p>1206 to 1288</p> <p>1206</p> <p>1210</p> <p>1211</p>	<p>Stephen Langton died, 1228.</p>
	<p>IRRUPTION OF THE MO(N)GOLS.</p> <p>Changiz Khân.</p> <p>(IV.) Baku-ud-dîn ...</p> <p>(V.) Sultâna Rezâ ...</p> <p>(VI.) Beirâm ...</p> <p>(VII.) Mas'ûd III. ...</p> <p>(VIII.) Nâsir-ud-dîn Mahmûd ...</p> <p>(IX.) Balban (Balin) ...</p> <p>(X.) Kei Kobad ...</p> <p>Slain by Jalâl-ud-dîn Khiljî ...</p>	<p>1217</p> <p>1236</p> <p>1236</p> <p>1239</p> <p>1241</p> <p>1246</p> <p>1266</p> <p>1286</p> <p>1288</p>	<p>Magna Charta, 1215. Henry III., 1216-1272.</p> <p>Hanseatic league, 1243.</p> <p>The first regular English Parliament, 1265. Conquest of Wales, 1283.</p> <p>Edward I., 1272-1307.</p>

# **AFGHÂN DYNASTIES.**

53

**Afghân dynasties.**

**CHAP. II. § 3.**

		A.D.	CONTEMPORARY EVENTS.
IV.	HOUSE OF KHALJI ... (a tribe of Tartars or Tartars).	1288 to 1321	
§ 31 to § 33.	(I.) Jelâl-ud-din Khalji (Ferôz Shâh) ...	1288	War with Scotland, 1296. Roger Bacon died, 1292.
	His nephew, Allâ-ud-din, invaded the Dakhan ...	1294	Edward II., 1307-1327.
	(II.) Assassinated his uncle and succeeded him ...	1295	Death of Wallace, 1303.
	(III.) Mubârik Khalji ...	1317	Battle of Bannockburn, 1314. Tell shoots Gesler, 1308.
V.	HOUSE OF TUGHLAK ...	1321 to	
§ 34 to § 44.	(I.) Gheîâz-ud-din Tughlak	1321	Dante died, 1321.
	Conquest of Warangal ...	1323	Edward III., 1327-1377.
	(II.) Jûna Khân (Sultân Muhammad III.) ...	1325	
[Ch.iv. § 20.]	Vijaya-nagar (Bijanagar) founded, and Hindû power restored in the south ...	1344	Battle of Cressy, 1346.
	Foundation of the Bâhminî dynasty of Kulbûrga ...	1347	Rienzi, 1347-1354.
	(III.) Ferôz Tughlak ...	1351	Battle of Poitiers, 1356.
	(IV.) Gheîâz-ud-din Tugh- lak II. ...	1389	Establishment of the Otto- mans in Europe, 1353.
	(V.) Abûbekr Tughlak ...	1389	
	(VI.) Nâsir-ud-din Tughlak	1394	Dismemberment of the em- pire. Union of Calmar, 1397.
	(VII.) Muhammad Tughlak	1412	Usurpation of Henry IV., 1399. Battle of Angora, and death of Bajazet, 1403.
	TAMERLANE TAKES DELHI...	1398	
VI.	THE SEIADS ...	1412 to	
§ 46.	[Daulat Khân Lodî ...	1450	
	(I.) Khizr Khân ...	1412]	
	(II.) Mubârik ...	1414	Agincourt, 1415.
	(III.) Muhammad ...	1421	J. Huss burnt, 1415.
		1435	Prince Henry of Portugal, 1419.
	(IV.) Allâ-ud-din ...	1444	

		A.D.	CONTEMPORARY EVENTS.
VII.	THE HOUSE OF LODI.	1450 to 1526	1413. Constantinople taken by the Turks. The first Portuguese Viceroys, 1503. House of Tudor, 1485-1603. Ferdinand and Isabella, 1479. Bosworth field, 1485. Discovery of America, 1492. Henry VIII., 1509-1517. Death of Ximenes, 1517. Battle of Pavia, 1525. Death of Wolsey, 1530
§ 47.	(I.) Bahlol Lodi ... (II.) Sikandar Lodi ... VASO DE GAMA lands in Calicut ... (III.) Ibrahim Lodi ... (FIRST) BATTLE OF PANIPAT.	1450 1488 1498 1518 1526	

The first invasion of India by Muhammad Kasim, 711.

Sind.

[Comp. ch. iii. § 6.]

Kasim's death, 714.

The rise of the Ghaznavides.

[Death of Haroun-al-Rasid, A.D. 806.]

§ 4. Beyond merely piratical expeditions, which reached Multân in 664, there was no systematic Musalmân invasion of India till the time of the Khalif Walid, when Muhammad Kasim, nephew of the Governor of Basra (Bussora), landed at Dêwâl (Debal), a city somewhere near the modern Karâchî, and, after many severe engagements, in one of which, in 712, Dâhir, Râja of Sind fell, overran the whole of Sind. His attempt to conquer Hindûstân is said to have been frustrated by Bâpû, the Râjpût of Chitôr, from whom the Rânas of Oudipûr [Udayapûr] trace their descent. His career was cut short, it is said, by a Hindû princess, who brought against him a false accusation, which cost him his life. From that time the Muhammadan sway in Sind seems to have been merely nominal for five hundred years; though the conquered princes embraced Muhammadanism.

NOTE.—In 644 there was a powerful dynasty in Sind, whose capital was Alor. Its ruins are near Sukkur.

§ 5. We now come to the race which effected the permanent conquest of a great part of Hindûstân. A dynasty of Tatârs called the Samânîs, ruled in Khorâsân and Transoxiana, often called *Maver-ul-Nahar* = the land



CHAP. II. § 8.  
A.D. 1001.

**Mahmûd of Ghazni, founder of the first Afghân dynasty.**

His first expedition, 1001.

his expeditions is variously given: the following are the most important.

Batinda.

[But this was probably Wai-kind on the Indus.]

(Ch. xi. § 8.)

Suicide of Jaipâl.

His first expedition into India was made in A.D. 1001. He was attended by 10,000 chosen horse. His standard was black, a fitting emblem of his deeds. He defeated Jaipâl of Lâhôr, near Peshâwar; took him prisoner; crossed the Satlaj to Batinda, which he stormed; and then returned to Ghazni. Batinda was a fortress of prodigious strength, one of the residences of the Râja of Lâhôr. It now belongs to the Râja of Pattiâla. •

Jaipâl, weary of disasters, abdicated in favour of his son Anand Pâl, and ordered a funeral pyre to be erected, which he ascended, setting fire to it with his own hands.

This dynasty came to end with Bhimpâl, son of Jaipâl II. (§ 10). They first possessed Kâbul, and thence removed to Lâhôr. From the effigies on their coins they have been called the "Bull and horseman" dynasty.

Second Expedition, 1004.  
Third Expedition, 1005.  
Fourth Expedition, 1005-9.

§ 8. Mahmûd's second expedition, in 1004, was against the Râja of Bhâtia (or Bhêra), near Mûltân. His third, in 1005, was against Abûl Fath Lodî, chief of Mûltân. His fourth, in 1008, was a more important one against Anand-Pâl, who had formed a confederacy of the neighbouring Râjas, and with his compatriots advanced to meet him, with all the ardour of men defending their independence and their faith. Mahmûd gained a victory, bought, however, with immense loss. He then directed his course to Nâgarkôt (now Kângra), on the southern slope of the Himâlayas, a wealthy shrine, which he took and plundered, returning to Ghazni with incalculable wealth in gold and precious stones.

(N.W. of Lâhôr.)

(Ch. xi. § 5.)

Fifth Expedition, 1010.

His fifth expedition to India was in 1010. In this he took Mûltân.

Sixth Expedition, 1011.  
(About 30 miles from Delhi.)

The sixth expedition was to Tanêshwar, between the Saraswatî and the Jamna, which he sacked. Mahmûd meanwhile made inroads into the mountain districts of

## AFGHÁN DYNASTIES.

57

### I. Mahmūd of Ghazni's invasions of India.

Ghôr, and finally, in 1016, took Samarkhand and Bokhâra. But the great business of his life was to despoil India.

His seventh and eighth Indian expeditions were into Kāshmir. In these he encountered great perils.

While Hindûism was receiving such rude shocks in the North-west, Rāmānuja, the Vaishnavite teacher was gaining converts to it, and building splendid temples in the South. He was born A.D. 1008. [Comp. ch. iv. § 2.]

§ 9. The ninth expedition in 1017-1019 was on a larger scale. Mahmūd was now determined to penetrate into the very heart of Hindûstān. His army consisted of 100,000 horse and 20,000 foot, gathered from all parts of his dominions. He marched from Peshâwar along the foot of the mountains, crossing the Panjab rivers as near to their source as possible, and presented himself before Kanauj. This was a stately city, full of incredible wealth; and its king, sometimes styled Emperor of India, kept a splendid court. It was in this kingdom that orthodox Hindûism had found a refuge when Buddhism was triumphant in Hindûstān. The king threw himself on the generosity of Mahmūd, who admitted him to his friendship; and, after three days, left his city uninjured.

From thence he advanced to Muttra, sacred as the birthplace of Krishna, which was given up to the soldiers for twenty days.

Its temples struck Mahmūd with admiration, and kindled in him the desire to cover the barren rocks of Ghazni with similar edifices. Hindû slaves after this were sold at two rupees each.

§ 10. His tenth and eleventh expeditions were undertaken in A.D. 1022 and 1023. In these he attacked, but unsuccessfully, the Râja of Kalinjar. In the first of these expeditions Jaipāl II. (son of Anand-Pāl) opposed him; and the result was the permanent occupation of Lâhôr by a Muhammadan garrison. A viceroys was stationed there. This was the foundation of the Musalmân empire in India.

CH. II. § 9, 10.  
A.D. 1017.

Comp. ch. i. § 7.

Seventh and eighth Expeditions, 1016, 1015.

Ninth Expedition, 1017-9.

Kanauj.  
= Kanya-Kubja,  
W. of the Ganges, 65 miles  
W.N.W. from  
Lucknow).  
= Canouj.

Muttra (properly Mathura,  
on the W. bank  
of the Jamuna,  
30 miles N.N.W.  
from Agra).

Comp. ch. i. § 7.

Tenth and eleventh expeditions, 1022, 1023.

[See map of Central India Agency.]  
Lâhôr occupied, 1021, first permanent Muhammadan settlement in India.



CH. II. § 11, 12.  
A.D. 1030.

Twelfth expedition, 1024.  
Sômnâth.

The idol at Sômnâth was one of the 12 great lingas, or Phallic emblems of Shiva, set up over India.

Death of Mahmûd of Ghazni, 1030.

His fondness for treasures.

His character.

University in Ghazni.  
Learned men.

### I. Mahmûd of Ghazni's expeditions into India.

§ 11. Mahmûd now made his last and greatest effort. He resolved to plunder and destroy the celebrated shrine of Sômnâth, in Gujarât. The march was long, including 350 miles of desert; and Mahmûd made extraordinary preparations for it. He passed through Âjmir to Anhalwâra, the ancient capital of Gujarât, all fleeing before him. The struggle before Sômnâth was terrible, and lasted three days. The Râjpût princes assembled from all parts to defend their holiest shrine, and nothing but the bravery and enthusiasm of Mahmûd himself gained the victory.

For one hundred years the shrine remained desolate. It was rebuilt by Komâr-Pâl, the great Jain, who died in A.D. 1166.

The treasure obtained was immense. Mahmûd remained in Gujarât a year. Delighted with this beautiful region, so different from his rocky and barren home, he seriously debated the possibility of settling there altogether. His homeward march was attended with terrible sufferings and privations.

Anhalwâra was the Tyre of India. Its commerce was very extended, and its population large. Its Jain Râja ruled over twenty-eight princes.

§ 12. Mahmûd died at Ghazni on the 29th April 1030, in his sixty-third year. Shortly before his death, he caused the vast treasures he had acquired to be brought and spread before him, and took his farewell of them with tears, but could not bring himself to distribute any portion of them to his old companions.

He was active, prudent, and enterprising; encouraged arts and literature, though habitually avaricious; and devoted large sums to the maintenance of a university and the support of learned men.

Among others, Anasari and the renowned Firdûsî, the Persian Homer, flourished at his court. The latter celebrated his praises in the *Shah Nâmâh*.

## AFGHÂN DYNASTIES.

59

### I. Death of Mahmûd of Ghazni. His successors.

CH. II. PART I.  
A.D. 1040

He founded a mosque, which he called "the Celestial Bridge," and which, for the splendour of its architecture and adornments, was the wonder of the East. His nobles and generals, following his example, vied with one another in the magnificence of their palaces, so that the bare cities of Ghazni were converted by the wealth of India into the most magnificent city in the world.

Ghazni  
990-1040

§ 13. There was a contest for the throne between Muhammad and Mas'ud, the two sons of Sultan Mahmûd. The former was first crowned, but speedily dethroned and blinded by Mas'ud.

Successors of  
Mahmûd I. 1040  
Hun T. 1040-1041  
Muhammad I.

The Seljuks, a Turki tribe, now invaded Ghazni, and Mas'ud was compelled to withdraw to India. We need not pursue the history of Ghazni further, for the Muhammadan power was now at an end in the Panjâb. Lâhôr had taken the place of Ghazni.

1039.

1040.

§ 14. Mas'ud, who was generous and valiant, though unfortunate, was now dethroned, and the blind Muhammad again placed on the throne. In 1040, Mas'ud, son of Mas'ud, overcame his rivals, and contrived to reinstate himself in Ghazni.

Mas'ud I.

Mas'ud  
1040-1041

The Râja of Delhi meanwhile revived the spirit of the Hindûs, and drove the Muhammadans from every stronghold except Lâhôr itself. Sultan Abûl Rashid, the eldest son of Mahmûd I., who had strangely succeeded his grand-nephew, in 1041 recovered the Panjâb. Soon after, all but three of the house of Mahmud of Ghazni were assassinated.

1042.

Mas'ud II., one of the three survivors, resided at Lâhôr, and carried the Muhammadan arms beyond the Ganges, 1098.

Mas'ud II.,  
1098-1114

§ 15. Beirâm, his son, succeeded in 1118. He was a patron of learning, and reigned long and prosperously;

Beirâm the  
Ghaznavide,

CHAP II § 16  
A D 1186.

## I. The Downfall of the race of Mahmûd of Ghazni.

1118-1153 (or  
Bahram).

His treachery

The Sack of  
Ghazni, 1152.

[Jahân-Sôz]

The Extinction  
of the Race of  
Mahmûd of  
Ghazni.Muhammad  
Ghori, 1186.

yet he achieved the ruin of his race by an act of treachery. Kutb-ud-dîn Sûr, the Prince of Ghôr, in the hills east of Herât, had married Beirâm's daughter. Some quarrel arose, and Beirâm murdered his son-in-law. The result was a war, in which *Allâ-ud-dîn Ghôrî*, a brother of the murdered prince, took Ghazni, and gave it up for seven days to his victorious army, by whom it was utterly devastated. His name is thus handed down to us among those of the ruthless destroyers and scourges of the world. "Burner of the world" is his title in history.

Beirâm fled toward India, but died broken-hearted on his journey. His son Khûsrû and his grandson Khûsrû Malik reigned in Lâhôr to 1186; when, with the latter, the race of Sabaktegîn became extinct.

Nine princes of this family may be reckoned as, in some sense, rulers of a part of India.

## PART III.—MUHAMMAD OF GHÔR, A.D. 1186-1206.

## SECOND DYNASTY: THE GHÔRIANS.

II. § 16. Khûsrû Malik, the last of the Ghaznivides, was dethroned and put to death by a nephew of the destroyer of Ghazni, whose name was Shahâb-ud-dîn or *Muhammad Ghôrî*, the first and last of his family that ruled in India. This "soldier of fortune," a man of undaunted courage and irresistible energy, was the real founder of the Muhammadan dominion in Hindûstân.

After his conquest of Lâhôr in 1186, he had still to conquer the Râjpût princes of India. These were chivalrous and enthusiastic, but disunited and in many things frivolous. (Comp. ch. i. § 24-27.)

# AFGHÂN DYNASTIES.

51

## The wars of Muhammad of Ghôr

HAP. 11.  
A.D. 1186.

Ikbal-ud-din Prithvir had lost all recent power under the sway of four of the princes of the Khatwâns of the Hindûstân: (1) The King of Delhi, (2) The King of Kanauj, (3) The King of Râthôr, (4) The King of Bhatâr. He was defeated under Prithvir Râja, and that 120 Hindu chiefs were killed, and their leader

● With this prince, who was the Prince of the Hindûstân, the Ghôrîs fought a battle at the battle of Prithvir, and sustained a complete defeat. He then fled to the Ghazni, but was not admitted there. He then met his death in the hands of the Ghazni, and the Ghôrîs, between the Ghazni and Kanauj. The Ghôrîs, in the famous, and Prithvir Râja, long after the war, was slain in cold blood. Ajmer was then taken and held, and its inhabitants were either slain or sold as slaves. Muhammad after this went back to Ghazni, leaving Kuth-ud-din, who had been his slave, as his viceroy. He returned the next year, defeated Jai Singh, the Râthôr Râja of Kanauj, and took Kanauj and Benares. Thus fell the second great Râjput state.

The Râthôrs fled to Mârwar, where their descendants long reigned. The conquest of Gujarât, Oudh, Bhatâr, and Bahâr soon followed, and before the death of Muhammad in 1206, there was a settled Muhammadan dominion over nearly the whole of Hindûstân, except Mâlwa.

He was assassinated by a band of Gakkhars, a wild tribe having their home in the mountains north of the Panjâb, and who had been subjected by him. With him Indian history ceases to have any connection with the Ghôrî dynasty. He is reckoned as the first Muhammadan king of Delhi.

He died of Ma-  
laria, 1206.

CH II. § 17, 18.  
A.D. 1206.

Bhōja Rāja of  
Ujein.

### III. Kutb-ud-din founds the slave dynasty.

§ 17. It was about this time that the celebrated Bhōja Rāja died in Ujein (Ch. i. § 23). His grandson was taken prisoner, and the country conquered by the Chālukya Rāja of Gujarat, but it soon regained its independence.

Mādhnādhārā, who founded a sect of Vaishnavas, whose great temple is at Udupi, in Taluva, a little north of Mangalur, was born in A.D. 1199.

## PART IV.—THE SLAVE-KINGS, A.D. 1206-1288.

### THE THIRD DYNASTY OF AFGHĀNS.

I.  
Kutb-ud-din.  
The slaves of  
the Ghōmans.

Or *Idarus*.

=The pole-star  
of the faith.

[Delhi, or  
Dill]

1206.

The Muham-  
madian power  
advances step  
by step.

The fortunes of  
Delhi, 1206 to  
1259.

III. § 18. Muhammad of Ghôr, having no sons, was in the habit of training, and in fact adopting, young Tûrkî slaves taken in war, who were chiefly of noble extraction, and of promoting them to offices of trust. This was a common practice with other Muhammadan rulers also, and gave rise to the numerous dynasties of "Slave kings." Muhammad's nephew, Mahmûd, was his nominal successor; but Eblûz, one of these slaves, seized on Kābul and Kandahār, while another of them, KUTB-UD-DIN, retained possession of Delhi and the provinces subject to it. He is thus the first Muhammadan Emperor of Delhi, and the founder of the Slave dynasty of Indian rulers.

It has taken two centuries to advance the Muhammadan power from Ghazni to Lāhor, and from Lāhor to Delhi. The Indian kingdom has henceforth only an occasional and accidental connection with the countries beyond the Sulaimān mountains.

DEHLY, the renowned INDRAPRISHTA, now for the first time made the metropolis of a Muhammadan kingdom, has since been occupied by kings of an entirely distinct tribe; fifty-one individuals have received the title of supreme ruler, but, though sixteen of these had nothing but the name of sovereign, while, of the so-called kings, twenty-one were deposed, or murdered. The city has been once sacked by a *Tutai*, and once by a *Persian*; twice occupied by the *Abdalis*, for forty years it was under the entire control of the *Mahattas*, from 1803 it has been subject to the *British*; and, finally, becoming the scene of an atrocious massacre, and the centre of a rebellion, it has been made an appendage of the Panjab.

India in 1206, when Delhi became the capital of a  
Muhammadan Empire.

CHAP. II. § 19  
A.D. 1206.

§ 19. As A.D. 1206 is thus a great era in Indian history, it is desirable to take a survey of the whole country at that period.

The year A.D.  
1206, an era.

(1) BENGAL AND BAHAR.—These had yielded (1203), without a struggle, to Bakhtiar Khilji, a slave of Kutb-ud-din. He removed the capital from Nalanda to Gour (or Lakshnauti), then a place of vast extent. The king of Bengal at the time was Lakshman Sena (Ch. i. § 22.) These provinces never made an attempt in after days to shake off the Muhammadan yoke thus imposed upon them. Their next great change was in 1765. (Ch. ix. § 28.)

Bengal and  
Bahar in 1206

Ch. i. § 22.  
Lakshman Sena

(2) Malwa was still independent. (§ 17.) It was not subdued by the Muhammadans till 1231, when Altamsh annexed it to Delhi. (§ 23.)

Malwa.

(3) The Ajmir, Kanwar, and Dehri kingdoms had been entirely subdued. (§ 16.) With Punjab, Ranthambour, and the chivalry of these kingdoms seemed to do. They remained under the Muhammadans till they came under Christian England.

Dehri king-  
dom

(4) ANHALWARA, capital of Gujrat, had been taken in 1196 (§ 11) by Muhammad Ghori. It was finally destroyed by Adil the Sangunary. (§ 32.)

Gujrat

Adil the  
Sangunary

(5) The Bellila Râjas were reigning at Dwara Samudra, and the Andhras at Warangal (Ch. iv. § 9-12.) These divided the South of India.

To Dahan

Ch. xii. § 2.

(6) A race allied to the Bellilas had just established their dominion at D.ogri. (Ch. iv. § 14, 15, vii § 2.)

(D.ogri)

(7) Sind was held by Nasir-ul-din, another slave, had married a sister of Kutb, and who now ruled as his viceroy. (§ 23.)

Sind in 1206  
He was allied  
Kutb.

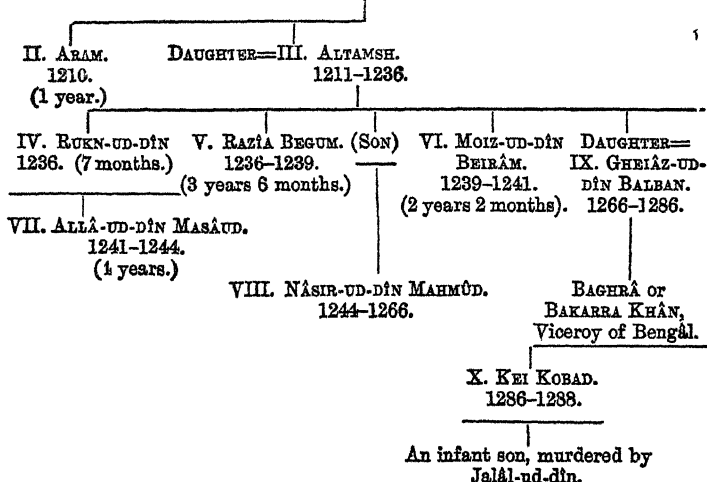
# GENEALOGICAL TABLE OF THE DYNASTY OF SLAVE KINGS.

[From the second to the eleventh Muhammadan King of Delhi.]

(Ch. ii. § 18-30.)

I. KUTB-UD-DÎN AIBAK,\*

Founder of the Slave dynasty, the first *independent* Muhammadan ruler of Delhi. Viceroy, 1193-1206; independent, 1206-1210.



## MEMORANDA:—

1. This dynasty lasted eighty-two years.
2. KUTB, his son-in-law, ALTAMSH, and BALBAN, Altamsh's son-in-law, were all *slaves*.
3. During this period India happily escaped the destruction that befell Central and Western Asia from the Mogul hordes under Genghiz (Changiz) Khân.
4. EVENTS OF THE THIRTEENTH CENTURY:—John Lackland, 1199-1216; Henry III., 1272; Edward I., 1307; Magna Charter; Simon de Montfort; Conquest of Wales; Crusades; Gueifs and Ghibellines; Hanseatic League; Marco Polo, the traveller.

\*=Broken finger (AIBAK).

## AFGHÂN DYNASTIES.

65

### III. Slave Kings of India, 1206-1236.

CH. II. 2021  
A.D. 1210, 17.

§ 20. Kutb ruled about twenty years as vic roy, and four years independently after the death of Ghori. He was a great warrior, generous to his subjects, and faithful to his master. His generosity indeed passed into a proverb.

The lofty *Kutb Minar* in Delhi preserves his memory.

§ 21. His son *Iram* ruled for one year, and was dethroned by *Altamsh*. He was a weak ruler, and his viceroyalties everywhere rebelled against him.

§ 22. *Altamsh*, the greatest of the dynasty, was a slave of Kutb, who had given him his daughter in marriage. He reigned from A.D. 1211 to 1236. His real name was *Shams-ud-din*.

*Altamsh* signifies *sixty*, that being the number of tomans paid for him by Kutb.

It was in 1217 that the alarm reached India of the advance of the Moguls under Ghengiz Khân, who had gained the supremacy over all the Tatar tribes, and in 1210 was acknowledged Khân of the Tatars from the wall of China to the Volga. He overran all Central and Western Asia, and in his course overthrew Muhammad, the Sultan of Kharism, who had slain his ambassadors. Muhammad's son, Jalâl-ud-din, contested every inch of ground with the Moguls, until driven to the Indus. He there fought a great battle, and, being defeated, took refuge in India. Altamsh courteously but firmly refused by protecting him to afford to Ghengiz Khân a pretext for invading India. Thus, for the time, India escaped the ravages of the Moguls. These attacks were, however, constantly repeated, till they became successful in 1526.

§ 23. Altamsh now subdued Nâsir-ud-din and Gheîâz-ud-din, a successor of Bhaktiyâr Khilji, who had made themselves independent in Sind and Bengal.

II  
1210, 17.

III  
Altamsh, 1211  
1236.

Ghengiz Khân,  
1217  
(Chinggis)

(Kharism or  
Kh. the an-  
ticipatory  
N.W. of Balkh)

The wise con-  
duct of Altamsh  
saves India  
from a Mogul  
invasion.

The victories of  
Altamsh  
(Comp. § 19)



CH. II. § 24-27.  
A.D. 1231, 41.

III. The Slave dynasty, 1206-1232.

1231.

He also reduced Rintambôr in Râjpûtâna, Mândû, Gwâliôr, and Ūjein; and subdued Chahâr Dêva, Râja of Marwâr, who was now the chief of the Hindû princes. With these victories he completed the subjugation of Hindûstân. He received investiture from the Khalîf of Baghdâd. He died in 1236.

His death in  
1236.

IV.  
Rukn-ud-dîn,  
1236.

§ 24. *Rukn-ud-dîn* succeeded his father, and was deposed in seven months by his sister Razîa. He was licentious, cruel, and imbecile.

V.  
Razîa Begum,  
1236-1239.  
Sixth Muham-  
madan ruler of  
Delhi.

§ 25. *Razîa Begum* was a beautiful and well-educated woman, and an energetic and skilful ruler. She is remarkable as the only female who has personally ruled in Delhi. Nûr Jehân's name was added to that of her husband's on the coins (iii. § 7); and Queen Victoria is "Empress of India"; but Razîa was the only queen that ever actually occupied the throne of the Indian empire. Dressed in a tunic and cap like a man, she sat daily administering justice. Her fondness for favourites marred the effect of her virtues and talents. A Tûrkî chief called Altûnia rebelled, defeated her, and took her prisoner. She won over her captor, and married him; but the nobles carried on the civil war, which ended in the defeat and death of herself and her husband. She reigned three years and six months. India was now a prey to rapine, full of rebellions, reduced almost to desolation.

1239.

VI.  
Beirâm,  
1239-1241.

§ 26. *Beirâm*, her brother, a weak and cruel man, succeeded. The Moguls now invaded Lâhôr, and he was imprisoned and slain by his own soldiers, after a reign of two years and two months.

VII.  
Mas'ud III.,  
1241-1244.

§ 27. *Mas'ud*, son of *Rukn-ud-dîn*, succeeded. Two invasions of the Moguls were repelled in this reign.

III. The Slave dynasty. Balban.

CH. II § 28, 29.  
A. D. 1241, 66.

He was cruel and licentious, and was deposed after a reign of four years.

§ 28. Nâsir-ud-dîn Mahmûd was a grandson of Altamsh, and was of retired and studious habits. Affairs were left in the hands of a Tûrkî slave of Altamsh, called Gheîâz-ud-dîn Balban, who had married an aunt of the emperor, and whose daughter Mahmûd himself had married. The emperor led the life of a dervish, and defrayed all his personal expenses by copying books. He kept no servant, and the queen performed all the duties of the household.

The best of the dynasty, often called Mahmûd II.

The invasions of the Moguls continued, but were successfully repelled. Various Hindû chiefs had rebelled during the late reigns; these were again reduced to obedience, and especially the Râja of Narwâr (§ 23) was overthrown.

VIII.  
Mahmûd II.,  
1244-1266.  
Moguls defeated.  
Rebels subdued.

An embassy was sent by Hulâkû Khân, grandson of Ghengîz Khân, and the destroyer of the Baghdâd Khalifate, to Mahmûd's court. It was received with great pomp. Mahmûd died in 1266, after a prosperous reign of more than twenty years.

Embassy from the Mogul Chief.

Death of Nâsir-ud-dîn Mahmûd, 1266.

§ 29. Balban (or Balin) succeeded, having long possessed all the kingly power. Originally a slave, he had, in the reign of Altamsh, entered into a covenant of mutual support with forty other slaves, who rose, most of them, to high stations. He now put most of these to death, placed none but the highly-born in positions of trust, and in every act of his government manifested a selfish and narrow mind.

IX  
Balban, 1266-1286  
The Slaves' compact.

Many kings, driven from their kingdoms by the Moguls, took refuge at this time in Delhi.

Kings in exile.

Prince Muhammad, his eldest son, was a great patron of literature. Amîr Khûsrû, a Persian poet, resided at his court, and Sâdî, the greatest of Persian authors, sent him a copy of his works.

Literary characters.

CHAP II § 30.  
A D 1266, 88.

III. The Slave dynasty. Balban. Kei Kobad.

Insurrections in  
Rajpûtna and  
Bengal.

Mewât was, as usual, in a state of disorder and insurrection. To quell this, Balban is said to have slain 100,000 men. He also wisely cleared it of forests, and thus laid it open to cultivation. A revolt in Bengâl, made by Tughral, the governor, was also crushed.

Death of the  
Heir-apparent.

The great misfortune of Balban's life was the death of Muhammad, the heir-apparent, who fell in opposing an irruption of the Moguls into his vice-royalty of the Panjâb. Balban died of grief in his eightieth year.

He has been the subject of excessive praise and blame from differing writers.

Disputed suc-  
cession.

§ 30. Balban's second son was Baghrâ (or Bakarrah) Khân, Viceroy of Bengâl, to whom, in fact, independent powers had been given. The late king had appointed Kei Khûsrû, son of Prince Muhammad, his heir; but the Omrahs, to avoid a civil war, placed Kei Kobad, son of Baghrâ Khân, on the throne, while Khûsrû went to his father's government of Mûltân.

X.  
Kei Kobad,  
1296-1288.  
[Kaukabad.]

KEI KOBAD was eighteen years of age at his accession, and was entirely under the influence of his Vazîr, Nizâm-ud-dîn, who encouraged him in every vice. Aiming at the throne, he procured the assassination of Kei Khûsrû. Baghrâ Khân, hearing of the state of affairs, marched with an army from Bengâl to rescue his son from the influence of the crafty Vazîr. Nizâm-ud-dîn induced the king to go forth to oppose his father; and, when the latter insisted on an interview with his son, imposed upon him so many humiliating ceremonies, that the old man burst into tears. Kei Kobad, overcome at the sight of his weeping father, sprang from the throne, and embraced him. Though a reconciliation thus took place between the father and the son, Baghrâ Khân found that he could not combat the influence of the infamous Nizâm-ud-dîn, and soon returned to Bengâl. Kei Kobad plunged anew into debaucheries, which

The evil Vazir.

Meets his  
father.

Death of Kei  
Kobad, 1288.

## AFGHAN DYNASTIES

### III. The Slave dynasty—The Khiljis. First Invasion of the Dakhan.

(PART I)  
1286, B.

ended in an attack of 3000. After a few days the designs of the minister procured him a victory, but was himself assassinated by Jhalajir. The Khilji then, in 1288.

Thus ended the *Dynasty of the Slave of Ghazni*.

### PART V—THE LATTER KHILJIS, A.D. 1288-1320.

#### THE LATTER KHILJI DYNASTY.

IV. § 31. *Jalal-ud-din Khalji*, the founder of the next dynasty of Afghan kings, was the twelfth Muhammadan king of Delhi. He is supposed to have put to death the infant son of Kootub-ud-din and then, with affect reluctance, to have mounted the throne. No other crime is laid to his charge, but his degenerating into weakness, was the ruin of his government. Invasions of the Moguls commenced and repelled, as in the former reigns.

The chief event of the reign was the invasion of the Dakhan by his nephew Ala-ud-din, who was governor of Kherah. Setting out with 50,000 horse, the invader crossed the Nerbudda, and marched to Dugiri, where Rām Dev Rāo Jodwa, a prince of great power and influence, was reigning. He easily subdued the Hindú prince. The spoil taken was immense, and a large ransom was paid by the Rāo. (Ch. IV. p. 100.) This was just a century after the battle of Tughluq which gave the Ghori the possession of Delhi. Ala-ud-din also took and sacked the city.

On his return, which took place in less than a month, he contrived that his army should

1294.

1295.  
1296.  
1297.

CHAP. II. § 33  
A. D. 1317, 21

**IV. The Fourth Afghan dynasty. The Khiljis. Allâ-ud-dîn.**

(Compare  
Ethelred the  
Unready, and  
the Danes.)

"sanguinary" acts. There was a great multitude of Mogul converts in his pay. These he suddenly dismissed; and, on their raising a disturbance, he caused 15,000 of them to be massacred, and their families sold as slaves.

Kâfûr's per-  
nicious in-  
fluence.

(10.) Kâfûr now acquired absolute power over Allâ's mind, which, as well as his body, was giving way under the influence of habitual intemperance. He became jealous of every one, imprisoned his queen and his two eldest sons, and caused his brother Alaf Khân, and his great general Alp Khân, to be murdered. Rebellions broke out, and in the midst of these Kâfûr hastened the king's death by poison.

Allâ is poisoned,  
1317.

His mixed cha-  
racter.

(11.) Allâ was not without genius; but his want of mental discipline and judgment led him into the wildest schemes. He sometimes contemplated proclaiming himself a second Muhammad; and, at other times, aimed at universal conquest, and assumed the title of the second Alexander. His character reminds us, in some aspects, of Haddar Alî; and, in others, of Tippû, his son.

His sayings.

Two of his sayings are recorded:—"Religion has no connection with civil government, but is only the business, or rather amusement, of civil life;" and "The will of a wise prince is better than the opinions of variable bodies of men."

III.  
Mubârik Khilji.

§ 33. Kâfûr now placed the youngest son of Allâ, an infant, named Omar, on the throne. He then blinded the two eldest sons of Allâ, and sent assassins to murder Mubârik, the third son. But Mubârik gained over the army, put Kâfûr to death, and ascended the throne. His first acts were to put out the eyes of his infant brother, and to murder the officers to whom he was indebted for his own preservation. He then made Khûsrû Khân, a converted Parwârî slave from Gujârât, his Vazîr.

Kâfûr's death.

Khûsrû Khân.

V. The Fifth Afghan dynasty. House of Tughlak.  
Ghiaz-ud-din I.

1321, 5

His first measures were memorable. He had 17,000 persons imprisoned by him, either, and he did not undo the effects of his arbitrary acts.

He then marched to the Dikhna, seized the rebellious son-in-law of Rām Dēv, and flayed him alive.

The remainder of his reign was spent in unprincipled debaucheries.

Khusrū, in whose hands all power was placed, had a successful expedition to Multān, returned with abundant spoil to Delhi, assassinated his master, and exterminated his whole family.

Thus perished the last of the Khuljī family, after a dominion in Delhi of thirty-three years. (From 1288 to 1321.)

PART VI.—THE HOUSE OF TUGHAK, A.D. 1321-1412

THE FIFTH AFGHAN DYNASTY.

V. § 34. The intemperate Khusrū, who died of death by Ghiaz-ud-din I. (Ch. iv. § 19), Governor of Panjāb, who by universal consent, ruled the country. He was the son of a Turkī slave of Bānū by one of the Jāt tribe. The army, as is usually the case in such revolutions, were the chief instrument of his elevation; but, as no single member of the royal family survived, the new ruler was saved from the crimes that generally attend a change of dynasty.

Now came the expedition to Tughān, under his son Jūna Khān (or *Jonah*). (Ch. iv. § 19)

The king himself at this time paid a visit to Bengāl, which was still under Baghrā Khān (§ 30), son of Balban, his old master, to examine into complaints of

In a (or Al) Khān)  
1322.  
Bengal  
1325  
(sometimes called K. trah,  
or Kera)

CHAP II § 36.  
1325, 47.V. Jūna Khān Tughlak, or Sultān Muhammad III.,  
the magnificent madman.

His death, 1325.

oppression. The venerable viceroy, who had outlived the whole dynasty that supplanted his own family in Delhi, was confirmed in his authority; and the royal umbrella was formally conceded to him by the son of his father slave!

On his return the emperor met with his death by the fall of a magnificent pavilion, erected for him by his son Jūna, whose opportune absence threw upon him a grave suspicion of being the contriver of his father's death.

II.  
Jūna Khān  
Tughlak, 1325.

§ 36. Jūna, on his accession, assumed the title of Sultān Muhammad Tughlak; and is regarded as the nineteenth Muhammadan king of Delhi.

His character.

He was a prince of unrivalled munificence; eloquent, accomplished, learned in Arabic, Persian, Greek philosophy, mathematics, and physical science. He was a strict Muhammadan, moral, brave, and energetic. Yet his wild schemes, and his general conduct as a ruler, show him to us rather in the light of one insane, than as a man possessed of these various excellences and accomplishments.

Inconsistent.

He buys off the  
Moguls

(1) His first act was (after the manner of Ethelred the Unready, to buy off the Moguls, who had as usual invaded the Panjāb.

He + expedition  
into the  
Dakhan.

(2.) He then made an expedition into the Dakhan, which for the time he reduced to order.

1326.

Invasion of  
Persia

(3.) His next plan was to invade Persia; but his vast army was disbanded after the consumption of all his treasure.

Attempted in-  
vasion of China.

(4) He then projected the conquest of China, whose spoils were to replenish his coffers. A hundred thousand men marched across the Himālayas; but attacked by the Chinese, and worn out with fatigue and famine, hardly a man returned.

Meddles with  
the currency.

(5.) He then strove to introduce copper tokens, as an approach to a paper currency, which he had heard of

as existing in China. But as his government was insolvent, this, of course, only added to his own embarrassments and to the suffering of his subjects.

(6.) When the people, driven to despair by his exactions, fled to the woods, he more than once ordered out his troops and hunted them down, thus exterminating the inhabitants of large districts.

(7.) At this time Bengal rebelled, and remained independent until the accession of Shir Shah. (Ch. iii. § 4.)

(8.) Now also arose that celebrated rebellion in Gujarât which led to the establishment of the Bâhmanî Sultanate in the Dekhan. The Governor of Mâlwa had, we already mentioned, forty Mogul Amirs; when the remainder rebelled, took refuge in the Dekhan, and found common cause with other Mogul Amirs there. The king, in person, went against them, defeated them, and shut them up in Daulatâbad; but was suddenly recalled to Gujarât by tidings of more serious disturbances there.

His departure was the signal for a general rising in the Dekhan. The insurgents had proclaimed Ishmael Khan their king; but he, feeling his inability to command in such critical times, resigned in favour of Zahir Khan. (Ch. iv. § 20.)

(9.) Juna Khân (or Sultan Muhammad) who had persecuted the Gujarât rebels to Patana Sindh, died in 1351, after a reign of but twenty years. His death was caused, like that of the Emperor Hâshim I., by eating fish to excess.

(10.) One of his many freaks was the attempt to transfer the seat of empire from Delhi to Daulatâbad. He compelled the people of Delhi to migrate to the new capital, and many thousands perished in this insane attempt, which was afterwards abandoned.

(11.) Another whim of his was to procure a confir-

Ext. p. 1  
Ch. iii. § 4

Ext. p. 1  
Ch. iii. § 4

Ext. p. 1  
Ch. iii. § 4

Ext. p. 1  
Ch. iii. § 4

Ext. p. 1  
Ch. iii. § 4

Transfer of  
empire to  
Daulatâbad, or  
Dahmâ.



CH. II. § 37, 38.  
A.D. 1358, 93.

V. Feroz Tughlak.

Ibn Batuta.

His history.

III.  
Ferôz Tughlak,  
1351-1388.

Embassies.

Great public  
works.

IV.  
Gheîâz-ud-dîn  
II  
V  
Abu-bekr, 1389.

VI.  
Nâsir-ud-dîn,  
1390-1394.

mation of his title to the kingdom from the nominal Khalif of Egypt, who now was looked upon as the head of Islâm. On obtaining this, he struck out from the records of the kingdom the names of all his predecessors.

(12.) In 1341, a traveller from Tanjiers, *Ibn Batuta*, visited Delhi. He was received with great respect, and appointed to the office of judge, by the king. Seeing, however, some evidences of Muhammad's capricious and cruel temper, he resigned his office. The king, without taking offence, attached him to an embassy to China, and thus honourably dismissed him. His accounts of Indian affairs are highly interesting.

§ 37. Jûna Khân, or Muhammad III., was succeeded by his nephew *Ferôz-ud-dîn Tughlak*, who reigned from 1351 to 1388, when he died at the age of ninety, ten years before the invasion of India by Teimûr.

He received embassies from both Bengâl and the Dakhan, thus acknowledging the independence of those provinces.

His reign was marked by a course of humane and liberal legislation. He greatly promoted the erection of public works of every kind; the most important of these being the canal that goes by his name, running from the head-waters of the Jamna to Hissar. Ferôz-pûr, near the Satlaj, was founded by him.

§ 38. He was succeeded by his grandsons, *Gheîâz-ud-dîn* and *Abu-bekr*, who reigned for five months and one month respectively. Both were deposed, and the former murdered.

Then *Nâsir-ud-dîn Tughlak*, eldest son of Ferôz, who had assisted in the government in his father's time, and had been expelled for mismanagement, returned and dethroned his nephew. He reigned from 1390 to 1394.

# AFGHÂN DYNASTIES.

77

## V. Mahmûd Tughlak.

CH. II § 39, 41.  
A.D. 1401.

His son Humâyûn succeeded him, but died at the end of forty-five days, and another brother, Mahmûd Tughlak, ascended the throne in 1394.

Tooth of Nasar-  
ud-din.

§ 39. Mahmûd was a child, and was the most insignificant of the whole series. His nominal reign lasted till 1412 A.D.; but, before that time, *the kingdom of Delhi had in fact ceased to exist*. Four provinces had rebelled—Mâlwa, Gujarât, Kândesh, and Jampur. Delhi itself was torn with civil strife.

VII  
Muhammad  
Tughlak, 1394-  
1412.

The Dakhan was wasted by a terrible famine, called by the natives Dûrgâ Dêvi, which lasted twelve years from 1396.

In the midst of all came the Tatar chief Taimûr Leng (Tamerlane, *Taimûr* the lame); laid Hindustan waste and was declared Emperor of Delhi. His son, Pir Muhammad, took Ooch and Multan, 1397.

Tooth of  
Taimûr, 1398

§ 40. The temporary independence of Mâlwa dates from about A.D. 1401. Dîlawn Khan Ghôr was its first king. He was succeeded by Hushinûr (Hushinûr Ghôr) (1405-1432). He built Mandu, whose ruins attest its former extent and grandeur, and removed the capital from Dhâr, where Raja Bhôji had fixed it to that place. (Ch. i. § 23.) (Comp. ch. iii. for the history of Medin Râi.) This kingdom was annexed by Bahâdur Shâh of Gujarât in 1526-1531. (Ch. II.)

Mandû, 1401

In 1440 Râna Khumbô of Mâlwa conquered the King of Mâlwa and Gujarât, and erected the Jaya Stambha, or pillar of victory, at Chittôr. (Ch. iii. § 12)

§ 41. Gujarât became independent in the year 1391 under Muzaffir Shâh. He was continually at war with Mâlwa. In 1398, on Taimûr's invasion, Mahmûd Tughlak fled to Gujarât, but was ill received. From thence he went to Mâlwa.

Gujarât, 1391.  
(Comp. ch. iii. § 4)

Muzaffir's grandson was Ahmed Shâh (1416-1459), who built Ahmednagar and Ahmedâbâd. He was con-

Ahmed Shâh of  
Gujarât, 1416

CH. II § 42, 43.  
A.D. 1399-  
1450.

V. Taimûr the Tatar, 1398.

timurly at war with the Râjpûts. Mahmûd Begara succeeded to the throne in 1459 and reigned till 1511. (Comp. ch. vi. § 10)

Saiyîd Shâh reigned from 1526-1537. (Ch. vi. § 10.) He conquered Mâlwa. (Comp. ch. iii. § 4.)

Jounpûr (Jounpûr, Jounpûr),  
1391-1476  
(On the bank  
of the Gûmti,  
about 42 miles  
from Benares.)

§ 42. Jounpûr was rendered independent by Khâja (or Kwâjah) Jihân (whose title was Malik-us-Shark, and whose dynasty was thence called the *Sharki*), the Vazîr of Mûhamad Tughlak. Its territory extended from Kanauj north-west to the boundary of Bengâl, and South Bihar south-east. This kingdom was a formidable rival to Delhi, which city was twice besieged by its armies. Its independence lasted from 1391-1474. Ibrâhîm Shâh Sharkî, who succeeded in 1401, greatly aggrandised the kingdom, and in his time the city became one of the finest in India.

Taimûr, 1398

§ 43. Taimûr greatly resembled Ghengiz Khân; but unlike him was a man of great intellect and very considerable learning. He was a Turk, and had subdued all Central and Western Asia. His chief cities were Bokhârâ and Samarkhand. His tomb is in the latter. He reached Delhi in December, 1398.

Massacre in  
Delhi, Decem-  
ber 13.

There he first massacred all his prisoners above fifteen years of age, a vast multitude. He then gave up Delhi itself to indiscriminate pillage. This led to a general massacre, which lasted five days, during which the monster feasted, and enjoyed the sight. He then proceeded to a mosque to "offer up his sincere and humble tribute of praise to the Divine Majesty!" He afterwards proceeded to Mirut, where a like tragedy was acted; and thence to Hurdwâr and Jaunna; and so left India, taking with him an immense booty and an innumerable crowd of slaves.

Mirut.  
He leaves India,  
March 1, 1399

## AFGHAN DYNASTIES.

79

### V. VI. End of the Tughlak dynasty. The four Saiyads.

A.H. 1144-45.  
A.D. 1396-1450.

§ 44. Delhi remained desolate for some time after his departure; but at length *Mahmūd* was eventually restored, and died there in 1412.

*Nusrat Khān*, a nephew of *Ferōz* (§ 37) was actually set up as a puppet by some half-bred *Qanchas*. *Nusrat Khān*, who got the weak emperor, his father, *Alauddin* of *Tamur*, *Nusrat Khān* who was allied to the *Qanchas* of *Khān*, and the sultan of *Joung* were the three who were while they contended with each other, the power was sometimes in the power of the one, sometimes of the other till they came back to Delhi by *Daulat Khān*.

WITH HIM ENDED THE TUGHLAK DYNASTY, which was the last of the dynasties of the so-called *Slave kings*.

§ 45. *DAULAT KHAN LODI*. This chief, for 45 months after the death of *Mahmūd* retained possession of Delhi, without however assuming the insignia of royalty, and coining money, in the name of the late *Ferōz* (§ 37), but was expelled in 1414 by *Khizr Khān*, viceroy of the *Panjāb*.

## PART VII.—THE SAIYADS, A.D. 1414-1450.

### THE SAIYAD DYNASTY.

VI. § 46. THE FOUR SAIYADS. From 1414-1450 Delhi was held by four rulers, who professed to regard themselves as Viceroys of the *Mogul*. They merely possessed any territory beyond the walls of Delhi.

THE SAIYADS,  
1414-1450.  
Viceroys of  
Mogul in  
Muhammad

Their names were—

(1.) *Saiyad Khizr Khān*—1414-1421; who (or, rather, his excellent minister *Tāj-ul-mulk*), was just and generous; and for whom, when he died, all Delhi were black for three days;

CHAP II § 47.  
A.D. 1450-  
1526.

## VIII. The Lodis.

(2.) SEIAD MUBÂRIK—1421-1435; who was benevolent, and of most amiable temper; but was murdered by some Hindû assassins;

(3.) SEIAD MUHAMMAD—1435-1444; of whom nothing can be said but that he was a weak and dissolute prince, in whose reign, if reign it can be called, there were continual tumults; and

(4.) SEIAD ALLÂ-UD-DÎN—1444-1450, or Âlam Shâh, who, driven out by Behlûl Lodî, abdicated and lived peacefully in Budâon.

## PART VIII.—THE LODIS, A.D. 1450-1526.

## THE SEVENTH DYNASTY.

THE LODIS,  
1450-1526.

§ 47. THE THREE KINGS OF THE HOUSE OF LODÎ—the last of the Atghân dynasties.

The Lodîs were a powerful family, and had excited the jealousy of preceding kings.

I.  
BEHLÛL LODÎ,  
1450-1488  
(Or BEHLÛL).

(1) BEHLÛL, a man of immense vigour, had gained possession of Sirhind and the Panjâb, and now drove Seiad Allâ-ud-dîn from Dehli. He afterwards conquered Jaunpûr, after twenty-six years of war. He reigned from 1450-1488.

II.  
SIKANDER LODÎ,  
1488-1518.

(2) His son, SIKANDER LODÎ, succeeded him, and reigned to 1518. He re-annexed Bahâr; but the kingdom was now little more than a number of nearly independent principalities. He fought against his brother Bârbak, to whom Jaunpûr had been assigned, and who strove to obtain the empire.

[The conquest  
of Gauda,  
1492]

Sikander was in many respects an excellent and accomplished prince; but a fierce persecutor of the Hindûs.

# AFGHÂN DYNASTIES.

81

## VIII. The Lodis. Pânipat.

CH. II. 17. 18  
AD 1518-20

It was about this time that R'm'ah ul Farid Vaisch was teacher lived at Banâres, a little later, in the same reign, lived the reformer Akbar, who taught the unity of the Deity

During this reign the Portuguese landed in Calicut (Ch. vi. § 2.) Sikander made Agra his capital.

(3.) His son Ibrahim was unlike his father. He disgusted the chiefs by his haughtiness and cruelty.

One of them, Daulat Khân Lodi, governor of the Panjâb, called in Sultân Bâber, the Tatâr ruler of Kâbul; who took Lâhôr, burnt the city, and then advanced on Delhi with an army of 12,000 men. Ibrahim met him at Pânipat with a much larger army, but was killed in the battle, which ended in the complete triumph of Bâber.

About this time lived the celebrated *Yogi* *Madhva*, who introduced the worship of Bala Gopala, the infant Krishna, and spread his doctrine as far as Vijayanagar.

§ 48. Thus ended the dynasties of the Afghâns, (Turks or Tatârs), who, under different names, had ruled a large portion of Hindûstân, making Delhi or Agra the seat of government, for 320 years. (1206-1526.)

About the same time the great Bahminî kingdom of Kalbûrga was broken up into five parts. (Ch. iv. § 21.)

The Fall of  
the Afghân  
dynasty

C I. III. §1, 2.  
A.D. 1526.

The Mogul Emperors.

## CHAPTER III.

THE MOGUL EMPERORS OF INDIA, A.D. 1526-1857.

## PART I.—INTRODUCTORY.

1526-1748.

§ 1. The second battle of Pânipat opened India to Bâber and his Patâns. From the accession of Bâber, who was thus the founder of the *Mogul dynasty*, to the death of Muhammad Shâh, the twelfth emperor of this dynasty, was 222 years.

Character of  
the whole  
dynasty.

No royal family in history has produced such a series of distinguished rulers, splendid and great; though not certainly good, according to our ideas of goodness.

The summary  
of the chapter.

§ 2. This chapter will trace the history of this powerful line of emperors from Bâber, the founder, to Muhammad Bahâdar Shâh, the last that bore the title of King of Delhi, who died in prison, in a distant land, dishonoured and unpitied. (Ch. x. § 28.)

The following table is given for reference:—

# THE MOGUL EMPIRE.

83

Table of Mogul Emperors, 1526-1857.

HAU III 37  
A. 1526  
1857.

## THE MOGUL EMPIRE.

I. BĀBÜR . . . . .	1526-1530	He began his reign with the conquest of Delhi and Agra.
II. HĪMAYŪN . . . . .	1530-1540	He was a weak ruler and his reign was marked by internal dissension.
III. AKBAR . . . . .	1556-1605	He was a great conqueror and his reign was marked by the extension of the empire to its greatest extent.
IV. JĀHĀNGĪR . . . . .	1605-1627	He was a weak ruler and his reign was marked by internal dissension.
V. SHĀH JĪHĀN . . . . .	1627-1658	He was a great conqueror and his reign was marked by the extension of the empire to its greatest extent.
VI. AURANGZĒB . . . . .	1658-1707	He was a great conqueror and his reign was marked by the extension of the empire to its greatest extent.

VII. Shāh Ālam I. (or Bahadur Shāh)	1707-1712	Concession to the Marathas.	The Marathas.
VIII. Jehāndār Shāh . . . . .	1712-1713	The Marathas were driven out.	The Marathas.
IX. Farukhshār . . . . .	1713-1719	The Marathas were driven out.	The Marathas.
X. Rāfi-ud-darajāt . . . . .	1719-Feb.	More puppet of the Marathas, removed by poison or disease within three months.	The Marathas.
XI. Rāfi-ud-daula . . . . .	1719-May	More puppet of the Marathas, removed by poison or disease within three months.	The Marathas.
XII. Muhammad Shāh . . . . .	1719-1748	The Empire broke up. Nādur Shāh.	The Marathas.



CHAP. III § 3  
A.D. 1482-  
1524.

The five entirely  
dependent em-  
perors, or kings,  
1748-1857.

The Life of Sultan Bâber, 1482-1530.

¶ XIII. Ahmad Shâh . . . . .	1748-1754	Blinded and de- posed.
XIV. Alamgîr II. . . . .	1751-1759	Plassey. Murdered.
XV. Shâh Âlam II. . . . .	1759-1806	Rescued by Lord Lako.
XVI. Akbar II. . . . .	1806-1837	A mere pensioner.
XVII. Muhammad Bahâdar . . . . .	1837-1857	The helper of the mutineers.

PART II.—BÂBER.

I.  
Bâber.  
Summary of  
Bâber's history.  
1482-1530.

(120 miles E. of  
Bokhâra.)

§ 3. (1.) SULTÂN BÂBER demands our especial attention, as being the founder of the Mogul Indian Empire, and the first of a dynasty of renowned emperors, under whom India rose to the highest apparent prosperity.

(2.) Bâber was born A.D. in . . . . .	1482	} 22
became King of Kokhân in . . . . .	1494	
conquered Samarkhand in . . . . .	1497	
driven away, after many struggles, } again occupied Kâbul in . . . . .	1504	} 22
again in Samarkhand in . . . . .	1511	
lost all, but Bactria, in . . . . .	1514	
gained Kandahâr in . . . . .	1522	} 4
called in by D. K. Lôdî in . . . . .	1524	
won the (first) battle of Pânipat in . . . . .	1526	
subdued the Râjpûts in . . . . .	1527-28	} 4
conquered Bahâr and Bengâl in . . . . .	1529	
and died in . . . . .	1530	

48

Bâber's  
descent.

(3.) He was descended, on the father's side, from Teimûr (Tamerlane) the Tatâr; but his mother was a Mogul, connected with the tribe of Genghîz Khân. This race was detested by him; yet, strange to say, from it his dynasty got the name, now generally corrupted into *Mogul*. It is variously spelt Moghul, Mughal, and Mogal.

## Bâbar's entrance into India, 1519-1526.

(CHAPTER III)  
A.D. 1519-26.

(4) His real name was Zahir ud-Din Muhammad of the Name.

He was born in 1483 at Fergana, in the country of the Samarkandians, and was the son of a nobleman of the name of Bâbar. He was educated in the sciences of the East, and was a great warrior. He was the founder of the Mogul Empire.

(6.) His life, till 1524 was a succession of struggles in the course of which he sometimes extended his sway as far as to Kandahar, and at other times was confined to a small territory, being thrice occupying his paternal city of Samarkand and being thrice expelled from it.

(7.) His uncertain tenure of power in these various regions caused him to turn his attention to India, which had now for some time been in a state of anarchy, the Lodis possessing little beyond Delhi and Agra. He was invited by one of the revolted chiefs, Daulat Khan Lodî, viceroy of the Panjâb, to seize upon India, which he considered to be his inheritance, as he was descended from the conqueror Taimûr. It was not, however, until after four unsuccessful expeditions (1519-26) that he gained his end.

(8.) The (SECOND) battle of Pânipat (Ch. ii. § 47) gave him nothing but the small tract around Delhi and Âgra.

From the spoils of Âgra he sent a coin of the value of about tenpence to every man, woman, and child, slave or free, in the district of Kâbul, where he had reigned for twenty-two years; besides rich gifts to the chief Muhammadan shrines in Asia.

(9.) The other parts of the so-called Empire were still held by revolted chieftains. From the time of the magnificent madman Malanmad Tarkhan (1351), there had been no real empire of Delhi. (Ch. ii. § 40.) Thus, Bahar was in the possession of Muhammad Shah Lohani; a part of Malwa and the surrounding districts were held by Sangha Chander and the adjacent country by Medni Rai, and Bengal by an Afghan chief. The Dakhan, which had been independent since 1347, was now divided into five Musalman kingdoms, besides the Hindu kingdom of Bijanagar, called by Europeans Narsinga (Ch. iv. § 22, 29). The Portuguese had conquered Goa in A.D. 1510, and (though the great Albuquerque had died in A.D. 1515) they were still very powerful on the western coast. (Ch. vi. § 12-15.)

State of the Empire at the period of the Mogul conquest, 1526.  
Bahar  
Malwa  
Rajpûthana.  
Bengal  
Dakhan.  
Portuguese.

CHAP. III. § 3.  
A.D. 1527-30.

The First Mogul Emperor. Bâber's death.

Bâber's  
int. 1510/15.

(10.) It was evidently the general impression, even among Bâber's own troops, that after plundering Âgra and Delhi, he would, like his ancestor Teimûr, return to the regions west of the Indus. This intention, however, he emphatically disclaimed: he had come to found a Tatâr Empire in India.

(11.) Prince Humâyûn, Bâber's eldest son, was accordingly employed to reduce to obedience the various Musalman chieftains. In four months this was effected, from Gwâhâr to Jounpûr. (Ch. ii. § 42.)

Sanga, the Râjpûr, of Chitôr.

Final struggle  
with the  
Râjpûts.

(12.) A more stubborn enemy was the Hindû Sanga, a Râjpûr prince; with whom the Râjas of Mârwar and Jeypûr were joined, as also Medni Râi of Chandêrî. Sanga was the grandson of Râna Khumbo (1440), who was the grandson of Bânu. (§ 4.) This was the last great struggle of the Râjpûts for empire. Sanga had formerly intrigued against the Lodis, and now patriotically resolved to expel, if possible, the Musalmâns from India. The question to be answered was, "Shall there ever again be a Kshatriya Empire of Hindûstân?" The answer was, "No."

Sikri. [This was the favourite residence of Akbar, who greatly embellished it.] Chandêrî.

The Johar.  
[Ch. ii. § 32.]

The decisive battle of Sikri (Fatihpûr Sikri, near Âgra). (February 1527), and the storming of Chandêrî (January 1528), firmly established the Mogul throne. The defenders of this last fortress perished to a man in the desperate struggle. Thus fell Medni Râi, who was next to Sanga as a Râjpûr leader. Humâyûn afterwards married a daughter of the Râja of Jeypûr.

(13.) Bahâr and Bengâl were next attacked; and by May 1529 these provinces had also submitted to Bâber's arms.

Bâber's death.

(14.) Bâber's death was remarkable. Humâyûn, his eldest son, was dangerously ill, when Bâber, according to a well-known eastern custom, conceived the idea of offering his own life for his son's. In the accomplishment of this loving resolve, he walked round the bed of the sick youth three times, praying solemnly to God that the disease might be transferred to himself.

## Bāber's character. Humāyūn.

CHAP. III. § 4.  
A.D. 1550-56.

After this act, he exclaimed, in the full belief that his prayer had been heard, 'I have borne it away.' And strong as was Humāyūn's version from that time, while Bāber was so near death was already beginning to decline. Even at that time children and courtiers with his latest breath could foresee the and civil strife he died December 26 1556. His remains were carried to Kābul, where a simple but beautiful tomb was erected to his memory.

Cardinal W. I. secured in the same year.

His trial.

(15.) His character is a mix of ...  
a. He inherited somewhat of the ferocity of his father's ...  
and was inhuman in his treatment of his subjects.  
b. Yet there is a simplicity and directness of action in his character that excites the admiration of all who read his *Memoirs*; which, like other great works he wrote himself, and which are models of clear and vigorous writing, give the best picture of the man.

His character.  
(16.)His memoirs.  
Simplicity

c. His undaunted courage, firmness, and energy, perseverance, and elasticity of mind, and his determination to overcome all spirit even wrestled with obstacles and overcame it.

Brave and persevering.

d. He seems to have been afflicted with intemperance of wine, by which he lost his dignity and shortened his life.

Intemperate.

(16.) At this period arose Chaitanya, who introduced the Vaishnava worship of Krishna was the form of Vishnu whom he worshipped. He brought into use the word BHAKTI, faith and love to teaching that fervent love and adoration were of more importance than external observances. This has much changed the character of Hindu worship.

(Chaitanya 1494-1534)  
The great Bengali teacher.

## PART III.—HUMĀYŪN.

§ 4. The Second Mogul Emperor was HUMĀYŪN, who reigned nominally from A.D. 1550 to 1556; but spent nearly sixteen years of this period (1540-1556) in ...

II  
Humāyūn. 1550-1556.

The Mogul flood was, at this period, driven back, to return, however, a few years with greater force, and to overspread the whole land.

(1.) This emperor is famous alike for his lenity and the misfortunes in great part caused by it; for the fortitude with which he bore his adverse fortunes, and the bravery by which at length he retrieved them.

Summary.

(2.) He had three brothers—Kāmran, Hindāl, and Mirza Askeri, to the first of whom he rashly gave up Kābul, Kandahār, the Panjāb, and the countries on the Indus; to the second,

His treatment of his brothers.

CHAP. III. § 4.  
A.D. 1530-38.

### Humâyûn's enemies.

Bahâdar Shâh.  
Gujarat.

1534.

1535.

The emperor's  
bravery.

Champanîr and  
Pawangarh.

Shîr Khân Sûr's  
contest with  
Humâyûn.

1538.

Sambal (east of Delhi); and to the youngest, Mêwât (Machêri or Alwâr). His generosity, or weakness, thus stripped him of his fairest dominions.

Humâyûn, in fact, had nothing but newly-conquered territory left for himself to govern; and his father's veteran army and renown as his only support.

(3.) BAHÂDAR SHÂH of Gujarat (1526-1537), (Ch. ii. § 41), was his first antagonist.

Gujarât had long been independent. (Ch. vi. 16.)

Bahâdar Shâh, at that time king of that country, was the greatest that ever governed it. He compelled Kândesh, Berâr, and Ahmadnagar to acknowledge him as their feudal superior. He had conquered and annexed Mâlwa. Humâyûn, irritated at his harbouring some fugitive rebels, attacked him, and wrested from him a great part of his dominions; but he regained all in the following year.

The scaling of the walls of the fort of Champanîr (where the treasures of the kingdom were heaped up) by 300 men, of whom Humâyûn himself was one, was the great exploit of this war.

Bahâdar had a splendid park of artillery, directed by Portuguese gunners, under Kumi Khan, a very able officer.

This ancient but now deserted city was a few miles N E of Barôda. The fort of Pawangarh is higher up the hill. It is surrounded by walls fifteen feet high, and one mile and a half in circumference. (See Chap. v. § 129.)

(4.) Humâyûn's next and more redoubtable antagonist was SHÎR KHÂN SÛR, an Afghân (of the tribe of Sûr, descendant of one of the followers of the Lodis), who now held Bahâr and Bengâl, which he had conquered.

He was called Shîr Khân=lion-king, from having killed a tiger by a single blow of his sabre.

Humâyûn made several expeditions against him, and at length laid siege to Chunâr and took it. Shîr Khân was himself engaged in completing the conquest of Bengâl at the time. Humâyûn advanced as far as Gour, then the capital of Bengâl. Meanwhile the rains came on, during which nothing could be done in Bengâl; and Shîr Khân, issuing from his retreat in the hill-fortress of Rôhtas, retook the cities and forts on the Ganges, surprising Humâyûn between Patna and Benâres.

# THE MOGUL EMPIRE.

89

## Humāyūn's flight. Akbar.

CHAP. III. 54.  
A.D. 1538.

1538. - Bāhtas was an almost invincible warrior who had been driven from the Hindu Raja to whom he had been sent by the Emperor. He had been in the service of the Emperor for many years, and had been with him in all his wars.

The Emperor had been driven from the city of Delhi, and had plunged into the stream of the river, and was drowned, had he not been rescued by Bāhtas. He thus reached Agra, and then he fled to the hills. He had been plotting against him; but they were unable to prepare for the approach of the victorious Shah Rukh.

(5.) He sustained a terrible defeat at the battle of Panipat, and was compelled to flee to Lahore. He then retired to Kabul, and Humāyūn followed him there, and he fled to the south. Here he was driven from his year and a half, and at length directed his course to Mūrwār. Repulsed thence, he fled his way across the desert to Amerkōt, where he arrived with seven companions, after enduring unspeakable hardships.

(6.) Here his son Akbar was born. He was driven from his brothers, Humāyūn pursued his flight, and reached Persia, 1544.

In April 1543 his faithful general Bāhtas, who had escaped from the battle of Panipat, returned to India, and Akbar was sent to Kashmir.

(7.) The Persian Shah, Humāyūn, sent him to Hindustan, but he did not stay long, and he returned to Persia. He then came to the Persian capital, and he remained there thenceforward into India.

NOTE - The Shia and Sunni are the two great sects into which the Muhammadans are divided.

- A. The Shias (1) reject all traditions and claim to the simple Koran.
- (2) disavow the three Khalifas who succeeded Muhammad.
- (3) seldom visit Mecca, but go to Kerbela instead, where Husam was slain.
- (4) They alone observe the Muharram.
- (5) They are called heretics by the Sunnis, are the true testaments of Muhammadanism.
- (6) The Persians, and nearly all India's Muhammadans, are of this sect.

Bāhtas.

1539.

Humāyūn's flight.

Humāyūn's flight.

Humāyūn's flight.

Humāyūn's flight.

Humāyūn's flight.

Humāyūn's flight.

CHAP. III. § 5.  
A.D. 1545-56.

The restored Afghân dynasty of Sûr, 1540-1556.

Humâyûn's  
efforts to regain  
his empire,  
1545.

Humâyûn and  
his brothers.

[Bâber's dying  
advice was not  
unnecessary,  
though it was  
unheeded.  
§ 3 (14).]

Shîr Shâh Sûr,  
1540-1545.

- B. The Sunnis (1.) hold the *Sunnat*, or traditions, as a supplement to the Kuran.  
(2.) acknowledge as Khalifs after Muhammad, Abû-Bakr, Omar, and Osman, then, and fourthly, Ali  
(3.) Afghâns, Turks, Arabs, and Echillas are of this sect.

At length, however, the Persian king gave him 14,000 horsemen, to assist in restoring him to his kingdom. Thus aided, he took Kandahâr and Kâbul from his unnatural brother Kâmrân. It is said that during the siege of the latter place, Kâmrân exposed the young Akbar on the walls, threatening to put him to death, if Humâyûn should persist in the siege. Humâyûn seems to have behaved inhumanly, in slaughtering the prisoners.

(8.) In 1548, the four brothers, Humâyûn, Hindâl, Kâmrân, and Mirza Askari were reconciled; but Kâmrân, ever treacherous, again rebelled, and was at length defeated and blinded (1553). These dissensions weakened the cause of the house of Teimûr; but in 1555 Humâyûn was in a condition to attempt to regain his Indian dominions.

The history of the restored *Afghân* dynasty must now be traced.

PART IV.—THE SÛRS.

§ 5. THE RESTORED AFGHÂNS, OR SÛR DYNASTY, FIVE IN NUMBER. (A.D. 1540-1556.)

HUMÂYÛN IN EXILE: HIS RETURN AND DEATH.

(1.) SHÎR SHÂH is often branded as a usurper. Yet, descended from the antient Afghân conquerors, a native of India, and the expeller of the Moguls, who had only reigned fourteen years in India, his claim to the throne was at least as good as Humâyûn's.

## THE MOGUL EMPIRE.

91

### The restored Afghan dynasty of SHIR.

CHAP. III. § 5  
A.D. 1556.

(2.) Nor did his method of ruling give his new subjects cause to regret the revolution. He was, in his government of India, wise, benevolent, and, of course, though ambitious, and, in one case certainly, cruel and cruel. This was in the atrocious massacre of the garrison of Raism (in Malwa), a fortress said to have been built by Rāma, which was surrendered on the express stipulation that the lives of its defenders should be spared. Shir Shāh slew them, because *truth is not to be kept with infidels!*

His wise  
government

(3.) He is said to have made a road from Benārat to the bank of the Indus, and from Agra to Multān, with a caravan trail at every stage, and wells at intervals of a mile and a half all along. He was killed at the siege of Kalinjir (in Bundelkhand), A.D. 1555.

His benevolent  
works

His tomb is to be seen at Sasaram, between the towns and the river (Map, p. 4)

His death

34 miles S.  
from Benārat

(4.) The *second* of this restored dynasty was SELIM SHĀH (A.D. 1545-1553), or *Islim Shāh*. He seems to have possessed great ability, and to have laboured for the improvement of the country.

Selim Shāh Shēr,  
1545-1553.

The same year with Selim, died Selim Mahmūd Shāh III. of Gujarat, and Bārhan Nizām Shāh of Ahmednagar.

[Ch. IV. § 24]

(5.) Selim's son, Ferōz, succeeded; but, after three days, was murdered by his uncle, MUHAMMAD ADAL SHĀH (or Adali), who is commonly called the *third* of the restored dynasty.

Muhammad  
Adali Shēr  
(Adali) (the  
Joulaah).

He was a despicable tyrant. His Vazīr was Hīnu, a Hindū of low origin, but of great ability. This man had been a petty shopkeeper; but he fought with the courage of a Paladin, and assumed the title of Vikramāditya.

(6.) Rebellions soon ensued, and the empire was divided into five portions, under rivals—members of the Afghan royal family (1555). IBRAHIM SHĀH, one of these, got possession of Delhi, and is reckoned the *fourth*

Humāyūn's  
return, 1555.



92	<b>THE MOGUL EMPIRE.</b>
CHAP. III. § 6. A.D. 1556.	<b>Humâyûn's return and death.</b>
The battle of Nowshêra June 18, 1555.	<p>of the dynasty. This was the moment when Humâyûn made up his mind to invade India. He soon gained possession of Lâhôr, and, driving SIKANDER SÛR, another of the rivals (called the fifth of the dynasty), to the Himâlayas, regained Âgra and Delhi.</p> <p>This battle, the decisive one, in which Akbar, then a little more than 12 years old, fought (like the Black Prince) by the side of Humâyûn and Beirâm Khân, was fought at or near NOWSHÊRA (June 18, 1555), not far from the Satlej.</p>
Humâyûn's death, 1556.	<p>(7.) Humâyûn had, however, regained at his death but a very small portion of his dominions; for SIKANDER soon reappeared in the Panjâb, and Hêmu, with the army of Adah, was still in Bengâl. While Prince Akbar, then thirteen years of age, was in the Panjâb with Bairâm Khân, Humâyûn fell from the stairs leading to the top of his palace in Delhi, and was killed.</p> <p>He had paused on the steps, hearing the Muezzin's call to prayer, and had seated himself when trying to rise, assisted by his staff, he slipped on the polished stair, and, there being only a low parapet, fell headlong over. He died in a few days, six months after his return (1556).</p>
Humâyûn's character.	<p>(8.) He was superstitious, kindly-hearted on the whole; indulgent, and dilatory in all his movements; and too incessantly occupied in warfare to be able to do anything for his adopted country.</p>
<p style="text-align: center;"><b>III.</b></p> <p>Accession of AKBAR, 1556- 1605.</p> <p>His mother.</p>	<p style="text-align: center;"><b>PART V.—AKBAR.</b></p> <p>§ 6. The Third Mogul Emperor was AKBAR. (1556-1605.) He has been pronounced to be <i>the greatest sovereign that ever swayed a sceptre.</i></p> <p>(1) Akbar's real name was Jalâl-ud-dîn (=the glory of the faith) Muham-mad. His surname is Akbar—the Great.</p> <p>(2) His mother's name was Hamida, a native of Khorasân, of obscure family.</p>



CHAP. III. § 6.  
A.D. 1560-7.

Akbar, the third Mogul, 1556-1605.

[Umards  
=grandees.]  
1560.

Beirâm's rebel-  
lion and death,  
1560.

Akbar's early  
training.

His prospects  
on his accession,  
1560-1567.

regent occasionally exceeded his powers, and unnecessarily alienated the Omrahs, by whom Akbar was persuaded to assume the supreme power in his eighteenth year (A.D. 1560).

Beirâm, after much vacillation, broke out into rebellion; but was soon overcome, and threw himself on the mercy of Akbar, by whom he was treated with the utmost generosity and affection. The old man now set out to visit Mecca, the Muhammadan way of retiring from public life; but was assassinated in Gujarât.

(9.) Akbar was at length emperor in reality.

His training had been such as to fit him for his most difficult task. Brought up among hardships; fighting at the age of thirteen like a hero by the side of Beirâm Khân to recover his father's throne; compelled by the character of Beirâm to exercise in boyhood and youth the utmost prudence and self-restraint; and, aware that a single false step now might lose all, he ascended the throne with sober and prudent resolves to govern well and wisely.

He was, in addition to this, a perfect specimen of an accomplished Muhammadan knight. In knightly courtesy and generosity, in heroic perseverance and magnanimity, in noble simplicity and tenderness of heart, and in philosophic breadth, calmness, and keen perception, he has had few equals in any age or country.

(10.) The adherents of the house of Teimûr in India were, however, at this period, few.

Akbar and his chiefs were a small band of strangers in the land; far more so than William and his Normans after the battle of Hastings.

The Panjâb and the district around Delhi were all that the Moguls could as yet call their own.

(11.) Akbar had first to conquer his own feudatory nobles. Khân Zemân (one of Akbar's own generals), Râz Bahâdur in Mâlwa, Adam Khân, Abdullah Khân, and Asaf Khân, with three other military chieftains,

## Akbar's conquests.

CHAP. III. § 6  
A.D. 1567-68.

made war against him; and in such struggles he was engaged until his 25th year (A.D. 1567).

(12.) He spent the next five years (A.D. 1567-1572) in reducing the Rājputs to submission.

The chief of these was—

(a.) The Rāja of Jeypūr (Ambér), Bahāra (Bihāri) Mal.

Akbar married this Rāja's daughter (1561), and Selim, Akbar's eldest son, was married to another princess of the same family, daughter of Rā; Bhagavān Dās (1585). This Rāja was the first who formed such an alliance. Selim's brother-in-law, Rāja Mān Sing, was one of Akbar's great generals (24), and a commander of 7,000.

(b.) The next Rājput state was that of the Rāna (of Chitōr, or) Oudipūr, Ūdi Sing, son of Rāna Sanga. [§ 3 (12).] With this chief there was an obstinate and bloody war; in which Akbar was victorious, taking *Chitōr*, which then ceased to be the capital of this division of Rājputāna.

In 1540, Rāna Pertab (son of Ūdi Sing) regained a part of his dominions, and founded Oudipūr.

(c.) The third Rājput chieftain was the Rāna of Jodhpūr, (or) Mārwar, Māldēo. This chief for a time was in disgrace; but his son was afterwards much favoured by the emperor.

Akbar married a daughter of the Rāja of Mārwar, called Jodh Bāi. She was the mother of Jehāngir.

In regard to these marriages, it seems probable that to them the vigour of the imperial race for so many generations was partly due. The influence they had in softening prejudices and uniting Hindus and Muhammadans was very great. The Chitōr family alone refused all such imperial alliances, and despised the other Rājput families for permitting them.

The Oudipūr, or Mewar, Rājas are considered to be the most distinguished in Hindūstān. They trace their descent from Rāma, the great head of the Solar race. In A.D. 543, their capital, Barabhipūr, in the Gulf of Cambay, was invaded by a Persian king, son of Noushirvān the Great, whose daughter was married to their royal family. The Queen of Noushirvān was a Christian, daughter of Maurice, Emperor of Constantinople (Goba, who married the Christian princess, founded the state of Edar. From him, Bāpu, the antagonist of the Muhammadans, descended (Ch. ii § 4). Hence the Rāja of Oudipūr is the descendant of a Christian princess, related to the Christian emperors of the Eastern Roman Empire!

(13.) Akbar now annexed *Gujarāt* to his ever-growing empire. (It had been independent from 1391. Ch. ii. § 41.)

Bahādar Shāh [§ 4 (3)] died in 1537. The dissensions that followed his death were so great that Akbar was requested to put an end to the anarchy by taking the kingdom, which, after some severe fighting, he did (A.D. 1573). Ahmadābād became

His struggles  
with the  
Rājputs  
(Ch. ii. p. ch. i.  
§ 23)

(Ch. ii. § 12)

1567.

(Or Chitōr, or  
Bijoli, or  
Udaipur)

The inter-  
marriages of the  
Moguls with the  
Rājputs

(Comp. ch. i.  
§ 27, 28)

(Comp. ch. ii.  
§ 4.)

Gujarāt, 1573

CHAP. III § 8  
A D. 1576-82.

### Akbar's conquests.

The Eastern  
Provinces  
reduced, 1575-  
1592.

the residence of a Mogul viceroy, generally a prince of the royal blood.

Muzaffir Shih, the dispossessed king, became one of Akbar's courtiers. He rebelled afterwards, and committed suicide (A D. 1593).

(14.) Akbar's next conquest was that of *Bahâr, Bengâl, and Orissa*.

Dâud Khân, an Afghân, had taken possession of these provinces. His defeat and death ended the contest (1576). There were, however, serious rebellions afterwards; and both Râja Todar Mal and Râja Mân Sing were employed as viceroys in re-establishing order. Akbar's power was severely tried by these rebellions. Râja Mân Sing, son of Bhagavân Dâs, was the conqueror of Orissa. Orissa was wholly and finally subdued in 1592, and now *no remains of the Afghân power were to be found in Hindûstân*.

Reasons for the  
failure, on the  
whole, of the  
Afghans.

The chiefs of the Afghân clans were jealous of one another; had no bond of union, no national sentiment; and could not, therefore, found any permanent kingdom. Individuals among them possessed genius; but they had neither the power of organization nor persistent energy. They failed to found an empire.

The Panjâb,  
1581.

(15) Akbar's brother, Mirza Hakim, of Kâbul, invaded the Panjâb, A D. 1581.

Attock, 1581.  
(= limit or  
barrier.)

Akbar repelled the invasion, and occupied Kâbul, which afterwards was held by Mirza Hakim in subordination to Delhi.

Cashmir, 1586.  
(Ch. xi § 7)  
(or Cashmere).

Râja Bhagavân Dâs, of Jeypûr, Akbar's brother-in-law, was made governor of the Panjâb. The fort of Attock was then built by Akbar.

(16.) The next conquest was that of *Cashmîr*. The emperor went there in person, and defeated the chief, who became one of the Omrahs of the Delhi Court.

Hill tribes on  
the border,  
1586-1600  
(Ch. xi. § 4.)

(17.) This was followed by a war with various Afghân tribes around the plain of Peshâwar, such as the Yusufzyes (*Eusofzyes*) and Rosheniyas.

These, in one instance, gained a considerable victory over the imperial troops, but were afterwards reduced to some kind of order, though they continue independent to this day.

Sind, 1592.

(18.) Sind was added (in 1592) to the list of Akbar's annexations. The chief whom he subdued became a

## THE MOGUL EMPIRE.

97

**Akbar, the third Mogul. Ahmadnagar, 1556-1605.**

CHAP. III.  
A.D. 1594,  
1595.

commander of 5,000 in the Mogul army, and was appointed governor of Tatta.

This was the wise policy always adopted by Akbar.

The Portuguese asked the Sultan of India to send them a fleet of ships to fight the Portuguese in the East. The first Sepoys in India were the first Sepoys in India.

(19.) Kandahâr, too, came again under Akbar's sway. Kandahâr, then owing to dissensions among the Persians.

Thus Akbar's hereditary dominion beyond the Indus, and all Hindûstân to the Northward except Oudipur, were now completely under his sway. The first Sepoys of his reign had thus been consumed, and he was now justly years of age.

(20.) He next attempted to subvert the power of the Dakhn (aggressive war) the first Sepoys of the Dakhn (the first Sepoys of the Dakhn).

The chief events in the history of the Dakhn, belonging to Akbar's reign, are:

- (1) The battle of Dakhn, 1555.
- (2) The Confederacy of the King of Dakhn and the Portuguese, A.D. 1570.
- (3) The two sieges of Ahmadnagar, A.D. 1570 and 1571.
- (4) The annexation of Kandahâr, A.D. 1595.

(21.) The dissensions in Ahmadnagar between the Hindu and Abyssinian nobles so increased, that Murâd (second son of Akbar) and Muzâ Khan (son of Bâram Khan), were sent to take the divided city.

The city of Ahmadnagar was then in the hands of the late empress, widow of Ali Âdil Shah of Bijapur, and great aunt of the infant Sultan, Balâdar Nizâm Shâh. One of the great heroines in the history of India and of the world. She made peace with her father-in-law, the King of Bijapur, and then the Abyssinian nobles, and defended the city with extraordinary skill and bravery against Prince Murâd who was besieging the city. Akbar was made in the wall, and the defenders were on the point of giving up the city, when the Sultan appeared in full armor, revealed with a drawn sword in her hand, and standing before the breach renewed the struggle which ended at last night by the withdrawal of the Mogul army. The women beheld the birth of

CHAP. III. § 6.  
A.D. 1595-  
1601.

**Akbar, the third Mogul. His sons, 1556-1605.**

thoroughly repaired, and the Regent, who had not quitted her post, ready to meet the assailants. But Murâd abandoned the siege, and a peace was concluded.

Akbar in the  
Dakhan, 1599.  
(*Burhānpūr*, the  
ancient capital  
of Kândesh, on  
the N.W. bank  
of the Tapti.)

Akbar now left the Panjâb (in the vicinity of which he had been from 1554); and, in 1599, arrived at Burhānpūr. Dowlatâbâd had been taken, and Prince Dāniyâl (Akbar's third son), with Mirza Khân, was sent on again to besiege Ahmadnagar.

Civil dissensions had again broken out, and the heroic Chând Bibi was murdered by the opponents of her little grand-nephew.

Ahmadnagar  
taken, 1599.  
(Ch. iv. § 24.)

The Moguls then soon took the city, made a great slaughter of the traitors, and took the young king prisoner. He ended his days in the usual prison, Gwâliôr.

[Spenser died,  
1599.]

The kingdom itself survived under the great Abyssinian, Malik Ambar [§ 7 (5), p. 95]; and was not finally subdued till the time of Shâh Jehân, A.D. 1637.

Kândesh, 1601.

(22.) Akbar next annexed Kândesh. Asîrghar was taken, and Prince Daniyâl made viceroy. Here ended Akbar's exploits in the Dakhan; which he left in A.D. 1601; Âb-ul-Fazl, the great statesman, being left in command.

(20) (a).

The Dakhan at  
Akbar's death.

At the death of Akbar his possessions in the Dakhan were Kândesh, a great part of Berâr, the fort of Ahmadnagar, and the surrounding districts. Not a warrior from choice, his reign was a series of military exploits, almost always crowned with entire success.

(23.) Akbar was unfortunate in his sons. The two eldest, Hasan and Hussain, were twins, and died in infancy.

Selîm, born  
1596, at Sikri.

(a.) Selîm (= *sajety*), who afterwards succeeded him, rebelled in 1601; but Akbar's prudence put down the rebellion, and the Prince was, notwithstanding, made Viceroy of Bengâl and Orissa, and commander of 10,000. He lived, chiefly at *Allâhâbâd*, in drunkenness

(= House of  
God.)

Akbar, the third Mogul. His death, 1605.

CHAP. III § 6.  
A.D. 1601-5.

and debauchery. He caused Āb-ul-Fazl to be set upon and murdered on his way back from the Dakhan.

(b.) Murād (= *desired*) died at the age of 29 (1599).

(c.) Daniyāl (Daniel = *judge of God*) died in 1604, of intemperance.

He married a daughter of the Shah of Bijapūr, Ibrahim Ādī Shāh II. Ferishta, the great historian, was sent to attend the Princess to Burhānpūr.

(24.) Akbar's health at length began to fail. Sorrow for the death of Daniyāl is said to have hastened his end. When it became clear that he could not recover, the usual intrigues regarding the succession to the throne commenced.

The choice lay between Selīm, the only surviving son of the emperor, and Selīm's son, Khūsrū, who had been appointed nominal governor of Orissa in 1593, when he was a mere child.

Selīm's drunkenness and the memory of his rebellion were obstacles to his succession. Moreover, Rājā Mān Singh, of Jeypūr, brother of Khūsrū's mother, and the great general Aziz (or Aḥmad) Khān, his father-in-law, were in the younger prince's favour.

Akbar himself ended the strife by nominating Selīm as his successor, in the presence of the Omrahs, and causing him to gird himself with his favourite scymitar.

The dying emperor then addressed the Omrahs, expressing his hope that there would be no dissension between those who had for so many years been the sharers of his toils and the companions of his glory.

He then asked their forgiveness for any offences he might have been guilty of against them; and, repeating the Muhammadan confession of faith, died, in profession, a good Muslimān. He was buried near Agra.

(25.) To complete the sketch of the life and times of this, the greatest of Eastern rulers, we must add some particulars—

- a. Of his character and personal peculiarities;
- b. Of his religious sentiments;
- c. Of his policy;
- d. Of his friends and companions.

Murād, born  
1570, at Sikri  
in 1599, born  
1592

1601.

Akbar's failing  
health

1605.

His successor

Selīm is  
nominated.

Akbar's last  
moments.

October 12, 1605.  
[Comp. p. 28.  
He was 63 years  
old within a  
single day; and  
had reigned  
nearly 60 years.]



CHAP. III. § 6.  
A.D. 1605.

**Akbar's character, religion, policy, 1556-1605.**

Akbar's  
personal  
character.

(26.) *A. Akbar's character and personal peculiarities.*

(a) In person he was strongly built and handsome; very affable and captivating in manners; sober and abstemious; not taking animal food for a fourth of the year; spending little time in sleep; and fond of hunting and athletic sports. He rode from Ajmir to Agra (220 miles) in two days, and often walked thirty or forty miles in a day. Among other things, he was a great pigeon fancier.

Studios.  
(Comp him  
with *Alfred  
the Great.*)

(b) He was very studios, most methodical in the despatch of business, understood Sanskrit, encouraged every kind of literature, and superintended many important literary undertakings.

Humane.

(c) He was very affectionate, both to his family and friends, humane and compassionate.

When he heard of Selim's causing a man to be flayed alive, he exclaimed, that he wondered that the son of a man who could not bear to see even a dead beast flayed should be guilty of such cruelty.

His unsettled  
faith.

(27.) *B. Akbar's religion.*

(a) Earlier in life he was a consistent Muhammadan; but in 1579 he openly professed latitudinarian sentiments, quite incompatible with orthodoxy.

Eclectic.

(b) He studied Hindû works of science and religion, and made himself acquainted, of course very imperfectly, with the tenets of the Christian religion, though under most unfavourable circumstances. Regular discussions were held, in which Brahmans, Muhammadan doctors, Sikh (Jains), and even Christian priests took part. His leanings seem to have been to the last of these systems.

Policy.

(28.) *c. Akbar's policy.*

(a) This was a conciliating and tolerant policy, dictated by his good sense, benevolent feelings, comprehensive intellect, and wide experience. But for this the Moguls would have soon passed away, as the various Afghan dynasties had before them.

Impartiality.  
(Comp. Euro-  
pean history,  
and observe how  
*Tolerance* was  
there unknown.)

(b) He desired to treat all his subjects alike, to abolish the distinction of Hindû and Muhammadan; and thus to fuse the discordant elements of his empire into one homogeneous whole.

Revenue  
systems.

(c) In revenue matters he introduced great reforms, not involving new principles so much as an accurate

## 198

(HAP III #8)  
A1 1805.

He laboured to reduce the expenses of the colliery, of the revenue, and to prevent the extortion of government officers. His greatest achievement was Rāja Todar Māl. The amount of revenue collected was about 30,000,000 rupees sterling.

(d.) The empire, which at present is not better known than that of inhabitants, was divided into divisions, each of which was ruled under a Viceroy. The laws were made by the Emperor and issued to these Subahdars, who were responsible for the maintenance of the population in any case.

[illegible]

A province ruler was called a *dukhali*. His (-deputy)

(c.) The army. To introduce substantial economy, and efficiency into such an army as this, was a hard task.

The soldiers were ordered to be paid in cash by a sergeant or lieutenant. There were not more than 40 officers, command sergeants, 200 men and 100 women and thirty officers, exclusively from the 1st and 2nd battalions of the 1st and 2nd regiments. They were called upon to

Much corruption ~~was to have~~ existed in the department. The

(29) D. Akbar's friends, companions, and officers were all men of renown.

He possessed that rare but necessary power—entirely wanting in A. M. Khan, and his son Mirza (Al) Ibrahim M. u. n. Khan the general Aziz and Khan Jehan, the Hindu representatives of the Emperor Shah Jahan, Iskander Das, and Man Singh, were ornaments of his court.

(a.) **ÂB-UL-FAZL** (=the father of excellence). This eminent man, and the next in our list, **FAZL**, were sons of a learned man, who taught divinity in Agra. He

CHAP. III § 6.  
A.D. 1605.

Akbar, the third Mogul. His friends, 1556-1605.

His death in  
the same year  
as that of Queen  
Elizabeth

Ayin Akbari.

(Oorcha, Orcha,  
or Urcha.)

Feizi.

Translations  
from the  
Sanskrit.

Todar Mal.

(23, c.)

The first Bour-  
bon, and the  
last Tudor.[The careful  
comparison is  
instructive.]

and his brother were Akbar's most intimate friends and counsellors.

Âb-ul-Fazl rose to the highest military commands, and was prime minister. He died in the forty-seventh year of the reign (1603).

He was the author of (I.) the celebrated *Ayîn Akbarî* (or *Institutes of Akbar*); which contain a minute account of every department of government, and everything connected with the emperor's establishments, public and private; and (II.) of the *Akbar Nâme*, an elaborate panegyric history of the emperor's reign to about 1600.

He was killed by assassins employed by Selîm (23), at Oorcha, in Mâlwa.

(b) FEIZI (=most excellent), the elder brother of Ab-ul-Fazl, (like his brother a most intimate friend of the emperor,) was employed on an embassy to the Dakhân. He was the first Muhammadan that studied Hindû literature, from which he translated many works. He was, moreover, a poet, and more studious, but less a man of the world, than his brother.

The brothers translated the *Mahâ Bhârata* into Persian verse. This great work consisted of 100,000 couplets.

(c.) Râja Todar Mal. Born at Lâhôr, from early youth a soldier, he was at once a great military leader and also the great finance minister who carried out the extensive revenue reforms which have been referred to.

He is described as sincere and honest but vindictive, and a very bigoted Hindû. From 1580 to 1582 he was Viceroy of Bengâl, and ably put down a rebellion there. He was also distinguished in the Afghân wars. Râja Bhagavân Dâs and Râja Todar Mal both died in 1589. These men were the contemporaries of Burleigh and Sully, and rival those great ministers in renown; as their master more than equalled the French Henri le Grand, or the English Elizabeth.

# THE MUGUL EMPIRE.

103

Jehāngir, the fourth Mogul, 1600-1627.

CHAP. III. 17.  
A.D. 1600.

## PART VI. JEHANGIR.

§ 7. JEHANGIR WAS THE FOURTH MUGUL EMPEROR.  
(A.D. 1600-1627.)

IV.  
1600-1627.  
(1600-1627.)

- (1) His name was Jahangir.
- (2) We had have a list of his reign.
- (3) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (4) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (5) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (6) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (7) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (8) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (9) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (10) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (11) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (12) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (13) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (14) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (15) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (16) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (17) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (18) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (19) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (20) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (21) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (22) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (23) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (24) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (25) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (26) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (27) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (28) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (29) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (30) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (31) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (32) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (33) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (34) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (35) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (36) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (37) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (38) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (39) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (40) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (41) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (42) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (43) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (44) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (45) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (46) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (47) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (48) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (49) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (50) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (51) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (52) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (53) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (54) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (55) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (56) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (57) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (58) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (59) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (60) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (61) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (62) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (63) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (64) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (65) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (66) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (67) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (68) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (69) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (70) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (71) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (72) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (73) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (74) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (75) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (76) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (77) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (78) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (79) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (80) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (81) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (82) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (83) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (84) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (85) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (86) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (87) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (88) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (89) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (90) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (91) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (92) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (93) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (94) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (95) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (96) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (97) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (98) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (99) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.
- (100) He was the fourth Mogul Emperor.

1602, 1603.

1608.

1611.

1613.

(3.) Jehāngir was, on the whole judicious in his first public acts.

A. He adopted and even developed his father's measures of reform.

B. He took great pains to give all men opportunities of approaching him, a chain being hung from a part of the wall of the citadel, to which all had access, which chain was connected with a bell in the emperor's private room. Thus every sailor could make himself heard, without the intervention of any officer of the palace.

C. He was more rigid than his father in his attention to the observances of the Muhammadian faith. He restored to the coin the inscription which announces, not only the indisputable truth that "there is one God," but also the declaration, offensive to Hindus, that "Muhammad is His Prophet." In short, though not religious, he was scrupulous in the use of the forms of religion.

Accessible.

His religious opinions.

CHAP. III. § 7.  
A.D. 1605-11.

Jehāngīr, the fourth Mogul, 1605-1627.

Inconsistency.

D. Himself a drunkard during his whole life, he punished all who were detected in the use of wine.

His sons.

(4.) Jehāngīr was as unfortunate in regard to his sons as Akbar had been.

Khūsru.

A. His eldest son, Khūsru, had long been at enmity with him. The mother of this prince was a Rājput princess, whose death had been caused by Jehāngīr's (Selim's) ill-treatment. Akbar had once designed to disinherit Selim for his violence and debauchery. On his father's accession, therefore, Khūsru, thinking himself not safe, fled to the Panjāb, where a large army gathered around him.

§ 6. (12) (24).

Khūsru's rebellion.

Jehāngīr's army was, however, victorious; and Khūsru was seized on the bank of the Jhām, as he was trying to make his way to Kābul.

Jehāngīr's cruelty.

And now Jehāngīr made a display of that cruelty which marked his character, and to which Akbar had ever been so averse. He caused 700 of Khūsru's adherents to be impaled in a line leading from the gate of Lāhōr. The miserable prince was then conducted along the line to "receive the homage of his servants."

1605.

He was deeply affected by this horrid spectacle; and was kept a prisoner, though not in very close custody, till his death in 1621.

Shāh Jehān.

B. From 1623 to the death of the emperor, we shall find his third son *Khurram* in rebellion. He was, at first, Jehāngīr's favourite; and in 1616 was nominated successor to the throne, and received the title of Shāh Jehān, or lord of the world.

Malik Ambar.

(5.) The chief interest of the affairs of the Dakhan is connected with Malik Ambar.

Malik Ambar in Ahmadnagar, 1599-1626.

Ahmadnagar was taken by Prince Dāniyal in 1599 [§ 6 (21)]; but Malik Ambar, an Abyssinian noble of splendid abilities, founded a new capital which was called Khirki (a name afterwards changed by Aurangzib to Aurangābād), where he maintained the government of the young king. He introduced Rāja Todar Mal's revenue system into the Dakhan, and held his

[Comp. ch. iv. § 24.]

## THE MOGUL EMPIRE.

**Jehāngir, the fourth Mogul, 1605-1627.**

CHAP. II. 17.  
A.D. 1611.

ground against the Moguls until his death in 1626. With his death vanished all hope of a better ordered empire in the Dakhan. The nominal king of Ahmadnagar was Murtea Nizām Shāh.

Prince Parviz, the emperor's second son, in 1621 was Viceroy of the Dakhan; residing at Burhānpūr till his death in 1626.

Parviz.

Mirza and Prince Parviz were sent to conquer the Dakhan in 1608. But Mirza was superseded in 1613 by Khān Jehān. Again Mirza, with Khān Jehān, in 1616, were engaged in the same contest, the best part of the Prince being Burhānpūr, while the Emperor was at Macoda. The Dakhan kingdoms nominally submitted. But in 1620 Malik Ambar was again in rebellion, and even besieged Burhānpūr. A compromise was effected.

(6.) In 1611 the great event of the emperor's life, his marriage with the celebrated *Mihrammisa Khānum*, afterwards called *Nūr Jehān* (= *light of the world*, or *light of the palace*: *Nūr Mahāl*), which imparts an air of romance to his whole history, took place. She was of a noble Persian family, which being reduced to poverty, her father emigrated to India. On the way, at Kandahār, *Nūr Jehān* was born. To such indigence were they reduced, that the infant, the mighty empress of world-wide renown, was exposed on the high road, where a merchant saw the child, and compassionately took it for his own. The child's own mother was employed by him as its nurse; and, even in her infancy, *Nūr Jehān* made the fortune of her family; for to the kind assistance of the merchant they owed their advancement.

Nūr Jehān.

Her early history.

Jehāngir (then Prince Selīm) had seen and loved her when as a girl she accompanied her mother, who had free access to Akbar's harem. To remove her from the Prince's sight, she was, by Akbar's advice, married to a young Persian, who was made governor of Burdwān. When Jehāngir became emperor, he attempted to induce *Nūr Jehān's* husband to divorce her: he refused, and in a quarrel that ensued was accidentally killed. *Nūr Jehān* was then sent to Delhi; but, looking upon the emperor as the murderer of her husband, she rejected his overtures with disdain. After a length of time, however, a reconciliation took place,

Nūr Jehān becomes Empress

CHAP. III § 8  
A.D. 1611-15.

## Jehāngir, the fourth Mogul, 1605-1627.

Her unbounded  
influence.Her wise father  
and brother.War with Oud-  
pūr, 1612-1614.Sir T. Roe sent  
by James I.,  
1615.Sir T. Roe's  
Indian ex-  
periences.Shāh Jehān's  
rebellion, 1623.  
His submission,  
1624.

and Nūr Jehān became Empress of India. Her name was put on the coinage with the emperor's, and in all matters her influence was unbounded. Her father, and her brother, Asaf Khān, speedily raised to the highest offices, were wise ministers; and, though Jehāngir still indulged in nightly drunken debauches, the affairs of the empire were thenceforth managed with prudence and humanity.

(7) The war with the Rāna of Mēwār, or [§ 6 (12)] Oudipūr, was brought to a successful issue by Shāh Jehān, who treated the vanquished Rāna with distinguished kindness. His dominions were restored to him on submission, and his son became one of the military leaders of the empire.

(8) Sir T. Roe (an oriental scholar) came as an ambassador from James I. to Jehāngir (1615 to 1618). He passed from Sūrat, through Burhānpūr and Clitōr to Ājmīr, where he met the emperor, who was on his way to Gujarāt. He found the cities of the Dakhan much neglected, and the country generally less prosperous than it had been in Akbar's time. The splendour of the court astonished him. He describes Jehāngir's nightly drunken orgies; and mentions having to bribe Asaf Khān with a pearl of value.

The French traveller Bernier was then in Jehāngir's court, and Feishta was there at the same time as envoy from Bijāpūr.

Jehāngir was well inclined to Christianity, which two of his nephews had embraced.

(9) Intrigues, to ensure the succession to Prince Sherār, the emperor's youngest son (married to Nūr Jehān's daughter by her first husband), disturbed the peace of the empire, and led to Shāh Jehān's rebellion.

Prince Parviz, and the renowned general Muhābat Khān, were sent against the rebel, and drove him from the Dakhan, whence he made his way to Bengāl, where he for a time established himself; but soon after submitted to his father.

Jehângîr, the fourth Mogul, 1605-1627.

AP III 17  
1624-27

(10) Fresh troubles, however, were arising. Nūr Jahan's father, Miran Miran, was a powerful and influential man in the empire. He had been raised to the highest position by Jahangir. He was a friend and partner of Prince Dara Shikoh, the direct opponent of the emperor since Nūr Jahan signed Prince Shikoh to a throne.

Muhâbat was sent for to court, but, finding his disgrace resolved upon, planned and executed a stroke of unexampled audacity. He took the emperor's life on the banks of the Jhelum. Nūr Jahan's move to liberate her husband, and at length resolved to end his captivity. She narrowly escaped being put to death by the victor. Muhâbat was now supreme, and retained his power for nearly a year.

Nūr Jahan at length succeeded in effecting the escape of the emperor; and Muhâbat was compelled to fly to the south, where he joined Shah Jahan.

(11) Meanwhile the eventful years A.D. 1626 and 1627 were fatal to several of the great personages whose history is of importance.

Parvîz died at Burhānpûr.  
Asîf (—dar) another of Akbar's great generals, and Miran Miran, died about the same time.  
Miran (—sary) Khan (the great son of Burhān Khan) died somewhat later.

At length the emperor, too, died, of asthma, on his way from Kashmir to Lâhôr, in his sixtieth year.

The man destined to change the face of India, Shivaji, was born in May of the same year (ch. v. § 9).

A celebrated Vaishnava devotee and author, called Tulsi Dâs, died at Banâres in A.D. 1624.

(12.) Jehângîr, notwithstanding his intemperance and occasional violence, was remarkable for his sincere love of justice, and his endeavours, by himself hearing all

of Parvîz,  
of Malik Am  
of Mirza Khân

of Parvîz,  
of Malik Am  
of Mirza Khân

of Parvîz,  
of Malik Am  
of Mirza Khân

of Parvîz,  
of Malik Am  
of Mirza Khân

of Parvîz,  
of Malik Am  
of Mirza Khân

of Parvîz,  
of Malik Am  
of Mirza Khân

Birth of Shivaji,  
1627.

Jehângîr's  
justice.



CHAP. III. § 8.  
A.D. 1627-8.

Shah Jehân, the fifth Mogul, 1627-1658.

cases referred to him, to remedy the evils which existed in the state.

His maxim is said to have been : "That a monarch should care even for the beasts of the field; and, that the very birds of heaven ought to receive their due at the foot of the throne."

Tobacco.

Like his contemporary, James I., he was an opponent of the use of *tobacco*, then being introduced into both East and West: royal edicts and treatises have failed to arrest its wonderful spread through the world.

## PART VII.—SHAH JEHÂN.

V.  
SHAH JEHÂN.

§ 8. The fifth Mogul Emperor was SHAH JEHÂN A.D. 1627-1658.

Summary of  
Shah Jehân's  
reign.

(1.) A. In this reign Nûr Jehân's brother, Asaf Khân, was a distinguished person.

Khân Jehân  
Lôdi, 1629.

B. Muhabbat Khân still continued conspicuous (1634).

Shâhji.

C. The rebellion of Khân Jehân Lôdi led to extensive wars in the Dakhan.

Saad Ullâ Khân.

D. Shâhji, the father of Sivaji (the founder of the Mahratta sovereignty), came into notice (ch. v. § 7).

His four sons.

E. The minister Saad Ullâ Khân was a remarkable person (died 1635).

An architect.

F. The character and fortunes of the emperor's four sons, and the dissimulation and unfilial conduct of Aurangzib, are especially to be noted.

1628.

G. His skill as an architect, exhibited in the Tâj Mahâl and other buildings, is to be admired.

Shah Jehân's  
cruelty.

(2.) Shâh Jehân, on the death of his father, hastened from the Dakhan to Âgra. Sheriâr, and two of his cousins who opposed him, were defeated and put to death. In fact, *none of the race of Bâber were left alive but the emperor's own children.*

Shah Jehân, the 5th Mogul, 1627-1658.

CHAP. III. § 8.  
A.D. 1628-30.

Nûr Jehân at once retired into absolute obscurity, having a magnificent jointure. She died in A.D. 1646.

Nûr Jehân's after-life.

The two great men were Nûr Jehân's brother, Asaf Khân [§ 7 (6)], and Muhibat Khân [§ 7 (10)], who were highly rewarded by the new emperor for their fidelity to his cause.

The great men of the age.

Khân Jehân Lâdi, an Afghân general of Jehângir, was Viceroy of the Dakhan.

In the Dakhan kingdom of Ahmadnagar, Malik Ambar's son, Fath Khân, was soon set aside by Murteza Nizâm Shâh [§ 7 (5)], who now ruled for himself, but brought his kingdom to the verge of ruin. This destroyed the last hope of a successful resistance to the Mogul Arms.

Ahmadnagar affairs.  
(Comp. ch. iv. § 24.)

(3.) The rebellion of Khân Jehân Lâdi led to a disastrous war, which raged for seven years after his death. At first he seemed to aim at independence; but soon submitted, and was removed from the vicereignty of the Dakhan to Mâlwa, Muhibat Khân succeeding him.

Rebellion of Khân Jehân Lâdi, 1628-1630.

Khân Jehân, suspecting that the emperor distrusted him, raised the standard of revolt in Agrâ itself; was encountered and defeated on the banks of the Chambal, but escaped; and allying himself with the King of Ahmadnagar, Murteza Nizâm Shâh, transferred the war to the Dakhan, where Mukhammad Âdil Shâh, of Bijapur, refused to aid him; and Abdullah Kutb Shâh of Golconda, also held aloof. He was finally defeated and slain in Bandêlkhand, near Kalanjir.

1630.

(4.) Shâh Jehân's generals still carried on the war in the Dakhan, to punish Murteza Nizâm Shâh, who was at length put to death by Fath Khân.

[Ch. iv. § 24.]

The Dakhan was now a prey to the threefold evils of war, pestilence, and famine.

In 1634, Muhibat Khân was recalled to court, and the Moguls made no progress in the Dakhan, until Shâhji, father of Sivaji (ch. v. § 7), set up a new pretender to the throne of Ahmadnagar, and took possession of the territory around. Sultân Shuja was now viceroy of the Dakhan, and was recalled with the general.

Shâhji.

Shâh Jehân now took the field himself; brought both Bijapur and Golconda to terms; and subdued Shâhji, who entered the service of Bijapur. Thus the Ahmadnagar kingdom was extinguished (ch. iv. § 24).

Final subjugation of Ahmadnagar.  
1637.

CHAP. III.  
A.D. 1631-52.

Shâh Jehân, the fifth Mogul, 1627-1658.

Destruction of  
Portuguese  
power in Ben-  
gal, 1631.

(5) After the conclusion of the Portuguese affairs in Bengal, the Portuguese had established a settlement near the artificial port of Sagong. This they called *Golin*, and afterwards, into Hughli. At Chittagong, they had a small factory defended by 1,000 Europeans, and 2,000 native soldiers. To the Mogul governor of Dacca they were of great suspicion. He complained to Shâh Jehân that they had mounted cannon on their fort, and had increased their garrison. "Let the idolaters be expelled," was the emperor's command, and it was obeyed, after terrible slaughter. Thus was the power of the Portuguese in Bengal forever destroyed. The English were rising (Comp. vol. 8, p. 65.)

Ali Mardan  
Khan, 1637.

(6) Ali Mardan Khân, governor of Kandahâr, at this time gave up that province to Shâh Jehân from disgust at the tyranny of his master, the King of Persia. He became a trusted general of the emperor, and especially rendered himself useful as an architect. A tomb at Delhi attests his skill, and bears his name.

His tomb in  
Delhi.

It was repaired and restored by Lord Hastings in 1822.

Kandahar, 1641.

(7) Kandahâr was soon retaken by the Persians, and, though besieged by the emperor's sons, Aurangzeb and Dara, was never again added to the Mogul empire.

Saad Ullâh Khan.

(8) In 1655 saw the implosion of the great rebellion in the Dekhân, and the death of Saif-ul-Mulk, the most able and upright minister of the emperor.

1652.

(9) Shâh Jehân's third son, Aurangzêb, as a reward to the Dekhân, and that prince seemed determined to atone for his failures beyond the Indus by conquering Bijapur and Golkondâ.

War with G.  
Kandahar and  
Bijapur.

The emperor's attack on the latter kingdom was directed by Mir Jumla, its prime minister, formerly a friend of the emperor, but now discontent with his master. He took advantage of the pretext of sending his son, the Mirza, to Penzance, the daughter of Prince Shah Arshad, to the king, Abdullah, to pay tribute, and to secure the king, Abdullah, to pay tribute to Sultan Muhammad Mirza.

# THE MOGUL EMPIRE.

III

Shah Jehan, the fifth Mogul, 1627 1658.

(HAI III)  
A 1657

Jumla afterwards became a great city for its commerce. 1657  
He was put down to his death in 1657  
news reached him of Shah  
Aurangzeb had determined to attack him in 1657  
success

(10) Shih Jihai had four sons and two daughters. 1657  
A Dara Shiko was then in his first year of age.  
frank, generous, and free thought, and the  
the Muhammadans who had been his mother's  
immorulent, and during Dara's reign he was  
father, was deeply interested in the progress of  
He studied Sanskrit and the history of the  
(parts of the Vedas, the Puranas, the  
in Shuja was a great and efficient general.  
son of Shah Jahan, and a great warrior.  
of Bengal.

Aurangzeb was a great and efficient general.  
of dissimulation, and a great warrior.  
some of his most able and efficient generals.  
intensely and faithfully.

Murad the younger was a great and efficient general.  
but he was not intelligent, and he was not a  
sensuist.

He was a great and efficient general.  
He was a great and efficient general.

He was a great and efficient general.  
He was a great and efficient general.

He was a great and efficient general.  
He was a great and efficient general.

(11) On the news of the death of Shah Jahan, 1657  
them, in spite of the fact that he was a great warrior.  
Prince Shuja, then Viceroy of Bengal and Bihar.  
Murad, Viceroy of Gujarat, and the royal treasury  
and prepared to march on the capital. A great  
more cautiously advanced than the other Viceroy of  
his province, secured Mu Jumla, the general, and  
entered into a negotiation with Murad. He repre-

CHAP. III. 8.  
A.D. 1658.

Shâh Jehân, the fifth Mogul, 1627-1658.

Shuja defeated.

Aurungzib de-  
feats Dârâ at  
Ûjein, 1658.

Battle of Âgra.

Shâh Jehân  
taken prisoner  
by his grandson.  
(Oliver Crom-  
well's death.)Character of  
Shâh Jehân's  
reign.Splendour of  
the court.

sented to that weak prince, that he himself was only desirous of going to Mecca; that he would unite with Murâd to oppose the infidel Dârâ, and his idolatrous general, Jeswant Sing; and then would seek a reconciliation with his father.

Dârâ now met and defeated Shuja near Benâres, and the discomfited prince returned to Bengâl.

Aurungzib joined Murâd in Mâlwa, and a battle between their combined forces and those of Jeswant Sing was fought near Ûjein, in which the princes were victorious. Aurungzib still treated Murâd as his superior. Dârâ now advanced one day's march from Âgra to meet Aurungzib, and a severe engagement took place, in which Dârâ's elephant was struck with a rocket and became ungovernable, a circumstance which compelled him to alight. The sight of his elephant with empty howdah spread a panic through his army and the battle and the cause were lost by this trifling circumstance. Dârâ fled to Delhi. Aurungzib rendered devout thanks to heaven for his victory, and congratulated Murâd on his acquisition of a kingdom. Three days after the accomplished dissembler entered Âgra; and, finding it impossible to shake the old emperor's attachment to Dârâ, sent Sultân Muhammad to make his aged grandfather prisoner in the citadel.

(12.) Thus ended Shâh Jehân's reign in 1658, though he lived till December 1666.

This reign was the most prosperous in the annals of the empire, which enjoyed almost uninterrupted tranquillity. Delhi was rising in all its splendour. Those buildings at new Delhi and Âgra, which are still the admiration of the world, were erected under his superintendence. The splendour of his court, his peacock throne, worth six-and-a-half millions sterling, and the grandeur of his buildings, mark him out as the most magnificent of Indian emperors.

## THE MOGUL EMPIRE.

113

### Aurungzib, the sixth Mogul, 1658-1707.

CHAP. III § 9.  
A.D. 1658.

The student will remember that (as in France, before the revolution of 1790) the excessive luxury and splendour of the Court is a sure sign of the abject misery of the common people. So was it throughout the Mogul period.

Délhi is called by Muhammadans, Shâh-Jehân-AbÂd. Old Delhi was founded 57 B.C. by a Hindû Râja. Ch. i. § 22.

The Tâj Mahâl at Âgra, the Mausoleum of Mumtâz Mahâl, Shâh Jehân's queen, built of white marble, and decorated with mosaics of many-coloured precious stones, is in solemn brilliance unsurpassed by any human erection.

His buildings.

In regard to these buildings it has been said, they "built like giants, and finished their work like jewellers." Italian artists are said to have been employed in these works.

(13.) Shâh Jehân left 24,000,000 pounds sterling in coin, besides vast stores of wrought gold, silver, and jewels. He accumulated treasures for Nâdir Shâh. [§ 15.]

Wealth.

His youth had been spent in rebellions and intrigues, but as a ruler he was beneficent and generous.

Character.

## PART VIII.—AURUNGZIB.

§ 9. AURUNGZIB (=ornament of the throne) or ÂLAM-gîr I. (A.D. 1658-1707), was the sixth Mogul Emperor.

VI.  
AURUNGZIB.  
(Orangzib's death  
Restoration,  
Charles II.  
James II.  
William III.  
Mary II.  
Anne)  
Summary of  
Aurungzib's  
reign.

(1.) His title was Âlam-gîr (=conqueror of the universe). By this he is best known in Muhammadan histories of India.

### (2.) Summary.

- a. Observe the miserable duplicity and unnatural cruelty by which he obtained the throne. He has been compared to the English Richard III.
- b. His policy was intolerant—the opposite of that of Akbar.
- c. His constant, fruitless and exhausting contests with the Mahrattas, especially with Sivaji. He killed Sambaji, and imprisoned Sâhu. (Ch. v. § 32.)
- d. His subjugation of the Dakhan kingdoms. (Ch. iv. § 23.)
- e. The English had a firm footing in India before his death. (See ch. vii. § 6.)

CHAP. III. \* 9  
A.D. 1659, 62.

Aurangzib, the sixth Mogul, 1658-1707.

Aurangzib  
conquers the  
dominion, &c.

(3) After gaining possession of Âgra and imprisoning his father, Aurangzib was proclaimed emperor, though he was not crowned for a year afterwards.

Final defeat  
and death of  
Dara, 1659

He had still to pursue Dara, and to meet Shuja, who was advancing from Bengâl. The former fled to Mûltân, and from thence to one after another of the Râjpût chiefs. He was at length betrayed by the chief of Jun, taken to Delhi, where he was paraded through the streets, and put to death as an apostate from Muhammadism. Aurangzib affected to weep over his brother's head.

Shuja's defeat,  
1660

Shuja was soon overthrown by Mir Jûmla. Meanwhile Aurangzib's son, Muhammad Sulân, had deserted to Shuja, married his daughter, and then again joined Mir Jûmla. For this act of disobedience he was kept in prison for seven years in Gwâhâr by his father.

[That was the  
state prison  
Prisoners were  
compelled there  
to drink a nar-  
cotic, which  
enfeebled their  
powers of body  
and mind.]

Shuja with all his family perished miserably in Arakân, whither he had fled.

Death of Shuja,  
1660

Suleimân, son of Dara, was also taken, and consigned with all the other members of the family to Gwâhâr, where he soon died.

Death of Murâd,  
1661

Murâd, on some frivolous excuse, was put to death, A.D. 1661.

Thus, by a series of murders, Aurangzib had now made his throne secure. He could plead his father's example. § 8 (2).

Death of Mir  
Jûmla, 1662,  
1663.

(4) Mir Jûmla, after subduing Assam, died near Dacca, while planning the conquest of China. Thus was the emperor relieved of the presence of a minister and general whose abilities and renown excited his jealous fears.

Aurangzib's  
illness, 1662.  
Intrigues.

(5) Aurangzib had now a violent illness, which shook the foundation of his power. During this sickness of the emperor, Jeswant Sing, the powerful Râjpût chief of Jodhpur, whose dominions extended from Gujarât to Ajmir, and Muhâbat Khân (son of the great

general) from Kābul, combined to effect the release of the ex-emperor Shāh Jehān.

Intrigues were also made by various parties to place one of Aurangzib's sons Muazzam, Alā-ud-dīn or Azīm, on the throne. The excitement of danger stimulated him to health, and by energy and promptitude he defeated all these projects.

(6) It was now that Sivaji came to an open rupture with the emperor. (Comp. ch. v. § 17, &c.)

Shivaji, 1660

Shayista Khān, son of Nur Jehān's brother Alā-ud-dīn, was then viceroy of the Dekhān, and resolved at Akrākotah to break his then ally Sivaji, he was unable to carry out his plan.

Shayista Khān

The emperor's army was defeated at the battle of Samugarh in 1658, and Aurangzib was proclaimed emperor.

Shivaji, 1660

(7) Shāh Jehān died in A.D. 1666, an almost forgotten prisoner.

Shah Jehan  
1666, 1666

About this time Little Tibet and Chhattāgonā were added to the emperor's dominions.

Disturbances in Afghanistan followed, which did not concern Indian states.

In 1676, the Sātavāhās, near Narmadā, rebelled. The fanatics imagined themselves divinely inspired, and Aurangzib, with his own hand, wrote letters from the Kurān, to be taken in the face of the rebels, to dissolve the spells of the magic. But were defeated, and dispersed, but this led to the imposition of the Jizya, a poll tax on all infidels.

The fanatics  
1676, 1676

This fanaticism costing stock the emperor's life, the Mughal empire began to decline. The emperor's health failed, and he died in 1707. Muazzam, the emperor's son, succeeded him.

The Jizya  
1676, 1676

(8) Discontent now spread rapidly and with reason, throughout every class of Hindus. The tolerant system of Akbar had been formally abandoned. A letter, ascribed to Jeswant Sing, is still extant, in which the writer expostulates with the emperor on his intolerance; commends the former princes of the house of Temūr

Discontent ex-  
cited by the Em-  
peror's bigotry  
Jeswant Sing's  
wise advice





# THE MOGUL EMPIRE.

117

Aurangzeb, the sixth Mogul, 1658-1707

CHAP. III.  
1651-86

(11) The wars of Aurangzeb in the Deccan were the most important. He was warring against the Marathas, the Mughal king in the Deccan, the sovereigns of India who were weak and strengthened them in order to fight their common enemy, the plundering Marathas.

His general Khan Durrani was defeated at the battle of Rattas. Durrani was killed and his army was defeated.

In 1681 Aurangzeb sent a large army to the Deccan to fight the Marathas. The army was defeated and Aurangzeb was forced to retreat to Ahmednagar.

The great Marathas were now in a position to attack Aurangzeb's camp.

(12) In this expedition several Marathas were killed. Aurangzeb's army was defeated and he was forced to retreat. The Marathas were now in a position to attack Aurangzeb's camp.

The great Marathas were now in a position to attack Aurangzeb's camp. The Marathas were now in a position to attack Aurangzeb's camp.

But in warlike character the Marathas were deteriorated. Arranged in well formed ranks they seemed better adapted for the Deccan than for actual war against the hardy Marathas.

(13) Bijapur was taken, and its minar by finally destroyed in A.D. 1686. The chief agent in the capture was Ghazi-ud-din I., father of Nizam-ul-mulk, though the emperor himself was present. (Chap. IV § 25)

CHAP. III. F. 9  
1687,  
1706.

**Aurangzeb, the sixth Mogul, 1658-1707.**

Goconda taken,  
1687.

(11) Golconda fell in the following year; its king, Abu Hussain, being sent a prisoner to Doulatâbâd, where he died. But of his new conquests the emperor never had more than mere military possession.

We find Golconda governed, and Panajah occupied by the imperial troops (Ch. v. § 31-32).

Sambaj.

(12) The capture and death of Sambaj and the captivity of Sambaj in the British history (Ch. v. § 32). The emperor's camp was in the year after this was at Banajpur, on the Lima.

The wars  
against the  
Maharattas

(16) The aged emperor was apparently successful. He took Satara in April 1700 and in the following months nearly all the Maharatta strongholds were seized. But the empire was tottering on the verge of ruin. He himself was eighty-one years of age. These sieges involved an immense waste of treasure and life. Every obstacle existed arising from floods, pestilence, heat, and the nature of the country. (Ch. v. § 34-37)

His suspicious  
character.

The chief peculiarity of the situation was this: the emperor himself directed the war. His vigorous ideas kept things in order. The minutest details of government were attended to by himself. Just as the British might remember too well his conduct to Shah Jehan he neither trusted them nor employed them when he could avoid it.

His distrust of all about him the offspring of guilt, was the torment of the emperor, and led to the cause of the ruin of the Mogul empire. As an evidence of it we find Meazzim falling under unjust suspicion, imprisoned for six years (1687-1691), and then released for the Kabul.

Sultan  
Meazzim.

Dryden died,  
1701.

In 1701 Sir W. Norris, English ambassador, visited Aurangzeb in his camp.

Maharattas  
recover them-  
selves, 1706

(17) The Maharattas, with an elasticity that ever marked them, began to recover themselves, soon retook some of their forts, and so embarrassed the emperor that he withdrew to Ahmednagar, which he re-occupied in 1706. He had now been twenty years engaged in these fruitless wars. The Maharatta waves swept over his empire, so much as he retreated. He had much more to impress upon them, and of this he was himself aware before his death. They had

# THE MOUNTAIN

April 1920 the first of the 16th 17th

17107

the first of the 16th 17th

the first of the 16th 17th

the first of the 16th 17th

the first of the 16th 17th

the first of the 16th 17th

the first of the 16th 17th

the first of the 16th 17th

the first of the 16th 17th

the first of the 16th 17th

the first of the 16th 17th

the first of the 16th 17th

the first of the 16th 17th

the first of the 16th 17th

the first of the 16th 17th

the first of the 16th 17th

the first of the 16th 17th

the first of the 16th 17th

the first of the 16th 17th

the first of the 16th 17th

the first of the 16th 17th

the first of the 16th 17th

the first of the 16th 17th

the first of the 16th 17th

the first of the 16th 17th

the first of the 16th 17th

the first of the 16th 17th

the first of the 16th 17th

the first of the 16th 17th

the first of the 16th 17th

the first of the 16th 17th

the first of the 16th 17th

the first of the 16th 17th

the first of the 16th 17th

the first of the 16th 17th

the first of the 16th 17th

the first of the 16th 17th

the first of the 16th 17th

the first of the 16th 17th

the first of the 16th 17th

the first of the 16th 17th

the first of the 16th 17th

the first of the 16th 17th

A spring of water

Has character

contrast to the first

Survey of India at this period.

CHAP. III § 9  
AD 1707.

## Aurangzib, the sixth Mogul, 1658-1707.

Moguls

A Of the Moguls themselves, the next section will tell us all that is necessary.

Mahrattas.

B In the Dakhan the Mahrattas (ch v § 37), apparently humbled, are in reality placed by the destruction of the Dakhan kingdoms, in the most favourable position for founding a permanent dominion. The Peshwas are coming (Ch v § 19).

English.

C The English merchants have now factories on every part of the coast (ch vi § 6), and the three Presidency towns and forts of Calcutta, Madras, and Bombay, are under a regular government, promising stability and development.

French.

D The French, too, are flourishing. The rivalries have not begun (Ch vi § 7).

Europe, 1702-1714.

E In England Queen Anne is on the throne. Marlborough, the Zulfikar Khân of England, is in the zenith of his glory. (Blenheim, 1704) Gibraltar had been taken (1704). The parliaments of England and Scotland were united in the year Aurangzib died.

[Locke died, 1704]

1707.

Whig and Tory factions in England.  
Somers, 1708, to R. Walpole, 1721.

The battle of Almanza in the wars of the Spanish Succession, was gained by the Duke of Berwick the same year.

The Act of Settlement has been passed. A powerful aristocracy in England, like the clique of Omrahs in Delhi, governs the kingdom.

Portuguese.

F The Portuguese have sunk to their present level. (Ch vi § 20).

Dutch

Coming events

G The Dutch are busily engaged in trade (Ch vi § 4).  
H Soon Duplex (1731), Clive (1753), and Hastings (1750) will be in India. Fifty years will bring us to PLASSEY (1757).

Bengal.

I Meanwhile Mir Jaffir (or Mûrshed Kûh Khân), the founder of Mûrshedâbad, is viceroy of the three Subâhs of Bengal, Bahâr and Orissa.

Guru Govind.

J The greatest of the Sikh Gurus, Guru Govind, a man worthy to rank with Sakya Muni, was killed in 1708. He was a man of genius and heroism.

Khân Khân.

(20) The chief historian of these times is styled Khân Khân. The emperor strove to prevent any history being written. Mir Muhammad Hashim, however, composed his history in the latter part of the reign; but concealed it. Hence his title, Khân Khân (=the concealed).

Comp ch vii. § 6]

This historian himself was sent to Bombay in 1695 on a mission. A ship bound to Mecca had been seized by English pirates and "although the Christians have no skill at the sword, by bad management the vessel was taken," says the report (1693).

Aurangzib ordered the English sailors to be seized at his ports, and the French to hold of the emperor's officers. Khân Khân was to set out to do this.

## 134

1 MAY 1951  
1707.5

[illegible]

§ 10. The SEVENTH M *mal* emperor was BHARAT  
 SHAH (=the valiant king) (I SHAH NAWA K *ra*, of the  
 universe) I. A. D. 1707-1712. VI  
 BHARAT I.

(1) On the death of Arungzeb there was the usual contest between the sons of the deceased emperor (See table, p. 122). There were three Muzan Azam and Kām Baksh. The deceased emperor had a first son the eldest of those shall be the emperor but he lost his capital and governing the north and central India. Azam was to share the dominion having Azam as his capital, and governing the south and south west and Kām Baksh were assigned the kingdoms of the north and Bazar.

Moazzim and Azim however simultaneously, claimed the crown, and a bloody battle was fought south of Agra, in which Azim and his men were slain.

Kām Baksh still refusing to acknowledge Muzaffar's authority, a battle was fought near Haidarabad, where he also was defeated and killed.

TABLE OF MOGUL EMPERORS, TO ILLUSTRATE CHAP. III. § 9-25 (1526-1857).

I. BÂBER, § 3.

II. HUMÂYÚN, § 4, 5.

III. AKBAR, § 6.

IV. JEHÂNGÍR, § 7.

V. SHÂH JEHÂN (3rd son.) § 8.

VI. AURUNGZÍB, or ALAMGÍR I. (3rd son), 1658-1666-1707. § 9.

Muhammed,  
Died in Gwálútr,  
1667.  
§ 9 (3).

Muhammed Mozziim.  
or  
VII. BAHÂDAR SHÂH,  
or  
SHÂH ÂLAM I., 1707-1712, § 10.

MOIZ-UD-DÍN,  
or  
VIII. JEHÂNDÂR S., 1712, § 11. IX. FARUKHSHÂH,  
- 1712-19, § 12.

XII. MUHAMMAD S.,  
1719-1748, § 15.

XIII. AHMED S.,  
1748-1754, § 18.

BÍDAR BAKHT,  
ch. v. § 107.

AZÍM-U-SHÂN.  
RAFI-U-SHÂN.

AKBAR,  
§ 9 (9).  
Died 1706.

AZAM, § 10.  
Died 1708.

KÂM BAKSH, § 10.  
Died 1708.

SHÂH JEHÂN,  
§ 20.

X. RAFÍ-UD-DARAJÂT,  
§ 13.

XI. RAFÍ-UD-DAULA,  
§ 14.

XIV. ALAMGÍR II., § 19, 1754-1759.

ALI GHAIR, or  
XV. SHÂH ÂLAM II., 1761-1806, § 24.

XVI. AKBAR II., 1806-1837, § 25.

XVII. Mubhamma<sup>2</sup> Bahádar, 1837-1857, § 25.

JAWÂN BAKHT, § 21.





CHAP. III. § 11.  
A.D. 1708, 12.

**Sikhs. JEHÂNDÂR SHÂH, the eighth Mogul.**

[Sufism is a system of mystic pietism, prevailing chiefly among the Persian Muhammadans.]

Banda.  
Struggles in which both Sikhs and Muhammadans are guilty of great cruelties.

Death of Shâh Alam I.

VIII.  
JEHÂNDÂR SHÂH.

His accession, 1712.

Zulâikâr's ambition and arrogance.

The Two Seindas.  
They espouse

and tolerant monotheism, or, more correctly, pantheism, and sought to comprehend Hindûs and Muhammadans in one. The leading notions of Sufism and the Vêdânta (ch. i. § 15) are blended in his system. The tenets of this sect in many respects resembled those of the Vaishnavas. Their sacred book, the Adhi Granth, written in old Hindî, consists mainly of hymns of Hindû origin. The book is worshipped and chaunted; but is perfectly unintelligible to the Sikhs themselves. Persecution changed an inoffensive sect into a military commonwealth.

Guru Govind, their tenth Guru or spiritual chief, in 1675 completed their organisation. He was slain by a private enemy (1708); but his relatives and followers were visited with every species of cruelty.

He was killed at Mandair, near Bidar, on the Godâvari. There is a Sikh College on the spot.

Banda was now their leader. Their hatred to the Musalmâns, inflamed by long persecutions, broke out into the most fearful atrocities.

Bahâdar Shâh in person went against them, and drove them into the hills; but failed to capture Banda, and the check to the Sikhs was merely temporary. (Comp. § 12 and ch. xi.) In this struggle the emperor spent his last years.

(6.) This emperor died in February, 1712.

§ 11. JEHÂNDÂR SHÂH (A.D. 1712-1713), was the eighth Mogul Emperor.

(1.) Though he was the weakest of the brothers (table, p. 122), Mirza Moiz-ud-dîn, through the influence of Zulâikâr Khân, overcame his rivals; and, with the usual slaughter of kindred, ascended the throne.

(2.) Zulâikâr's motive for aiding him was the belief that the weakness and incapacity of the emperor would throw all power into his hands; but his arrogance disgusted the Omrahs even more than the low debauchery of his master.

(3.) Farrukhsîr, the second son of Azim-u-Shân, the second son of Bahâdar Shâh (see table, p. 122), escaped

## THE MOGUL EMPIRE.

125

### Farukhshir, the ninth Mogul, 1713-1719.

CHAP. III. § 12.  
A.D. 1713.

the slaughter; and solicited the aid of two valiant, able, and powerful noblemen, henceforth to be very prominent in this history: SEIAD HUSSAIN ALI, Governor of Bahâr, and his brother SEIAD ABDULLAH, Governor of Allâhâbâd.

the cause of  
Farukhshir.

(4.) These Seiads, the king-makers of India, espoused Farukhshir's cause warmly; and in a battle near Âgra defeated Zulfikâr and his puppet emperor, Jehândâr. The former was strangled, and the latter was a'so put to death.

Death of Zul-  
fikâr and Je-  
hândâr Shâh,  
Feb. 1713.  
The Life of  
Zulfikâr Khân.  
[§ 10 (2).]

(5.) This is the place for some continuous account of the celebrated rival "king-maker," Zulfikâr Khân. His father was Assad Khân, the head of one of the oldest noble families in the empire.

He distinguished himself under Aurungzib in the war with the Mahrattas, A.D. 1690 (ch. iii. § 9); in the course of which, disgusted at being nominally under the prince Kâm-Baksh, he held traitorous intercourse with the Mahrattas, but at length took Ginji. His and his father's influence gave Bahâdar Shâh the throne; and by that emperor he was made Viceroy of the Dakhan. His advice led to the release of Sâhu. He raised Jehândâr Shâh to the throne, and was his Vazir; but fell a victim to his own treachery; for, having surrendered his master to the Seiads, he was, by their order, strangled.

(Ch. v. § 34.)

(The Treaty of  
Utrecht, 1713.)

§ 12. FARUKHSHIR, A.D. 1713-1719: the ninth Mogul Emperor.

IX.  
THE NINTH  
MOGUL, FARUKH-  
SHIR.

(1.) The personal history of this imbecile emperor is now of much less importance than those of the powerful Omrahs who exercised the sovereignty in his name, and their four rivals. Of six of these a few particulars are added.

(2.) (A. B.) The Barha Seiads (=descendants of the prophet) were a powerful tribe in Bahâr, where they

The Seiads.

CHAP. III. § 12.  
A.D. 1713, 15.

Farukhshir, the ninth Mogul, 1713-1719.

Nizâm-ul-mulk.  
(His name was  
Chên Kilich  
Khan. His  
other titles were  
Ghâzi-ud-dîn  
and Asaf Jah.)  
(§ 16.)

Sâdat Khan, the  
ruler of Oudh.  
Died 1739.  
(§ 17.)

Mîr Jûmâ  
(=*prime minister*).  
(§ 17.)

Dâûd Khân.  
[Ch. vii. § 7 (8).]

Farukhshir's  
Queen, 1715.  
[§ 10 (4) B.]

Intermarriages.

had been long settled. The brothers Hussain Aîf and Abdullah Khân were men of much courage and ability; had been promoted by Azîm-u-Shân, the emperor's father, when he was Viceroy of Bengâl. The former was now made Vazîr, and the latter commander-in-chief.

(3.) (c.) Nizâm-ul-mulk (= *regulator of the kingdom*, born in 1644, and died in 1748), (see table, § 16), at that time was a veteran warrior, a man of consummate cunning, and a prominent person from this period till his death. His descendants are the Nizâms of Haiderâbâd.

(4.) (D.) Sâdat (= *propitiousness*) Khân, originally a merchant from the Persian province of Khorasân, was the confidant and rival of the Nizâm-ul-mulk; held a high military command; and founded the modern kingdom of Oudh. His descendants are the present ex-princes of Oudh.

(5.) (E.) Of less importance is Mîr Jûmâ, a personal favourite of the emperor, who plotted unsuccessfully against the Seids; was for a time Governor of Bahâr; and, finally, was dismissed to his native town of Mûltân. He must not be confounded with others bearing this title.

(6.) (F.) A warrior of great and enduring renown was Dâûd Khân, who acted for a time as Viceroy of the Dakhan, but was now removed to Khândêsh and Gujarât.

He fell in a desperate attempt to overthrow the power of Hussain Aîf. These two (E. F.) failed in their attempts against the Seids: the two former (C. D.), in due time, as we shall see, succeeded.

(7.) Farukhshir married a Râjpût princess, daughter of Ajit Sing, the Râja of Mârwar. This marriage was the condition of a peace with the Râjpûts.

It will be seen that the Muhammadan emperors often married Hindû ladies. This, doubtless, was a main reason why the Mogul emperors were never (with the single exception of Aurangzib)

## THE MOGUL EMPIRE.

127

**Farrukhsir, the ninth Mogul, 1713-1719.**

CHAP. III. § 12.  
A.D. 1716.

bigoted Muhammadans. The mixture of races tended to preserve the imperial family from degeneracy. [§ 6 (12).]

(8.) A matter of importance in the history of British India is connected with this marriage.

Surgeon  
Hamilton.

1716.

At the time it was pending (A.D. 1716), a deputation from the small British factory at Calcutta was sent to the emperor. It happened that with the deputation was a Scottish surgeon, Gabriel Hamilton (a name to be had in honour); and, as the emperor's marriage was delayed by his sickness, the services of the British doctor were sought for, and were successful. The emperor gratefully left it to Hamilton to choose his reward; and he, with rare disinterestedness, asked, on behalf of the Company, for the zemindârship of thirty-seven towns in Bengâl, and exemption from dues on their goods. This in a remarkable degree strengthened the position of the British in India. (Ch. vii. § 6. s.)

(9.) The most important event of this reign is the effectual check given to the progress of the Sikhs. (Comp. § 10, p. 124.)

The Sikhs.

Their leader still was Banda, under whom they were guilty of great atrocities, and who was at length overcome and sent, with 740 persons (saved for the purpose from a general massacre), to Delhi. They were there exposed to every insult from the justly enraged population. Banda was the victim of the most inhuman barbarities, while his followers were beheaded on seven successive days.

The Sikhs'  
sufferings.

They met torture and death with the most heroic courage, disdaining to a man to purchase life by renouncing their faith. The British deputation was at the time in Delhi.

They were nearly extirpated. In 1839 there were only 500,000 of them.

(Ch. xi. § 22.)

(10.) The Mogul territories were now mercilessly ravaged by the Mahrattas.

CH. III. § 13-15.  
A.D. 1717, 19.

Muhammad Shâh, the twelfth Mogul, 1719-1748.

Nizâm-ul-mulk  
in the Dakhan.

Nizâm-ul-mulk (3) was made Viceroy of the Dakhan in 1713; but was soon removed to make way for the all-powerful Seiad Hussain Ali, who was so unsuccessful that he was compelled to make a treaty with Râja Sâhu, acknowledging his claim to his grandfather's possessions, with all later conquests. (Comp. ch. v. § 42.)

1717.

The Mahrattas  
aid Hussain,  
1717-1720.

A body of 10,000 Mahrattas actually marched with Hussain Ali, to enable him to make good his position at Delhi against all rivals. One of their leaders was the first Peshwâ, Bâlâji Vishwanâth, who remained in Delhi till he obtained (in 1720) a ratification of this treaty from Muhammad Shâh. (Ch. v. § 40.)

Assassination  
of Farukhshir.

*The utter degradation of the empire is hastening on.*

1719.

(11.) The vacillating Farukhshir contrived several plots to rid himself of the Seiads; but Hussain Ali anticipated them by assassinating the unfortunate emperor.

X.  
The tenth  
Mogul, 1719.

§ 13. The Seiads now set up a youth called RAFI-UD-DARAJÂT, who died in three months, of consumption. (A.D. 1719, February—May.)

XI.  
The eleventh  
Mogul, 1719.  
[Addison died,  
1719.]

§ 14. They then selected RAFI-UD-DAULA, who also died in a few months. These two names are not in the Muhammadan lists of emperors.

XII.  
MUHAMMAD  
SHÂH'S acces-  
sion, 1719, Sept.

§ 15. (1.) They at length chose Roshen Akhter (see table, p. 122), who took the name of MUHAMMAD SHÂH, and was the last emperor that sat on the peacock throne of Shâh Jehân. He owed his ultimate success mainly to the firmness and ability of his mother. Thus, within twelve years after Aurungzib's death, five princes had occupied the throne.

The overthrow  
of the Seiads,  
1720.

(2.) *This emperor's reign, which lasted from A.D. 1719 to 1748, is one of the most eventful of the whole series. The first great event in it was the overthrow of the "king-makers." This was effected chiefly by a com-*

## THE MOGUL EMPIRE.

129

**Muhammad Shāh, the twelfth Mogul, 1719-1748.**

CHAP. III. § 15.  
A.D. 1720-24.

bination between Nizām-ul-mulk and Sādat Khān. The former openly rebelled, marched southward to recover his old viceroyalty of the Dakhan, and overthrew the generals sent against him by the two Seiads, whose prestige was now well-nigh destroyed.

The two Seiads were Shiās, and their opponents were Sunnis.

Hussain Ali, taking with him the emperor, left Delhi for the Dakhan to oppose Nizām-ul-mulk; but was assassinated on the march.

The surviving brother, Abdullah, acted with energy, set up another emperor in Delhi, and marched to meet the conspirators, but was defeated in the battle of *Shāhpūr*, between Delhi and Agra; soon after which Nizām-ul-mulk returned and took the office of Vazir.

(3) The Rājput̄s now made good their independence in Ajmīr, under Rāja Ajit Sing, the late emperor's father-in-law.

(4) Nor did Nizām-ul-mulk long remain at court. Disgusted with the laxity that prevailed there, he retired to the Dakhan, where he became from that time virtually independent. (§ 16.)

(5) Sādat Khān, the Persian adventurer, who had not been long in India, following his example, proceeded to make himself independent in Oudh, of which he was governor. (§ 17.)

Thus was the disintegration of the empire rapidly proceeding. The great Mahratta chieftains were rising to importance at this very period.

(6.) The attacks made by the Mahrattas upon the empire, and their struggles with Nizām-ul-mulk will be most fittingly recorded in the history of the Mahrattas (ch. v. § 49, &c.) For ten years the old Tūrko-mān was an efficient barrier against these formidable foes of the empire. But it was chiefly during this weak reign that the Mahrattas extended their supremacy.

Nizām-ul-mulk  
in rebellion.

(§ 4.)

Hussain's  
death.

The Battle of  
*Shāhpūr* (or  
*P. Shāhpūr*),  
1720.

Nizām inde-  
pendent, 1724.

Sādat Khān  
independent.  
1724.

(Ch. v. § 45.)

CHAP. III. § 15.  
A.D. 1738-44.

Muhammad Shâh, the twelfth Mogul, 1719-1748.

Nâdir Shâh.  
1738.

(7.) At this time (A.D. 1738) occurred the Persian invasion of India by the terrible Nâdir Shâh, "*the boast, the terror, and the execration of his country.*" This famous warrior, a shepherd from the shores of the Caspian, had delivered Persia from foreign invaders; and had usurped the throne of the country which he had liberated. (Ch. v. § 50.)

Death of Sâdat  
Khân.

It is said, on what seems sufficient authority, that he was invited to India by Nizâm-ul-mulk and Sâdat Khân; that he reproached them in Delhi with their perfidy, and spat on their beards; that the two disgraced traitors resolved to take poison; that Nizâm-ul-mulk, however, only pretended to commit suicide; but that Sâdat Khân, outwitted by his rival, really did so; while the former, in after days, was wont to make merry at his too credulous rival's expense. It is certain that Sâdat Khân died while Nâdir Shâh was in possession of Delhi.

The trick.

1739.

Dakhan affairs,  
1741.

(8.) The Peshwâ, Bâjî Râo, died in 1740. (Ch. v. § 53.) This led Nizâm-ul-mulk, whose power in Delhi was supreme, again to leave court for the Dakhan (1741). His eldest son, Ghâzî-ud-dîn (III.), and his relative, Kamr-ud-dîn, were left as the emperor's confidential advisers. He died the same year as the emperor, A.D. 1748. (See table on p. 132.)

Death of Nizâm-  
ul-mulk.

[Pope died,  
1744.]

(9.) The Rohillas at this period rose into importance. The district now called Rohilkhand was occupied by Alî Muhammad, an Afghân freebooter, in 1744. (Ch. v. § 53.)

The Afghân in-  
vader, Ahmad  
Shâh Abdâlî.

(10.) And now appeared another, and the last, of the great invaders of India; one who changed the whole history of the land; who six times passed the Attock—the first time in the army of Nâdir Shâh, and the last time to break the Mahratta power at the FOURTH battle of Pânipat—AHMAD SHÂH ABDÂLÎ. (Ch. v. § 58.)

(Or second.)

NOTE.—He rebuilt Kandahâr, and made it his capital. He had been Nâdir's treasurer; and made off with all the money on his master's assassination, June 8, 1747.

This was the Abdâlî's first appearance in India at

## THE MOGUL EMPIRE.

131

**Muhammad Shâh, the twelfth Mogul, 1719-1748.**

CHAP. III §15  
A.D. 1748.

the head of an army ; but the valour of Prince Ahmad (the heir apparent), and of the Vazir (1748) for the time rolled back the tide of invasion. (Ch. v § 58)

From this expedition the prince Ahmad Shâh was recalled by the tidings of the death of his father.

The battle of *Sirhind*, where the Abdâli was defeated, was the last great effort of the Mogul empire.

(11.) During this expedition, in 1748, the faithful Vazir Kamr-ud-dîn was killed by a shot while praying in his tent. He was Muhammad's faithful tried friend and companion ; and his death hastened that of his master, which happened in April, 1748, after a troubled reign of nearly thirty years.

(12.) During this reign the north-eastern Subâhs became virtually independent. (§ 9.)

Mûrshed Kûli Khân, of Bengâl, a most able and energetic ruler, was succeeded in 1725 by Shuja-ud-dîn, who died while Nâdir Shâh was in Delhi.

His son was overthrown by a servant of his father, *Ali Vardi Khân*, a man of talent and experience, whom the emperor confirmed in his usurped dominion. (Comp. ch. v. § 57.)

The Battle of  
Surhind the  
two Armies,  
1748.  
The Death of  
Kamr-ud-dîn,  
and of Muham-  
mad Shâh, 1748.

### PART X.—THE NIZÂM'S KINGDOM.

§ 16. This is the place for a summary of the history of that kingdom which Nizâm-ul-mulk founded in the Dakhan.

(1.) [See table, p. 132.] The events immediately following his death will be found in ch. viii. § 16-20. We there see Salâbut Jung, the third son of the wily old Tûrkomân, installed in Aurgâbâd, under the protection of the all-powerful Bussy. His appointment was confirmed by the emperor Ahmad Shâh.

Summary of the  
history of the  
Nizâm's king-  
dom.  
June 29, 1751.



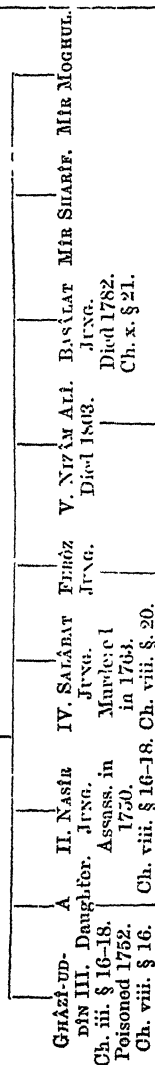
## TABLE TO ILLUSTRATE CHAP. III. § 16.

## THE NIZAMS OF KAIDĒRĀBAD, OR SUBAHDĀRS OF THE DAKHAN.

Ghāzī-ud-dīn I. (ch. iii. § 9 [12]).

Chén Kilich Khān, or Asaf Jāh, or  
Ghāzī-ud-dīn II., or

I. NIZĀM-UL-MULK (ch. iii. § 12). Died, 1748 (ch. viii. § 14).



III. MUZAFFIR JUNG.  
Assassinated in  
1751.

Ch. viii. § 16-2

(GHĀZĪ-UD DĪN IV. VI. MĪRZA SUKANDER JĀH.  
or, MĪR SHAHĀR-UD-DĪN.  
Murderer of Alamgġr II., 1759.

Ch. iii. § 19, 20.

VII. NAZĪR-UD-DAULAT.  
Died 1857.

VIII. AẒĀL-UD-DAULAT.  
Died 1869.

# THE MOGUL EMPIRE.

133

## Affairs of the Nizâm.

CHAP. III. § 16.

(2) The eldest son, Ghâzi-ud-din (III.), had then avoided a contest for his father's dominions. He now, despising the weak and effeminate Salâbat, induced Bâljât Bâjl Râo, the third Peshwâ, to aid in an effort to overthrow him. Salâbat, by a bribe of two lakhs, induced the Peshwâ to retire. (Ch. v. § 61.)

1751.  
The Mahrattas  
bribed by both  
parties.

(3.) Meanwhile Bussy consolidated his power; and, maintaining strict discipline, kept his French force in a state of admirable efficiency.

Bussy in the  
Dakhan.

Bussy saved Salâbat by a masterly march on Pûna, and by two brilliant victories over the Mahratta horse and the entire army of the Peshwâ. An armistice being concluded, Salâbat and Bussy returned to Aurungâbâd; where Ghâzi-ud-din, with a large army, soon arrived; and would perhaps have succeeded in seating himself on the throne, had not the mother of the fifth son of Nizâm-ul-mulk, Nizâm All, who hoped to see her own son sūbâhdâr, administered poison to him (1752); and thus removed one of the two persons who stood between Nizâm All and the elevation which he afterwards attained.

1751.

(4.) The cession of a large tract of country north of the Wain Gangâ, induced the Mahrattas to depart, leaving Salâbat unmolessted. Haidarâbâd now became the capital. (Ch. v. § 62.)

NOTE.—It was founded in 1585 by Muhammad Kutb Shâh. Its antient name was Bhâgnagar. It is on the river Musi, a tributary of the Kishna. Secunderâbâd is about three miles to the north.

(5.) In 1753, Bussy, having been ill-treated by the Subâdar, managed things with such a firm and skilful hand, that he contrived to obtain, as the price of his forgiveness, a grant of the Northern Sirkârs, stretching along the coast for nearly 400 miles from the Chilka lake to the Pennâr, possessing an area of 17,000 square miles, well watered by the Kishna and Godâvari, and yielding an annual revenue of £400,000. This was by far the most valuable possession up to that time acquired by any European power in India.

The Northern  
Sirkârs ceded  
to the French,  
1753  
(These are—  
1. Guntûr.  
2. Condapilly.  
3. Ellîore.  
4. Râjemandri.  
5. Chicacole.)

(6.) In 1755 Bussy accompanied Salâbat on an expedition to Mysor; in 1756 he was compelled by intrigues to defend himself against Salâbat, who had been induced to dismiss him; and in 1758 he saved Salâbat from falling beneath the intrigues of his brother Nizâm All, and the minister Nawâz Khân. Nizâm All was commander-in-chief, and an inveterate traitor. Basâlat Jung was minister, and in the interest of Nizâm All.

(Ch. xii. § 12.)

(7.) On the 18th June 1758, Bussy was recalled by Count Lally, and was compelled to retire from the Dakhan when he

Bussy recalled  
by Lally.

(Ch ix § 11)

The French  
driven from the  
Northern Sir  
kars 1759

Nizâm Ali

The Northern  
Sirikars  
Madras  
timidity

Guntûr  
(Ch x § 21)

Hyderâbâd  
brought under  
the Subsidiary  
System, 1798  
(Ch x § 40)  
The ceded dis-  
tricts  
Munro

was arbiter of its destinies (Ch viii § 31) This was a terrible blow both to Bussy and Salabat

The Marquis de Coiffins who was left in charge of Masulipatam mismanaged affairs and alienated the people and in the following year Colonel Forde sent by Clive from Calcutta drove the French from the Northern Sirikars and obtained a grant of them from the terrified Salabat Jung

This was confirmed by the emperor in 1765 (Ch ix)

(8) Now came the contest between the Peshwa, Balaji Rao, and Salabat Jung (Ch v § 68)

(9) Salabat Jung was dethroned in 1761 by his brother Nizâm Ali, and was put to death by him in 1763 Nizâm Ali then invaded the Carnatic but was stopped by the English Negotiations were entered into for an imperial grant of the Northern Sirikars, which was given, but with unaccountable timidity, the Madras Presidency actually negotiated with Nizâm Ali, and by the treaty of 1766 agreed to hold the Northern Sirikars under the Nizâm, and to pay him eight lakhs a year as a tribute for them Guntûr alone was not to be taken by the English till the death of Basâlat Jung, to whom it had been given as a jaghîr

(10) The affairs of the Nizâm are now mingled up with those of the Mahrattas and with Mysôr, and must be studied in chapters v and vi

(11) In 1798 Lord Wellesley made a treaty with the Nizâm, by which a contingent of 6000 troops was to be supported by the Nizâm, and the French expelled This alliance has not been broken

The districts of Ballâri (Bellary) and Kadapa (Kûrpa or Cuddapa), commonly called the "ceded districts," were made over in 1800 for the support of this contingent Major (Sir F) Munro was appointed collector, and held the appointment for eight years There he died, when visiting them as G of Madras (Ch x § 84)

(12) Nizâm Ali died in 1803 four days after the great war began Metcalfe was Resident at Haiderâbâd from 1820 to 1827 (Ch x § 105) He introduced great reforms In reference to the Haiderâbâd court at this period, it was said that, "it was a sort of experiment to determine with how little morality men can associate together" The scandals connected with the house of Paima & Co must be studied in his life

Sikander Jâh his son, was put on the throne by Lord Wellesley The Haiderâbâd authorities scandalously neglected their



XIII.  
AHMAD SHÂH,  
1748.

The great  
Omrahs.

Ghâzi-ud-dîn  
IV., grandson of  
Nizâm-ul-mulk,  
1752.

(§ 19.)

Mogul against  
Persians, with  
Mahrattas  
between.

Holkâr in Delhi.

Death of  
Ahmad Shâh.

Dismember-  
ment of the  
Empire.  
(Comp. Chs.  
viii., ix.)

§ 18. The thirteenth Mogul emperor was AHMAD SHÂH, a son of Muhammad Shâh. His great antagonist was his namesake the Abdâlî, who now made his second invasion. Peace was purchased, contrary to the wishes of the Omrahs, by the premature cession to the Afghân of the provinces of Lâhôr and Mûltân, in 1748.

The great men of this Emperor's court were Mir Munu, son of the late Vazîr, and Viceroy of the Panjâb; Safdar Jung, nephew of Sâdat Khân, and his successor in Oudh; Ghâzi-ud-dîn, eldest son of Nizâm-ul-mulk; and a son-in-law of the late Vazîr, who bore the title of Khân Khânân.

Ghâzi-ud-dîn (III.) soon left for the Dakhan, where he was poisoned. [§ 16 (3).] He left behind him a nephew, Mîr Shahâb-ud-dîn (or Ghâzi-ud-dîn IV.), then a bold boy of sixteen, destined to become the most notorious man of his time. Between him and Safdar Jung were renewed the feuds of the grandfather of the one and of the uncle of the other.

The Mahrattas, under Mulhâr Râo Holkâr and Jayapa Sindia, espoused the Mogul cause; the Jâts, under Surâjmal; Râja of Bhartpûr, aided the Persian. The weak emperor feared to side with either, and was treacherous to each in turn. (Ch. v. § 6+.)

Holkâr, by a bold movement, drove the emperor into Delhi, which he took. The nobles then, at the instigation of Ghâzi-ud-dîn IV., pronounced Ahmad unworthy to reign, 1754. He was blinded and consigned to prison, where he died.

The Mogul empire was now in a wretched state. Gujarât, Bengâl, Bahâr, Orissa, Oudh, Rohilkhand, the Panjâb, the Dakhan (both the portions occupied by the sons of the old Nizâm, and that possessed by the Mahrattas), and the Carnatic, were fairly severed from the empire.

Delhi waited to see what puppet the young king-maker would place on the throne.

**Alamgir II., the fourteenth Mogul, 1754-1759.**

CHAP. III. 19  
A.D. 1754-76.

§ 19. **ĀLAMGĪR II.**, the fourteenth Mogul emperor, was uncle to the last emperor. (See table, p. 122.) Nothing more need be said of him than that he was assassinated by order of Ghāzi-ud-dīn (IV.) in November 1759.

XIV  
ĀLAMGĪR II.,  
1754-1759

The Nuwāb of Oudh, Sāfīr Jung, died about this time, and was succeeded by Blujī-ud-daula. (Ch. ix. § 13.) Confusion, rapine and anarchy now prevailed throughout Hindūstān.

Oudh  
II. Sāfīr Jung  
III. Blujī-ud-daula

The interest of the reign centres in two persons, the young king-maker, Ghāzi-ud-dīn (IV.),—and Ali Gohar, the heir-apparent, a gallant and generous man, thirty-two years of age at his father's accession, and afterwards emperor under the name of Shāh Ālam II.

The King-maker  
and Ali Gohar

(§ 21)

The former, by his proceedings in Lāhōr, brought upon the empire, and on Delhi in particular, the calamities of another invasion by the dreaded Ahmad Shāh Abdālī. Mīr Munnā had died in Lāhōr, 1756, but the Abdālī confirmed his infant son in the government of the Panjāb, under the guardianship of the widow and Adīna Beg Khān, a Mogul of great experience, but a traitor who had always encouraged the Afghān invasions. The Panjāb soon fell into great disorder, in consequence of which the Shāhs increased rapidly; and all were discontented. Ghāzi now thought his time was come for recovering the province; but he forgot the terrible Abdālī, who would certainly resent any interference with his arrangements. Accordingly Ghāzi set out upon an expedition, taking with him the heir-apparent; seized upon the regent and her daughter, to whom he had been betrothed; carried them to Delhi; and appointed Adina Beg governor of the province. Ahmad immediately crossed the Attock (it was his fourth invasion), and marched to Delhi. The adroit Ghāzi, by the intercession of his mother-in-law, was pardoned; and rose higher than before, being em-

(Ch. v. § 59)

The Abdālī in  
the Panjāb,  
1756.

Ghāzi-ud-dīn's  
expedition to  
Lahor.

CHAP. III. § 20.  
A.D. 1757-61.

**Alamgir II., the fourteenth Mogul, 1754-1759.**

ployed by the conqueror to collect tribute and to pillage.

The Abdālī in  
Delhi, 1757.

The Abdālī entered Delhi 11th September, 1757.  
(Comp. September, 1857. Ch. x. § 25.)

(Ch. x. § 110.)

A pestilence hastened the Afghān's return to Kābul; but he left his son Taimūr Shāh as his viceroy in Lāhōr, and a Rohilla chief, Nazib-ud-daula, as chief minister at Delhi.

The outrages of  
Ghāzi-ud-dīn  
IV.

Ghāzi, as soon as he was relieved of the Abdālī's presence, expelled Nazib; imprisoned the emperor's friend; and laid hands upon the heir-apparent himself. In fact, he gave way without restraint to the despotic violence and cruelty of his natural character. The prince, Ali Gohar, however, escaped (much as Edward I. escaped from the clutches of Simon de Montfort), and after many wanderings, engaged (1759) in the expedition, the result of which is given in ch. ix. § 13.

Shāh Ālam II.  
a fugitive.

Ragobā's ill-  
fated expe-  
dition.  
(Ch. v. § 69.)

§ 20. The Mahrattas are now the central figures on the stage; for this was the time (1758) when Ragunātha Rāo (Ragobā), at the suggestion of Ghāzi and the invitation of Adina Beg (again a traitor), made that showy and splendid, but ill-judged and disastrous, expedition into Lāhōr, which led to the ruin of the Mahratta power, in the decisive overthrow of the *fourth* battle of Pānipat (1761)

(Or *second*.)

The Abdālī's  
last expedition.

Ragobā, the rash, overran the Panjāb, and returned triumphant, but with no spoil; having incurred a ruinous expense, and roused an enemy, the most formidable the Mahrattas ever encountered, the Abdālī; who now made his fifth, last, and most terrible invasion of Hindūstān.

Delhi occupied.

The Afghān advanced towards Delhi in September 1759, prepared to take full vengeance upon the whole Mahratta race. Ghāzi, whose restless and cruel ambition had thrown everything into confusion, now con-

Shāh Alam II., the fifteenth Mogul, 1759-1806.

CH. III 621, 22  
A D. 1759-71.

summated his crimes by the murder of the harmless emperor, whose headless trunk was thrown into the Jamna. This was in November, 1759.

The murder of the Emperor.

The assassin then set up a son of Kām Baksh (see table, p. 122), by the title of Shāh Jehān; but was soon obliged to flee from Delhi, and take refuge with Surāj Mal, the Jāt leader.

From this time the villain Ghāzī disappears (as does his puppet emperor) from history. In 1790 he was found by the English police in Sūrat; and was, by the order of the Governor-General, Lord Cornwallis, allowed to depart for Mecca; and has not been since heard of.

The death of Nizam-ul-Mulk and Ghāzī-ud-din.

The Abdālī now a second time entered Delhi with fire and sword (1760), but soon retired to his camp at Anupshuhur, on the Ganges. The issue of his struggle with the Mahrattas is given in chap. v. § 70.

Abdālī at Delhi for the second time, 1760. W. of the Ganges, 68 miles S. E. from Delhi.)

§ 21. The Mahrattas, under Sivadasa Rāo, before the fatal battle, captured Delhi, where they elevated Jawān Bakht, a son of the absent Shāh Alam, to the throne. There was a proposal to place Viswas Rāo on the throne, but this was judged inexpedient.

The Mahrattas before the fourth battle of Panipat

After the fourth (second) battle of Pānipat, the victorious Abdālī again occupied Delhi; from whence he sent an embassy to SHĀH ĀLAM, or Ali Gohar, acknowledging him as emperor, and appointing his son, Jawān Bakht, regent. He then quitted India.

(See p. 133)

§ 22. The proceedings of Shāh Ālam, who was fighting against the English in Bahār, while the Abdālī was crushing the Mahrattas at Pānipat, are given in chap. ix. § 18. Until Christmas Day 1771, the emperor was an exile, for the most part in Allāhābād, where he kept up a kind of court: a British pensioner. It was not worth his while, during the intervening ten years, to attempt

XV.  
The Nizam al-Din, or Shah Alam II., in exile



CH. III. § 23, 24.  
A.D. 1688.

**Shâh Âlam II., the fifteenth Mogul, 1759-1806.**

to return to Delhi, where Nazib, the Vazîr, with the young prince, managed affairs with great prudence.

Once more the Abdâli came on the stage to assist Nazib. Having defeated the Sikhs in several actions, he advanced to Pânipat; but soon returned finally to Kandahâr.

He died at Mârûf, near Kandahâr, in 1773, in his 50th year. His mausoleum is the great ornament of this city. His descendants appear in Indian history in after times. (Ch. x. § 110.)

Affairs in 1770.

§ 23. At the end of 1770 we find that Nazib-ud-daula, a virtuous and wise minister, is dead; and his son Zabîta Khân fills his place. The Mahrattas occupy Delhi, where the prince regent and royal family reside. Shâh Âlam is still a pensioner in Allâhâbâd. At this time the Mahrattas made overtures to the exiled emperor, offering for a large sum of money to restore him to his position in Delhi. The English dissuaded him from putting himself into their hands; but imposed no restraint on his actions.

Shâh Âlam joins  
the Mahrattas.  
(Comp. Ch. ix.  
§ 13-23.)

In 1771 he thus, escorted by an English force, crossed the borders of the district of Allâhâbâd, to join his new friends the Mahrattas; and from that time the Mogul sovereign never claimed the right to interfere in the provinces to the east of that boundary. (Ch. v. § 81.)

There were now two great parties in Delhi, the Musalmâns, anxious to retain their scanty possessions; and the Mahrattas, striving to recover what they had lost at Pânipat.

Zabîta and his army were soon driven out of Delhi, and the Mahrattas were supreme. (Ch. v. § 85.)

§ 24. We shall not pursue the history of the nominal rulers of Delhi in detail. A few particulars will suffice to connect it with the other parts of this work.

## THE MOGUL EMPIRE.

**Akbar II., the sixteenth Mogul. Muhammad Bahâdar, the seventeenth Mogul, 1806-1837.**

The eldest son of Zabita Khân was Gholâm Kâdir, who on his father's death in 1786, succeeded to his estates. This young chief asserted his claim to the honours possessed by his father, openly rebelled against the emperor, got possession of Delhi and of Shâh Âlam's person, and, under the pretence that he had concealed treasures, after heaping every species of indignity on the poor old emperor, struck out his eyes with his dagger. His sons and grandsons had been previously tortured before his eyes, August 1788. One of these latter was the very Muhammad Bahâdar, who permitted, if he did not instigate, similar atrocities in the same building, in Delhi, in 1857. (Ch. x. § 15.)

The poor blind emperor was soon rescued by the Mahrattas; but remained in extreme penury until, in 1803 (September 16), he was rescued by Lord Lake. (Ch. v. § 130.)

The sceptre of Hindûstân then passed into the hands of the British Government.

Retribution fell on Gholâm Kâdir; for, falling into the hands of Sindia, he was horribly tortured and mutilated; and at length his head was sent, to be laid at the feet of his sightless victim in Delhi. (Ch. v. § 107.)

§ 25. The eldest son of Shâh Âlam, of whose regency we have read, after many fruitless attempts to place his father in his rightful position, disappeared from the scene in 1770.

The second son, AKBAR, succeeded to the nominal dignity in 1806; and was the **SIXTEENTH MOGUL EMPEROR.**

His son, MUHAMMAD BAHÂDAR SHÂH, succeeded in 1837. He was the *seventeenth and last* of the emperors of the race of Taimûr the Tatâr. For his crimes and his fate, see chap. x. § 28.

His sons and grandson, infamous for their barbarous

141

CHAP. III. § 28.  
A.D. 1786-  
1837.

(Ch. v. § 107.)

Gholâm Kâdir's  
atrocities.

Shâh Âlam II.  
is blinded.

He died Dec.  
18, 1806.

XVI.  
Shâh Âlam's  
second son,  
AKBAR II., suc-  
ceeds, 1806.  
(19th Nov.)  
XVII.  
The last Mogul.

CH. III. § 26, 27  
A.D. 1857.**The Extinction of the house of Taimūr. Characteristics of its rule.**

treatment of English women and children, were shot by Captain Hodson, near Humâyûn's tomb—the splendid monument erected by the greatest of the Moguls to the memory of his father (September 22, 1857).

§ 26. This sketch shows us seventeen emperors of one family reigning in succession in Delhi; a circumstance without a parallel in Indian history. This result was mainly due to Akbar's genius, policy, and personal character.

Of these, only six can be considered as real sovereigns.

Struggles for  
the throne.

Their history exemplifies the two ways in which the course of Oriental dynasties always runs. There is first a kind of "natural selection," by which, at the death of a ruler, the strongest surviving scion of the race, after conquering and putting to death the weaker members of the family, ascends the musnud. This, in the case of the Moguls, kept the reins of empire for nearly two centuries in vigorous hands.

Puppet em-  
perors.

Then, when there are no strong men to dispute the succession, the authority falls into the hands of powerful ministers, who place the imperial puppet on the throne, consign him to oblivion, and govern in his stead.

From Akbar to Shâh Âlam I., the former course was pursued; there was a contest at each vacancy, and the strongest grasped the reins; after that time, the latter alternative prevailed, and till the rescue of Shâh Âlam II. by Lord Lake (from which time there was really no emperor), we see a succession of powerful and unscrupulous men, consisting of Zulâikâr Khân, the Barha Seids, Ghâzi-ud-dîn, Gholâm Kâdir, Mahâdâji Sindia, and Daulat R. Sindia, supreme in Delhi.

What did the  
Moguls do for  
India?

§ 27. In bringing this summary of the Mogul history to a close, we pause to ask, what this splendid line of emperors did for India? Magnificent palaces, mausoleums, mosques, and minars, attest their wealth and taste; but we find among their remains scarcely any traces of those works which really contribute to the welfare of a people.

Their works.

The few roads made by Muhammadan rulers were for the passage of their troops; and their canals and tanks were mostly for the supply of the royal palaces.

Everything seems to prove that the *people* were little considered. These rulers, with the splendid exception of Akbar,

## THE MOGUL EMPIRE.

143

### Characteristics of Mogul rule.

CH. III. § 27.  
A.D. 1857.

governed India solely with a view to their own dignity and convenience.

The Moguls had to contend with Afghāns, Rājputs, and Mahrattas. (Nādir Shāh occupied Delhi without opposition.) Against the Afghāns they strove with varied success: the Abdālī was their undoubted conqueror. The Rājputs they were able first to subdue, and then to attach to themselves. Aurungzib never really mastered the Mahrattas, and they soon occupied Delhi. The English have succeeded to their dominion; yet with the Moguls, as such, England has fought no battle.

England released Shāh Ālam II. in 1803, pensioned his son, and transported his grandson—the justice of whose doom no one will be willing to dispute.

Their contests.

## CHAPTER IV.

From Sansk.  
DAKSHINA  
= Southern.

## A SUMMARY OF THE HISTORY OF THE DAKHAN.

Progress of  
Muhammadan  
power in India,  
711.  
(Tārik and Mūsa  
conquer Spain.)  
1022.

1294.  
First Muham-  
madan invasion  
of the Dakhan.

PART I.—FRAGMENTS OF EARLY DAKHAN HISTORY.—  
1294.

§ 1. About three hundred years after the first entrance of the Musalmāns into India under Muhammad Kāsim (A.D. 711), the first permanent establishment of a Muhammadan dominion was made in Lāhōr by Mahmūd of Ghaznī (ch. ii. § 10), A.D. 1022.

This did not, however, affect the Dakhan. There various flourishing kingdoms continued to exist, governed by Hindū Rājas. (Comp. ch. ii., Table, § 3.)

Nearly three hundred years after this (A.D. 1294), the Muhammadan banner was at length carried across the Nerbudda by Allā-ud-dīn Khilji, the nephew, murderer, and successor of Ferōz Shāh. (Ch. ii. § 31, p. 69).

## THE DAKHAN.

145

### Early State of the Dakhan.

CH. IV. § 2 3

The Dakhan now became an extended battle-field; and was so from that time till 1819. Muhammadans are seen fighting there against Hindûs; the Mogul emperors against the Dakhan Muhammadan States; the Mahrattas against both; Haidar Ali against the Mahrattas; and, finally, we see the English giving peace to the whole.

The Dakhan a battle-field for five centuries.

(Comp. ch. v, xii.)

§ 2. The Dakhan is the country south of the Narbadah and Mahânadî rivers; or, all south of the Vindhya range. In general we now restrict the name to the high table-land between the Taptî and Kishtna: the Dakhan proper.

Use of the term Dakhan.

Here was the cradle of the vast Mahratta confederacy. Here too were the Dakhan Muhammadan kingdoms; and here was the Bijanagar Hindû kingdom, so long their rival. Here Nizam-ul-mulk made for himself a lasting dominion. (Ch. iii § 16.) Here was also the scene of Haidar Ali's usurpation and of Tippû's cruelties. (Ch. xii.) Here the Portuguese flourished. (Ch. vi.) Here the French and English fought. (Ch. vii, viii.)

The rulers of the Dakhan proper Hyderabad Mysôr. Koonan. Karnatic.

§ 3. The early inhabitants of this region are called in native works foresters, goblins, and even demons. But a considerable degree of civilisation must have existed in the south, ten centuries before the Christian æra.

Early settlements in the Dakhan.

The tradition, that the Apostle St Thomas visited India, and was martyred at the place still called St. Thomé, in the vicinity of Madras, is highly credible.

The very early native literature of South India is deeply imbued with Christian influences.

The sage *Agastya*, probably in the seventh century B.C., seems to have done much to introduce science and philosophy in the south, bringing thither, in fact, the elements of Brahmanical civilisation. He is identified with the star Canopus. To him is attributed the foundation of the science of Tamil grammar and medicine. None of his works are extant; though many books pass current under his name.

Agastya.

## CH. IV. § 4-6.

## Languages. Pāṇḍya kingdom.

Languages of  
the Dakhan.

§ 4. Five languages were anciently enumerated as spoken in the Dakhan: Tamil, Kanarese, Telugu, Mahratta, and Uriya. To these we must add the language of the Gōnds and other mountain races; with the Tuluva and Malayālim, which are dialects of the one ancient Drāvidian language, of which Tamil, Kanarese, and Telugu are offshoots. These are radically independent of Sanskrit; though they have been enriched by copious additions from that language. Mahratta and Uriya are Sanskrit dialects.

The Tuluva  
country is the  
chief seat of the  
followers of  
Mādhava.

The Tuluva (or Tulu) is the language of South Kanara. It most resembles Kanarese; but contains a great admixture from all the vernaculars of South India.

The people who speak these languages (except the Uriya) are called DRĀVIDIANS. They were probably among the very earliest settlers in India, being of Scythic origin.

The Tamil king-  
doms in the  
South.

§ 5. In the extreme south two very ancient kingdoms, both Tamil, existed—the Pāṇḍya and the Chōla. A Pāṇḍyan king is said to have twice sent an embassy to Augustus. We are told that in the thirteenth century in the south “not a span was free from cultivation” in these provinces. The Pāṇḍyan capital was Madura. That of the Chōla kingdom was Conjeeveram (Kāñchipuram), till A.D. 214, when Tanjore was founded by Kullōttunga, who made it his residence.

This is its form  
in Tamil.  
(Ch. i. § 12.)

The Pāṇḍya kingdom was probably founded in the fifth century B.C. Many traditions exist regarding the PĀṇḍYON rulers. Several of them were distinguished Tamil authors.

The last of the Pāṇḍvas was Kūna Pāṇḍva (=the hunch-back), whose probable date is the middle of the eleventh century A.D.

The south of India is remarkable for three things: the magnificence of its temples, built in a style peculiar to the south, its wonderful system of irrigation; and its languages, hardly inferior in copiousness, flexibility, and sweetness to Sanskrit itself.

Madura.  
The Nāyakan  
princes.

§ 6. In Madura the Nāyakan princes (the first of whom was *Visvanātha*, probably from Vijaya-nagar, an officer of the famous Krishna Rāya, 1559) ruled, till

## THE DAKHAN.

147

### Chôla and Cêra kingdoms.

CH. IV. § 7, 8.

conquered in A.D. 1736 by the Nawâb of Arcot. It is said to have been in 1400 a city "like Delhi." Its rulers were perpetually at war with the Chôla kings.

The origin of the Poligârs (=tent-men) of the south is thus told: *Visvanâtha* placed each of the seventy-two bastions of the Madura fort under a chief, to whom he assigned villages on feudal tenure. Their descendants were the Poligârs of South India.

The Poligâr chiefs.

The greatest of these Nâyakan princes was *Tirumala*, who died in 1659.

Tirumala Nâyakan.

In the Madura kingdom lived the three great Jesuit missionaries, Robert de Nobilibus (1606-1618), John de Britto (1671-1693), and R. G. Reseni (1726).

The Madura Jesuit missionaries.

De Britto died a martyr, having been cruelly put to death by the Sêthupathi of Gârnâd.

We learn from De Nobilibus that in 1610 the Madura college contained 10,000 students.

§ 7. The Chôla kingdom was in later times subject to Vijaya-nagar (Bijanagar); and at length was merged in the Mahrattâ kingdom of Tanjore. (Ch. v. § 17.)

The end of the Chôla Kingdom.

§ 8. The Cêra kingdom comprehended Travancore, Malabâr, and Coimbatôr. It existed from the first to the tenth century A.D.; being absorbed into the Bellâla State.

The Cêra kingdom.

The Western Coast was probably colonised by Brâhmins from Hindûstân. The tradition is that Parasurâma caused the sea to retire from the foot of the Ghât, and gave the districts of Malayalam, Malabâr, and Kanara, thus recovered, to the Brâhmins.

"Edma of the Arc," the Vith Asûdâr, or incarnation of Vishnu.

In the ninth century the southern part broke up into many small principalities, one of which (Calicut) was ruled by the Zamorins in A.D. 1497, when Vasco de Gâma landed there.

The Zamorin.  
(Ch. vi. § 3)

They continued to rule there till the invasion of Haidar Ali in 1766. Their ancestor is said to have been Mân Vikrama, a man of the cowherd caste.

(Ch. xii. § 16.)



## CH. IV. § 9-12.

## Various dynasties in the centre and east.

The Ballála  
Rájpûts in the  
Kanarese  
country.

§ 9. A powerful dynasty called the family of Ballála (or Velála), who were Rájúpûts, reigned over the Kanarese country in the eleventh century.

Their capital was Dwâra Samudra (=ocean-gate), about 100 miles N.W. of Seringapatam. (Ch. III. § 2) They were subverted by the Musalmâns, about A.D. 1310. (§ 17.)

Vitâla Dêva, a king of this race, was converted to the Vâishnava faith by the great reformer Râmanuja, in 1133. The convert took the name of VISHNU VEDDHANA.

The Telugu  
country.

§ 10. The Yâdavas, from the ninth to the end of the twelfth century, ruled over the eastern portion of the Telugu country.

These Yâdavas were Rájúpûts, and came from Kâttiwâr. They ruled at Vijaya-nagar before the foundation of the great state there in 1336.

The Châlukyas.  
Kalyân, in the  
Map.

§ 11. Rájúpûts of the Châlukya tribe ruled in Kalyân (*Kâluini*), about 100 miles west of Haidarâbâd.

From A.D. 250  
to 1182.

The capital of one branch of this family was at one time Râjamandri (from the end of the eleventh to the end of the thirteenth century). They finally fell under Warangal. Before that it is said to have been at Shrikâkolam (Chicacole), and the dynasty to have been of the Pândava race.

A prime-minister of the court of Kalyân, whose name was BASAVA, in the 12th century, founded the sect of Linga worshippers. The worship of the Linga was long before this an essential part of the Saiva system. BASAVA is now worshipped as an incarnation of the Sacred Bull of Siva. His system is very widely prevalent in South India. Basava was the cause of a revolution, which brought the Chalukya dynasty to an end, and Kalyân came under the Deoghur kingdom. (§ 13, 15.)

Warangal (or  
Orankal).

§ 12. More important are the Kings of Andhra, or Telingâna, who at the Christian æra reigned in Magadha, and whose capital in after times was Warangal (founded about A.D. 1088), eighty miles east of Haidarâbâd. In A.D. 1323 Warangal was taken by the Muhammadans. (§ 19. p. 151.)

THE DAKHAN.	149
The Mahratta country.	CH. IV. §13-15.
<p>It soon regained its independence, and became the seat of the Râjas of T'lingâna. They were at perpetual war with the Bâhmini kings, until Warangal was destroyed by Ahmad Shâh (A.D. 1435).</p>	(Ch. ii. § 36)
<p>§ 13. Orissa was governed by princes of the Kôsari family till A.D. 1131. The Gajapatis ruled in Kuttâk till 1568. Râjas from the north, of a race called the "<i>Ganga Vansa</i>," are also mentioned. It was annexed by Akbar, A.D. 1576. (Ch. iii. § 6.)</p> <p><i>Yavanas</i>, whose origin is unknown (perhaps Bactrian Greeks), invaded Orissa in 327, and reigned there to A.D. 473.</p>	<p>Orissa. (= <i>Elephant-loi da.</i>)</p>
<p>§ 14. As belonging to the Mahratta country (<i>Mahârâshtra</i>=<i>great kingdom</i>), we read in the <i>Periplus</i>, (a Greek work, attributed to Arrian, and probably written in the second century A.D.), of <i>Barygaza</i> (= <i>Broach</i>), <i>Plinthana</i> (= <i>Paithun</i>), and <i>Tagara</i> (not now certainly known).</p> <p>The "<i>Periplus</i>" describes a voyage from the Red Sea to <i>Musiris</i>, supposed to be Mangalore.</p>	<p>The Mahratta country.</p>
<p><i>Tagara</i> was a famous Râjpût city, probably on the banks of the <i>Godâvari</i>, a little N.E. of <i>Bhîr</i>, though some think that it was the modern <i>Daulatâbâd</i>. At <i>Paithun</i>, on the <i>Godâvari</i>, reigned <i>Sâlivâhana</i>, said to have been the son of a potter, A.D. 77. This date forms the æra still in use south of the <i>Narbaddah</i>. From <i>Paithun</i>, the capital was, it seems, removed to <i>Dôghar</i>, the modern <i>Daulatâbâd</i>.</p> <p>Our knowledge of the Mahrattas dates from the combination and development of the race under <i>Sivâjî</i>. (Ch. v.)</p>	<p>[Gr.: <i>Periplus</i> = voyage round.]</p> <p><i>Tagara</i>.</p> <p><i>Sâlivâhana</i>, A.D. 77.</p> <p>(<i>Paithun</i> is 32 miles from <i>Aurangâbâd</i>, on the N. bank of the <i>Godâvari</i>.)</p>
<p>§ 15. In the beginning of the twelfth century, Râjas allied to the <i>Ballâlas</i> of <i>Andhra</i>, ruled in this <i>Dôgiri</i></p>	<i>Daulatâbâd.</i>

CH. IV § 16, 17.  
A.D. 1294.

Allâ-ud-dîn Khiljî. Kâfûr.

(=*hill of the gods*), [Dêoghar, or Daulatâbâd]. Some traditions trace these kings up to Sâlivâhana. The whole country at this period was divided among a great number of petty independent Râjas.

These were very wealthy, and the Dakhan seems to have enjoyed peace and prosperity under their rule.

PART II.—A.D. 1294–1347.—FROM THE FIRST IR-  
RUPTION OF THE MUHAMMADANS TO THE FOUNDA-  
TION OF THE BÂHMÎNÎ DYNASTY.

Allâ-ud-dîn  
Khiljî, 1294.The Muhamma-  
dans in the  
Dakhan.

§ 16. Allâ-ud-dîn Khiljî (*the Sanguinary*), in A.D. 1294, with 8,000 cavalry, marched through Berâr to Ellichpûr, and from thence to Dêogiri (Dêoghar), where Râm-dêo-Râo-jadow was then reigning. After a show of resistance the Râjpûts agreed to pay an immense ransom, and to cede Ellichpûr and its dependencies. The weakness of the Hindû states in the Dakhan was thus unveiled to the unscrupulous Musalmân leaders; and the Muhammadans, by the unauthorised and rash zeal of Allâ, obtained a footing in the south.

The student will notice that this beginning of the work, which Aurungzib nearly accomplished, of bringing all India under one dominion, was contemporaneous with the attempt of Edward I. (1272–1307) to reduce all Great Britain under one dominion; a work which the union of the English and Scottish Parliaments, in A.D. 1707, the year of Aurungzib's death, may be said to have accomplished. (Ch. ii. § 31.)

In surveying the ruins of the vast Muhammadan states, which from this time existed in the Dakhan, we must acknowledge that their existence there was unattended with any real benefit to the people.

Kâfûr's expe-  
ditions.  
(Malik=*king*.)

§ 17. Four great expeditions into the south were undertaken during the reign of Allâ-ud-dîn, under Malik Kâfûr (ch. ii. § 32), A.D. 1306, 1309, 1310, 1312.

Kâfûr seems to have taken Madura in the last of these expeditions.

## THE DAKHAN.

151

### Khiljis and the Tughlaks. Bijanagar.

CH. IV. § 18, 19.  
A.D. 1318, 47:

In the course of these Râm-dêo was induced to visit Delhi, where his treatment was so generous, that he returned the attached and faithful vassal of the emperor. The Ballâla Râjas of Karnata were also conquered; (§ 9.) Warangal made tributary; and the whole of the south ravaged as far as Râmeshwar (Râmiseram), where a mosque was built, as the sign of Muhammadan supremacy.

I cannot do off with the Râmishwar here mentioned in the Cape of Good Hope. The common is probably.

§ 18. Harpâl, a son-in-law of Râm-dêo, strove to throw off the yoke; but was overcome and slain alive by Mubârîk Khiljî (A.D. 1318), who led the expedition himself. (Ch. ii. § 33.) At the same time Malâlâr was conquered by Khusrû, who avenged the crimes of Allâ-ud-dîn by the murder of every member of his family. (Ch. ii. § 33.)

Mubârîk Khiljî,  
1318.

Khusrû.

§ 19. Jûna Khân, the second of the house of Tughlak, both before and after his accession, led armies into the Dakhan. (A.D. 1322-1326.)

Jûna Khân,  
(Ch. ii. § 34)

After a severe repulse, he finally took Warangal. (A.D. 1323.) Fugitives from this place are said to have founded Vijaya-nagar (Bijanagar, § 7), on the banks of the Tûmbhadra, A.D. 1336. Their names were Bukka and Hârihâra. It was twenty-four miles in circumference, and its ruins are of the highest interest.

Warangal.

Bijanagar  
(sometimes  
called Anna-  
gudi. It is 20  
miles N.W. of  
Bellary.)

From time immemorial there has been a Hindu city on this site; which was said to have been the royal city of Hanuman and Sugriva, the faithful, and now denied allies of Râma.

Mâdhava Vidyaranya, a learned Brahman, was prime-minister here, and is still a great authority in the south in philosophy and grammar. (A.D. 1350.)

Mâdhava Vid-  
hyaranya.

This kingdom became the most powerful south of the Narbaddah. (§ 29.) From 1490 to 1515 it was at its zenith of prosperity, and ruled over the whole Carnatic.

Jûna Khân also took Bidar.

CHAP. IV § 20.  
A.D. 1347.

**The first independent Muhammadan state.**

The great revolt  
in the Dakhan,  
in the time of  
Jāna Khān,  
1347.

[This was the  
time of Edward  
III and the  
Black Prince.]  
Zuffir Khān.

(Ch. ii. § 36.)

The foundation  
of the Bāhminī  
dynasty, 1347.

Probably four  
generations  
later than  
Rāma.

§ 20. As this emperor's reign was marked by the establishment of the powerful Hindū kingdom of Vijaya-nagar, so was it also by the establishment of the *first independent* Muhammadan kingdom in the Dakhan. The Amīrs of the Dakhan had incurred the displeasure of Muhammad Khān, by sheltering some rebellious nobles from Gujarāt. These broke out into rebellion, and at length ZUFFIR KHĀN, an Afghān, was recognised as their leader, and having overthrown the imperial general, was elected their sovereign. He had been the slave of a Brāhman called Gangu, who is said to have foretold his rise, and to have shown him singular kindness.

He assumed the title of Sultān Allā-ud-dīn Hussain Gangu Bāhminī, the last two titles (=the Brāhman Gangu) being in honour of his old master and benefactor, whom he made his treasurer: the first Hindū who held high office under a Muhammadan ruler. This was A.D. 1347. The new sultān was wise and conciliating, as well as brave. He reigned for ten years at peace with the Hindū kings. At the time of his death the kingdom embraced Mahārashtra, large portions of Telingāna, with Raichūr and Mūḍgal in the Carnatic.

The capital of this kingdom was Kulbūrğa, west of Golconda, 107 miles W. from Haidarābād. Here was the seat of a very ancient Hindū sovereignty.

*This was the grand rebellion by which the power of Delhi was driven north of the Nerbudda, not to cross it again till the days of Akbar.*

This kingdom was at its zenith in 1378 to 1422, under Mahmūd Shāh Bāhminī I., and his nephew Ferōz Shāh.

The poet Hafiz, the Persian Horace, even set out to visit Kulbūrğa; but, frightened by a tempest, gave up the idea.

Ahmad Shāh Bāhminī built Ahmadābād, Bidar, in 1440.

Bidar (Vidarbhā) was the capital, in very ancient times, of Bhīma Sēna, whose daughter Damayantī married Nala, so famous in Sanskrit poetry.

# THE DAKHAN.

153

## The Bāhmīnī Kings of Kulbūrga.

CHAPTER (2)  
A.D. 1347-  
1528.

### PART III.—FROM THE ESTABLISHMENT OF THE BĀHMİNĪ KINGDOM.

§ 21. This dynasty of Bāhmīnī kings, eighteen in number, reigned in the Dakhan for more than 150 years. (A.D. 1347 to 1526, see table below.)

#### § 21. The 18 Bāhmīnī Kings of Kulbūrga (1347-1526).

		A.D.
I.	Allā-ud-dīn Ḥussain Gangū Bāhmīnī The founder. [Zuffar Khan]	1347-1358
II.	Muhammād Shāh I. Continual war with the Hindū kingdom of Bijanapur, in which half a million of Hindūs perished. He divided the kingdom into four parts—Kulbūrga, Daulatabad, Telangana, and Berar.	1354-1375
III.	Muzdāhid Invaded the Carnatic. Assassinated.	1375-1378
IV.	Dūd Shāh. Assassinated after one month and five days.	1378
V.	Mahmūd Shāh I. Encourager of literature. Charitable.	1378-1397
VI.	Ghauz-ud-dīn Assassinated.	1397
VII.	Shams-ud-dīn. Assassinated.	1397
VIII.	Fīroz Shāh The most magnificent of the dynasty. Sent an embassy to Tīmūr. The "emery rock."	1397-1422
IX.	Aḥmad Shāh I. Founder of Ahmadnagar, Bidar.	1422-1435
X.	Allā-ud-dīn II. Bidar now made the capital.	1435-1451
XI.	Humāyūn Shāh Zulm (the Cruel).	1451-1461
XII.	Nizām Shāh.	1461-1463
XIII.	Muhammād Shāh II.	1463-1482
XIV.	Mahmūd Shāh II. Murder of Khājā Jehan Gawān, the best of the Indian Muhammadans.	1482-1518
XV.	Aḥmad Shāh II.	1518-1520
XVI.	Allā-ud-dīn III. Murdered.	1520-1522
XVII.	Wullī-ulla-Shāh (a pensioner)	1522-1526
XVIII.	Kullīm-ulla-Shāh. Died a pensioner in Ahmadnagar.	1526

These kings were entirely indifferent, it would seem, to the welfare of their Hindū subjects, though in general they did not greatly oppress them. Many architectural remains attest their wealth, if not their taste. It is hard to trace any beneficial effects of their dominion.

§ 23. The *Ādil Shāhī* Kings of *Bijapur* (1489-1686).

		A.D.
I.	<i>Yūsuf Ādil Shāh</i> . The Portuguese establish themselves in Goa . . . . .	1489-1510
II.	<i>Ismael</i> . Conqueror of Bidar . . . . .	1510-1534
III.	<i>Mullā</i> . . . . .	1534
IV.	<i>Ibrāhīm I.</i> . . . . .	1534-1557
V.	<i>Alī</i> . Destruction of Bijanagar. Husband of <i>Chānd Bibī</i> . . . . .	1557-1579
VI.	<i>Ibrāhīm II.</i> Splendid mausoleum . . . . .	1579-1626
VII.	<i>Muhammad</i> . Continual struggles with Sivaji. Splendid mausoleum . . . . .	1626-1656
VIII.	<i>Alī Ādil Shāh</i> . Afzal Khān's master. Ch. v. § 14 . . . . .	1656-1672
IX.	<i>Sikandar</i> . A prisoner . . . . .	1672-1689

§ 24. The *Nizām Shāhī* Kings of *Ahmadnagar*.

		A.D.
I.	<i>Ahmad Nizām Shāh</i> . . . . .	1490-1508
II.	<i>Burhān I.</i> A distinguished scholar . . . . .	1508-1553
III.	<i>Husain</i> . Battle of Talikōt. Father of <i>Chānd Bibī</i> . . . . .	1553-1565
IV.	<i>Murteza I.</i> (the "Madman"). The great minister Salābat Khān died 1589. Maloji in his service. Ch. v. § 7 . . . . .	1565-1584
V.	<i>Mitrān Husain</i> (the "Parricide") . . . . .	1584
VI.	<i>Ismael</i> . . . . .	1584-1589
VII.	<i>Burhān II.</i> . . . . .	1589-1594
VIII.	<i>Ibrāhīm</i> . . . . .	1594
IX.	<i>Ahmad II.</i> . . . . .	1594-1599
X.	<i>Bahādur</i> . (His guardian was Chānd Bibī: see p. 97) . . . . .	1599-1599
XI.	<i>Murteza II.</i> Aided Khān Jehān Lōdī. Malik Ambar. Annexed . . . . .	1637

## Dismemberment of the great Bâhmîni dominions.

Ch. IV. § 22, 23.  
A.D. 1526.

The date of the extinction of the Bâhmîni kingdom (A.D. 1526) is remarkable also as the date of the foundation of the Mogul Empire in India. (Ch. in. § 1.) The last real king of the dynasty was Muhammad II. (1463-1486), who subdued Amber Râi of Orissa, and added the Konkau to his dominions, 1477. Mahmûd II., his successor, was a weak prince. Khâji Jehân Gawân was the able, noble, and uncorrupt minister of Muhammad II. He took Conjeveram. By him the kingdom was divided into eight provinces. He was treacherously slain by his jealous fellow-courtiers.

Khâji Gawân.

§ 22. The governors of the provinces into which this great Dakhan kingdom was divided after the murder of Gawân (the infamous contrivers of the death of that upright minister), made themselves independent at different periods after A.D. 1489; thus were formed, with the Bijanagar kingdom, those six powerful kingdoms of the Dakhan, which the successors of Bâber eventually subjugated.

Six Dakhan kingdoms.

The after-struggles between the Muhammedan powers in the Dakhan and the Mogul emperors afforded an opportunity to the Mahrattas, as we shall see, to rise upon the ruins of both. No greater misfortune could have befallen the Musalman dominion in India than this civil strife.

§ 23. Âdil Shâh founded the Bijapûr kingdom, A.D. 1489. From him this dynasty was called the Âdil Shâhi. The kingdom survived till 1686, when it was destroyed by Aurungzâib. (Ch. iii. § 9, see table, p. 154.)

The Bijapûr kingdom, i. e. 1-1686.

The founder, Yûsuf Âdil Shâh, was descended from Agha Morâd (Amurath II.) of Constantinople. He was a great Omrah of Muhammad Shâh II. of Kulbûrga.

Yûsuf Âdil Shâh.

The struggles of the Bijapûr rulers with Sivajî are related in chap. v. § 12, &c.



CH. IV § 24, 25.  
A.D. 1490.

**Ahmadnagar. Golconda.**

The ruins of  
Bijapur.

The extent of  
the Bijapur  
state.

Ahmadnagar  
kingdom, 1490-  
1637.

The extent of  
the Nagar state.

The Golconda  
kingdom, 1512-  
1687  
(Golconda is a  
fortress on a  
hill, 3 miles

The Mahrattas were very numerous in the armies of this state. The Muhammadan kings fomented dissensions among the Hindû tribes; and might long have held them in subjection if they themselves had been united.

The splendid ruins of Bijapur still bear witness to the extraordinary grandeur of the city. The dome of the tomb of Muhammad Âdil Shâh is 130 feet in diameter, little less than that of St. Peter's at Rome.

The limits of the Bijapur state may be roughly stated to have been from the Nira on the north to the Tûmbhadra on the south and from the Bîma and Kishtna on the east, to the sea from Goa to Bombay on the west. (See Map.)

Ferishta, the great historian, resided at the court of Ibrahim Âdil Shâh II., from 1589 to his death, which happened about 1612. (Chap. § 6 [23].)

§ 24. The second of these lesser Dakhan kingdoms was that of *Ahmadnagar*, governed by the Nizâm Shâh dynasty. This was founded by Malik Ahmad, son of Nizâm-ul-Mulk Byherî, an apostate Brâhman of Bijapur, who chiefly brought about the murder of Gawâh. He asserted his independence in A.D. 1490. The kingdom remained till 1637, when it was finally destroyed by Shâh Jehân.

The history of the sieges of Ahmadnagar and its capture in 1600, will found in chap. iii. § 21. (See table, p 154.)  
For the history of Malik Ambar, see chap. iii. § 7 (5).

The dominion of this state extended over the Sûbâh of Aururâbad and West Berâr, with a portion of the Konkan from Damão to Bombay.

Ferishta was born in Ahmadnagar about 1570, and left that kingdom in 1589.

§ 25. The Golconda, or Kutb Shâhî dynasty, was the third of the Dakhani Musalmân kingdoms. It was founded by Kutb-ul-Mulk in 1512. It extended from Bijapur and Ahmadnagar to the sea on the east. The

## 157

CH IV 32, 28  
A 1484.

W V W r 11  
11 12 13 14

The following is a list of the orders of this ban when -

- This is the most important. His general RAJAT KHAN conquered the area. He was one of the four confederates against BIKANER.

4. MUHAMMAD KUTI 1537 to 1611  
He founded Hualad's, the old British-  
nagar, from P. a mistress, then Hualad-  
d from his son.
5. ABUL KASIM 1611 to 1672  
6. ALI HUSSAIN, who died in 1672.

The Berar kingdom, 1884 15, 4

{ 1000000000000000000 }

Barid inhl.

§ 23. The history of these kingdoms of the Dekhan is connected with that of the Portuguese, from A.D. 1498 till the middle of the seventeenth century. (See ch. vi.)

Portuguese in  
the Dakhan,  
148.

CHAP. IV. § 29.  
A.D. 1490.

The Hindû kingdom of Vijaya-nagar.

Vijaya-nagar, or  
Bijanagar, or  
Narasinga.  
(Comp. § 19.)

The confederate  
Muhammadian  
Kings.

Râm Râja.

Battle of Tali-  
kôt, 1515  
(The Floiden  
Field of the  
Hindus of  
South India.)

Chandragiri.

Madras comes  
into the hands  
of the English,  
A.D. 1639.

§ 29. The Hindû kingdom of Vijaya-nagar (Bijanagar or Narsinga) long maintained its place among the powers of the Dakhan; and there Hindû valour longest stemmed the tide of Muhammadan conquest. Its limits nearly corresponded with those of the Madras Presidency. To Europeans it was known, strangely enough, as the kingdom of Narasinga. This Narasinga founded a new dynasty in 1490. He built the forts of Chandragiri and Vellore (*vêlûr=javelin town*). But in 1565, the jealousy of the Muhammadan kings of Bijapûr, Ahmadnagar, Golconda, and Bîdar, led them to combine to effect its destruction.

They were Ali Âdil Shâh, Husain Nizâm Shâh, Ibrahim Kutb Shâh, and Ali Dârid.

The king then was Râm Râja (the seventh of the dynasty of Narasinga), son-in-law of the Krishna Râja (1509-1524), famous in the vernacular literature of the South.

A battle took place at Talikôt on the Kishtna. The confederates behaved with great barbarity after their victory. Râm Râja's head was exhibited at Bijapûr for a hundred years after, covered with oil and red paint.

The Hindû provinces subject to the Vijaya-nagar kingdom now fell into the hands of Naicks (Nâyakar), Zemindârs, or Poligars (= *tent-men*).

The Bijanagar kingdom was, however, for many years maintained in a feeble way at Penkonda, Vellore, Chingleput, and Chandragiri. The ruins of Bijanagar are at *Hunpi*.

The brother of Râm Râja settled at Chandragiri, eighty miles N.W. of Madras, near Tripetti. He made a grant to the English, in A.D. 1639, of the site of the city of Madras (ch. vii. § 6, l.), on the payment of an annual rent of twelve hundred pagodas. Seven years after this, he was a fugitive, and his conqueror, the Sultân of Golconda, gave the English a new lease on the same terms.

Broken up into various histories.

CHAP. IV. § 30.  
A.D. 1688-  
1761.

§ 30. The history of the Dakhan will now fall under the following topics, which will be considered in their places:—

(1.) The efforts of the Mogul emperors to subjugate the Muhammadan kingdoms of the Dakhan, from A.D. 1595 (AKBAR) to A.D. 1688, when the work was nominally completed by Aurungzib, twenty years before his death. (Ch. iii. § 6 [20], &c.) The Mahrattas were, however, never really conquered by this emperor. He reduced the Muhammadan kingdoms, but their subjugation gave ampler scope to the rising Mahratta power. We have therefore,

Mogul contests  
in the Dakhan,  
A.D. 1595-1707.

(2.) The Mahratta history. (Ch. v.) The Mahrattas ruled in Delhi, and were only hindered by Ahmad Shâh Abdâlî from swaying the sceptre over all India.

Mahrattas.

(3.) During the reign of the twelfth Mogul emperor the empire fell to pieces. At this period we have the establishment of the power of the Sûbâhdâr of the Dakhan on an independent footing by Nizâm-ul-mulk A.D. 1724. (Ch. iii. § 12, &c.) [See table, p. 132.]

The kingdom of  
Haiderâbâd,  
A.D. 1723.

(4.) In the south, of almost equal importance is the history of Mysôr. (Ch. xii) Haïdar and Tippû maintained a long struggle with Mahrattas and English. The conquest of Mysôr by the English rendered the issue of their wars with the Mahrattas certain.

Mysôr.

(5.) But perhaps the most important portion of Dakhan history is that of the struggles of the French and English in the Carnatic, which resulted, after many brilliant achievements, in the establishment of the authority of the latter over all the South of India. (Ch. viii.)

The Dakhan  
conquered by  
England  
A.D. 1740-1761.

CHAP. V. § 1.  
A.D. 1627.

Six divisions of Mahratta history.

## CHAPTER V.

THE HISTORY OF THE MAHRATTAS, FROM THE BIRTH  
OF SIVAJI, A.D. 1627, TO THE PRESENT TIME.Summary of  
Mahratta history.

Aurangzib.

Shah Alum I.  
Muhammad  
Shah.  
Shah Alum II.  
Warren  
Hastings.Marquis Wel-  
lesley.

Lord Hastings.

§ 1. To make the summary of Mahratta history more intelligible, it is necessary to divide it into six periods:—

I. Their founder, or rather temporary restorer, Sivaji's life, A.D. 1627–1680;

II. From Sivaji's death to the liberation of Sâhu, 1680–1708, after the death of Aurungzib;

III. To the (fourth) *second* battle of Pânipat, 1761;

IV. From 1761 to 1774, and the FIRST MAHRATTA WAR (with the English), 1774 to 1782: PÂNIPAT and SALBÂI;

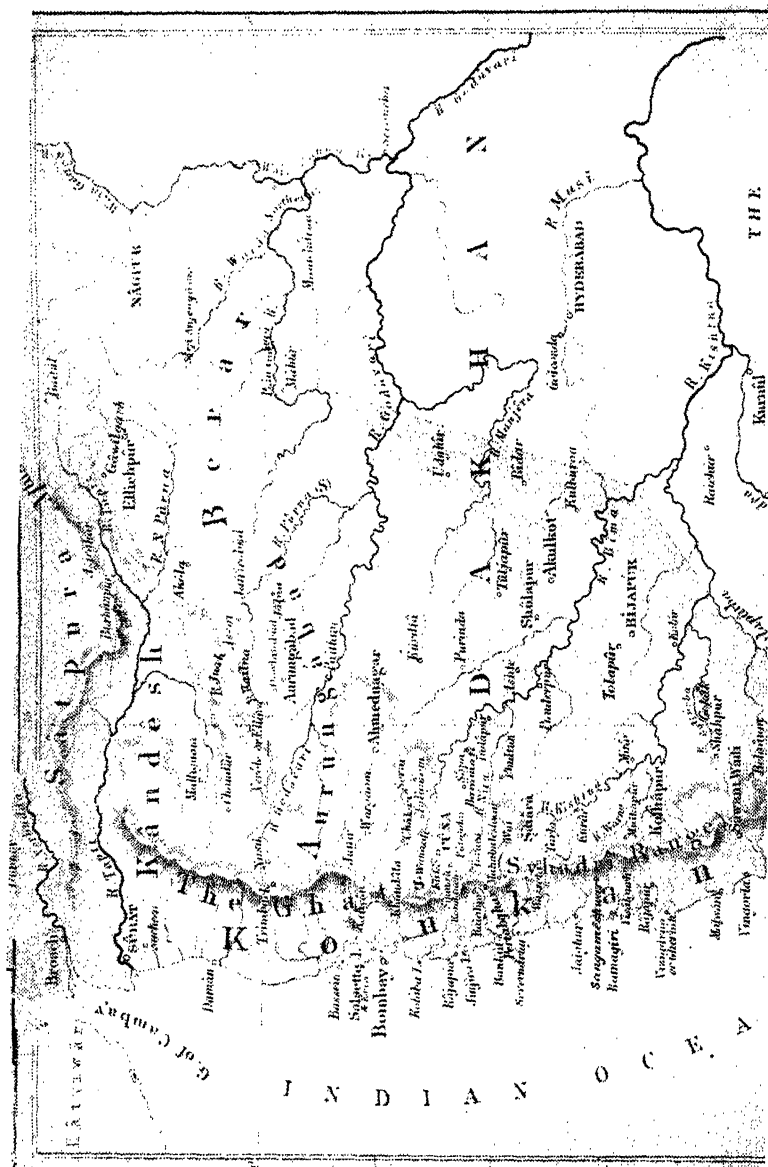
V. From 1782 to 1803, and the SECOND and THIRD MAHRATTA (*English*) WARS, 1803, 1804, and 1805 BASSEIN and ASSAI; and the

VI. Minor events subsequent to A.D. 1805, including the FOURTH MAHRATTA WAR.

1

1

•



# THE MAHRATTA HISTORY.

161

## The Konkan. Hill-forts.

CH. V. § 2-6.  
A.D. 1627.

### PART I.—MAHRATTA HISTORY TO THE DEATH OF SIVAJI, 1680.

§ 2. The country of the Mahrattas, or Mahārāshtra (the great province), is bounded on the north by the Sātpura mountains; and extends from about Sūrat on the west to the Wain Ganga, east of Nāgpur. The boundary follows that river till it falls into the Warda (Varada), on to Mānickdurg, thence to Māhūr, and thence to Goa. On the west it is bounded by the ocean. (See map.) It is watered by the Narbaddah, the Tapti, the Godāvari, the Bīma, the Kishtna, and their many tributaries. The famous Mahratta horses are bred on the banks of these rivers.

The Mahratta country.  
(Properly Marāṭha.)  
(Introd. § 24.)  
Boundaries.

Rivers.

Horses.

§ 3. There is scarcely any authentic history of the ancient Mahratta country. (Ch. iv. § 14, 15.)

Ancient history.

§ 4. The Konkan is the country from the Western Ghāts, called there the Syhadri range, to the sea; and from Sivadashagurh to the Tapti. It is an uneven country, with high hills and thick jungles, having only narrow defiles reaching up to the table-lands. It varies in breadth from twenty-five to fifty miles. Some of the mountain valleys on the eastern edge of the Konkan are called Māwals. From these came the hardy Māwalis employed by Sivaji.

The Konkan and its inhabitants.

Māwals.

In the north are found Bhils, Kolis, and other wild tribes. The Rāmosis, who are often the watchmen in the Mahratta country, are a numerous tribe on the table-land. A Mahratta village is called a *Gāom* (corrupted from the Sansk. *Grāma*). The head of a village is called a Patēll.

Wild tribes.

In the Sāthpurā range are found the Gonds and Kirkus.

Gāom.  
Patēll.

§ 5. The character of the Mahrattas has in all periods been much affected by a peculiarity in the physical geography of their country. Huge masses of basaltic rock, protruded through the alluvial soil in every part of the country, rise to the height of from forty to four hundred feet. These with little labour are capable of being made into fortresses, very difficult of access and of great strength. These were the Mahratta hill-forts.

Hill-forts.

§ 6. The invasion of the Dakhan by Allā the Sanjuary (ch. iv. § 16) brought the Mahrattas into connection with the Musalmāns, against whom they

A.D. 1294.  
Constant warfare between Mahrattas and Muhammedans.



CHAP. V. § 7.  
A.D. 1627.

The ancestors of Sivaji. Shâhji.

continued to contend for centuries with varying success, till English arms and the "subsidiary system" gave peace to the land. (Ch. x. § 36.)

§ 7. There were many very respectable and wealthy chiefs among the Mahrattas in the times of the early Muhammadan kings; and multitudes of Mahrattas were in their armies, and even in civil employments under them.

One family especially, of the name of *Bhonslé*, which traced its descent from the royal house of Oudipûr, had its principal residence at Vêrôle (or Ellôra), near Daulatâbâd. Of that family was the renowned SIVAJI MAHÂ RÂJA (Table, § 27.) His grandfather was Maloji, commander of a party of horse in the service of Murteza Nizâm Shâh I. (A.D. 1577.)

Their tutelary divinity was the goddess Bhavâni of Tûljapûr.

Maloji's eldest son was Shâhji. He was high in favour in the Ahmadnagar court. It was told him by the goddess, according to Mahratta legends, that one of his family should become king, restore Hindû customs, protect Brâhmans and kine, and be the first of a line of twenty-seven rulers of the land.

Shâhji fought under Malik Ambar, and in the wars of the Bijapûr Government against Muhâbat Khân. [Ch. iii. § 7 (5).]

In 1637, when the Ahmadnagar dynasty was finally destroyed, Shâhji sought employment under the Bijapûr Government, of which Muhammad Adil Shâh was then the king. [Ch. iv. § 24; ch. iii. § 8 (4).]

He was then sent into the Carnatic, where a jâghîr, consisting of the districts of Kolâr, Bangalore, Ooskotta, Bâlapûr, and Sira, was given him; and never returned to reside in the Dakhan.

In 1661 he had ravaged the country as far as to Tanjore.

NOTE.—1. KOLÂR (Colar), town and district; forty miles E.N.E. from Bangalore. This was the birthplace of Hyder.

2. BANGALORE, seventy miles N.E. from Seringapatam.

3. OOSKOTTA, sixteen miles N.E. from Bangalore.

4. SIRA, ninety-two miles N. by E. from Seringapatam.

5. BÂLARÛZ, twenty-three miles N. from Bangalore.

The Bhonslé family.

Rajpûts by descent.

Sivaji's grand-father.  
(Ch. iv. § 23.)

Shâhji.

Supposed prediction of Sivaji's greatness.

Shâhji in Bijapûr, 1637.

Shâhji in the Dakhan.

See the map of Mysôr.  
(Ch. xii. § 1.)

# THE MAHRATTA HISTORY.

163

## Sivaji's early training.

CH. V. § 8, 10.  
A.D. 1627, 36.

§ 8. He had three legitimate sons: Sambaji, who was with him in the south; Sivaji, who lived chiefly with his mother Jiji Bai; and Venkaji, sometimes called Ekoji, who was his son by a second wife, and who seems to have occupied Tanjore in 1675.

Shahji's sons.

See table,  
p. 172.

The history is now chiefly concerned with Sivaji, who may be considered the founder of the Mahratta power, or rather the restorer of that Hindû kingdom which had existed in Deoghar before Alâ the Sanguinary invaded the Dakhan.

(Ch. iv. § 15, &c.)  
(Ch. u. § 31, &c.)

§ 9. Sivaji was born at the fort of Sewneri, near Junir, in A.D. 1627, the year in which Jehangir died. (Compare p. 107.)

Sivaji's birth and early training, 1627-1646 (4 miles N. of Puna)

His guardian

When his father left for the Carnatic, he remained under the guardianship of a Brâhman manager, called Dadaji Konedêo, a faithful and intelligent servant of Shahji. The jaghîr under his management, which was the foundation of Sivaji's fortunes, consisted of twenty-two villages south of Satârâ, the districts of Indâpur and Barâmatî, and the Mâwals near Pûna.

His hereditary Jaghîr.

In 1636 Prince Aurungzib was temporarily appointed Viceroy of the Dakhan for the first time. (Ch. iii. p. 109.)

Aurungzib in the Dakhan, 1636.

§ 10. Sivaji was early taught all that it was considered necessary for a Mahratta chieftain to know; but he never could write his name. He was brought up a zealous Hindû, and was thoroughly versed in the mythological and legendary stories current among his countrymen. These had taken the greater hold on his heart and imagination from the fact of their being his only study.

Early training of Sivaji.

His hatred of Muhammadans prepared him for that life of intense hostility to Aurungzib which he led. They were the typical champions of their respective systems.

Hostility to Muhammadans.

CH. V. § 11, 12.  
A.D. 1646, 50.

**Sivaji's early exploits.**

Tornea, 1646.  
(Battle of  
Marston Moor,  
1644. Comp.  
Cromwell's  
rise!)  
Treasure.

§ 11. From his boyhood he seems to have planned his after career; and he was but nineteen years of age when he seized the hill-fort of Tornea, twenty miles S.W. of Pûna.

He found a large treasure in the ruins near this fort; and this he spent in building another, which he called Raighur. These forts are both of them on majestic heights.

"The mountain  
rat."

Born in a fort, his greatness arose from his forts; and in a fort he died. From this circumstance Aurungzib contemptuously called him "a mountain rat."

The eagle is his more fitting type; and if he had not much magnanimity, he soon showed that he had, at least, an eagle's keenness of eye-sight and sharpness of claw.

Sivaji's rapid  
progress.

1647.

His contests  
with Bijapur.

§ 12. His advance was now rapid. He obtained possession of Kondaneh (Singhur), Sôpa, and Pûrandar, meanwhile trying every art to deceive the Bijapur authorities, who probably thought they could crush him whenever they pleased.

Muhammad Âdil Shâh was still King of Bijapur. [Ch. iv. § 23.]

Shâhji, Sivaji,  
and the King  
of Bijapur.

The suspicions of the Bijapur king being at length roused by the acts of open violence to which Sivaji proceeded, he sent for Shâhji, built him up in a stone dungeon, leaving only a small aperture; which was to be closed, if, within a fixed time, his son Sivaji did not surrender himself.

Sivaji's in-  
trigues with  
Shâh Jehân.  
(Comp. pp. 109,  
110.)

Sivaji at once boldly entered into correspondence with Shâh Jehân, who by his artful representations was induced to admit Shâhji into the imperial service, and to give Sivaji himself the command of 5,000 horse.

By the emperor's intercession Shâhji's life was thus saved; but he remained a prisoner for four years.

## The murder of Afzal Khân.

CH. V. § 13, 14.  
A.D. 1651, 59.

§ 13. Sivaji evaded the fulfilment of his promise to enter the imperial service; and, in A.D. 1651, actually carried his marauding expeditions into the Mogul territory.

Sivaji availed himself of the disturbed state of affairs, 1651.

In 1652, Prince Aurungzib for the second time became Viceroy of the Dakhan, and invaded the territories of Golconda and Bijapur. (Ch. iii.)

[p. 110.]

Sivaji now attacked both parties by turns; and availed himself of every turn of fortune to increase his power and possessions.

[Co. ch. iv. § 22.]

In 1656, Muhammad Âdil Shâh died, and was succeeded by his son, Ali Adil Shâh, a youth of nineteen.

(Ch. iv. § 23)

§ 14. In 1659, the Bijapur Government made an attempt to crush Sivaji, which he rendered unsuccessful by an act of treachery celebrated in Mahratta history: *the murder of Afzal Khân.*

The treacherous murder of Afzal Khân, 1659.

This officer allowed himself to be enticed by Sivaji's pretended humility into the wild country in the neighbourhood of Pertabghar, where Sivaji then was. By bribing Afzal Khân's Brâhman messenger, he induced that unfortunate and unwary officer to consent to a conference below the fort, where the jungle had been purposely cut away.

(Pertabghar, or Prataghar, is 11 miles S.W. from Pâna.)

Sivaji's adherents were disposed in the neighbouring thickets, and everything arranged for the effectual crushing of the Bijapur troops. At the appointed time Afzal Khân, armed only with a sword, advanced in his palanquin to the interview, with only one armed attendant.

Sivaji had prepared himself for this morning's work by seeking his mother's blessing, performing his religious duties with scrupulous accuracy; and had put on complete armour beneath his cotton dress. In his right sleeve was a dagger called the *Bichwa*, or scorpion, from its shape. On the finger of his left hand was a

CH. V. § 15, 16.  
A.D. 1662.

## Sivaji's dominions in 1662.

*Wagnakh* (=tiger's claw), a steel instrument with three crooked blades, resembling the claw of a tiger. He now, with studied dissimulation, advanced, manifesting every sign of timidity; and, to encourage him, Afzal Khân dismissed his one attendant.

They met, and in the midst of the customary embrace Sivaji struck the *wagnakh* into the bowels of Afzal Khân, who was despatched after a short resistance. •

The signal for the onset of the ambushed Mahrattas was now given, and the Bijapûr troops were surrounded and cut up. Sivaji, as was his wont, treated the prisoners with humanity. Afzal's head was buried under a tower in the fort of Pertabghar.

The decisive advantage gained by this act of detestable treachery greatly benefited Sivaji's position, and established his reputation among a people to whom cunning was the highest excellence.

Sivaji's reputation for cunning and daring.

Sivaji in 1662.

(The S. Warda, rising near Honawar, and falling into the Tûmbhadra near Savanûr.)

§ 15. Without giving details of his campaigns, we may briefly state that, by the end of 1662, he possessed the Konkan from Kalyân to Goa, about 250 miles of coast; and the table-land above, from the Bîma to the Warda, about 160 miles in length, and in breadth at its widest, from Sôpa to Jinjira, about 100 miles. (See map.) Through the intervention of his father he now was at peace with Alî Âdil Shâh of Bijapûr. He took up his abode at this period in Raighur.

Aurangzib was lying sick at this time. (Ch. iii. § 9 [5].)

Bombay had just been ceded to the English. (Ch. vii. § 6.)

The Portuguese had ceased to be feared or respected. (Ch. vi. § 20.)

His affair with Shayista Khân, 1662. (He was Viceroy of Bengal in 1663.)

§ 16. Shayista Khân (ch. iii.) was now Viceroy of the Dakhan; and Sivaji, at peace with Bijapûr, attacked the Moguls, and ravaged the country to the gates of Aurungâbâd, where the imperial viceroy lived.

Shayista Khân. Sivaji assumes the title of Râja.

CH V § 17, 18.  
A.D. 1663, 4.

Shayista Khân marched southward, and, after storming Châkan, took up his abode in Pâna, in the very house where Sivaji was brought up.

Sivaji now performed one of those exploits, which more than anything else, make his name famous among his countrymen. With a party of his men at nightfall he slipped unperceived into the city, mingling with a marriage procession; passed through the out-offices of the well-known house, and almost surprised the Khân in his bed-chamber. The Mogul escaped with the loss of two fingers; but his son and attendants were slain. Sivaji made off, and ascended his hill-fort of Singhur (twelve miles distant) amidst a blaze of torches. If this adventure did nothing else, it inspired his men, and taught them to despise the Moguls.

The surprise of  
Shayista Khân.

§ 17. His next exploit was the sack of Sûrat. (Ch vii. § 6.) This was particularly offensive to Aurungzib, as pilgrims to Mecca embarked from Sûrat, hence called Bâb-ul-Makkah, the gate of Mecca.

The sack of  
Sûrat, 1664.  
Jan. 5.

In 1664 Shâhji died. He was possessed, at his death, of Arnî, Porto Novo, and Tanjore, in addition to his jâghir. This was the foundation of the Tanjore kingdom.

Death of Shâhji,  
1664.  
(§ 7; 12; 27.)

Sivaji at this time assumed the title of Râja, and began to coin money. He also collected a fleet of eighty-five ships, sailed down the coast, sacked Barcelôr, and plundered the adjacent country. He even attacked some vessels conveying pilgrims to Mecca, and thus doubly roused the indignation of Aurungzib, ever the champion of the Muhammadan faith.

Sivaji's naval  
affairs.

§ 18. The emperor now sent Râja Jey Sing (of Jeypûr) and Dilîr Khân into the Dakhan to chastise Sivaji, and to reduce Bijpûr. Jeswant Sing and Prince Moazzim returned to Delhi. (Ch. iii. § 9.)

CH. V. § 19, 20.  
A.D. 1665, 7.

**Sivaji visits Delhi.**

Sivaji's sub-  
mission.

Foundation of  
Mahratta  
claims.

Sivaji after a while submitted, and surrendered twenty of his forts, retaining twelve as a jāghir from the emperor. His son Sambaji was to become a commander of 5,000 horse in the Mogul army. He was also to have certain assignments of revenues, called chout (or *the fourth*), and Surdeshmukhi (or 10 per cent.), on some districts of Bijapur. This was the ground for the ill-defined claims of the Mahrattas in after times to plunder and extort monies from the inhabitants of every province of the empire.

Sivaji then joined the imperial army, and so distinguished himself in the invasion of Bijapur, that the emperor wrote him a complimentary letter, and invited him to Delhi.

Sivaji in Delhi,  
1666.

§ 19. Sivaji accordingly, in March 1666, with his son, set out for the court.

His escape.

Aurangzib received him haughtily; and Sivaji, finding himself slighted, and, in fact, a prisoner, contrived to escape with Sambaji, and reached Raighur in December. (Shah Jehan died that month. Ch. iii. § 9.)

Bad policy.

Thus did the emperor foolishly throw away the chance of converting an enemy into a firm friend and vassal. Here was a great opportunity mismanaged.

Sivaji again  
independent.

§ 20. Jey Sing was unsuccessful in his attacks on Bijapur, and was recalled. Sultan Moazzim was then made Viceroy of the Dakhan, and Jeswant Sing accompanied him. Dilir Khan remained also as a check on both. Such was Aurangzib's jealous policy.

Sivaji now openly, for a time, resumed his old attitude of defiance; but soon, through the intercession of Jeswant Sing, obtained most favourable terms from Aurangzib; and in fact was left in perfect independence; though, doubtless, this was done with the intention of

Aurangzab in vain tries to subdue Sivaji.

CH. V. § 21, 22.  
A.D. 1668, '76.

crushing him, when an opportunity should present itself.

In 1668 he overruled the courts of Bijapur and Golkonda to pay him tribute.

He imposed the years 1668 and 1669 in revenue, and completing the internal arrangements of his kingdom.

The Mahratta  
invasion  
founder

§ 21. At this time sultân Morizzum and Jevane Sing were regularly receiving money from Sivaji. The coming to the knowledge of Aurangzab, he wrote to threaten both with punishment, if the 'mountain rat' were not caught. Sivaji, now raised into a lion, began to seize upon the forts around. Especially is the storming of Raighur famous, in which after the capture of Malasrai, one of his most famous warriors, was slain. He also a second time sacked Surat, but the English again successfully defended their factory.

The storming  
of RaighurThe second visit  
of Surat  
(October 1671)

§ 22. In 1674 Sivaji was solemnly enthroned at Raighur. He was then weighed against gold; and the sum, 16,000 pagodas (about ten stones), given to Brâhmans. From that time he assumed the most high-sounding titles, and maintained more than royal dignity in all his actions.

Sivaji en-  
throned, 1674.

Sivaji a Râja.

At the time of his enthronement, Mr. Henry Oxerlen (Governor of Bombay, 1707-1709), was at Raighur, negotiating a treaty between Sivaji and the English.

[Milton died,  
1674.]

The former agreed, among other things, to give compensation to the English for their losses at Râjapûr.

§ 23. In 1676 Sivaji undertook his celebrated expedition into the Carnatic. His object was to enforce his claims to half the possessions of Shâhji.

His Carnatic  
expedition, 1676.

In his way he had an interview with Kutb Shâh of Golconda, when a treaty was negotiated between them.



CH. V § 24, 26  
A.D. 1677, 80.

**Sivaji's death.**

**His enthusiasm.**

An instance of the immense hold which his ancestral religion had on his mind occurred on this march. He visited a temple of Bhavâni on his route, and was wrought up to such a pitch of enthusiasm by the penances and ceremonies he performed there, that he drew his sword to sacrifice himself before the image of the goddess. He was prevented from consummating the sacrifice, and his future victories and glories were announced by the priests of the temple.

Sivaji's conquests in the South, 1677.

§ 24. He soon made himself master of the whole of his father's jâghîr; took Gingî, Vellore, and many places in the neighbourhood; and came to an agreement with his half-brother Venkaji, or Ekojî, then in Tanjore, by which a portion of the revenues of the whole territory in his possession was to be paid him annually.

In Tanjore, 1677.

On his return he plundered Jâlna, and was attacked by Dilîr Khân's orders on his way to Raighur with the plunder; but succeeded in beating off his assailants and making his escape. (Ch. vii. § 7.)

His son, Sambaji.

§ 25. Sivaji had now a great affliction in the bad conduct of his son, Sambaji; who, being put under restraint for outrageous conduct, actually went over to Dilîr Khân, who strove to use him in the furtherance of intrigues against his father; but, on the emperor ordering that he should be sent a prisoner to Delhi, the Mogul general connived at his escape.

His death, 1680.

§ 26. Sivaji's last days drew near. He died at Raighur of fever, brought on by a swelling in his knee-joint, on the 5th April 1680.

His character.

To Sivaji must be conceded a high place among the men who have possessed great qualities, have had a mighty power to influence their fellow-men, and have

## Sambaji's worthless character.

CH. V. 27, 29  
A.D. 1680, 82.

therefore accomplished great things; and whose name and fame will endure.

With him the dynasty may be said to have fallen. None of his descendants had any vigour or ability.

Mahratta greatness depended henceforth on the feudatory chieftains and officers of the kingdom.

Hindu rulers  
faint

PART II.—MAHRATTA HISTORY FROM THE DEATH OF  
SIVAJI (1680) TO THE LIBERATION OF SAHJ (1702).

§ 27. Sambaji succeeded to the throne, after overcoming a faction that wished to supersede him, and to set up Râja Râm, a younger son of Sivaji. (See table, p. 172.)

The secret  
Hindu Sambaji,  
1680, 1680

He began his reign under most unfavourable circumstances. His father had foreseen the troubles that his unrestrained passions would bring on his people. He first of all put to death Sovera Bai, the mother of Râja Râm; and by this and other executions gained a character for relentless cruelty.

His cruelty.

§ 28. As he had been a fugitive from his father, so now Muhammad Akbar, the fourth son of Aurungzib, fled to him for refuge.

This prince, after engaging in several fruitless attempts to overthrow his father's power; disgusted at Sambaji's character and conduct, quitted his protection in 1683; and passed over to Persia, where he died in 1706. (Ch. iii. § 9.)

Prince Akbar.

§ 29. Sambaji meanwhile besieged Jinjira, but in vain; and was engaged in petty hostilities with the

Aurungzib's  
great expedi-  
tion.

## § 27. TABLE OF MAHRATTA RÂJAS. Chap. v.

SIVAJI. § 7.

I. SIVAJI (A.D. 1627-1680). § 9-26.

II. SAMBAJI. Killed 1689. § 32.

RÂJA RÂM = TARA BAI. § 34.  
Regent 1690. Regent 1700.  
Died 1700.III. SIVAJI II. or SIVU.  
Imprisoned 1690. Released 1708.  
Died 1748. § 38-59

SIVAJI. Died 1719.

SAMTAJI. § 47.

IV. RÂM RÂJA. § 59.  
Died 1777.  
Founder of the Kolhapur State, 1729.  
Died 1760.V. SIVU II. § 94.  
His adopted son SIVAJI succeeded.  
Died 1812.VI. PRATAP S. § 164.  
Deposed 1839. Died 1847.VII. APPI S. 1848.  
Lapsed.  
Died 1823.Bawa S. Died 1837.  
SIVAJI, or  
BABA SAHEB.

## THE MAHRATTAS IN TANJORE.

Shahji *parhar*  
visited Tanjore in 1661.I. EKORI, or VENKAJI (half-brother of SIVAJI) 1675.  
First overthrew the native Râjas of Tanjore.

II. SIVAJI.

III. SERBOJI.

SIVAJI. Ch. vii. § 7 (17).

BABA SAHEB.

TUKAJI.

TOLAJI (died in 1787).

SERBOJI (1799-1832).

SIVAJI, died in 1835

NOTE.—The chief dates are 1675, 1773, 1800, 1855 (comp. ch. x. § 44).

The Princess.

Usurped the throne, 1741.

Amin Singh, deposed in 1799.

Sambaji's defeat.

CH. V. § 30, 32.  
A.D. 1683, 89.

Portuguese and English, when tidings reached him of the design of Aurungzib to undertake the subjugation of the entire Dakhan. (Ch. iii. § 9.)

Sultân Moazzim was now sent as Viceroy to Aurung-âbâd for the fourth time; and the emperor soon followed (A.D. 1683), and took up his abode at Burhânpûr, spending the remaining twenty-four years of his life in this fruitless struggle.

Aurungzib in  
Burhânpûr,  
1683.

§ 30. Sambaji's wars with the Portuguese were disgraced by the barbarities committed by both parties: neither gained any decided success (ch. vi. § 20); nor are these conflicts worthy of permanent record.

Wars with the  
Portuguese

§ 31. Sambaji's minister was a Brâhman called Kulusha, who was learned; but totally unfit to govern a great state. The Râja himself was brave but imprudent; and, when not in the field, gave himself up to the most degrading vices.

The Brâhman  
Kulusha

§ 32. During all Aurungzib's victorious course from 1683 to 1689, Sambaji was most unaccountably in a state of nearly total inactivity.

Sambaji's  
debauchery.

He was finally surprised in a state of intoxication at Sangamêshwar, with Kulusha.

His capture.

Sambaji was offered his life on the condition that he should become a Musalmân. "Tell the emperor," said he, "that if he will give me his daughter, I will do so." He added words of bitter insult to Muhammad.

The enraged emperor ordered a red-hot iron to be passed over his eyes, his tongue to be torn out, and his head to be cut off. He and his minister suffered at Tolapûr, in August 1689.

His death, 1689.

The murder of  
Sambaji and of  
Kulusha, 1689.

His death aroused the Mahrattas to form schemes of vengeance, but did not daunt them.

CH. V. § 33, 35.  
A.D. 1689,  
1700.

Sâhu. Râja Râm. Târa Bâi.

The third Mah-  
ratta Râja,  
Sâhu.  
His names.

§ 33. Sambajî left a son six years old, whose name was Sivajî ; and who is known in history by the name of Sâhu (Shâo), meaning thief, a nickname given to him by the emperor. This boy and his mother were taken prisoners soon after. He remained a prisoner till after Aurungzib's death. He is considered the third Râja of the Mahrattas.

The regent Râja  
Râm.

§ 34. Meanwhile Râja Râm, the half-brother of Sambajî, was declared regent; and making a rapid flight, established his court at Gingî. Thither the emperor first despatched Zulfikâr Khân and Dâûd Khân Pannî [Ch. iii. § 9 (12)], and afterwards the Prince Kâm Baksh ; but owing to various intrigues, the place was not taken till 1698; and then Râja Râm was allowed to escape and take refuge in Visâlgurh.

Satârâ taken,  
1700.

In 1700 the emperor in person took Satârâ; and in the same year Râja Râm died.

Târa Bâi.

His widow, Târa Bâi, assumed the regency; and this desultory strife between the Moguls and Mahrattas was kept up till the emperor's death.

The splendour  
of the Moguls.

§ 35. The contrast between the splendour of the Mogul camp and army and the rude and irregular hordes of the Mahrattas at this time is very striking. The emperor's army consisted chiefly of a vast assemblage of choice cavalry, men of imposing stature and appearance, splendidly armed and mounted, and chosen from every province of the empire. He had also large bodies of well-disciplined infantry, and his artillery was served by European gunners. Vast numbers of elephants attended the army. The accounts given of the pomp and luxury of the camp are well-nigh incredible. Enormous tents reproduced all, and more than all, the splendours of the palaces of Âgra and Delhi. In his encampment the emperor was surrounded

The Mogul en-  
campment.

Its prodigio  
luxury.

The Moguls and Mahrattas compared.

CH. V. § 38. 27.  
A.D. 1700-7.

with greater magnificence than probably any potentate of any age or nation. And it is still more astonishing to learn, that an exact duplicate of all the encampment was provided; so that when the army was on its march, the emperor and his court found at each halting-place the whole apparatus of luxury and state.

The expense must have been enormous, and exhausted the revenues of Hindústân. Meanwhile the sight of all this display was intended to strike awe into the minds of the various nations of the Dakhan. But no Akbar was in the Mogul camp!

The expense.

§ 36. To the thoughtful student the rude encampment of the Mahrattas presents a more interesting subject of contemplation; for, in the long run, these were the conquerors. There, a few thousand irregular horsemen assembled in some wild region, with little provision and no superfluities of any kind. They slept with their horses' bridles in their hands, swords by their sides, and their spears stuck into the ground by their horses' heads, with a blanket or horse-cloth extended on the points of their spears for a shade. Their one idea was plunder; and the caravans with supplies and treasure for the Mogul armies, which were always on their way from Hindústân, afforded them rich and constant booty. The prolonged contest to them was exciting, instructive, and gainful.

The Mahratta encampment.

Mahratta manners.

§ 37. It was thus that the last years of Aurungzib were passed. Zulikâr Khân, however, distinguished himself greatly amidst the sloth, corruption, and vice of the Mogul armies.

Aurungzib's last years.  
The one real man.

The emperor was old. He had trusted none, and was beloved by none. His sons were prepared, according to precedent, to contest the throne upon his death. Everywhere uncertainty, distrust, and confusion pre-

Degeneracy of the Moguls.

CHAP. V. § 38.  
A.D. 1707, 8.

Aurangzib's last struggles.

His death, 1707.

His failure.

vailed; yet the emperor persisted to the last in futile endeavours to reduce the Mahrattas. Fort after fort was stormed; but the depredations of the Mahrattas, whom patriotism and the lust of plunder kept on the alert, multiplied and extended in every direction. Meanwhile the Moguls were degenerating fast; and it became daily more evident that the death of the emperor would be the signal for a general breaking up of the decayed empire. On one occasion, in the year before Aurungzib's death, his armies sustained a complete defeat; and the aged emperor himself narrowly escaped being taken prisoner. He now returned to Ahmadnagar, where he died, February 21, 1707. (Ch. iii. § 9.)

Whatever judgment may be passed upon Aurungzib in other respects, it must be acknowledged that he signally failed in his schemes against the Mahrattas.

PART III.—MAHRATTA HISTORY FROM THE LIBERATION OF SÂHU, 1708, TO THE (SECOND) BATTLE OF PÂNIPAT (1761).

Sâhu in Delhi.

He is kindly treated.

The Swords.  
[Chick Dêo Râj  
in Mysore,  
ch. xii. § 8.]

§ 38. Sâhu, the grandson of Sivajî, was still a prisoner. Aurungzib had behaved to him with unvarying kindness; had made arrangements for his marriage with two Mahratta heiresses; and had restored to him his grandfather's famous sword Bhavânî, with that of the murdered Afzal Khân. There was even an intention at one time of releasing him, and of granting to the Mahrattas a percentage on the revenues of the districts they occupied, on the condition that they should maintain tranquillity therein, and remain faithful to the Imperial Government.

## THE MAHRATTA HISTORY.

177

**Sâhu's release and succession. Bâlâji Vishwanâth.**

"H. V. § 39, 41.  
A.D. 1708, 14.

§ 39. Azam Shâh, on the death of his father, carried out this plan; and, in 1708, Sâhu obtained possession of Satârâ, though Târa Bâi and her son Sivaji affected to consider him an impostor, and strove to maintain their position, till the death of the latter in 1712.

Sâhu's release,  
1708  
His reception  
in the South

This year also witnessed the death of Shâh Âlam I (cf. in § 10, 11); which was soon followed by the murder of the renowned Zulfikâr Khân, and of his nominee Jehânîr Shâh. At this time, also, the famous Nizâm-ul-Mulk was first appointed Viceroy of the Dakhan. (Ch. in. § 12.)

The events of  
1712  
Death of Shâh  
Âlam I and of  
Zulfikâr Khân  
Nizâm-ul-Mulk  
in the Dakhan

§ 40. Sâhu's power was consolidated by the wise measures of his able minister, BÂLÂJÎ VISHWANÂTH, an able Brâhman, who about this time (1712) was received into his service, and may be considered the second founder of the Mahratta confederation. Bâlâji was first sent on an expedition against *Angria*, who had made himself master of the coast south of Bombay, and succeeded in bringing him to terms. This was so acceptable to Sâhu that Bâlâji Vishwanâth was, on his return, made Peshwâ, or prime-minister; an office which had carried little authority with it before his time, but which his ability soon made paramount, and which he was able to make hereditary in his family. From this time the Brâhman Peshwâs are the real heads of the Mahratta confederation; the Râjas, the descendants of the great Sivaji, being merely nominal rulers, living in splendour, as state prisoners, in Satârâ.

The first  
Peshwâ, 1712  
Bâlâji Vish-  
wanâth.

Bâlâji Vishwanâth, the Peshwâ, acted the part in India (1711-1720) towards the descendants of the great Sivaji, that Popin, the mayor of the palace, performed in France, in 752, towards the descendants of the great Clovis.

Vishwanâth was, in fact, the fifth Peshwâ; but he is commonly reckoned the first, from the greater importance which he gave to the office.

The Peshwâs  
(Genealogical table,  
§ 451)

§ 41. Sâhu himself was in manners a Muhammadan, indolent and luxurious, delegating his power to his

Sâhu's character.



CH. V. § 43, 44.  
A.D. 1717, 20.

Bālājī Vishwanāth and Bājī Rāo.

The Mahrattas  
in Delhi, 1717,  
1718.

(Chap. iii. § 12.)

(In Wat the  
Pandus are said  
to have lived in  
exile. Ch. i. § 7.)

1718.

Bālājī's death,  
1720.

The second  
Peshwā, 1720-  
1740. Com-  
monly called  
the Niri.

Peshwā, and openly acknowledging himself a vassal of Delhi; yet under Bālājī the Mahratta power was at this time extended and consolidated in a most remarkable manner.

The weakness of the Mogul emperor, Muhammad Shāh, greatly facilitated the progress of the Mahrattas.

§ 42. Negotiations between Sāhu and the court of Delhi were set on foot, in consequence of which, in 1718, Bālājī in command of a large contingent was sent to Delhi, to assist the Seiads. This was the beginning of Mahratta influence in Delhi, with which, till 1803, they were henceforth to be so closely connected. At this time the Seiad Hussain, by treaty, ceded to them the *Chouth*, or fourth part of the revenues of the Dakhan, the *Surdéshmukī*, or additional ten per cent and the *Swarājī*, or absolute control of the countries about Pūna and Satārā.

These included Pūna, Sōpa, Indāpūr, Wai, the Māwals, Satār, Kurār, Kuttao, Mān, Phultūn, Mulkapūr, Tarīn, Panāla, Azera, Junir, Kolhāpūr, and a great part of the Konkan. From that time the Mahrattas seem to be ubiquitous.

This treaty was the real commencement of Mahratta supremacy, gave them revenues, and a claim upon every Southern state, affording plausible pretext for their marauding expeditions.

§ 43. An elaborate revenue system was now devised by Bālājī, by which, while the Mahrattas extended and enforced their exactions, the Brāhman influence more and more predominated.

Bālājī did not long survive his return from Delhi. He died in October 1720, soon after the battle of Shāhpūr, which destroyed the power of the Seiads, and established Muhammad Shāh upon the throne of the decaying empire. (Ch. iii. § 15.)

§ 44. Bājī Rāo (I.), the eldest son of Bālājī, succeeded to the title of Peshwā. He is generally styled the SECOND PESHWĀ, and retained the office till his death in 1740.

The Sindia Family.

CHAP. V. § 45.  
A.D. 1724.

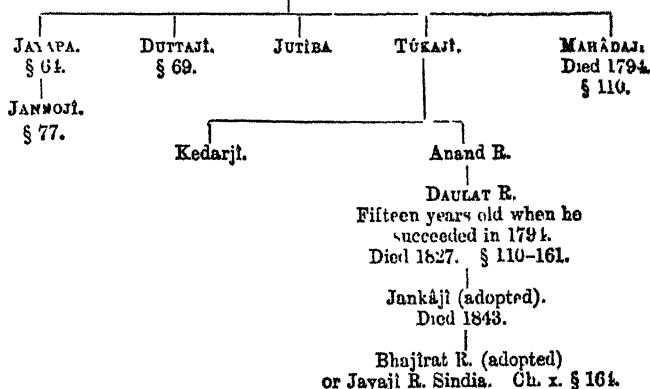
§ 45. About the year 1724, several Mahratta officers, who afterwards became independent leaders, or founders of states, rose to distinction. The first of these was Mulhârjî Holkâr, a cavalry soldier of the Sudra caste; to whom Indôr was assigned in 1733. The second was Rânajî SINDIA, a descendant of an old Râjpût family, who was at one time the Peshwâ's shipper-bearer, and was promoted for his fidelity in this humble position. The third was UDÂJÎ PÊAR (ch. i. § 9), an enterprising warrior of Mâlwa. The fourth was PILÂJÎ GÂRKHAR (or cowherd), son of Dalmajî, who by valour and treachery rose to eminence.

The first of  
various Mahratta  
leaders.  
(Comp § 75)  
(Comp § 77)  
He Rânâ's great  
chieftains, 1724.

§ 45.\* THE SINDIA FAMILY. Chap. v. § 45.

A SUDRA FAMILY.

RÂNÔJÎ S. Died 1754.



CH. V. § 46, 47.  
A.D. 1727, 31.

**Bâji Râo, the second Peshwâ.**

The chiefs of  
Akulôt.

The fifth was FATIH SING BHONSLÊ.

When Sâhu was fighting with Târa Bâi in 1708, a woman rushed in and threw her child at his feet, crying out that she dedicated him to the Râja's service. This child was called *Fatih*, in commemoration of the victory. He was made *Râja* of *Akulôt*. (Comp ch. iii. § 15.)

The sixth was PARSÂJÎ BHONSLÊ, who was chiefly employed in Berâr.

Bâji Râo's  
plans.

§ 46. Bâji Râo's great design was to extend Mahratta power in Hindûstân. In a debate before SÂHU, he said, "Now is our time to drive strangers from the land of the Hindûs, and to acquire immortal renown. By directing our efforts to Hindûstân, the Mahratta flag in your reign shall fly from the Kishtna to the Attock. Let us strike at the trunk of the withering tree (the Mogul empire), and the branches must fall of themselves!"

Universal Mah-  
ratta dominion!

Sâhu and his  
Peshwâ.

Sâhu, roused for the moment to the display of something like the spirit of his grandfather, replied, "You shall plant my flag on the Himâlaya. You are the noble son of a worthy father."

1727.

In the year 1727, a long and desultory war between Nizâm-ul-Mulk and Bâji Râo began, the results of which on the whole were favourable to the Mahrattas. (Ch. iii. § 15.) The young Peshwâ and the old Nizâm were now the principal actors on the stage.

The Kolhâpûr  
State, 1790.  
(§ 166.)

§ 47. The founding of the Kolhâpûr Râj was the first great schism among the Mahrattas. *Sambaji*, the son of Râjâ Râi, the younger wife of Râja Râm, was the rival of Sâhu, and Nizâm-ul-Mulk strove to foment the rivalries between the courts of Kolhâpûr and Satârâ, but the former never attained any great influence. It comprised the Konkan from Salsi to Ankolah. By treaty in 1731, the independence of Kolhâpûr was acknowledged by Sâhu.

(Comp. table,  
p. 172.)

NOTE.—Kolhâpûr was the seat of a very ancient Hindû kingdom. It was then under Bijanagar; subjugated by the Muhammadans in the fifteenth century; and finally came into Sivaji's hands. In 1818, the Râja, Abâ Sahêb, heartily aided the English.

Bâji Râo, the second Peshwâ.

A.D. 1734, 9.

There were troubles in 1343. The contingent aided the natives in 1357, and in 1361, the country was nearly taken. Colonel Le Grafton was sent to suppress the insurrection.

§ 48. By 1734 Mahratta power was, through the connivance of Nizâm-ul-Mulk, fully established in Mâlwa, where Jey Sing, the Râjput governor appointed by the emperor, a great scholar and astronomer, was entirely under their influence. Dâi Subhâdâr, a Brahman, had been made Subhâdâr, and so oppressed the people that Bâji Râo was invited to come to their relief.

The Mahrattas in Mâlwa.

In 1741, Bâji's sons, Bâlâji and Chimnaji, were appointed Subhâdârs of Mâlwa by Muhammad Shâh.

§ 49. In 1736, Bâji Râo, with his Mahrattas, after a partial defeat inflicted on them by Sadat Khân, appeared under the walls of Delhi; and now Nizâm-ul-Mulk was induced for a time to return and assist the harassed emperor.

In Delhi, 1736.

He collected troops from every quarter, and, marching into Mâlwa, met Bâji Râo near Bhôpâl. Both armies were large and well supplied. Nizâm, at first successful in driving them from Delhi, afterwards allowed himself to be surrounded; and, unable to escape from the blockade, was compelled to sign a convention, granting to the Peshwâ the whole of Mâlwa and the territory between the Narbaddah and the Chambal, and to engage to try to obtain fifty lakhs of rupees from the emperor as payment of the Peshwâ's expenses.

The humiliation of Nizâm-ul-Mulk.

This was Nizâm's severest misfortune.

§ 50. Soon after this the tidings of the arrival of Nadir Shâh reached Bâji Râo.

Nadir Shâh, 1738, 9.

He was greatly excited by the intelligence. "There is now," said he, "but one enemy in Hindustân.

Bâji Râo's excitement.

CH. V. § 51, 52.  
A.D. 1739, 40.

Bâji Râo, the second Peshwâ. His death.

Nâdir Shâh's  
letter to Bâji  
Râo and Sâhu.

Hindûs and Musalmâns, the whole power of the Dakhan must assemble, and I shall spread our Mahrattas from the Narbaddah to the Chambal."

Nâdir Shâh's retreat soon followed, and he addressed letters, among others, to Sâhu and to Bâji Râo, bidding them obey Muhammad Shâh, whom he had replaced on the throne, and threatening to return and punish them if they should disobey.

The storming of  
Bassein, 1739.

§ 51. There was now war between the Portuguese and the Mahrattas. The principal exploit that marks it is the storming of *Bassein*, May 1739, by the troops of Chinnajî Appâ, the Peshwâ's brother. This was the greatest siege ever undertaken by the Mahrattas. Holkâr and Sindia were both present.

The place is memorable in after Mahratta history. (§ 88.)

NOTE — *Bassein* (Wasal) is on an island N. of Salsette. It is in ruins, not having been inhabited for half a century. There are the tombs of *Lorenzo Almeida* (ch. vi. § 10), and of the great *Albuquerque*. (Ch. vi. § 14.)

- (1.) Taken by Portuguese, 1534.
- (2.) Lost by them, 1739.
- (3.) Taken by Goddard, 1780 (§ 101).
- (4.) Treaty in 1802.

Bâji Râo's last  
will.

§ 52. Bâji Râo, after settling his northern frontier, putting his affairs in Mâlwâ in order, and making treaties with the Râja of Bandêlkhand and the Râjpûts, set himself to achieve the conquest of the Dakhan and the Carnatic. (Comp. p. 134.)

Nizâm's second son, Nâsir Jung, was then at Aurung-âbâd as his father's representative; and, after a fruitless campaign, Bâji was obliged to make peace with him.

The Peshwâ's  
troubles.

The Peshwâ's end was drawing near. He had suffered much annoyance from the rivalry of Damajî Gaekwâr (founder of the Barôda State), Raghuji Bhonslê, cousin and successor of Parsaji (founder of the Nâgpur State), and Fatih Sing Bhonslê.

(§ 45.)

# THE MAHRATTA HISTORY.

133

## Summary. Bâji Râo's character.

CH. V. § 53, 54.  
A.D. 1740.

### § 53. Bâji Râo died in 1740 (28th April).

State of India  
about 1740.

This is an æra in Indian history.

(1.) Muhammad Shâh is on the throne of Delhi, which has just been robbed by Nâdir Shâh of thirty millions of pounds sterling (1739). (Ch. iii. § 15.)

Delhi, the 12th  
Mogul.

(2.) Nâdir Shâh, the Persian, is reigning from Mûltân to Persia. (Assassinated in 1747.)

(3.) Nizâm-ul-Mulk is Umîr-ul-Omrah, or chief of the nobles in Delhi; but at this time transfers his title to his eldest son, Gh. zi-ud-din, and marches to the Dakhan, where his second son, Nizâm Jung, is planning to make him-self independent. (Ch. iii. § 15.)

Nizâm-ul-Mulk.

(4.) Sâdat Khân is just dead. His nephew, Safder Jung, succeeds him in Oudh (1739). (Ch. iii. § 17, 18.)

Oudh.

(5.) The Jâts have recently finished the triumph of Bharatpur, a city to be afterwards twice besieged, by Lach and by Combermere.

Bharatpur.

(6.) Ali-vardî Khân has made himself master of Bengal, Bahâr, and Orissa (1740).

Ali-vardî Khân.  
(Ch. iii. § 15.)

(7.) The Rohillas, under Ali Muhammad Khân, have recently established themselves in Rohilkhand. (Ch. iii. § 15; ch. ix. § 36.)

Rohillas.

(8.) Dôst Ali succeeded as Nuwâb of Arcot, in 1733. His son-in-law, Chandâ Sahêb, by his infamous treachery, obtained possession of Trincomopoly in 1736. [Ch. vii. § 7 (13, Ac.)]

Carnatic.  
(§ 55.)

(9.) Syajî, grandson of Venkajî or Êkojî, Sivajî's brother, is ruler of Tanjôr.

(10.) The English and French have not as yet risen above the rank of petty traders. (Comp. ch. vii.)

(11.) The Portuguese were humbled by the loss of Bassein. (§ 51.) They never recovered the blow.

1737.

(12.) The Mysôr state enjoyed peace under its native rulers. (Ch. xii. § 11.)

Haidar Ali was just entering the service under Nandirâj. He was then thirty-eight years of age.

Born 1702.  
Died 1782.

§ 54. Bâji Râo was ambitious, a thorough soldier, hardy, self-denying, persevering, and, after his fashion, patriotic.

The character  
of Bâji Râo.

He was no unworthy rival of Nizâm-ul-Mulk, and wielded the mighty arm of Mahratta power with incomparable energy.

CH. V. § 55, 57.  
A.D. 1741, 6.

BĀLĀJĪ BĀJĪ RĀO, the third Peshwā.

1740.  
The Mahrattas  
in the Carnatic.  
First Battle of  
Ambur.  
(This pass is  
a little north of  
Chitor)

Chandā Sahēb, a  
captive, 1741.

The Third Pesh-  
wā, 1740-1761.

The Mahratta  
chiefs.

(Comp. § 45.)

Pūna the resi-  
dence of the  
Peshwas.



Bālāji's con-  
firmation by the  
emperor.

Mahratta depre-  
dations in Ben-  
gāl, Bahār, and  
Orissa.

§ 55. This year the Mahrattas invaded the Carnatic, attacked Dōst Ali, Nuwāb of Arcot, in the neighbourhood of the Dāmālc'hēri pass, routed and slew him. They were bought off by his successor, Safdar Ali, who engaged them to attack Trichinopoly, and dislodge Chandā Sahēb, his brother-in-law, of whose growing power he was jealous. (Ch. vii. § 7.)

Trichinopoly was taken (March 26, 1741). Chandā Sahēb was carried captive to Satārā; and Morārī Rāo was left in charge of the city, which he held till 1743; when he was made chief of Gūti, and evacuated the Carnatic.

§ 56. Bālāji Bāji Rāo, commonly called the THIRD PESHWĀ, succeeded his father; not, however, without opposition.

At this time, Raghuji Bhonslê may be looked upon as Rāja of Berār; Ananda Rāo Puār, as Rāja of Dhār; Damaji Gaekwār, as independent in Gujarāt; Mulhār Rāo Holkār, in the south of Mālwa; Jayapa Sindia, in the north-east of Mālwa; Fatih Sing Bhonslê, in Akulkōt; while Sambaji reigned in Kolhāpūr. Sāhu was in his luxurious retirement in Satārā. Pūna about this time became the residence of the Peshwās, and may be regarded as the capital of the widely-extended Mahratta confederacy. Thus rapidly had Sivaji's kingdom grown, in 60 years, into an empire, destined in another 60 years to fall to pieces. [1680-1740-1800.]

§ 57. Bālāji now applied to the emperor (Muhammad Shāh) for confirmation in his office. He was appointed Subāhdār of Mālwa (§ 48). This was granted through the mediation of Rāja Jey Sing and Nizām-ul-Mulk. The provinces of Bengāl, Bahār, and Orissa, were the scenes of continual wars between Ali-vardī Khān and Raghuji Bhonslê, which ended in the establishment of the Mahratta power in Kuttack in 1751.

Ali-vardī at length agreed to pay *chout*.

## THE MAHRATTA HISTORY.

185

**Bálaji Rájí Ráo, the third Peshwá.**

(H. V. § 59, 62.  
A. 1747, 52.)

Bhaskar Pandit, a general of Raghují, defeated Ali-vardi, and took prisoner Habib Khan, one of his generals, whom he induced to enter the Mahratta service. This man reportedly saved Bengál; and it was on this account that the Mahratta chief was killed (Ch. vii. § 6.) The Pandit was afterwards himself assassinated by Ali-vardi.

Habib Khan

§ 58. Now began the invasions of Hindústán by Ahmad Sháh Abdálí which ended in the terrible overthrow of the Mahrattas at Pániptá in 1761. On this occasion he was defeated at Surhind, by *Ahmad Sháh*, the son of the emperor.

The Afghán's  
expedition,  
1761.  
(Ch. vi. § 15)

§ 59. Sâhu died in 1748, and was succeeded by Rám Rája, the posthumous son of the second Sivaji, whose birth had been kept a secret (1712); but Bálaji, with his usual duplicity, contrived to maintain his ground, and to involve in ruin those who would have made the death of the Rája an occasion for attempting to shake his power.

The death of  
Sâhu, 1748.  
His successor,  
Rám Rája.

§ 60. Tára Bâi, the grandmother of the Rája, took occasion, when Bálaji was absent on an expedition against Salábat Jung and M. Bussy (ch. iii. § 16), to imprison Rám Rája, whose fidelity to the Peshwá could not be shaken, and to call in Damaji Gaekwár to "rescue the Mahratta state from the power of the Bráhmans."

Tára Bâi's  
intrigues.

§ 61. Bálaji's energy enabled him to overcome this confederacy. His war with Salábat Jung and Bussy, though he sustained a great defeat from the French at Rájapûr, was terminated by an armistice in April 1752, without dishonour to the Mahrattas.

Bálaji and the  
Nizam  
(India Rájapûr  
40 miles S by E  
from Bombay)

§ 62. Meanwhile Raghují Bhonslá had secured the whole province of Kuttack as far as *Bilasáre*, and had wrested from the Hyderábád dominion all the districts between the Wain Gangá and the Godávari. (Comp § 134.) He died in 1753, and was succeeded by his eldest son Janoji. (§ 72.)

The progress of  
the Nágpur  
chief, 1754  
(Rájashpur, the  
principal sea-  
port, 103 miles  
from Kuttack)



CH. V. § 63, 65.  
A.D. 1751, &c.

Various Mahratta chiefs. Angria.

Ragobá.

§ 63. It is about this time that *Ragunátha Ráo* (or *Ragobá*), brother of *Báláji*, who was to play such an important part in the first (English) *Mahratta war*, begins to appear in history. He was brave; but rash, full of ambition, foolish, and headstrong. Whatever he attempted was showy but ill-considered, and he invariably ruined every cause he undertook.

His character.

Ragobá's history.

In 1751 we find him in *Súrat* (at the time Clive was in *Arcoot*), of which he vainly strove to get possession; and in 1755 he took *Ahmadábád*, the capital of *Gujarát*, which was in charge of *Damaji Gaekwár*.

(Commonly, *Sewdasha Ráo*.)

He returned to the *Dakhan* in 1756, and the indulgence of *Báláji* gave to him and to *Sivadasha Chinnaji* (son of *Chinnaji Appá*, brother of *Báji Ráo*) the chief management of affairs.

Holkár and Sindia.

§ 64. Of the other Mahratta chiefs the most active now were *Mulhár Ráo Holkár* (see tables, § 75\* and p. 191), and *Jayapa Sindia*. The former was the chief aider of *Mir Shahábodín* or *Ghází-ud-dín IV.* (ch. iii. § 18) in the deposition of *Ahmad Sháh* and the elevation of *Álamgir II.* in 1754.

The pirates on the western coast.

Sidia.

§ 65. The English at this time came into closer contact with the Mahrattas. Along the western coast there were several chiefs of Abyssinian descent, called *Sidis* (a corruption of *Seiad*, a name generally given to Africans in India). The most important of these was the *Sidí* of *Jinjíra*, an island in the harbour of *Rájapúr*. His ships swept the whole western coast. Another chief of great power was *Tulaji Angria*, one of a race of pirates whose head-quarters were at *Vizíadrúg*, or *Gheriah*, and *Saverndrúg*. The *Sidí* of *Jinjíra* was from 1733 an ally of England.

Jinjíra.

(Gheriah, 82 miles N.N.W. from Goa.)

Angria.  
(Ch. ix. § 8.)

The English destroy the pirates' stronghold, 1755, 1756.

Several attempts were made by the English, in concert with the *Peshwá*, to rescue *Súrat* from the *Sidí* of *Jinjíra*, and to prevent the piracies of *Angria*. *Commodore James* took *Saverndrúg* in March 1755; and in 1756 (*Colonel*) *Clive* with *Admiral Watson*, by direction of the *Bombay Government*, undertook and effected the utter destruction of the pirates' stronghold. (Ch. viii. § 27.)

The Zenith and Nadir of Mahratta Prosperity.

CH. V (66, 68,  
A D 1757, 61.

A treaty between the Bombay authorities (Governor Bouchier, 1750-1760) and the Peshwā was concluded in October 1756, by which, among other things, ten villages, including Bankut, with the command of that river, were given to the English.

(Or Fort Vas-  
to, a, 73 miles  
S by E from  
Bombay.)

§ 66. The year 1757, which the battle of Plassey has rendered memorable in English history, was marked by an invasion of the Carnatic by the Peshwa in person. Mysor was then under the power of Nandirāj, the Dīwān of Chick Kistna Rāyar; and Haidar Ali, an adventurer, whose rise resembled that of Sivaji, was then coming into notice. The Mahrattas levied tribute from Mysor (though a brave resistance was made), as well as from the Nuwāb of Arcot, Muhammad Ali, then under British protection. (Ch. xii. § 12.)

The Mahrattas  
in Mysor, 1757.

§ 67. In 1759, after various intrigues, the Bombay Government obtained the town and port of Surat, in spite of opposition from Persia. A pension was given to the titular Nuwāb. The title became extinct in 1812.

Surat.

§ 68. In 1760 the Mahrattas obtained their greatest success, as in 1761 they sustained their most disastrous defeat.

The battles of Ūdghir and PANIPAT respectively mark the attainment of their highest elevation and the destruction of their hopes of ever ruling India.

ŪDGHIR. The Peshwa had obtained possession of Ahmadnagar, to wrest which from him, *Sabhat Jung* and Nizām Ali marched against him. The result was a complete victory to the Peshwā, whose chief officers were Sivulasha Rāo and Ibrahim Khān Ghardi, an able Musalmān in the Mahrattā service. A treaty followed by which Daulatābād, Asirgarh, Bijapur, and the province of Aurungābād, were made over to the Mahrattas.

The Moguls were thus confined for the time within the narrowest limits.

The battle of  
Ūdghir, 1760  
The hill of the  
sunrise, 60 N. N. W.  
of Badar.)

The Mahrattas  
after the battle  
of Ūdghir.

Moguls  
humbled.

CH. V. § 69, 70.  
A.D. 1780, 1.

Events which led to the (second) Battle of Pānīpat.

The Mahrattas  
fail.

Had the Mahrattas now possessed lofty and patriotic aims, they might have become the rulers of India.

The tidings  
from the north-  
west.

§ 69. The Peshwā was encamped on the bank of the Manjēra, near Ūdghīr. He was triumphant; but he was to hear tidings there which would break his heart.

Or the Second.

§ 70. I. It is necessary to give a summary of the events which led to the FOURTH BATTLE OF PĀNĪPAT, before entering upon an account of the battle itself. (See ch. iii. § 19, 20.)

The events  
which lead to  
the fourth  
battle of Pāni-  
pat, 1761.

(1.) Mūltān and Lāhōr had been conquered by Ahmad Shāh Abdālī in 1748. (Ch. iii. § 18.)

Mir Munu.  
(Ch. iii. § 19.)  
Ghāzī-ud-dīn  
IV.

(2.) Mir Munu, who was made viceroy of these conquests by him, died in 1756, and left a widow. Great confusion ensued, and the Sikhs greatly increased.

The Abdālī's  
fourth invasion.

(3.) Mir Shahābodīn, Vazīr of Delhi (grandson of Nizām-ul-Mulk, commonly called Ghāzī-ud-dīn IV.), invaded this province, claiming the daughter of Mir Munu, who had been betrothed to him; seized on the widow, carried her to Delhi, and appointed Adīna Beg governor.

Ragobā and  
Ghazi.

(4.) This brought the Abdālī across the Indus for the fourth time. He marched on Delhi, took it, plundered it, and also Muttra; and left it in 1756 (the year of the Black Hole), leaving Nazīb-ud-daula, a Rohilla chief, in charge of Ālamgīr II.

The foolish  
Lahōr expe-  
dition.

(5.) Mir Shahābodīn allied himself with Ragobā, and by force recovered Delhi and the charge of the emperor's person. Like all Ragobā's doings, this was foolish. The Abdālī was not to be trifled with.

Ahmad S. Ab-  
dālī's fifth  
invasion.

(6.) Ragobā invaded Lāhōr, making a splendid but temporary conquest (May 1758). This was the cause of the war of the Mahrattas with Ahmad Shāh Abdālī, and from this may be dated the beginning of the decline of the Mahratta power.

The Pretender.

(7.) The Rohilla, Nazīb-ud-daula, and Shuja-ud-daula, Nuwāb of Oudh, took up arms in self-defence against the Mahrattas; and Ahmad Shāh Abdālī crossed the Indus for the fifth time, to aid the confederates against the hated Hindū race. He was, however, as much an object of terror to the one party as to the other.

(8.) Mir Shahābodīn now put Ālamgīr II. to death, and set up Shāh Jehān, son of Kām Baksh (table, p. 122), as emperor. (Comp. p. 138.)

# THE MAHRATTA HISTORY.

189

## The Flooden Field of the Mahrattas.

CHAP. V § 70.  
A.D. 1761.

(9.) Ali Gohar (Shâh Âlam II.) escaped, and became a fool in the hands of Shuja-ul-daula of Oudh. (Ch. ix § 13.) His history is intimately connected with that of the English under Clive.

Shah Âlam. II.

(10.) Mir Shahâbodin, abandoning his puppet emperor, sought refuge with Surâj Mal, Râja of the Jâts. All wanted the issue of the Abdâli's resistless invasion.

Ghâzi does.

(11.) The Mahrattas, under M. R. Holkâr and Duttaji Sindia, retreated along the west bank of the Jamna, before Ahmad Shâh Abdâli, and lost two-thirds of their number near Delhi. Here Duttaji and Jutiba were killed.

The battle of Delhi.  
Abdâli.

(12.) A further slaughter of Holkâr's troops by the Afghâns took place at Sikandra, near Delhi.

Sikandra.  
(About 31 miles S.E. from Delhi.)

## § 70. II. The battle itself: the Flooden-field of the Mahrattas.

The fourth battle of Pânipat, 1761.

(1.) Sivadasa Râo Bhâo and Viswas Râo, son of the Peshwâ, now marched northward to recover the lost reputation of the Mahrattas, and to drive the Afghâns beyond the Attock. (Ch. ix § 64.) had unduly elated them.

Northward.

The struggle was to be final: it was to give, they said, all India to a Hindû power.

The elation of the Mahrattas.

(2.) They had 20,000 chosen horse, 10,000 infantry and artillery, under Ibrahim Khân Ghardi, who had been trained by Bussy, though now in Mahratta employ (§ 64).

Their forces.

(3.) The Mahrattas (and it was a sign of decay), contrary to old custom, took the field with great splendour. All Mahratta chiefs were ordered to join them.

The Mahratta army.

Among those present were Muthâr Râo Holkâr, Jankoji Sindia, Damaji Gaekwâr, Jeswant Râo Paar, and representatives of every Mahratta family of consequence. Suraj Mal, the Jât chieftain of Bhartpûr, was their principal ally.

The leaders and allies.

The total number of Mahratta troops assembled was 55,000 horse, 15,000 foot, and about 200,000 Pindâris and followers. They had 200 pieces of cannon.

Total.

The Muhammadans had 16,800 horse, 38,000 foot, and 170 pieces of cannon.

(4.) Without much difficulty the Mahrattas occupied Delhi, and the ambitious Sivadasa Râo proposed to place Viswas Râo, the eldest son of the Peshwâ, on the throne, and thus to resume the empire of Hindûstân. This was postponed, however, till the Afghâns should have been driven across the Indus.

In Delhi.

The Vastir of  
Oudh.

(5.) Sivadasa Rão, by his arrogance, alienated the Jât leader and his Râjpût allies; and while the Hindûs were thus splitting up, the Abdâli induced Shuja-ud-daula of Oudh to join his fellow Muhammadans; though he never became a violent enemy of the Mahrattas, and often acted the part of a mediator.

A pretender.

(6.) The Mahratta leader now raised Jawân Bukht, son of Alt Ghôl (Shâh Alam II.) to the throne, and marched out of Delhi. The Abdâli crossed to the western bank of the Jumna, and followed the Mahrattas to Pânipat, where they had strongly intrenched themselves.

p. 122.

Fabian policy.

(7.) From October 28 to January 6, 1761, continual skirmishes took place; but the Abdâli, adopting a Fabian policy, steadily refused a general engagement. The improvident Mahrattas were without provisions or money; and were, in fact, closely besieged.

The battle.

(8.) On the 7th January, Sivadasa Rão sent a note to their friendly mediator, Shuja-ud-daula, saying, "The cup is now full to the brim, and cannot hold another drop;" and the whole Mahratta army, prepared to conquer or die, marched out to attack the Afghan camp. From daybreak till 2 P.M. the rival cries of "*Har, Har, Mâdho*," and "*Dîn, Dîn*," resounded. The Afghans were physically stronger, and in this terrible struggle their powers of endurance at last prevailed against the fierce enthusiasm of the Mahrattas.

Death of the  
Mahratta  
leaders.

(9.) By 2 P.M. Viswas Rão was killed. In despair Sivadasa Rão descended from his elephant, mounted his horse, and charged into the thickest of the fight. He was seen no more. Jeswant Rão Puar also was killed.

The day after  
the battle.

(10.) Holkâr left the field early, with some imputation on his fidelity to his cause. Damaji Gaekwâr also escaped. Thousands perished in the fight, and the remainder were surrounded, taken prisoners, and cruelly beheaded the next morning. Among these were Jankoji Sindia and Ibrahim Khân Ghardi.

The tidings.

(11.) Of the few who escaped to bear the tidings to the Peshwâ, who was still encamped between the Manjêra and the Godâvari, was Bâlâji Jenârdin, who afterwards became so famous under his official title of the Nânâ Farnavis (*the lord of the records*). The announcement of the disaster was made in these figurative words: "*Two pearls have been dissolved, twenty-seven gold mohurs have been lost, and of the silver and copper the total cannot be cast up.*"

Death of Bâlâji  
B. Rão, 1761.

§ 71. The Peshwâ never recovered the shock, and died at Pâna in June.

The fourth Peshwâ, Mâdu Râo.

CHAP. V § 72.  
A.D. 1761.

He was cunning, sensual, and indolent; but charitable and kindly; and his memory is respected by his countrymen.

The whole Mahratta race was thus thrown into mourning in 1761: their hope of supremacy in India had vanished, while every family bewailed its dead.  
(Compare here ch. iii. § 21.)

His character.

PART IV.—MAHRATTA HISTORY FROM THE FOURTH  
BATTLE OF PÂNIPAT TO THE END OF THE FIRST  
MAHRATTA WAR (1761-1782).

PÂNIPAT TO SALBÂT.

§ 72. The fourth Peshwâ was Mâdu Râo, the second son of Bâlâjî Râo, the younger brother of the unfortunate Viswas Râo; who was appointed to the office by Râm Râja, the nominal sovereign, who was still in confinement in Satârâ.

Mâdu Râo succeeded at the age of seventeen, and died in 1772, at the early age of twenty-eight. He was the most heroic of the line. His uncle, Ragunâtha Râo (Ragobâ), was his guardian.

This was the time for the Moguls to avenge their defeat at Udgîr, and regain their ascendancy in the Dakhan; but they only succeeded in obtaining some cessions in Aurungâbâd and Berâr. There were, in fact, five Mahratta states, and no real union.

Nizâm Ali's imprisonment and murder of his brother, Salâbat Jung, took place in 1762-63. (Ch. iii. § 16.)

Dissensions prevailed during this period among the Mahratta leaders, and Ragobâ had to wage a civil war before he could gain his full authority as regent. He

The fourth Peshwâ, 1761-1772  
Mâdu (or Mahâdâ) Râo  
Sometimes called Bâllal.

Mâdu Râo, a hero.  
(Table, § 158\*.)

The Mogul opportunity wasted.

Ragobâ's difficulties  
(He succeeded Raghujî in 1765, § 62.)

CH. V. § 73, 75.  
A.D. 1761.

Holkár. Ahalyá Bâi. Indôr affairs.

The four ablest  
Mahrattas,  
1761-1772.  
[§ 70, II. (11)].  
(Mamâ = uncle.)

Haidar Ali,  
1760.

Mâdu Râo and  
Haidar Ali,  
1764.

February 1765.  
The English in  
1764.

The Four  
Powers.

Indôr affairs.  
Mulhâr Râo  
Holkâr, 1724-  
1766.

Ahalyâ Bâi,  
1766-1785.

had also to fight with Nizâm Ali, who was stirred up by Janoji Bhonslê of Berâr, who hoped to make himself supreme in the Mahratta confederacy. Ragobâ behaved with much courage and prudence; and, though Pûna was once sacked by Nizâm Ali, at length defeated the Moguls, and made an advantageous peace.

§ 73. At this time, and for many years after, Sakarâm Bappu and Nânâ Farnavis (a young man, just rising into importance), were the ablest Mahratta statesmen; while Trimback Râo Mamâ and Harî Pant Phâkre were the greatest soldiers in the service of the Pûna Government.

§ 74. There was now rising, in the Carnatic, an enemy to the Mahrattas, who, imitating Sivaji, was laying the foundations of a kingdom. This was Haidar Ali. (Ch. xii. § 13.)

To oppose Haidar, in 1764 the young Peshwâ led an army across the Kishtna. The issue of the campaign was favourable to the Mahrattas; and Haidar was compelled to abandon all he had taken from the chiefs of that nation, and to pay thirty-two lakhs of rupees.

At this period, the nation which was eventually to crush the Mahrattas was rapidly gaining dominion in India. To the English there were three powers only that could offer any opposition. *These were the Mahrattas, Nizâm Ali, and Haidar.* (Comp. ch. viii.)

While Mâdu Râo continued his inroads upon Haidar's dominions at intervals, the English were waiting for an opportunity of effecting the subjugation of both.

§ 75. In 1766, *Mulhâr Râo Holkâr* died. For forty-two years he had been one of the bravest spirits among the Mahrattas (§ 45).

Like David, from a shepherd he became a king!

He had only one son, Khandî Râo, who died in 1755;

## THE MAHRATTA HISTORY.

193

### Indôr Affairs. Ahalyâ Bâi. Ragobâ.

CHAP. V. § 7  
A.D. 1766-3

and his grandson, Mallî Râo, died soon after his grandfather. The widow of Khandî Râo, whose name was AHALYÂ BÂI, succeeded to the supreme authority in Indôr, and held it till her death in 1795. She was one of the most extraordinary women that ever lived. She adopted, by consent of the Peshwâ, an experienced soldier called *Tûkajî Holkâr*, who was no relation to the family. He assumed command of the army, and one of his descendants still rules in Indôr (§ 118, 140, 160).

The Holkâr family.

Lat. 22° 41' N., Long. 75° 50' E. It was a small village till Ahalyâ Bâi made it her permanent encampment.

Indôr.

Tûkajî always paid to Ahalyâ Bâi filial reverence. She ruled, while he was commander-in-chief.

The double Government of Mâlwa

She was devout, merciful, and laborious to an extraordinary degree; and, by her wise administration, raised Indôr from a village to a wealthy city. She was well educated, and possessed a remarkably acute mind. She became a widow when she was twenty years old, and her son died a raving maniac soon after. These things coloured her whole existence. She lived an ascetic life. In many things she was like the English Queen Elizabeth, but in one she far excelled her: she was insensible to flattery.

Her character and history.

While living, she was "one of the purest and most exemplary rulers that ever existed," and she is now worshipped in Mâlwa as an incarnation of the Deity.

Worshipped.

§ 76. We return now to Pûna. In 1769, while Haidar was dictating to the astonished Government of Madras the famous treaty (ch. xii. § 21), the Peshwâ, Mâdu Râo was involved in difficulties, arising from the restless ambition of his uncle Ragobâ, and of Janojî, the Râja of Nâgpûr. His conduct towards his uncle was as wise and forbearing as that of the latter was treacherous and

Diffusions Pûna.  
Mâdu Râo's difficulties.



§ 75\*. THE HOLKÂR, OR INDÔR, FAMILY, OF THE SHEPHERD TRIBE.

MULHÂR R. HOLKÂR. Died 1786. § 45, 76.

KANDI R. = AHAYÂ BÂI.  
Died 1754. § 76.

MALLÂ R. Died 1767. MUKTA BÂI.

AHAYÂ BÂI adopted  
TÔKAI HOLKÂR. Died 1795. § 118.

KHÂSI R. MULHÂR R. JESWANT R. (illegitimate). WITTÂJI R.  
Murdered 1806. Killed 1797. Died 1811. § 121. Executed 1800. § 121.

KHANDI R. MULHÂR R. HOLKÂR. HARÂ R. HOLKÂR.  
Murdered 1806. § 140, 160.

Khandi R. (adopted).—TÔKAI II.  
§ 160.

Mahādaji. Sindia. Rām Sāstri.

CH. V. § 77, 79.  
A.D. 1769.

inconsistent. Mādu yielded him all respect; but maintained his own authority. The Berār Rāja—never faithful to the Peshwā, hating, as he did, Brāhman ascendancy—was ever ready to intrigue or fight against the Pūna Government. The Peshwā succeeded, however, in bringing him to complete submission. Ragobā himself was taken prisoner, and confined in Pūna, till released by Mādu Rāo just before his death (1772).

Ragobā in prison.

§ 77. The affairs of the other great Mālwa, or SINDIA, branch of the Mahrattas now demand attention. Rānoji was the founder of this family (§ 45, 56). His son Jayapa succeeded him, and was assassinated in 1759. Jankoji, the third of the line, was executed the day after the battle of Pānipat (§ 70). An illegitimate son of Rānoji, by name MAHĀDAJĪ, became, in 1761, the head of the family. He had been wounded at the battle of Pānipat, and was lame ever after. We shall find him the chief rival of the Nānā Farnavis, and virtually independent after the treaty of Salbāi.

Sindia, the founder of the Gwālār State.

Mahādaji, 1761-1794.

Till his death in 1794, he was the most prominent Mahratta leader. (§ 110.)

§ 78. Mahratta history is ennobled by the character of Rām Sāstri, who was Mādu's tutor and spiritual guide. Profoundly learned, a pattern of integrity and of prudence, he reproved princes, awed the most disolute, showed a bright example of industry, zeal, and benevolence, and is still revered as the *Sir Matthew Hale* of the Mahrattas.

Rām Sāstri.

§ 79. The last great effort of Mādu's life was his expedition into the Carnatic, to enforce the payment of the tribute, which Haidar, relying on his treaty with the English, had dared to withhold. (Ch. xii. § 22.)

Mādu Rāo in the Carnatic, 1770.

The campaign of 1770 was unfavourable to Haidar;

CH. V. § 80, 82.  
A.D. 1768, 72.

**Mahrattas in Hindûstân.**

Haidar defeated  
at Chêrkûli.

but Mâdu Râo was compelled by sickness to return to Pûna, and Trimback Mamâ was left in command.

After a terrible defeat, upon the infliction of which the Mahrattas greatly prided themselves, the Mysôr army was shut up in Seringapatam. The siege was unsuccessful; but a peace, by which Haidar virtually yielded all demands, was made in April 1772. (Ch. xii. § 22.)

**1769.**  
The Mahrattas  
again in Hin-  
dûstân.

§ 80. In 1769 the Mahrattas again crossed the Chambal, being the first time that they had ventured to show themselves in Hindûstân, in any force, since their terrible disaster in 1761.

They then levied tribute from the Râjpût states, and overran the districts occupied by the Jâts; and in the neighbourhood of Bhartpûr dictated an agreement, by which sixty-five lakhs of rupees were to be paid as tribute by the latter people.

The Mahrattas  
supreme in  
Delhi, 1770-  
1803.

§ 81. And now began the series of transactions which put Shâh Âlâm II., the nominal Emperor of Delhi, into the absolute power of the Mahrattas; and made them, in fact, masters, for the time, of the empire. (Ch. iii. § 18.)

(1.) They overran Rohilkhand, 1771. This was the remote cause of the famous Rohilla war. (Ch. ix. § 36.)

(2.) They again took possession of Delhi, under Mahâdajî Sindia, with a body of 30,000 men.

(3.) Having maintained a friendly intercourse with Shuja-ud-daula, Nuwâb of Oudh and nominal Vazir of the empire, they took Shâh Âlâm II., who left British protection, and placed him on the throne in Delhi (ch. iii. § 23), December 1771. For this they received £100,000.

Vissajî Kishen, Tûkajî Holkâr, and Mahâdajî Sindia, were the leaders.

The death of  
Mâdu Râo, 1772.

§ 82. Mâdu Râo, who had long been sick, died of consumption on the 18th November 1772, in his twenty-

Mādu Rāo succeeded by Nārāyana Rāo. Ragobā.

CH. V. 84  
A.D. 1772.

eighth year. His early death was as great a calamity to the Mahrattas as the defeat at Pānīpat. He was the *Black Prince* of the race; brave and prudent; bent on promoting the welfare of his people; firm in maintaining his own authority, and, with many difficulties to encounter, a successful ruler.

(H. P. 711)  
(C. 114)  
(H. 12, 13)  
H. character.

The Mahratta revenue at the period of his death may be calculated at £7,000,000 sterling. The army at the command of the Peshwā, at this period, numbered not less than 100,000 magnificent horsemen, and a fair proportion of foot and artillery.

Disunion was the ruin of this apparently prosperous empire. § 139.

§ 83. On the death of the Peshwā, his younger brother, Nārāyana Rāo, succeeded him, in his eighteenth year. (Table, § 158\*.) His uncle, Ragobā, now released, was his guardian. Sakarām Bappu was prime minister, and Nānā Farnavis one of the high officers of state.

THE PESHWA  
PESHWA, 1773

(§ 73)

The young Peshwā himself was ambitious of military distinction.

Concord did not long prevail, and Ragobā was again put under restraint in the palace of the Peshwā. (1773, April.)

In August, Nārāyana Rāo was murdered. A conspiracy, which Ragobā favoured, had been formed to seize the young Peshwa; but the murder seems to have been planned by Anandā Bāi, the wicked wife of Ragobā. When the assassins attacked the poor youth, he ran to his uncle's apartments, and begged him to defend him. This Ragobā tried to do, but in vain.

The murder of  
Nārāyana Rāo,  
1773

Aug. 30, 1773.

§ 84. Ragobā now assumed the dignity of Peshwā (1773), and pushed on the war with the Nizām and Haider with vigour and good fortune.

Ragobā nominal  
Peshwā.

## § 86. THE BHONSLÊ FAMILY OF BERÂR.

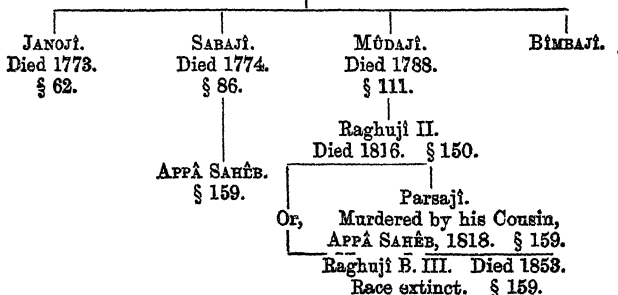
(Comp. p. 8, 9.)

A KSHATEYA FAMILY.

PARSAJÎ. § 45. His cousin and  
successor was RAGHUJÎ BHONSLÊ, Râja of Berâr, 1734.

Took Kuttack, 1752. Died 1753

§ 45, 52.

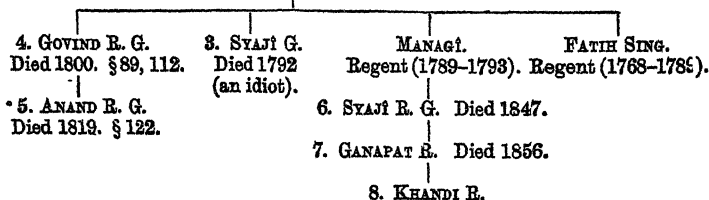


## § 89. THE GAEKWÂR FAMILY.

DAMAJÎ. Died in 1721.

1. PILAJÎ GAEKWÂR.\* Murdered in 1732. § 45.

2. DAMAJÎ G. Died 1768. § 56.



\* First occupied Songur in 1719, Barôda in 1730.

# THE MAHRATTA HISTORY.

199

## Negotiations between Ragobâ and the Bombay Government.

CH. V. § 85, 89  
A.D. 1774, 5.

§ 85. Meanwhile in Hindûstân, the Emperor Shâh Âlam II., invited by Zabîta Khân, son of Nazîb Khân, strove to free himself from the Mahratta yoke; but was at last defeated in a battle at Dillî in December 1772. This made the Mahrattas more than ever masters of the emperor. (Ch. iii. § 23.)

(or *Nazib*, or *Nazif*.)

§ 86. Janoji Bhonsle, the Râja of Nîgâr, died in May, 1773; and there was a petty civil war about the succession. Bâmul, the nephew and adopted son of Janoji, succeeded. Mûlaji and Shâm, his uncles, were rivals for the throne of regent. See vol. i, p. 156; Shâm was killed in 1774, and Mûlaji remained supreme.

The Affairs of Nîgâr (p. 156, 159.)

§ 87. A revolution was now pending at Pûna. A strong confederacy was formed against Ragobâ, of which Sakarâb Bappu, Nânâ Farnavis, and Hari Pant Phâkre were the heads. A battle was fought, in which Ragobâ, with whom was Morârî, Râjâ of Gûti (§ 55, and ch. viii. § 22), was victorious, and Trimback Mâmâ was killed; but Ragobâ's cause was ruined by the birth, in April 1774, of Nârâyana Râo's posthumous son, Mâdu Râo Nârâyana, whom, rejecting Ragobâ's claims, we may call the sixth PESHWÂ. (See Table, § 158\*.)

Ragobâ's deposition, 1774.

March 4.

Mâdu Râo Nârâyana, Sixth Peshwâ. Born April 18, 1774.

§ 88. Ragobâ advanced to the banks of the Taptî, where he hoped to be joined by Sindia and Holkâr. There he entered into a negotiation with the Bombay Government, under Mr. Hornby (Governor from 1776 to 1784), promising to cede to the English *Salsette, the smaller islands near Bombay, and Bassin, with its dependencies*, as the price of their assistance.

Negotiations with the Bombay Government.

(Comp. § 51.)

While these negotiations were pending, Ragobâ's son, Bîjl Râo Râwâthî, was born at Dhar, 1774. He in due time became the seventh (and last) of the PESHWÂS.

§ 89. There was now a dispute about the succession to the Barôda Râj; for which *Gound Râo* and *Futuh Sing*, sons of Damaji, were rival claimants. (See table, p. 198.)

Barôda affairs.

Ragobâ espoused the cause of the former.

CH V § 90, 92  
A D 1775, 6.

Colonel Keating. Arras.

I  
The Treaty of  
SÛRAT, 1775

§ 90. The long-pending treaty between the Bombay Government and Ragobâ was signed March 6, 1775, at SÛRAT. The Bombay Government had already occupied Salsette, fearing that the Portuguese would re-conquer it.

This was a wrong step doubtless and it led to the *first Mahratta war* but at the time it must have seemed the best for the British interests since Salsette was of great importance.

[Hastings in  
Bengal, 1772-  
1785]

Keating's first  
steps

Mahratta com-  
bination against  
Ragobâ

The battle of  
Arras, 1775  
May 15

Victory.

Sea-fight

Ragobâ despised  
by his own  
people

The Calcutta  
Government in-  
terference, 1774.

§ 91. We have now to give a summary of the first war of the Mahrattas with the English, 1775-1782.

The Bombay Government at once sent Lieutenant-Colonel Keating, and a force of 1,500 men to SÛrat, to conduct Ragobâ to Pûna, and instal him as Peshwâ.

By this time all the Mahratta chiefs, except Govind Râo (one of the Gujarât rivals, § 89), were in arms against Ragobâ and his English allies. Holkâr and Sindia had been detached from his cause by great efforts on the part of the Pûna regency.

Keating, after some fruitless negotiations, marched from the neighbourhood of Cambay towards the banks of the Mâlî, and reached the plain of Arras, where he gained a complete, but dearly-bought, victory. This was the first time the English had met the Mahrattas in a regular battle, and there Keating defeated a force which was ten times as large as his own.

An engagement took place also by sea, and Commodore Moor was successful. All things seemed favourable to Ragobâ, who made some further valuable cessions of territory to the Bombay Government.

Yet Ragobâ was unpopular with the whole Mahratta people, by whom his real character was duly estimated (§ 63).

§ 92. The Supreme Government, with Warren Hastings at its head, assumed the administration of all the

## 201

CHAP V § 93  
AD 1776

[illegible][illegible]

The Survey also has interviewed in person with the public in order to get their views on the proposed changes. The Survey also has interviewed with the public in order to get their views on the proposed changes.

93. The Bishop (as yet) is unwilling to let the monks  
 change to Romanism, and to let the truth of the  
 Pundit is injurious to the truth of the  
 Religion himself with two hundred and fifty  
 where he appealed to the Doctors and  
 George III

The Court of Directors approved of the treaty of Surat, and encouraged the Bombay authorities to treat through the treaty of Purnadar, and at last the intrigues of the Puna Government which had compelled the Supreme Council to conclude with Bombay in espousing the cause of Ragobā

**1777.**



CH. V. § 84, 96.  
A.D. 1777.

**The first Mahratta war.**

Satirā affairs.  
[Table, p. 172.]  
SĪHU II., 1777.

§ 84. Rām Rāja (the fourth of the dynasty) died December 12, 1777; and was succeeded in his nominal dignity by his adopted son, who was called Sāhu Mahārāj (§ 59).

Gangā Bāi.

Gangā Bāi, the mother of the Peshwā, poisoned herself about this time, under circumstances which are fatal to the good name of Nānā Farnavis.

The English  
support Ragobā.

§ 95. It was now time for some decisive action on the part of the English.

St. Lubin's  
mission.

An adventurer called St. Lubin, a mere charlatan, had induced the French Government (according to his own statement) to send him to Pūna, to ascertain what might be gained by an alliance with the Mahrattas.

Intrigues in  
Pūna.

Nānā Farnavis encouraged him. But the Pūna regency was itself distracted by party intrigues. Morabā Farnavis, a cousin of the Nānā, and even Sakarām Bappu, joined in a conspiracy to restore Ragobā; and the Supreme Government at length united with the Bombay authorities in the resolution to bring him back to Pūna.

Troops sent  
overland from  
Calcutta by  
W.rien Hast-  
ings  
Goddard in  
command.

§ 96. Troops were now despatched by land from Calcutta, under Colonel Leslie; who delayed on his march, was recalled, and died in October, 1778.

Colonel Goddard, one of the great military heroes of British Indian history, then assumed command, and reached Sūrat on 6th February, 1779.

His route.  
(Map, p. 7.)  
Bhōpāl.

His route lay through Dhūlsa, Bhōpāl, Hussangābād, and Burhānpūr, to Sūrat.

He was treated by the Nuwāb of Bhōpāl with a kindness that laid the foundation of the amity which has ever since subsisted between that state and the British.

(§ 150-163.)

He entered by the way into some fruitless negotiations with Mūdajī, the protector of Berār (§ 86). The Nāgpur Rāja aided him, however, with money and provisions.

Goddard's great March. The Convention of Wargâom.

CHAP. V. § 98.  
A.D. 1778, 9.

This wonderful land-march was projected by Hastings himself, and filled India with astonishment. In England it was termed "a frantic military exploit;" but, without some such heroic phrensies, the English would never have become paramount in India.

A "frantic military exploit."

§ 97. Meanwhile, shame and disaster had befallen a portion of the Bombay army.

The convention of Wargâom or Taligâom, 1779.

After many discussions and much intrigue, it was resolved at Bombay to send a force direct to Pûna, to place Ragobâ there as regent.

This army left Bombay November 22, 1778, landed at Panalla, ascended the ghâts to Khandâla, December 23, and on the 9th January reached Taligâom.

(or Panwall).

The expedition was under the command of Colonel Egerton, with whom were associated Messrs. Mostyn and Carnac. Mr. Mostyn (an able man, often employed in Mahratta affairs) died at the very outset.

Egerton and Carnac.

Mr. Mostyn.

Captain Stewart, an officer so brave that the Mahrattas called him "Stewart Phâkre" (*the hero Stewart*), fell near Kârli.

"Stewart Phâkre."

At Taligâom the two gentlemen who were responsible came to the determination to retreat. Two thousand six hundred British troops were led back by their weak, sickly, and inexperienced commander and his civilian colleague. When within eighteen miles of Pûna, Colonel Cockburn took the command.

Of course their retreat was known at once. The army was pursued; and though Captain James Hartley especially distinguished himself, it was considered impossible to retreat farther than Wargâom, and negotiations were commenced with Nânâ Farnavis.

Hartley. The disastrous retreat.

There were two Mahratta authorities with whom Mr. Carnac could negotiate, Nânâ Farnavis and Mahâdâjî Sindia, who were rivals, though both essential to the conduct of Mahratta affairs at the time. The latter,

The terms of the convention.

CHAP. V. § 98.  
A.D. 1778.

The Convention of Wargâom.

indeed, affected to be a mediator between Farnavis and his enemies.

With Sindia, to whom Ragobâ had given himself up, the "*convention*" was at last concluded, Hartley protesting. He and the sepoys would have occupied Pûna with scarcely an effort, if they had been permitted.

Everything, according to this abortive and ill-omened "*convention*," was to be restored to the position in which it was in 1773.

An order was actually sent, forbidding the advance of the Bengâl troops; which, of course, they did not obey.

Broach was to be made over to Sindia, with 41,000 rupees in presents to his servants! (§ 102.)

Two hostages, Mr. Farmer and Lieutenant Stewart, were given. *Such was the miserable Convention of Wargâom, January 1779.*

The convention void.

Punishment.

The Bombay Government, under Hornby, and the Court of Directors, disallowed the convention, as beyond the powers of those who had concluded it; and dismissed Colonel Egerton, Colonel Cockburn, and Mr. Carnac from the service.

Reward.

Hartley was applauded, and made lieutenant-colonel at once.

If Farnavis exultingly thought that the English would be overcome, as the Portuguese had been in 1739, he was soon undeceived.

Goddard's negotiations.

§ 98. Goddard had now (§ 96) reached Sûrat (having marched from Burhânpûr, a distance of three hundred miles, in twenty days), with instructions to negotiate a peace with Pûna, on the basis of the treaty of Pûrandar, with a provision for the exclusion of the French.

Pûna in 1779.  
The chiefs of the Mahratta nation.

The Mahratta chiefs at the commencement of this war, it must be remembered, were Nânâ Farnavis, the wily statesman, his old rival Sakarâm Bappu; and Mahâdaji Sindia, all in Pûna, Fatih Sing and Govind Sing Gaekwâr, rivals in Gujarât; Mûdaji Bhonslê, guardian of his nephew Raghuji, of Berâr; Tûkaji Holkâr, and his patroness, Ahalyâ Bâi, in Mâlwa.

## THE MAHRATTA HISTORY.

### The first Mahratta war (English).

This year Hastings sent Mr. Elliot to Mûlaj, offering to form an alliance with him, and even to make him Peshwâ. This Mûlaj declined (Ch. x § 11).

Poor old Sakaram Bappu was no match for his wily colleague, and was thrown into prison. Hurried from fort to fort, he died at last miserably in Raighar (1778).

In Calcutta, Hastings, Francis, Barwell, and Sir Eyre Coote were in authority.

Ch. V. § 99, 100.  
A. 1780.

Death of Sakaram Bappu, 1778.

Calcutta authorities.

§ 99. Haidar Ali was engaged in constant hostilities with the Mahrattas. In 1779 he paid a large sum for the price of the departure of Hui Pant Plakre (Ch. xii § 23). More or less, at this period he held all the Mahratta lands south of the Krishna.

Guti was taken 1776, after a siege of nine months, and Morari Râo (Ch. viii § 22-24) was taken prisoner. He died a captive.

Haidar and the Mahrattas.

§ 100. Ragoba had now joined Colonel Goddard as a fugitive. With him were Anurit Râo, his adopted son, and Bâji Râo (the last of the Peshwâs, born 1775). In the negotiations now entered into, Nânâ Farnavis, demanded, as preliminary concessions, the surrender by the English of Ragobâ and of Salsette. As this was out of the question, active hostilities were commenced January 1, 1780. The forts of Dubhoy (*Dubhâi*, fifteen miles S.E. of Barôda) and the splendid city of Ahmadâbâd were taken by storm; and a treaty was made with Fatih Sing, by which the English acknowledged him as Gaekwâr of Barôda.

Negotiations broken off.

Sindia and Holkâr now joined their forces to oppose Goddard, who defeated and drove them off; but could then do no more.

April 2 and 14, 1780.

Hartley defended the Konkan, where Kaliân was taken.

Captain William Popham, aided by Captain Bruce, was sent from Bengal to attack Mâlwa and effect a diversion. He took Lahâr (a strongly fortified place, about fifty miles W. of Kalpi), and afterwards Gwâlîôr, in the most heroic style, by escalade. These were left in the hands of the Râna of Gôhud (§ 103).

Popham, 1780.

Ch. Gûd. tr.

Gwâlîôr was the chief fort of Sindia, and was regarded as an impregnable fortress. (August 4, 1780.) The Râna of Gôhud

Gwâlîôr stormed.

CH. V. § 101, 102.  
A.D. 1780.

End of the first Mahratta war.

August 4, 1780.  
(22 miles N.E.  
from Gwáliór.)

was the ally whom Hastings was maintaining as a check on Sindia. The army of the latter was totally routed, March 24, 1781.

Soon after this he made peace with Hastings.

Combinations  
against the  
English.  
Haider's great  
invasion of the  
Carnatic.  
Hornby left to  
himself.

§ 101. In the meanwhile came Haider's memorable invasion of the Carnatic, July 1780. (Ch. xii. § 27.)

All the resources of Bengál were required to aid Madras to meet this terrible attack. Bombay was left to itself. "We have no resource," said Governor Hornby, "but such as we may find in our own efforts."

Triple alliance  
against Britain.

The English were at this critical period engaged in two great wars. The strength of India, east and west, was arrayed against them. The Nirâm, the Mahrattas, and Haider formed a triple anti-British alliance. (Ch. xii. § 26.)

Warren Hastings was the saviour of British India at this period.

Hartley.  
Bassein taken.

Hartley kept the Konkan with admirable skill and bravery, while Goddard took Bassein. (December 11, 1780.)

Goddard's  
unsuccessful  
expedition.

Goddard was eventually compelled to retreat (and it was his only failure in the war) by the combined forces of the Mahrattas, and no great advantages were afterwards gained by either party.

III.  
The Peace of  
Salbái, 1782.  
(Near Gwáliór,  
Sindia's camp.)

§ 102. The terms of a peace were arranged in January, 1782; but the treaty was not concluded till the end of that year. Náná Farnavis delayed signing it till the 20th December, after he had received intelligence of Haider's death, which happened December 7. It is called the treaty of Salbái. Mahádaji Sindia, who now clearly saw that continued war with the English must be ruinous to himself, was the Peshwá's

## Salbâi.

CH. V. § 103, 104.  
A. D. 1780.

plenipotentiary. Its chief provisions were the following:—

(1.) Ragobâ was to have 25,000 rupees a month, and live where he chose. (He chose *Kopergaon*, on the Godâvari, where he died in 1783. His son Bâji Râo was then nine years old.)

Conditions of  
peace.  
Ragobâ.

(2.) All territory was to remain as before the treaty of Pûrandar.

Territory.

(3.) All Europeans, except the English and Portuguese, were to be excluded from the Mahratta dominions.

Foreigners  
excluded.

(4.) Haidar (who died while the treaty was being negotiated) was to be compelled to relinquish his conquests from the English, and from the Nuwâb of Arcot, in the Carnatic. (Ch. xii. § 31.)

Haidar.

(5.) Broach was given to Sindia, for his humanity to the English after the Convention of Wargâom. (§ 129.)

Sindia's reward.

This celebrated treaty marks an æra in Mahratta history.

# PART V.—MAHRATTA HISTORY FROM THE TREATY OF SALBÂI TO THE TREATIES OF 1805.

§ 103. The effect of the treaty of Salbâi was greatly to favour Sindia's desire to form an independent Mahratta dominion. He no longer regarded himself as a feudatory of the Peshwâ. About this time he took possession of Gwâliôr from the Râna of Gôhûd, who had forfeited his claim to British protection; and then turned his attention to Delhi, where he obtained supreme authority, and was made by Shâh Âlam II. commander-in-chief of the Imperial forces and manager of the provinces of Delhi and Âgra.

Sindia aggran-  
dises himself.

October, 1784.

Delhi was not freed from the Mahrattas till 1803.

§ 104. Meanwhile *Tippû* (ch. xii. § 36) was allowed to cajole the Madras Government into a treaty, which

The disgraceful  
treaty of Man-  
gulôr, 1784.

CH. V. § 105, 107.  
A.D. 1784-9.

**Mahādaji Sindia. War with Tippû.**

(Comp. ch. x.  
§ 6.)

was signed at *Mangalôr*, and in which no mention was made of the treaty of *Salbâi*, an omission most unfair to the Mahrattas, and unjust on the part of the English. Against this treaty, *Hastings*, now powerless, emphatically protested.

Sindia.

Arrogance and  
a rebuff.

§ 105. Sindia, in 1785, was so elated by his position at Delhi, as to make a claim on the British Government for *Chouth* for their Bengâl provinces; but Mr. Macpherson, whose character Sindia doubtless wished to test, compelled him, by a most energetic and peremptory requisition, to disavow this claim. (Ch. x § 17.)

The Mahrattas  
and Tippû.

§ 106. From 1784 to 1787 the Mahrattas, in alliance with Nizâm Alî, were at war with Tippû. (Ch. xii. § 38.)

The English  
refuse to join  
in the war.

Nânâ Farnavis made great attempts to induce the English to join them in a war against Mysôr, but in vain. While the treaty of *Salbâi* had bound the English and Mahrattas not to assist each other's enemies, the English were not prepared to assist in an offensive war against Tippû, to whom they were bound by the unfortunate treaty of *Mangalôr*. Lord Cornwallis, in fact, announced it as the English rule, *to engage in none but defensive wars!* (Ch. x. § 18-21.)

(1. *Badâmi*, a strong hill-fort, 55 miles N E from *Dhîrwar*.  
2. *Kittûr*, 19 miles W N W. from *Dhîrwar*.  
3. *Nairund*, 31 miles N E. from *Dhîrwar*.)

Nothing remarkable was effected during this war, at the conclusion of which, *Badâmi*, *Kittûr*, and *Nairund* were ceded to the Mahrattas, and Tippû engaged to pay forty-five lakhs of rupees as tribute. The *Tûmbhadra* river was then fixed as the boundary of the Mysôrean's dominions.

Mahādaji  
Sindia, 1785-  
1793.

§ 107. From 1785 to 1789 the chief interest connected with Mahratta history is centred in Mahādaji

# THE MAHRATTA HISTORY.

209

## The Mahrattas and Lord Cornwallis.

CHAP. V § 108.  
A. D. 1785, 82.

Sindia, who was vigorously prosecuting his schemes in Hindûstân. He was engaged in severe struggles (nominally on behalf of the emperor) with Pratâb Sing, the Râja of Jeypûr, as well as with the Râja of Jôdh-pûr, and many of the lesser Muhammadan Jaghîrdârs, from whom he tried to extort tribute.

During these conflicts, he met with several great reverses. A part of his troops was under the command of a Frenchman, General De Boigne. The famous general Ismael Beg was the leader of the Râjpût forces; and battles were fought at Patun (1790), and at Mirta (1791), where De Boigne's bravery gained the day for Sindia. Both these places are near Jeypûr.

Ismael Beg.

Gholâm Kâdir, son of the Rohilla chieftain Zabîta Khân, now appeared on the scene. He was the hereditary enemy of Sindia. This infamous person, in the course of the struggle, occupied Delhi, and was guilty of unparalleled atrocities there. The wretched emperor was deprived of his eyes, and every member of his family exposed to deadly insult. (Ch. iii § 23.)

Gholâm Kâdir

Shah Alam II.  
blinded

Sindia soon recovered Delhi, and reinstated the fallen monarch. Gholâm Kâdir was taken and put to a horrible death. Bidar Bakht, whom he had made emperor, was also slain. (Ch. iii § 24.) The Mahrattas had become the nominal guardians, and real oppressors of the Mogul dynasty.

Gholâm Kâdir's  
punishment.

Sindia was now fully bent on making himself an independent sovereign; and the Governor-General, Lord Cornwallis, felt so jealous of his intrigues, that he sent a minister to reside at the court of the Peshwâ, as a check upon this ambitious and intriguing chieftain.

§ 108. Tippû did not long keep peace with the Mahrattas; and in the end of 1789 made an attack on the Travancore lines (ch. xii. § 40), which led to a declaration of war against him by Lord Cornwallis, and to a treaty between Nizâm Allî, Nânâ Farnavis, and the English, to humble the Mysôr state (1790).

combination  
against Tippû,  
89  
h. x. 22)

The Mahratta contingent was commanded by Parêsh-râm Bhâo. It was dilatory in its movements. Another army under Harî Pant Phâkre was also sent. The Mahrattas did little else than plunder and attend to their

The Mahrattas  
before Seringa-  
patam, 1792.



CH. V. §109, 110.  
A.D. 1790, 4.

**Mahādaji Sindia in Pûna.**

own interests; yet Lord Cornwallis, according to the terms of the treaty, made over to them (in February 1792), on the successful conclusion of the war, a share of Tippû's dominions, lying between the S. Warda and Kishtna.

Sindia in Pûna.

The Peshwâ's title.

June 11, 1792.

July, 1792.

Sindia's feigned humility.

War between  
Sindia and  
Holkâr, 1792.

Lakairi.

§ 109. Mahādajî Sindia continued supreme at the Mogul Court: the mayor of the palace. In 1790 he had procured for the Peshwâ from Shâh Âlam II., for the third time, the title of Vakîl-i-Mutlâq, or chief minister. Sindia and his heirs were to be perpetual deputies of the Peshwâ in this office, which was now made hereditary. Thus skilfully was his ambition veiled.

To convey the patents and insignia of this office to the Peshwâ, Sindia now marched to Pûna. His arrival filled Nânâ Farnavîs with apprehension. The ceremony of investing the Peshwâ, Mâdu Râo Nârâyana, who was in his eighteenth year, with the insignia of office, was most splendid. Much was made, too, of an order issued by the emperor, in deference to the Mahrattas, forbidding the slaughter of cows in Hindûstân. Sindia's one object was to make himself supreme at Pûna; but he affected extreme humility; carried a pair of slippers as a memento of his hereditary office (§ 45); and would receive no title but that of Patêl, or village head-man.

It was now a game of skill between the Nânâ and Sindia: Brâhman against Sûdra.

§ 110. Meanwhile in Hindûstân the jealousy between Holkâr and Sindia led to a battle between the former and Sindia's generals, De Boigne, Perron, Gôpâl Râo, and Lackwa Dâda. This bloody battle was fought at Lakairi, near Âjmîr. Holkâr's army was utterly routed, and retreated to Mâlwa. In his retreat Holkâr took and burnt Ūjein.

Sindia, thus powerful everywhere, would probably

# THE MAHRATTA HISTORY.

211

**Daulat Râo Sindia. The Sidis.**

CH. V. 111. 114  
A.D. 1794

have succeeded in overthrowing the Brâhman influence altogether, had he not died suddenly at Wanaodi, near Pâna, 12th February, 1794.

Death of Mâhârâjâ,  
D. 12 Feb. 1794

His career was most eventful. The chief Mahratta leader for thirty-three years (comp. § 77), he mediated between the Peshwâ and the English; and at the same time ruled the puppet emperor of Delhi with a rod of iron. His objects were three:—(1.) to aggrandise his own family, and found for it a really independent sovereignty; (2.) to overthrow Brâhman ascendancy in Pâna; (3.) and to maintain unity among the Mahratta princes, so as to make Hindû influence supreme in India.

Sindhia's policy.

Mahratta Empire  
under Sindia.

He was succeeded by his grand-nephew Daulat Râo Sindia (table, § 45), then in his fifteenth year (§ 161). This latter chief was not really a Mahratta in feeling; but always regarded himself as the principal sovereign of India.

Daulat Râo Sindia,  
1794-1827.

§ 111. In Berâr, Mûdaji, the regent, died in 1788, and Raghuji Bhonâlâ now assumed the dominion (§ 86). His title was Sena Bahadur Subah, or Commander-in-Chief of the Mahratta Empire (§ 150).

Nâgpur affairs.

§ 112. In Ahmadâbâd or Barôda, Fatih Gaekwâr died in 1790. His brother, Maraji Rao, became regent for Syaji, but died in 1793, Govind Rao at last was acknowledged by all parties as regent (§ 124).

Barôda affairs.

§ 113. On the coast, piracy, though checked by the expedition of 1756, still continued. The Peshwâ's fleets at Bassein and Vijiadrûg, occasionally annoyed English vessels. At Kolâba, Manaji Angria also committed occasional depredations.

Piracy on the  
western coast

In Jinjîra, the Sidis, though often attacked, maintained their ground, and retained their little dominion, when the power of the Peshwâ had ceased to exist.

There were nests of pirates at Mâlwan and Sâwant-Wâlî; and piracy on the western coast was not finally put down till 1818 (§ 145).

§ 114. Nânâ Farnavis was now the only Mahratta statesman. The Mahratta confederacy still maintained

Disunion and  
decay, 1794.

CHAP. V. § 115.  
A.D. 1794, 5.

The Mahrattas and the Nizâm. Kûrdlâ.

the nominal supremacy of the Peshwâ; but the people were losing their adventurous spirit, and each chieftain was gradually becoming independent of any central authority.

The disputes between Nizâm Alî and the Nânâ, regarding arrears of tribute, grew more and more complicated. Sir John Shore (timidly refusing to perform the duties to which the English were pledged by the treaty of 1790) would not interfere. (Ch. x. § 30.) The Nizâm was left to his fate. War was begun in December 1794; but the English ministers at both courts were compelled to remain passive, though impatient, spectators of the struggle.

The last gathering of chiefs.

Under the Peshwâ's banner, *for the last time*, came all the great Mahratta chiefs. Daulat Râo Sindia, Tûkajî Holkâr, Raghujî Bhonslê from Nâgpur; Govind Râo from Barôda; and all the lesser chieftains were there.

The battle of Kûrdlâ, 1795. (59 miles S E. from Ahmadnagar, surrounded by hills, having one pass on the W.)

At Kûrdlâ (March 1795), a victory was obtained by the Mahrattas, more the result of a panic among the Moguls than of Mahratta bravery. But Nizâm Alî was obliged to treat. An obnoxious minister, Mashir-ul-Mulk, who had resisted the Mahratta claims, was surrendered. Raymond, a Frenchman, was in command of the Haidarâbâd troops; while Perron was with Sindia's contingent.

(Mâdu Râo Nârâyana, Sixth Peshwâ Comp § 87.) The young Peshwâ's reinforcements after Kûrdlâ.

When the Haidarâbâd minister was given up, the young Peshwâ was seen to look sad; being asked the cause by the Nânâ, he replied, "I grieve to see such a degeneracy as there must be, on both sides, when the Moguls can so disgracefully submit, and our troops can vaunt so much of a victory obtained without an effort." The sad, moralising young Peshwâ was just twenty-one years of age.

Large territorial concessions were then made to the Mahrattas, including Daulatâbâd.

Nânâ Farnavis and Ragobâ's sons.

§ 115. The Nânâ was now in the zenith of his power and influence; but he lost his popularity by his treat-

## BĀJĪ RĀO II. His struggles for freedom.

CHAP V § 116  
A.D. 1798.

ment of Ragobā's sons, whom he imprisoned in S. whari. Of these Bāji Rāo was the eldest, and was most accomplished, winning in his manners, and a general favourite.

The Nānā forcibly prevented all intercourse between the Peshwā and his cousin; and this so irritated the young prince, that he threw himself from a terrace of his palace, and died in two days.

Bāji Rāo II. (see table, § 158\*) succeeded him. But the Nānā at first proposed that the late Peshwā's widow should adopt a son, who should be placed on the throne.

After endless intrigues, Daulat Rāo Sindia and the Nānā united in the elevation of Bāji Rāo; and in December 1796 he was placed on the Mahād, with Farnavis once more prime minister. The Nānā no doubt aimed at gradually setting aside the Peshwā, as the Peshwās had superseded the Rājas. He made himself *hereditary Diwān*. But he had no son to take his place.

§ 116. BĀJĪ RĀO II., though of most prepossessing manners and appearance, was a worthless man, fitted to bring to ruin, as he did, the state which had the misfortune to receive him for its ruler. He was the counterpart of Belial in Milton.

His first endeavour was to rid himself of Daulat Rāo Sindia, and of the Nānā. The former was continually in Pūna, where he over-ruled the young Peshwā, who determined at any cost to send him back to Hindūstān. But first the ruin of the Nānā must be effected. It was determined, with the aid of Sindia, to seize him. Pūna for a day and a night was a scene of bloodshed and confusion. The Nānā was sent a prisoner to Ahmadnagar, while Shīrzi Rāo Ghātge, father-in-law of Sindia, was made minister; and was allowed to plunder,

The name of  
Mahād Nārā-  
yān  
Rājā  
1798

By the  
the overland  
at Peshwa.

His character.

(Parashee Lost.  
B. II.)Puna in  
continuation.(Ghātge.  
(§ 141, 137.)

CH. V. § 117, 118.  
A.D. 1798.

Jeswant Ráo Holkár.

Báji Ráo and  
the Náná Farná-  
vis reconciled.

torture, and kill the inhabitants of Púna at his pleasure. He was an execrable monster. The Peshwá was also assisted, in his attempts to free himself, by his adopted brother, Anurít Ráo.

Sindia himself now wished to return to Hindústán; but could not find funds to pay his troops, and several battles, resulting from domestic quarrels, took place. The Náná was liberated, at the earnest request of Báji Ráo, who even paid him a midnight visit in disguise, threw himself before the old statesman, and swore that he had never consented to his seizure. The Náná again became chief minister.

Nizám Alí  
comes under the  
subsidiary  
system, 1798.

§ 117. Lord Mornington (Marquess of Wellesley) was now Governor-General. With him Nizám Alí concluded a treaty, by which he dismissed his French soldiers; received six British battalions; and, in fact, came under the famous *subsidiary system*. (Ch. x. § 16.)

Now came the final war of the English with Tippú. The Peshwá, who had promised to help the English against Tippú, was secretly laying his plans to aid him, when the sudden intelligence arrived of the capture of Sríngapatam, and the death of the Tiger of Mysór. (Ch. xii. § 54.)

Britain had no rival now in India, except the Mahrattas. That struggle must come!

Túkaji Holkár,  
and his succe-  
sor, Jeswant  
Ráo Holkár,  
1795.  
(§ 75.)

§ 118. Túkaji Holkár died in 1795. He left four sons. The eldest was imbecile. The second was Mulhár Ráo, who was killed this year in a fray at Púna; and the third, who was illegitimate, was called JESWANT RÁO. His name among his troops was the "one-eyed." He was a wild and excitable man, with the seeds of madness in his constitution. The curious mixture of childishness, barbarity, and dignity in his character made him excessively popular among the Mahratta soldiery. [§ 140.] He eventually succeeded to the government. Meanwhile he became a great freebooter, and a formidable rival to Sindia. Bhíla,

## THE MAHRATTA HISTORY.

215

### The Nânâ's death. Dundia Wâg.

CH. V. § 119, 121.  
A.D. 1800.

Pindâris, Mahrattas, and Afghâns now flocked to Indôr, like ill-omened birds of prey. He had soon an army of 70,000 men. It will require the Pindâri war of 1818 to give quiet to these districts.

An adventurer called *George Thomas* (1787-1802) got possession of Hânsi, and was virtually a Raja for some years. He was finally driven out by Perron, and died in obscurity.

George Thomas.

§ 119. The eighteenth century closed with universal confusion in Mahratta affairs. Civil war, in which the Râja at Satârâ, the Kolhâpûr chief, Sindia, and the Peshwâ's own officers were engaged, raged throughout the whole country.

Mahratta affairs  
in 1799.

The death of Nânâ Farnavîs, which happened in March 1800, sealed the ruin of the Peshwâ's Government. "With him," said the resident, Colonel Palmer, "has departed all the wisdom and moderation of the Mahratta Government."

Death of Nânâ  
Farnavis, 1800.

He was an astute statesman, though personally timid; on the whole, a patriot. He firmly opposed the introduction of the SUBSIDIARY SYSTEM into Pûna; respected and admired the English, but politically regarded them ever with fear and aversion.

The Nânâ's  
character and  
policy.

§ 120. At this time a fugitive from Seringapatam, called Dundia Wâg, entered the service of the Kolhâpûr Râja; but afterwards left him, and, collecting troops, proceeded to plunder the Carnatic. Major-General the Honourable Arthur Wellesley attacked, pursued, and finally destroyed the freebooter and his troops.

Dundia Wâg,  
1801.

The Duke  
of Wellington.

§ 121. In the end of 1800, Sindia returned to Mûlâsh where several bloody battles were fought between him and Jeswant Râo Holkâr.

Tantia Bho Sindhia  
and Jeswant Râo Holkâr.

At this time the Peshwâ cruelly put to death Wittaj Holkâr, who had been long a prisoner in Pûna. (Table, p. 194.)

The infamous Ghâtgê joined his father-in-law, Sindia's army, and under his command the troops gained a complete victory over Holkâr; and the result was the pillage of Indôr, in revenge for that of Cjein. (§ 110.)

CHAP. V. § 122.  
A.D. 1801, 3.

**Holkâr and Sindia.**

Holkâr in Pûna,  
1801.

The Peshwâ  
under British  
protection, 1801.  
Affairs that led  
to the treaty of  
Bassein.

Strange en-  
tanglement of  
Mahratta  
affairs.

Ahmadâbâd or  
Barôda affairs.

Comes under  
the Subsidiary  
System, 1803.

Sûrat.

Ahalyâ Bâi's sacred city was laid waste.

Jeswant Râo was now nearly ruined. Sindia's and the Peshwa's troops gained several great advantages over him; but he, by a skilful march, arrived unexpectedly in the neighbourhood of Pûna, and there gained a decisive victory, October 25, 1801.

This battle had the most momentous results. The Peshwâ fled to Singhur, and immediately offered to Colonel Barry Close, the British resident, an engagement to subsidise six battalions of sepoys, and to pay twenty-five lakhs of rupees annually for their support. He eventually passed over to *Bassein*, and put himself under British protection. The entanglement of affairs was very strange; and it is evident that the ruin of the Mahrattas was inevitable.

The real Râja of the Mahrattas was in Satârâ, a mere puppet. (Table, § 27.) His chief minister and real sovereign, Bâji Râo II., the seventh Peshwâ, was driven from his capital by his feudatory, Holkâr, with whom another feudatory, Sindia, was at war. The British had to mediate. THE MAHRATTA CONFEDERATION WAS AT AN END. This was 122 years after the death of the founder, the great Sivaji.

§ 122. Meanwhile at Barôda (which had now become the capital of the Gackwâr's dominions, instead of Ahmadâbâd), on the death of Govind Râo (§ 112), disputes about the succession compelled the English to interfere. They took the part of Râoji Appaji, as minister of the heir, Anand Râo (table, § 89), who was of weak intellect.

Barôda was taken, a subsidiary force received, and the state came under the SUBSIDIARY SYSTEM, January 1803. (Comp. § 138.) This was ratified by the Peshwâ in the treaty of Bassein.

Major Walker, a distinguished administrator, became the first resident. Infanticide was abolished, and good order introduced through his wisdom, energy, and benevolence.

Sûrat was finally taken possession of by Governor Duncan in 1799.

The treaty of Bassein. Second Mahratta War.

CH. V. §123, 124.  
A.D. 1803.

§ 123. To return: Holkâr soon began to plunder Pûna, and set up a new Peshwâ, a son of Amrit Râo. This hastened the signing of THE TREATY OF BASSEIN, 31st December, 1802.

The Treaty of Bassein, 1802.

This celebrated treaty disunited for ever the Mahrattas, and gave the English complete authority over them. By it the Peshwâ engaged (1.) to admit a subsidiary force, and to pay twenty-six lakhs for its maintenance annually; (2.) to receive no European of any nation hostile to the English into his dominions; (3.) to give up all claims to Sûrat, and to leave his disputes with the Nizâm and the Gaekwâr to British mediation; and (4.) to remain the faithful ally of England.

The conditions of the Great Treaty of Bassein.

Full protection to him and to his territories was in return guaranteed by the British; and this, it will be seen, was not a small matter, nor one easy of accomplishment.

Prote tion, and its price.

Thus did Bâji Râo II. sacrifice his independence, and that of the race and people; but the blame must rest on the shoulders of the ambitious chieftains, whose dissensions for ever ruined the Mahratta interest.

Mahratta independence at an end. The cause of this.

§ 124. We are now approaching the history of the second war of the Mahrattas with the English. (A.D. 1803-1804.) Daulat Râo Sindia and Raghuji Bhonslé were both opposed to the treaty of Bassein, as was natural; and prepared for war. Sooner or later an English war with these chieftains was inevitable.

The war caused by the Treaty of Bassein.

General Wellesley had to reinstate the Peshwâ in Pûna, of which Jeswant Râo Holkâr was in possession; Sindia being at Burhânpûr with an army. Raghuji in Berâr was preparing for war.

Two armies were now marched, by the command of the Governor-General. One under his illustrious brother, Major-General Arthur Wellesley, assembled on the northern frontier of Mysôr; and the other, under General Stevenson, consisting of the Haidarâbâd subsidiary force, was encamped at Purinda, on the eastern border of the Peshwâ's territory.

Wellesley's and Stevenson's armies.

General Wellesley reached Pûna by forced marches.



CHAP. V. § 125.  
A.D. 1803.

Wellesley, Lake, and their companions.

The Peshwá re-  
instated, 1803.

Sindia and  
Raghuji in  
opposition to  
the British.

Preparations  
for the second  
Mahratta war.

In the Dakhan.

(Tûmbadhra.)  
In Gujarât.

In Hindûstân.

In Orissa.

on the 20th of April. The future Duke had always maintained that India would never know peace till the English were supreme in Pîna.

The Peshwá was reinstated in May. Holkâr then retreated to Málwâ, and Stevenson advanced to the Godâvarî to protect the country.

The two chieftains, Daulat Râo Sindia and Raghuji Bhonslê, still pretended to be well inclined to the British; but demurred to the treaty of Bassein. General Wellesley, to whom the whole authority, political as well as military, had been entrusted, simply required that Sindia should withdraw to Málwâ, and Raghuji Bhonslê to Berâr, when he would remove the British troops.

This they refused to do, and the SECOND MAHRATTA WAR began.

§ 125. The Marquess Wellesley at once determined to attack the confederates at every point. He acted as his own minister of war. The British troops were stationed in the following places:—

(1.) GENERAL WELLESLEY had 8,930 men, and was encamped near Ahmadnagar;

(2.) General Stevenson had 7,920 men, on the banks of the Godâvarî;

(3.) General Stewart, with a covering army, was stationed between the Kishtna and Tûngabadra.

(4.) In Gujarât there were 7,352 men, under General Murray, holding the various forts; of whom 5,000 were ready for field service.

(5.) In Hindûstân GENERAL LAKE had 10,500 men.

(6.) At Allâhâbâd 3,500 men were ready, under Col. Powell, to act on Bandêlkhand.

(7.) Under Col. Harcourt, 5,216 men were prepared to march on Kuttack, the extreme eastern point of Raghuji Bhonslê's dominions.

# THE MAHRATTA HISTORY.

219

## The battle of Assai.

CH. V. § 126, 127.  
A.D. 1803.

A glance at the map will show how completely the Mahratta powers were thus within the meshes of a mighty net. The whole was arranged by the two wonderful brothers, the Marquess and the future Duke.

To oppose these were Daulat Râo Sindia's troops and those of Raghujî Bhonslê, consisting of 50,000 horse and 30,000 infantry, commanded by Europeans; numerous and well-served artillery, and a great multitude of irregular troops; but the leaders themselves possessed neither courage nor military skill.

The Mahratta forces.

Sindia's troops, and, in fact, all his dominions in Hindûstân, were under M. Perron, who had succeeded the veteran De Boigne. Sindia himself had remained near Pûna from the date of his accession.

Jeswant Râo Holkâr was in Mâlwa, plundering, and striving to maintain an appearance of neutrality. He rejoiced at the prospect of the humiliation of his rival Sindia; though he himself hated and feared the British.

Holkâr.

The Mahratta dominion now extended from Delhi to the Câverî, and from the mouth of the Mahânadi to the Gulf of Cambay, over a population of 40,000,000.

The Mahratta strength.

Their whole armies numbered 210,000 infantry and 100,000 cavalry.

§ 126. The first great blow, promptly delivered, was the capture of *Ahmadnagar*, Sindia's great arsenal, August 12, 1803.

Ahmadnagar taken

Stevenson took Jâlna, September 9.

(10 mi. E. from Ahmadnagar.)

§ 127. The second great blow was the British victory of Assai. The whole Mahratta army was now strongly encamped near the villages of Bokerdûn and Jaffirâbâd. It consisted of 10,000 regular infantry, 100 well-equipped guns, and 40,000 horse.

Assai, 1803, September 23 (10 mi. S. of Jâlna.)

On 23rd September, Wellesley learned that the confederates were encamped on the Kâlnâ, near its

CH. V. § 128, 130.  
A.D. 1803.

The battle of Assai.

The battle of  
Assai. See  
map, p. 14.

confluence with the Juah; both these streams being tributaries of the Southern Purna, which is a main affluent of the Godavari. Not far from the fork of the two first rivers is the fortified village of Assai. He resolved to attack them at once.

On the advance of the British troops, the Mahrattas began a terrible cannonade. The 74th Regiment, the 19th Light Dragoons, and the 4th Madras Cavalry, nobly contested the field. Three hundred and sixty men formed the entire 19th; but they and the 4th Madras Cavalry, led by Col. Maxwell, charged the whole Mahratta army, in which were eight of De Boigne's trained battalions.

The bayonet  
charge.

The enemy's line gave way, driven with great slaughter into the Juah at the point of the bayonet by the advancing line of British infantry, and the battle was won; but *one third of the British troops lay dead upon the field.*

Terrible loss.  
The coward  
leaders.

Daulat Rao Sindia and Raghuji Bhonslé fled from the field early in the day, almost at the first shot.

Stevenson joined Wellesley on the evening of the 24th.

Burhânpûr and  
Asirghar taken.

§ 128. The next undertakings were the reduction of the city of Burhânpûr, and of the fort of Asirghar. These were accomplished (October 21) by Colonel Stevenson.

Sindia had now nothing left in the Dakhan.

The campaign  
in Gujarât.

§ 129. In Gujarât, the city of Broach, Sindia's only seaport (§ 102), the fort of Pâwargarh and the town of Champanir (ch. iii. § 4) were taken (September 17).

Lake's vic-  
tories, 1803.  
(Cawnpoor.)

§ 130. In Hindûstân, General Lake (Biog. Index), with the same powers that Wellesley possessed in the Dakhan, marched from Khânpûr against Sindia's army which was under Perron. (See map, p. 4.)

# THE MAHRATTA HISTORY.

221

## Lake's campaign in Hindustan.

CHAP. V. §131.  
A.D. 1803.

(1.) He first took Coel and the adjacent fort of Alighar, August 29. Alighar had always been regarded as impregnable. The 78th Highlanders took it, with wonderful gallantry, by storm. Two hundred and eighty-one guns were captured in it.

Lake's three months of 1803. (Coel, 50 miles N. by E from Agra. Alighar, 53 miles N from Agra.)

(2.) At this time Perron and his staff, who had long been objects of jealousy to the Mahratta officers, retired from Sindia's service. M. Louis Bourquin succeeded Perron.

Perron.

Bourquin.

(3.) This latter met the English under the walls of Delhi, and was defeated in a battle skilfully fought by Lake, September 11. Sikhs were in the army that opposed Lake on that occasion.

Battle of Delhi.

(4.) Delhi surrendered. The person and family of Shâh Âlam II. thus came into Lord Lake's hands. (Ch. iii. § 24.) So did Britain's power extend in less than fifty years after the battle of Plassey.

The nominal Emperor rescued.

(5.) Bourquin and the other French officers surrendered.

Sindia's French officers

(6.) Agra was besieged and taken, October 18. Immense treasure was found there, and promptly distributed among the army.

Agra taken.

(7.) Lake now set out in pursuit of another wing of Sindia's army (the "*Dakhan Invincibles*"), which retired before him to the hills of Mîwât. He overtook it (November 1), near Lâswarî, and a most severely contested battle was fought. The veterans trained by De Boigne died heroically in the field. The victory was, however, complete; and it laid all Sindia's dominions in Hindustan, from Delhi and Agra to the Chambal, at Lake's feet.

The battle of Tandwa, November 1, 1803 (73 miles N.W. of Agra)

Thus was this formidable French-Mahratta power forever broken; at the time that the Mahrattas were undoubtedly the "foremost" people in India.

It is easy to see...

§ 131. Colonel Harcourt was sent against Kattack, Kottak which he took (October 10). By the 14th of October,

CH. V. § 132, 134.  
A.D. 1803.

Raghuji Bhonslé yields.

(Jagat-nāt'ha=  
Lord of the  
earth.)

the whole district of Kuttack was conquered. The priests of Juggernath hastened to put themselves and their temple under the protection of the British General. The conquest of Orissa seems to have cost £30,000 sterling and fifty men.

Bandêlkhand.

§ 132. Colonel Powell cleared Bandêlkhand. (From September 16 to October 13.)

Shâm Shîr Bahâdar, who had taken possession of the country, was driven out. He was an illegitimate son of the Peshwâ, Bâji Râo. His son, Ali Bahâdar, was the ancestor of the present Nuwâbs of Banda. (Table, § 158.)

Argâom.

§ 133. In the Dakhan, negotiations for peace were entered into by the Mahratta chiefs, but in a vacillating and deceitful manner.

November 28.

Wellesley, following up the Nâgpur army, now attacked the confederates at Argâom, and gained a complete victory.

Gâwilgarh (15  
miles N W  
from Ellich-  
pûr).

Gâwilgarh, a celebrated stronghold of the Râja of Berâr, was taken December 15, by Colonel Stevenson. This strong fortress is on a high hill between the sources of the Taptî and the Northern Pârna rivers.

Treaty with the  
Râja of Nâgpur.  
The peace of  
Droogion  
The FIFTH Mah-  
ratta treaty.  
Its conditions.  
(Intro., § 20.)

§ 134. On 17th December, Raghuji Bhonslé, utterly discomfited, signed a treaty, by which—

- (1.) He ceded Kuttack and Bâlasôr; (Comp. § 62.)
- (2.) He gave up all his territory west of the N. Warda (the great cotton-fields), and south of the range of hills on which Gâwilgarh stands; (comp. ch. iii. § 16 (12), p. 134.)
- (3.) He agreed to submit to British arbitration all disputes between himself, the Nizâm, and the Peshwâ and
- (4.) He engaged to admit no foreigners hostile to Great Britain into his service.

**Déogâm. Daulat Râo Sindia is humbled.**

CH. V. § 135, 137.  
A.D. 1803.

This is called the **TREATY OF DÉOGÂOM**. The Honourable Mountstuart Elphinstone (one of the most celebrated of British-Indian statesmen, who afterwards twice declined the office of Governor-General) was the first resident at the Nâgpur court.

Mountstuart  
Elphinstone.

(§ 144, 165.)

§ 135. Very reluctantly, on the 30th December 1803, did Daulat Râo Sindia also sign a treaty, by which he ceded to the English all his territory between the Jamna and the Ganges; all north of Jeypûr, Jôdhpûr, and Gôhûd; the forts of Ahmadnagar and Broach and their districts; all between the Ajunta Ghâts and the Godâvari.

Sindia makes  
peace.  
The treaty of  
Sirj, Anjen-  
gion.  
The Sixth Great  
Mahratta  
treaty.

Major (Sir) John Malcolm was the first resident at Sindia's court. This is called the **TREATY OF SIRJ ANJENGÂOM**.

Malcolm.

(§ 154, 166.)  
(Ch. xii. § 56)

Sindia, in February 1804, agreed to come completely under Lord Wellesley's subsidiary system. The treaty was signed at Burhânpûr.

§ 136. Treaties were also made with the Râjpût chiefs of Jeypûr, Jôdhpûr, Bûndi, and Machêri; the Jât Râja of Bhartpûr, the Râna of Gôhûd, and Ambaji Inglia, who had obtained a portion of the Gôhûd territory.

Other minor  
treaties

Most of the Râjpût chiefs had been subdued by Holkâr and Sindia, and had suffered greatly.

Thus ended the *Second Mahratta War*.

It really lasted about four months. Skillful combination, vigour, and bravery mark every operation. (Comp. Chronological Index, 1803.)

§ 137. The British had now (1804) three armies in the field: one at Jaffirâbâd; one at Pûna; and one, under Lord Lake, in Hindûstân.

The two former were preserving peace in the newly

War with  
Jeswant Râo  
Holkâr.

CHAP. V. § 137.  
A.D. 1803, 5.

The third Mahratta war.

Holkâr's  
lawless pro-  
ceedings.

assigned districts; and the last was watching Jeswant Râo Holkâr, who was ravaging Hindûstân, and had taken into his pay the disbanded soldiers of Sindia and the Râja of Berâr.

This chieftain, after many negotiations, proceeded to plunder Âjmir, and to threaten the Râjpûts under British protection. He demanded also cessions of territory, and it became evident that war with him was inevitable. An army of 80,000 men attended him in his forays. It has been truly said that, "where Holkâr's sword and brand had passed, the ground was like that which the demon had trodden, where no grass would evermore grow." It was necessary that this predatory horde should be scattered.

This supplementary war began in April 1804, and lasted till December 1805. Holkâr was the declared antagonist; but Sindia also was involved in it. It was ended by an unsatisfactory and hollow peace.

It may be called the *Third Mahratta War*. We shall give summary only of the events connected with it.

(1.) The fort of Tonk Râmpûra was stormed, May 16. Indôr was taken by Colonel Murray, August 24.

(2.) Colonel Monson was driven from the Mokhundra Pass to Delhi, losing his guns and baggage, and many of his troops, July 8–August 31. This almost rivals the Convention of Wâgâon (§ 97), or the defeat of Baillie. (Ch. xii. § 27). The disgrace was soon wiped off.

(3.) This emboldened Holkâr to attack Delhi; but he was nobly repulsed by Colonel Ochterlony, the resident, October 8–11.

(4.) General Frazer and Colonel Monson gained a complete victory at Dig. General Frazer fell, November 13. Colonel Monson took eighty-seven guns, among which were fourteen that he had lost.

(5.) General Lake fell upon Holkâr's troops at Fâtihghar, and cut them up, November 17.

(6.) Lake besieged Dig, which was stormed, December 2. Sir C. Metcalfe, then a young civilian, was present as a volunteer at this siege. (Ch. x. § 105.)

(7.) Thus all Holkâr's forts, Chanda, Galna, and his capital Indôr, had been captured. He had, in fact, lost all he possessed in Mâlwa, as well as in the Dakhan.

The third Mahratta war, 1804, 1805.

1804.

Monson's  
defeat.  
(Intro., § 86.)  
(See map, p. 28.)

Battle of Dig,  
1804.  
(57 miles N.W.  
from Agra.)  
Fâtihghar.  
(On the W. bank  
of the Ganges,  
90 miles N.W.  
from Lucknow.  
Map, p. 6.)

Siege of Dig.

Holkâr's utter  
humiliation.  
(Galna, a strong

## THE MAHRATTA HISTORY.

### The third Mahratta war, 1805.

(8.) Dîg and Bhartpûr belonged to the Jât Râja, who had behaved treacherously to his allies the British, having aided and encouraged Holkâr. (Map of Râjpûtâna, p. 28.)

(9.) Bhartpûr was now rashly and inconsiderately besieged. (January 2, 1805.) It is a fortified town, six or eight miles in circumference, surrounded by a very lofty mud wall, and was regarded as impregnable by the Hindûs. The Râja was resolute in his defence, and Lord Lake was not prepared for such a siege. Four assaults failed.

Meanwhile Holkâr and his friends were surprised and cut up on every side by General Lake and his active officers.

On the 16th April, the Bhartpûr Râja came to terms; and, though the city had not been taken, paid twenty lakhs of rupees, and renounced Holkâr's alliance.

This was certainly a gain; but the ill-success of the siege left a bad impression, which was not removed till Lord Cornwallis took the city in January 1826. (Ch. x. § 81.)

(10.) Daulat Rao Sindia broke faith after the death of his great minister, *Wittal Pant*; seized Mr. Jenkins, the assistant resident; and with his father-in-law, the infamous Ghâtôt, and Ambaji Inglia, espoused, though not quite openly, Holkâr's cause; being annoyed, and justly so, at the denial to him of Gwâliôr and Gôhud.

(11.) Now came the second appointment of Lord Cornwallis, July 30, 1805. His mission was to restore peace at any sacrifice. Lord Lake unwillingly conducted the negotiations, which were to make his victories vain. (Ch. x. § 19.)

(12.) A new treaty was made with Sindia, on the basis of that of Sirîr Anjengâm. Gôhud and Gwâliôr were taken from the Râna of Gôhud, who was unfit for government (§ 135), and made over to Sindia.

Thus Sindia was conciliated. The magnificent fortress of Gwâliôr has ever since belonged to the Sindia family. (Intro. p. 7.)

The Gôhud Râna was to be supported by revenues assigned by Sindia. The pergunnahs of Dholapûr, Bârî, and Râjkera, were given to Râna Kirut Singh, and have since formed the Jât Chiefship of Dholapûr. (Intro., § 36.)

Jeswant Rao Holkâr was driven by Lord Lake into the Panjab, where he obtained no assistance from the Sikhs. He sued for peace, and, fortunately for him, Sir G. Barlow's (Ch. x. § 50-53) policy permitted him to obtain it on ludicrously easy terms. (November 1805.)

One thing is to be especially deplored here. The Râja of Bândî, and other Râjpûr chieftains, who had been faithful allies

225

CHAP. V. § 137.  
A.D. 1805.

hill-fort, 87 miles N.W. from Auring-ahâd.)

First siege of Bhartpur, 1805 (31 miles W. by N. from Agra.)

Lake utterly unprepared for such a siege.

The Jât Râja comes to terms.

Bad effect of this failure.

Unfaithfulness of Daulat Rao Sindia.

Lord Cornwallis Peace at any price.

Locality with Sindia.

The Râna of Gwâliôr.

The chief of Dholapûr.

Treaty with Jeswant Rao Holkâr.

British desertion of the lesser chiefs.



CH. V. § 138, 139.  
A.D. 1805.

**The peace of 1805. Mahratta decadence.**

of the English, were left, unprotected, to "the moderation and good faith," that is, to the vengeance, of Holkâr and Sindia. This Lord Lake earnestly deprecated, but in vain. Metcalf, too, remonstrated in emphatic language.

Of course, troubles must again arise with these Mahratt chieftains. Mehidpûr, and the events of 1818, will be required to bring these affairs to a satisfactory termination. (§ 151.)

The treaty of  
Barôda.

§ 138. The treaty of Barôda, April 1805, finally brought the Gaekwâr under the subsidiary system. This treaty was precisely similar to that of Bassein. (Comp. § 122.)

(Sir G. Barlow,  
1805-1807. Ch.  
x. § 49.)

**PART VI.—EVENTS SUBSEQUENT TO 1805. THE  
DECADENCE OF THE MAHRATTA STATES.**

§ 139. We are now approaching the last period of Mahratta history.

The downfall of  
the Mahrattas.

The causes of the decline and fall of the Mahratta were, as we have seen :—

(§ 108.)

(1.) The excessive aggrandisement of Mahâdâjî Sindia, making him independent of the Peshwâ; and, in fact, a rival to him. His example was not lost on the other Mahratta chieftains.

Disunion.  
(§ 82.)

(2.) The dissensions consequent on the death of Nârâyana Râo, with the quarrels and rivalries of Ragobâ, Nânâ Farnavis, Bâ, Râo II., Jeswant Râo Holkâr, and Daulat Râo Sindia, completely disintegrated the confederation.

Differences of  
caste.

(3.) Moreover, the confederation had within itself elements of disunion, and consequent weakness. The Peshwâ and his courtiers were Brâhmans; Sindia and Holkâr were Sûdras; Raghu, Bhonslê was a Kshetriya (§ 45).

The English  
now supreme  
in Delhi.

(4.) Shâh Âlam II. was now in the power of the British. Under the shadow of the new paramount power, the corruption and disorder which favoured the rise of the Mahrattas could not exist. (Ch. iii. § 24.)

## THE MAHRATTA HISTORY.

227

### Causes of the Mahratta downfall.

§ 140. Jeswant Rão Holkâr, after committing many atrocities (table, p. 194), went mad in 1808, and died so in 1811. His State was now in a condition of extreme disorder. It was administered by Tulsi Bâi, a concubine of Jeswant Rão Holkâr, in the name of Mulhâr Rão Holkâr, an illegitimate son of that chief. The army had become totally unmanageable.

CH. V. § 140, 143.  
A.D. 1808.

Death of  
Jeswant Rão  
Holkâr  
Disorders in  
Indur  
(Comp. § 160.)

§ 141. In 1810, Daulat Rão Sindia made Gwâliôr his head-quarters. His father-in-law, Ghâtgê, died that year, having been killed while resisting an order for his arrest. The influence of this ruffian on Daulat Rão Sindia was most pernicious. He was a determined enemy of the British power.

Sindia in  
Gwâliôr.

§ 142. The name of *Amîr Khân*, "a vulgar and ferocious copy of Holkâr," appears frequently in the history of this period. He was an Afghan adventurer, who aided Jeswant Rão Holkâr in his early struggles (1800), became his greatest general, took the control of affairs during his insanity, and was bent on establishing himself in Râjpûtâna (1809). (§ 148-153.)

Amîr Khân.  
(153)  
("Meer  
Khân.")

A great contest arose among the Râjpût princes for the hand of *Krishna Kumâri*, the beautiful daughter of the Râna of Oudipûr. In the course of this, Mân Sing of Jôdhpûr sustained a terrible defeat. Amîr Khân fomented these quarrels; and even induced the Râna of Oudipûr to murder his daughter, on whose account these quarrels had arisen. With her own hand the lovely princess took the bowl of poison offered to her by her father, and saying, "This is the marriage to which I was foredoomed," drank it off.

Krishna  
Kumâri.

With Amîr Khân there were many contests.

§ 143. We return to Pâna. From 1803 to 1810, Colonel Sir Barry Close was Resident there. Bâjî Rão was full of hatred to the English, while sensible of the

Bâjî Rão II.  
(§ 116.)

CH. V. § 144, 146.  
A.D. 1809, 13.

Punâ from 1811 to 1813.

His utter want  
of trustworthi-  
ness.

strength which their troops gave him. He professed the utmost cordiality, but intrigued with Sindia; and his great delight was to humble and oppress the families that had been opposed to his party. He had never ceased to regret the treaty of Bassein. He was not destitute of ability; but was intriguing, superstitious, and avaricious.

Elphinstone in  
Punâ.  
(Lord Minto,  
1807-1813.)

His influence  
among the  
natives.

§ 144. In 1811, the Honourable Mountstuart Elphinstone (§ 134), who had been on General Wellesley's staff in 1803, and who had recently returned from his celebrated mission to Kâbul (ch. x. § 63), was appointed Resident at the Peshwâ's court. He knew the people and the work, and had much direct personal intercourse with the natives.

Piracy put  
down.

§ 145. In 1811, while various arrangements were made for the settlement of the southern Mahratta country, the Râja of Kolhâpûr ceded the harbour of Malwân to the British, with the islands of Marwân and Sindidrûg; and engaged to renounce and discourage piracy, which was thus finally put down.

The Dessâl of Sâwant-Wâdi made over Vingorla with a similar object (§ 113).

Trimbakji  
Dainglia.

His infamous  
character.

§ 146. We are now introduced (1813) to the man whose connection with the Peshwâ consummated the ruin of the Mahrattas. *Trimbakji Dainglia* was a spy, and had risen, by every infamous compliance, to the position of chief favourite of Bâji Râo, who found in him a kindred spirit. This man hated Europeans, and laboured with success to impress his master with the idea that he could restore the Mahratta power to the state in which it was under the first great Peshwâs. His cruelty and violence in the exercise of the office of prime-minister, which he soon obtained, were unbounded. The government was now exceedingly corrupt and oppressive.

Bâji Râo II. and Mountstuart Elphinstone.

CHAP. V §147.  
A.D. 1816.

Bâji Râo was induced by this wretched man to open communications with Sindia, Holkâr, and Raghuji Bhonslê; and his design was to restore the Mahratta confederacy.

His plans.

§ 147. The province of Gujarât was then much under British influence. The Resident was Colonel Walker, and his measures delivered it from anarchy. (See § 122.) There were disputes between Bâji Râo and the Gaekwâr's Government, regarding debts due to the Pûna court, and Gangâdhar Sâstrî was sent to discuss the matter. The Sâstrî, a Brâhman, was assassinated by Trimbakji's agents, with Bâji Râo's concurrence, at the sacred shrine of Panderpûr. This outrage filled every mind with horror. Mr. Elphinstone required the punishment of the assassin; and Trimbakji was confined in the fort of Tanna, on the island of Salsette. From thence he escaped, through the contrivance of a Mahratta horse-keeper, who, while cleaning his master's horse outside the fort, sang the whole plan of escape to the prisoner within: another Blondel to a strange Cœur-de-Lion.\* Trimbakji was now supplied secretly with money by the Peshwâ, and proceeded to raise troops and to organise an insurrection with the design of driving the British from the country.

Disputes between Bâji Râo II and the Gaekwar  
(Lord Moun, 1814-1821)

The assassination of the Sâstrî  
(On the left bank of the Bana, 110 miles S. E. from Pûna)  
History of Trimbakji  
His escape  
September 1816  
(p. 155)

Mr. Elphinstone, with the utmost forbearance, prudence, and firmness, tried to bring Bâji Râo to a better

Mr. Elphinstone's efforts in Pûna.

\* Bishop Heber, who saw him in his prison in after days, says.—"The groom's singing was made up of verses like the following:—

' Behind the bush the fox men lurk  
The horse beneath the tree  
Where shall I find a knave will ride  
The jungle paths with me  
There are five-and-fifty coursers there,  
And four-and-fifty men,  
When the fifty-fifth shall mount his steed,  
The Dakhan thieve is again ' "

CHAP. V. § 148.  
A.D. 1817.

The Pindâris.

Bâji Râo  
coerced.  
July 5, 1817.

mind, and to induce him to retrace his steps. It was, however, necessary, at last, to assume a most decided tone. A new treaty was prepared circumscribing his power, and Bâji was compelled to sign it (1817). Ahmadnagar was ceded to the English. Trimbakji was to be given up; but he managed to elude his pursuers.

The Marquess  
of Hastings  
(Mora), 1818-  
1823.

§ 148. The Marquess of Hastings (Earl Moira, ch. x. § 73) had succeeded (October 1813); and it became evident that the Patâns, under Amîr Khân (§ 142), and the Pindâris must be put down.

The Pindâris

Their origin.

The *Pindâris* were a collection of the lowest freebooters, the very refuse of all the lawless, predatory hordes that infested the Dakhan. They had followed, like obscene beasts of prey, the armies of the early Mahratta chieftains, by whom assignments of land had been made to them along the banks of the Narbaddah.

Their leaders,  
Kharim Khân  
and Chitu.

Mulhâr R. Holkâr had given them a golden flag. Their first conspicuous leader was *Kharim Khân* (a Rohilla by birth), who had been imprisoned by Sindia in Gwâliôr, and was not released till 1810. Another was *Chitu* (by birth a Jât), who was kept in confinement by Amîr Khân till 1816; and who was their ablest chief.

(§ 142.)

The nature and  
method of their  
expeditions.

Armed with Mahratta spears, every fifteenth man having a matchlock, and about two-fifths of them well armed and mounted, these dastardly brigands sallied forth, plundering, burning villages, torturing the people, and committing every imaginable excess.

When the Mahratta chieftains ceased to be engaged in endless wars, these Pindâris lost their occupation, as jackals attending those expeditions. They now began plundering on their own account, and gradually increased the field of their operations, and the daring

Summary of the Pindâri war.

(H V § 149, 151.  
A D 1816.

of their exploits. Their army in 1812 did not fall short of 60,000 horsemen.

The Pindâris.

§ 149. The beginning of the war in Nipâl was unfavourable to the English. (Ch. V. § 74.) This encouraged the Mahrattas to contemplate the renewal of their confederacy. They therefore secretly abetted the Pindâris and Patâns in their excesses, though the time had not come for any open hostilities on their part.

Their opportunity

Secret encouragement.

§ 150. In March 1816, Vazir Muharrâd Râo of Berâr and Râohyâ Bhonslâ of Berâr died. (Ch. V. § 75.) Parsaji succeeded in Nâgpur but he was not a competent ruler. Appâ Sahêb became regent.

Changes in Berâr and Nâgpur

War in 22, 1816

With him a treaty was made, by which the Nâgpur state came fully under the suzerainty of the British. Yet in 1817, was secretly in the conspiracy, of which Bajirâo II was the head against the English supremacy. (§ 151, 159)

Nâgpur fully under the subsidiary system.

§ 151. Now came on what we may call the FOURTH MAHRATTA WAR. It really lasted from October 1817, to February 18, 1818; though all the forts were not taken till April, 1819.

Arrangements for the Pindâri war, October 18, 1817.

The chief battles were:—

- a. Kirkî (§ 154), November 5, 1817;
- b. Nâgpûr (§ 159), November 26, 1817;
- c. Mehîdpûr (§ 160), December 21, 1817;
- d. Korigâom (§ 155), January 1, 1818;
- e. Ashta (§ 157), February 19, 1818.

The Marquess of Hastings, in 1817, resolved to put down finally, not only the Pindâris, but all the predatory powers of Central India. This was required by humanity, not less than by policy. The Nizâm's dominions, and the Northern Sirkârs, were invaded and pillaged by the Pindâris, who had thus thrown down the

(§ 148)

Necessity of the Pindâri war.

CHAP. V. § 152.  
A.D. 1817.

## Lord Hastings' plans. Preparations.

gauntlet, and the Governor-General was bound to take it up.

The treaties of 1805 had been virtually annulled by the intrigues of Sindia and Holkâr, and by their constant violation of them. The courts of both of these chiefs were scenes of intrigue and disorder. Their armies were utterly lawless and rebellious. Non-interference had been tried, and it had signally failed.

The troops.

The Governor-General's plan was to surround the infested districts with troops, and thus to hem in and destroy the ravagers and their allies. Lord Hastings himself left Calcutta early in July, 1817, for the scene of conflict.

Five divisions of troops were in the field under Sir Thomas Hislop. One division was stationed in Gujarât. Four divisions, under the personal command of the Marquess himself, marched from Bengâl; and a reserve force was posted at Adwânî. Contingents were left at Pûna, Haiderâbâd, and Nâgpûr.

(Here is the best ford.)

Sir Thomas Hislop was to advance into Mâlhwâ, crossing the Nerbudda at *Hindia*. A force from Nâgpûr was to advance by Hoshungâbâd. The others were stationed in Berar; and in Kândêsh; at Rewâri, Âgra, Sikandra, and Kalinjîr. The Gujarât force was to enter Mâlhwâ by Dôhud. Other troops were on the Upper Sône, and on the Upper Narbaddah. (See map, Introd. § 12.) The whole British force amounted to 116,000 men, having 300 guns.

Sindia.

§ 152. The Governor-General first took up his position with the main army near Gwâliôr, where Sindia was compelled to sign a treaty, by which he engaged fully to co-operate with the British in restoring peace and order, by the extermination of all the predatory hordes: a measure of which he especially was to reap the fruits. This was completed on the very day of Bâjî Rao's

### The attack on the Pina Residency.

H V 817.174  
a 1817.

attack on the Presidency. At 1541 an attempt was very ineffectual and fruitless, but a storm was prevented from openly joining in the air.

5. 153. The K7 is very low in the list with a Jaghir was granted to him, it is a lawless tip

The family of the So and Frank Harrison, Milwaukee, Wis., (Introductory)

Many other children of reputation and to me I find it  
them (by a fall and a bit of a fight) which is a  
afforded them. At the same time, I find it  
faint of blood but I find it a bit of a fight. I find it  
Mortgage was not the best at the time and I find it  
with these children.

§ 154. Sir John Malcolm was appointed the agent of the Governor-General, with ample powers, in the Dakkhin. Rājā Rao objected Sir John by his protestations, but Mr Elphinstone was thoroughly convinced of his treacherous designs.

Male 140

He : I am  
treasonous

Now we must relate what may be considered to be the first great episode of the Pindari war, the outbreak at Puna.

The Peshwā was even then matured his plans for an attack on the Residency. Mr. Elphinstone, aware of his duplicity, would give him no pretext for a rupture, by any open preparations, or by an exhibition of distrust. The Peshwā's troops were gathering round and hemming in the British. Mr. Elphinstone, from the terrace of the Residency, could hear the din of their preparations; but with quiet dignity he made only such unostentatious arrangements as the most prudent demanded. He brought the British troops together to Kirki, four miles from Puna. Bajī Rao had determined to spare no one of the whole British residents except two persons: Dr. Coats, who had cured him of an illness, and Major Ford, the commandant.

The attack on  
the Penn  
hudson & N.Y.  
November 5, 1941.

**Elphinstone's**  
**columns**

Wassergraben  
planed.



CHAP. V. § 155.  
A.D. 1817.

**The heroic defence of Korigaom.**

The battle of  
Kirkî.

Nov. 5, 1817.

English victory.

Bâji Râo  
pursued.

(40 miles N.E.  
from Pûna.)

The heroic de-  
fence of Kori-  
gaom, January  
1, 1818  
(Or Correguam,  
on the Bîma, 17  
miles E N.E.  
from Pûna.)

The Peshwâ's prime-minister and commander-in-chief was Bappu Goklâ (nephew of an officer called Dhundh Pant), a chivalrous and honourable officer, the last of the great Mahratta warriors. (§ 157.)

When it was evident that the attack was about to begin, Mr. Elphinstone withdrew to Kirkî; and a battle ensued between the Mahratta army, which consisted of 18,000 horse, and 8,000 foot, with fourteen guns. and Major Ford's troops, consisting of 2,800 rank and file, of whom 800 were Europeans.

The Mahrattas were easily defeated and driven off. The Peshwâ, however, plundered the Residency; murdered several officers who were seized while travelling; and committed other acts of barbarous cruelty.

§ 155. General Smith, who was encamped near the Chanda hills, now marched on Pûna. Bâji Râo fled before him. The English general occupied the city, and then pursued the Peshwâ, who fled to Mâhulî (Mowlee), a sacred place near Satârâ, at the confluence of the Yêna and Kishtna, then to Panderpûr, then to the north of Junîr (where, having been joined by Trim-bakî, he fortified himself at Bâmanwârî), and finally to the south. There the Râja of Satârâ (§ 94) and his family joined the English general.

Meanwhile a battalion, consisting of about 500 men, belonging to the 1st Regiment, was sent for from Serûr by Colonel Barr, who then commanded in Pûna.

It marched on the 21st December, 1817, attended by 300 irregular horse, all under the command of Captain Francis Staunton. On reaching Korigaom (January 1, 1818), they found 25,000 Mahratta horse on the opposite bank of the Bîma. These, with 5,000 of the Peshwâ's infantry, attacked the British troops, who were exhausted by a long night-march, were without food or

## The fall of the Peshwâs.

CH. V. § 156, 158.  
A.D. 1818.

water, and compelled to fight under a blazing sun. The conflict raged all day, and at nightfall the Peshwâ's army retreated. The Peshwâ himself, from a height two miles distant, beheld the fight. The heroic Captain Staunton lost 175 men in killed and wounded; but the Mahrattas lost about 600 men.

This was the most heroic event of the war: the famous defence of Korigâd.

§ 156. The Peshwâ now fled towards the Carnatic. On the banks of the Gutpurbâ he found General Thomas Munro, commissioner of those ceded districts (afterwards Governor of Madras), with troops raised on the spot, ready to oppose him. He then fled towards Shôlapûr.

Bâji Râo pursued.  
Munro.  
(Ch. iii. § 16.)

§ 157. On February 10, 1818, Satârâ was taken. The next day the Bhagwa Jenda (or swallow-tail flag of Sivaji) was hoisted; and a proclamation was issued, declaring that Bâji Râo and his family were excluded from all share in the government, which was assumed by the Governor-General, reserving a small tract around Satârâ for the comfortable and dignified maintenance of the Râja.

Satârâ occupied.

The decisive battle, where Goklâ fell, was fought at *Ashîa*, between Shôlapûr and Pandarpûr, February 19.

Battle of Ashîa.

Thus fell the house of Bâlâji Vishwanâth, which from 1714 (contemporary with the English house of Brunswick) had in reality swayed the Mahratta septre. (See table, p. 236.)

The Peshwâs from 1714 to 1818

§ 158. Bâji Râo, after wandering about with his army, suffering great privations, and looking vainly for help from the Mahratta chiefs, themselves in great straits, surrendered to Sir John Malcolm, who guaran-

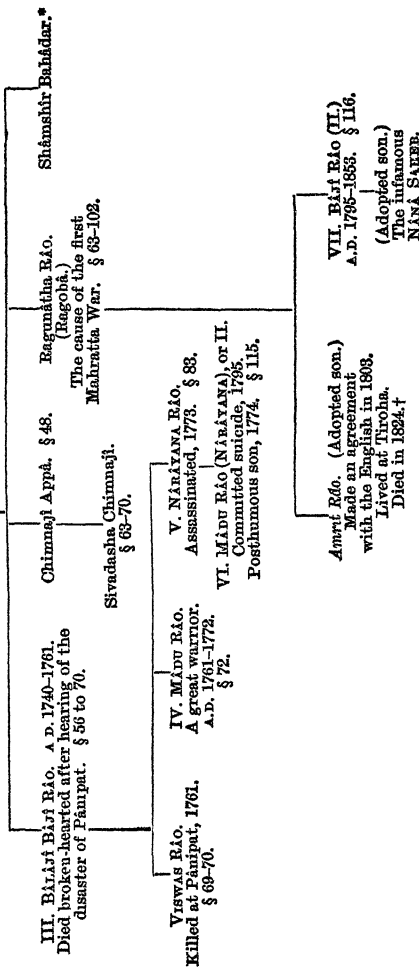
Bâji Râo surrenders.

## § 158\*. THE SEVEN PESHWÁS.—Chap. V. § 40-157: 1714 to 1818.

I. BALAJI VISHWANATH. A.D. 1714-1720. § 40.

II. BALAJI RAO (I.) A.D. 1720-1740.

The greatest of the Peshwas. He sought out men of talent. § 44.



\* He was the son of a Muhammadan concubine. His descendants were the titular Nwabs of Banda. In 1804 a pension of four lakhs of rupees was given him. This was forfeited by his descendant Ali Bahadar, who joined in the rebellion of 1857. He was sent to Indor § 132

† His grandsons joined in the rebellion of 1857. The younger is now in Bareilly, a ward of the British Government, having a pension of 30,000 rupees a year.

## The treachery of the Râja of Berâr.

CHAP. V. 179  
A.D. 1818.

teed him the princely pension of eight lakhs of rupees per annum.

Bitûr, near Khânpûr, was assigned as his residence. There he died in January 1853.

Trimbakji managed to evade his pursuers, till he was seized by Lieutenant Swanston; and was retained a prisoner to the period of his death, in the fort of Chunâr, on the Ganges.

Bâji Rao had no sons. He adopted Sarik Ishmâ Pant (§ 154), commonly called the Nânâ Sahêb. This man, infamous for the Khânpûr massacres (ch. x. § 172), perished (as is supposed) in the Nipal jungles.

Thus ended the line of the Peshwas.

§ 159. *Appâ Sahêb* (§ 150). (Sometimes called *Mahâdâ Bhonslê*), regent of Nâgpûr, procured the murder of Parsaji (though this was not then known), and succeeded him.

He determined to abet the Peshwâ in his treacherous schemes. Mr. Jenkins was then resident.

It was the fortune of several of the great administrators of British India to be distinguished also in the field. Elphinstone, Jenkins, and Malcolm were conspicuous in these wars for political and military skill.

The vacillating and timid Appâ Sahêb did not show his real colours till November 24. He was not aware then that the Peshwâ had made his attack, and failed, but a few days before (November 5).

Mr. Jenkins had about 1,400 men fit for duty. Appâ Sahêb's troops were about 18,000. Thus the Mahratta army was more than twelve times that of the British.

The Residency was at Sîtabaldî, two hills to the west of Nâgpûr. The Mahratta attack was foiled chiefly by the gallantry of Colonel Hopeton Scott and Captain Fitzgerald. It began on the evening of November 26,

The attack  
on the Nâgpûr  
residency,  
Nov. 26.

CHAP. V. § 160.  
A.D. 1818.

**The final defeat of the Pindâris.**

**The battle of  
Nâgpûr.**

Continued  
treachery of the  
Râja.  
The end of  
Appâ Sahêb.

**Settlement of  
Nâgpûr.**

**Its prosperity.  
Treaty.**

**Annexation of  
Nâgpûr, 1853.  
(Comp. ch. x.  
§ 144.)**

**The defeat of  
the Pindâris.**

and was not finally repulsed till about noon the next day. In gallantry it almost equalled Korigâom.

Reinforcements soon arrived under General Doveton, and Appâ Sahêb surrendered. The fort of Nâgpûr, still held by the Arab mercenaries, was stormed. Appâ was reinstated with the most stringent provisions for his fidelity to the British power; but, beginning almost immediately to intrigue again, was arrested by Mr. Jenkins, and sent, by command of the Governor-General, to be imprisoned at Allâhâbâd; but he escaped on the road, joined Chîtu the Pindârî chief, was in the fort of Asirghar when it was taken (§ 162); and after many wanderings took refuge with the Sikhs, and finally found his way to Jôdhpûr, where he lived and died in utter obscurity (1840).

A grandson of the late Raghuji Bhonslê was put on the Musnud, assuming his grandfather's name.

From this time Nâgpûr may be considered to have been under British government; and owing to the wise management of Mr. Jenkins, the Resident, it flourished greatly.

A treaty was signed by this Râja, when he attained his majority in 1826, renouncing all dependence upon the Râja of Satârâ, and all connection with that prince or any other Mahratta power; and confirming in all essential particulars the former subsidiary treaty made with Appâ Sahêb.

Raghuji dying in 1853 without issue, his dominions were annexed.

Under successive British commissioners the whole district has since attained unprecedented prosperity. (Comp. pp. 8, 9.)

**§ 160.** We must return from these two episodes, recording the fortunes of the last Peshwâ, and of the Nâgpûr Râj, to the *Pindâris*.

They were under three leaders: Chîtu, Kharîm Khân, and Wasîl Muhammad (§ 148).

This last was the son of Hîra, a distinguished Pindârî leader under Mahâdâji Sindia.

## Holkâr and Sindia.

CHAP. V. § 161.  
A.D. 1818.

Sir John Malcolm, in concert with the generals of the other divisions, gradually drove them from their haunts across the Nerbudda.

Chîtu finally took refuge in Holkâr's camp, near *Mehidpûr*, on the right bank of the Sîpra. Tulsi Bâi, the regent (§ 140), had at length been compelled by the chiefs around her to join the confederacy against the British; and had marched to that place, where a great and decisive battle was fought.

Battle of Mehid-  
pûr, 1817, or  
Mahaidpûr.

Tulsi Bâi was put to death by her troops, because they suspected her of a design to treat with the English. She was a woman of great beauty, tact, and intellect; but vindictive and dissolute.

Tulsi Bâi.

Mulhâr Râo Holkâr's troops were now about 20,000 in number, and were encamped on the Sîpra, a tributary of the Chambal. They were a splendid body of cavalry, full of enthusiasm. Sir J. Hislop and Sir John Malcolm crossed the river, attacked the enemy's strong position, carried it, dispersed them, and gained a complete victory, December 21, 1817.

The battle of  
Muxidpûr.

At Mundisôr (or Mandêshwar), in Râjpûtâna, January 6, 1818, a treaty between the young Mulhâr Râo Holkâr and the Governor-General was signed. By this treaty he abandoned all authority over the Râjpûts, and placed himself absolutely under British protection, thus securing his territories and his dignity.

Treaty of Mun-  
disôr.  
The Seventh  
great Mahratta  
Treaty.

Mulhâr Râo Holkâr died childless in 1833, at the age of twenty-eight.

The Holkâr  
family.

After some disputes, Harî Râo Holkâr, son of a brother of Jeswant Râo, was installed at Indôr, March 1834. He died in 1843. His adopted son, Khandî Râo (no relation), died the following year. Tâkaji Râo II. then succeeded. He attained his majority in 1852.

§ 161. Daulat Râo Sindia, overawed by the near approach of Lord Hastings' army, remained quiet, and

Sindia's history.  
See table, § 45<sup>a</sup>.

CH. V. § 162, 163.  
A.D. 1818, 9.

**The Pindârî leaders.**

The sequel of  
the history of  
the Sindia  
family.

there is nothing more of importance to record of him. He retained his dominions in peace.

He died in March 1827, after a reign of thirty-four years.

His adopted son, Jankoji, succeeded; but quarrels between him and Baija Bâi, widow of Sindia, and daughter of the infamous Ghâtge (§ 141), increased by the indecision of Lord W. Bentinck, ended in the expulsion of the Bâi.

For the conclusion of the history of Gwâlîôr, see chap. x. § 124.

The Pindârî  
leaders.

§ 162. Of the three Pindârî leaders, Kharîm Khân surrendered to Sir J. Malcolm in February 1818; Wasîl Muhammad gave himself up to Sindia, and subsequently poisoned himself; and Chîtu only remained. He was driven from one place to another, his followers gradually forsaking him, until he was devoured by a tiger in the jungles near Asîrghar.

The death of  
Chîtu.

The fort of Asîrghar itself, however, was not taken by General Doveton until April 9, 1819. This was the last exploit in the war; here the Mahrattas made their final effort.

Asîrghar.

Summary of the  
results of the  
war.

Thus in about four months (from October 1817 to February 1818) had the Pindâris been destroyed; the armies of Holkâr, of the Peshwâ, and of Nâgpûr routed; the whole of Central India brought fully under British authority; and, in fact, the Mahratta empire finally extinguished.

Thirty hill-fortresses were taken in a few weeks. This war was remarkable for the vigour with which the various hostile bands were followed up, and driven from all their fastnesses.

Conclusion of  
the third Mah-  
ratta war.

§ 163. The conclusion of the Pindârî war was marked by a general arrangement with the lesser chiefs, whom the Mahrattas had hitherto oppressed, bringing them under British protection. These affairs were managed by Sir D. Ochterlony with great tact and discretion.

The Râja of Bûndî (§ 136), the Râja of Bhôpâl (§ 96), and those of Jeypûr and Jôdhpûr, were among the chiefs who received additional territory.

Âjmîrand Mairwarra were made over to the English.

(Intro. § 24.)

## THE MAHRATTA HISTORY.

### The settlement of the Mahratta country.

§ 164. After the surrender of Bâjî Râo, the Râja of Satârâ was, with great pomp, restored, and seated on the throne by the British authorities.

He immediately issued a proclamation, making over the government to Captain Grant Duff, the author of the "Mahratta History." He complained bitterly of Bâjî Râo, who, among other things, had given an order to the Killidar of the fort of Wassota (west of Satârâ), where the Râja and his family were confined, to put them all to death, rather than allow them to fall into the hands of the British. The Râja's name was Pratâb Singh (son of Sâhu II.), then in his twenty-seventh year. (Table, p. 172.)

The territory assigned to him was the tract between the S. Warda and the Nira, from the base of the Syhadri mountains to Pandarpûr. (See map, p. 160.)

The whole proceeding was perhaps unwise.

The Râja intrigued against his benefactors; and, in 1839, Sir James Carnac, Governor of Bombay (1839-1841), gave him every opportunity of retracing his steps; but he was obstinate, and was deposed, his brother being raised to the nominal dignity. The ex-Râja died in October 1847, and the Râja himself in April 1848; and Satârâ was annexed to the British dominions by consent of the home authorities in 1849.

This was the occasion of a great discussion on the whole questions of "annexation," "adoption," and "lapse." The decision then was, that adoption was not valid without the consent of the paramount power.

§ 165. The real history of the Mahrattas may close with a summary of the settlement by the British authorities of the country thus conquered. Four wars had been waged, with which the names of Warren Hastings, the Marquess Wellesley, and the Marquess of Hastings are to be connected. The climax had been reached.

General Thomas Munro reduced all the country to Shôlapûr, including Badâmi.

General Pritzer's force took Singhur, Pârandar, and Wassota, before April 10.

241

CH V. § 164, 165.  
A.D. 1818, &c.

The Râja of  
Satârâ restored,  
April 11, 1818.

Grant Duff.

The Râja's first  
proceedings.

Pratâb Singh.

His dominions.

Fall of the Râja  
of Satârâ.

(Comp. ch. x.  
§ 144.)

The settlement  
of the Mahratta  
country, 1819.

General Munro.

Forta.



CH. V. § 166, 167.  
A.D. 1819.**Conclusion of the history of the Mahrattas.****Raighur.**

The Bombay Government conquered the Konkan. Raighur, the famous capital of Sivaji, the strongest fort in the East, was taken May 7, 1818.

**Other forts,  
1818.**

The forts from Puna to Ahmadnagar, and those in the Chanda range, were taken by Major Elridge, Colonel M'Dowell, and Colonel Cunningham.

**Political  
officers.**

The whole country was now divided among various British officers, who gradually brought it into order.

Captains Grant Duff, Robertson, Henry Pottinger (afterwards Governor of Madras, 1848-1853), and Captain Briggs (translator of "Ferishta," and author of the "Muhammadian History"), were employed under Mr. Elphinstone, who became Governor of Bombay in November 1819, and held that office till he was succeeded by Sir J. Malcolm in 1827.

**The Hills of  
Central India.**

The Hills of the mountains adjoining Kândesh were reduced to submission by Sir John Malcolm. Till his removal to Bombay, as the successor of Elphinstone, he laboured in Central India with rare benevolence and wisdom; and his name is regarded with the highest veneration in those districts to this day.

**Mahratta  
Jaghirdars.  
The Satara  
Jaghirdars.**

§ 166. The Râja of Kolhâptur, who had been a faithful adherent of the British, was rewarded with the districts of Chickuri and Menouli.

The old hereditary Jaghirdars, the Râja of Akulkôt (§ 45), the Pant Suchêo of Bhôr (one of the eight hereditary ministers of the Mahratta empire), the Prati Niti of Satara, the Duffé, the Nimbalkur of Phultun, the Waikar of Wai, and others secured their estates.

The Sawant Wâdi state was included in the treaties of 1819. The Phatwardan, the Bhâwa of Râmdrûg, and the Ghorepuray of Mûdhôl, are the chief of the Southern Mahratta Jaghirdars.

Liberal pensions were given to all who had just claims.

From that time to this the progress of the Mahratta country has been rapid and unbroken. This, however, can best be studied in the voluminous and highly interesting published selections from the records of the Bombay Government.

The fact that the rebellion of 1857, 8, did not extend to the south of the Narbaddah, though the Nanâ of Bitur was one of its leaders, is proof sufficient that the people are contented with their English rulers.

**Recapitulation  
and conclusion  
of the Mahratta  
history.**

§ 167. Thus have we given a faint outline of the story of this most remarkable Indian race, whose rise, as a ruling power, was coeval with that of the English. A people, among whom have been found men like Sâlivâhana, Sivaji, the first four Peshwâs, Râm Sâstri, Nanâ Farnavis, Mulhârji Holkâr, and Rânoji Sindia; and who can boast of a ruler like Ahalyâ Bâi, deserves to rank among the foremost.

**Conclusion of the history of the Mahrattas.**

CHAP. V. § 167.

We have followed them from Tornea, where the youthful Sivaji performed his first exploit; to Ūdghīr, where they obtained their greatest victory over a Muhammadan army; to Pānipat, where they received the blow which for ever enfeebled them; to Bassein, where they triumphed, as no other Indian race has triumphed, over a European foe: to Arras, where they first, in an open battle-field, met an English army; to Kurdlā, where all their confederate hosts mustered for the last time; to Assai, where the great Wellington taught them that Mahratta horsemen could never hope to stand against the British bayonet; to Delhi, where Lake took the Mogul emperor out of their hands; to Laswāri, where all Hindūstān was wrested from their grasp; and to Mahīdpūr, where they fought their last national fight with the English. We have traced their history through triumphs and defeats. Maintaining a not unequal war for forty years with one of the greatest of the Moguls, they were at length supreme in Delhi itself. Over the Portuguese they triumphed. They, at one time or another, conquered and ruled from the banks of the Indus to those of the Cāvēri; from the shores of Orissa on the east, to Gujarāt on the west. The matchless genius of the Wellesleys, of Lake, and of many other Britons hardly inferior to these, was required to effect their overthrow.

Wargāom and the Mokhundra Pass seemed for a moment to give them a hope of overcoming even Britons themselves; but, in a vast number of exciting conflicts, we have seen them beaten down; until—while scions of the race still reign in Gwāliōr, Indōr, and Barōda, upheld by British power and guided by British councils (and long may they so reign in peace and progressive prosperity),—in the other seats of ancient Mahratta dominion, English commissioners and collector-magistrates hold sway. If their career, for the most part, was one of restless aggression, of unscrupulous treachery, and of devastating warfare; if their great aim was to plunder the districts they over-ran; if they have conferred no moral or intellectual benefits on mankind; if their subjugation was the greatest blessing that could be conferred upon the unhappy regions wandered over and trodden down by their countless hosts: we cannot, for all this, cease to regard their history as one of the most interesting episodes in the annals of the human family.

---

## CHAPTER VI.

## THE PORTUGUESE IN INDIA.

## PART I.—THE SEA-ROUTE TO INDIA. DA GAMA.

The beginning  
of Portuguese  
maritime enter-  
prise, 1419-1460.

Prince Henry  
of Portugal.  
(1394-1463)  
Cousin of  
Henry V. of  
England.

§ 1. Englishmen have a special interest in the history of Portuguese maritime discovery. John of Gaunt, "time-honoured Lancaster," had a daughter, Philippa, by his first wife, Blanche of Lancaster, who was married to John I. of Portugal. Their third son, Prince Henry, being intent upon encouraging maritime enterprises to the utmost, took up his abode at Sagres (near Cape St. Vincent), from whence he could see the fleets sailing forth on their errands of discovery. This good Prince was, till his death in 1463, the great patron and promoter of navigation in Portugal.

— "The Genius, then,  
Of Navigation, that in hopeless sloth  
Had slumbered on the vast Atlantic deep  
For idle ages, starting, heard at last  
The Lusitanian Prince, who, heaven-inspired,  
To love of useful glory roused mankind,  
And in unbounded commerce mixed the world."

## Vasco da Gâma. State of India.

CH VI § 2, 3  
A.D. 1420.

His labours produced abundant fruit before the end of the century. All Europe felt the impulse.

(Marriage of Ferdinand of Aragon and Isabella of Castile, 1469)

§ 2. After the discovery of Madeira in A.D. 1420, and of the Cape de Verde islands in A.D. 1460, the great object the Portuguese navigators had in view was to complete the circuit of Africa. This grand design they accomplished, and in doing so changed the whole face of European affairs.

The Progress of Discovery

The Western Coast of Africa

In 1486, Bartholomew Diaz, an experienced and enterprising navigator, passed the most southerly point of Africa, naming it the Cape of Tempests, but King John II., who had far more comprehensive views, called it the Cape of Good Hope. A new route of navigation to the East had now been discovered.

Discovery of the Cape, 1486.

In 1497, Vasco da Gâma was sent out by King Emmanuel, the enlightened patron of sea-adventure; passed the southern extremity of the mighty continent, without encountering any storms or dangers; and, skirting the eastern coast of Africa, procured a pilot at Melinda, from whence he steered boldly across the Indian Ocean, and cast anchor off Calicut, on the 11th of May 1498. Vasco da Gâma now knew that his name would rank with that of Columbus; and that his own country might again vie with Spain, enriched though the latter country was with the wealth of the New World. All Europe, too, was aware that a new era had dawned upon the human race.

Vasco da Gâma's India, 1498

(Calicut was making discoveries in America)

§ 3. The emperor reigning in Delhi at that time was Sikander, the second of the house of Lodi. (Ch. II. § 17. A.D. 1485-1518.)

Summary of Indian affairs at the close of the fifteenth century.

The Bâhmânî dynasty, then ruling in the Dakhan, was, under the weak Mahmûd II. falling to pieces. (Ch. IV. § 21.)

The Bijâpûr kingdom, established A.D. 1469 by Yûsuf Adil Shâh, possessed the Konkan, between the Western Ghâts and the coast, from Goa to Bombay. (Ch. IV. § 22, 23.)

CH. VI. § 4. 5.  
A.D. 1498.

Vasco da Gâma. State of India.

India at the  
close of the fif-  
teenth century.

South of Goa the country was still under petty Râjas. (Ch. iv. § 8)

The most considerable of these was the Tamurin or Zamorin of Calicut.

(Comp. § 10.)

The Mamelukes reigned in Egypt from 1382 to 1517. Khânsu Ghôrî was their chief at this period.

The Ulicks in 1498 got possession of Bokhâra.

Bâber was then engaged in his arduous struggles west of the Indus. (Ch. iii. § 3.)

Da Gâma in  
Calicut (Kâli-  
gôd).  
(Ch. iv. § 8.)

§ 4. The Râja of Calicut was a Hindû. The port was open to merchants of every nation; but the trade was in the hands of the Muhammadans (or Moors) from Arabia, Egypt, and the eastern coast of Africa.

Moplas.

Muhammadanism had made great progress in Malabâr owing to the efforts of these Arabian traders. Of these converts the Mâpillas (Moplas) are the descendants.

Moorish  
traders.

These Moors, who trafficked in every great port of India, Africa, and the Mediterranean, were the rivals and bitter enemies of the Portuguese; and often combined with their fellow Muhammadans in India.

Returns to  
Lisbon, 1499.

Da Gâma landed in great pomp, and had an interview with the Râja, who received him with kindness; which, however, was soon turned into suspicion by the artifices of the Muhammadans. Finding his armament insufficient, he returned to Portugal, where he arrived in August 1499; and was ennobled and amply rewarded by Emmanuel, King of Portugal (1498-1521), whose reign was thus rendered memorable by the foundation of the Portuguese power in the East.

Cabral.

§ 5. The next Portuguese expedition to India, under Alvarez Cabral, sailed in A.D. 1500.

He was accompanied by eight friars, with instructions to propagate Christianity wherever they came, and to carry fire and sword into every country that refused to receive it. Thus they irritated the Muhammadans by their cruel intolerance.

## Alvarez Cabral, the discoverer of Brazil.

CHAP. VI § 6.  
A.D. 1500.

Cabral, in sailing southward through the Atlantic, was carried too far towards the west, a fortuitous accident, for in that way he covered the fertile, finely wooded coast of Brazil, which has ever since been a possession of the Portuguese, and which was, under a prince of the royal family of Portugal, in a flourishing independent empire.

Discovery of  
Brazil, 1499

In the storms this expedition encountered while passing the Cape, Bartholomew Diaz, who had first rounded it, perished.

Death of Bar-  
tholomew Diaz,  
1500

Cabral arrived at Calicut in September 1500. He was at first received with kindness; but jealousies soon arose. He captured a ship belonging to the Moors; who in revenge attacked the factory, and massacred fifty of the Portuguese. Cabral revenged himself by burning the Moorish ships, and bombarding the town; after which he withdrew to Cochim, a city second at that time to Calicut only. Here he was well received, as at Cannanûr also. The Râjas of these places were at enmity with their nominal superior the Zamorin.

Cruelty of  
Cabral.

He reached Lisbon, July 31, 1501, where the story of his disasters excited strong interest.

The Portuguese had been wanting in tact. They had not tried to conciliate; but had behaved with the arrogance of conquerors. Yet, in regard to trade, they were in the event eminently successful. By their command of the seas they secured an absolute monopoly of all Indian products, which henceforward found their way to Europe only round the Cape, the routes by the Persian Gulf and Red Sea being closed.

Conduct of the  
Portuguese in  
India.Their commer-  
cial success

Venice, Genoa, and Amalfi saw with dismay the sources of their opulence dried up.

The Italian  
republics

§ 6. Vasco da Gâma was soon at the head of a new expedition, bent on revenging the supposed wrongs of Cabral, and on carrying things with a still higher hand.

He tarnished the lustre of his name by seizing a Moorish ship, and burning it with all its crew. Anchoring off Calicut, he demanded redress for the injuries sustained by Cabral; and when some delay

Gâma's cruelty,  
1502.

CHAP. VI. § 7, 8.  
A.D. 1502, 4.

Alphonso Albuquerque. Duarte Pacheco.

He leaves India.	<p>occurred, collected fifty natives from different captured ships, and cut their throats, sending their hands and feet on shore to Zamorin.</p>
Vincente Sodre.	<p>After this the natives contrived to get him into their power; but he escaped and set sail for Portugal. This expedition seems to have been entirely fruitless.</p>
Albuquerque, 1504.	<p>Meanwhile a squadron under Vincente Sodre cruised about the mouth of the Red Sea, to cut off the Moorish vessels; and thus the Portuguese made themselves masters of the Arabian Gulf. Vincente Sodre, after many acts of piracy, perished at sea.</p>
His character.	<p>§ 7. The next expedition, in 1504, was under the two brothers Alphonso and Francisco Albuquerque, and Saldanha.</p>
War between Calicut and Cochin.	<p>ALPHONSO ALBUQUERQUE is the greatest name in Indo-Portuguese history (§ 12). He was not uniformly successful, nor perhaps always prudent.</p> <p>The comparison of his history with those of Clive and Dupleix will be most instructive.</p>
Duarte Pacheco, 1504.	<p>At this period, the Zamorin, enraged at the countenance afforded to the foreigners by Triampâra, the Râja of Cochin, had attacked and driven him from his capital to the island of Vipeen, where he was rescued by Albuquerque. After an unsuccessful attempt to arrange matters with the Zamorin, the Albuquerquees returned to Europe, leaving the fleet in the hand of Duarte Pacheco.</p>
	<p>§ 8. DUARTE PACHECO was a man of rare valour, a most able commander, and far-sighted politician. His exploits resemble those of the French <i>Paradis</i>, while his end was that of <i>Dupleix</i>. (Ch. viii. § 24.)</p> <p>His great exploit was the defence of Cochin, and the signal defeat of the formidable armaments of the Zamorin. No sooner had the Albuquerquees departed, than the Zamorin again attacked Cochin with an overwhelming force. Pacheco took the command of the</p>

## THE PORTUGUESE IN INDIA.

249

### Defence of Cochin. *Almeida, the first Portuguese Viceroy, 1505.*

CH VI 13, 12.  
A.D. 1504, 5.

Cochin forces, consisting of a few hundreds of native soldiers and 400 Portuguese. With these he defeated an army of 50,000 men, trained by some Milanese deserters, and aided by a fleet of 160 vessels. Not one of the defenders fell. A second attack and a third were similarly repulsed, with great slaughter, and Pacheco had at length the satisfaction of seeing the Zamorin's armament return to Calicut utterly defeated.

The famous defence of Cochin. The first great European victory in India.

[Compare this with Clive in Arsat, 1751.]

Thus Pacheco taught to the nations of the West (though the lesson was at the time overlooked), what *Paradis* demonstrated two hundred years afterwards (in 1746) (ch. viii. § 51); and what *Clive* again proved at *Plassey* (in 1757), that no native army, however large, can stand against even a handful of men, disciplined and led by skilful European officers. This is not because native troops are deficient in courage. They are not. Science and discipline chiefly give the European force its tremendous advantage.

**1504.  
1746.  
1757.**

§ 9. Lope Soares soon superseded Pacheco, who had spent his fortune in his country's service. The latter was made Governor of *Elmina*, where false accusations being brought against him, he was sent home in chains. He was honourably acquitted, but died in obscurity.

Soares took *Cranganôr*. By his overbearing temper he destroyed the prospect of peace with the Zamorin, and returned to Europe.

(16 miles N. of Cochin. Taken 1505. Then by the Dutch in 1683.)

### PART II.—THE FIRST VICEROY. ALMEIDA.

§ 10. FRANCISCO ALMEYDA, the first Portuguese Viceroy of India, was sent out in A.D. 1505.

He received an embassy from *Vijayanagar* (or *Narsinga*) (ch. iv. § 19, 29), bringing splendid presents, and offering the Râja's daughter in marriage to Prince John (afterwards John III., 1521-1557), son of King *Emmanuel*.

During Almeida's time a dreadful tragedy took place at *Quilon*, where a Portuguese factor interfered with the Moors, who retaliated by burning a church with thirteen men in it. This he avenged by burning their fleet.

The first Portuguese Viceroy, 1505 or 1506, (*Vijayanagar*.)



CHAP. VI § 11  
A D. 1505, 7.

## Rapid extension of Portuguese power.

War with  
Egypt.

This year the Mameluke Sultân of Egypt, Khânsu Ghôri (§ 3), fitted out a fleet to contest with the Portuguese the empire of the Arabian Sea, instigated by the Venetians, who were jealous of the monopoly of Indian productions now possessed by Portugal. A terrible naval battle was fought off Chaul, which lasted two days. The Egyptians were aided by the King of Gujarât, Mahmûd Bégara, who sent a fleet under Aîâz Sultâni (Malikâz). Mahmûd had fitted out his fleet originally to destroy pirates; but he zealously aided the Sultân in his project of sweeping the infidels from the Eastern seas. The Musalmân fleet on this occasion gained an advantage. (Ch. ii. § 41.)

The death of  
young Almeyda.

The death of Almeyda's heroic son, and the humanity and courtesy of Aîâz, are especially to be noted in this affair

Young Lorenzo Almeyda was wounded. The combined fleets of the Musalmâns were overwhelmingly superior to his own, and his ship had got ashore; yet he made heroic efforts to maintain the fight till the advancing tide should float his ship. He kept the whole squadron of the enemy at bay and, when his thigh was broken by a shot, caused himself to be lashed to the mast, whence he cheered on his men, till he fell mortally wounded by a ball in the breast

Aîâz treated the survivors tenderly, and wrote a letter of condolence to Almeyda, who bore his loss with the spirit of an ancient Roman.

Almeyda visited Celon in 1507.

The second  
Portuguese  
Viceroy, 1508-  
1515.

§ 11. Meanwhile (in 1508) Alphonso Albuquerque landed the second time in India, bringing a commission to supersede Almeyda.

ALBUQUERQUE is therefore the second Viceroy, or Governor-General of Portuguese India.

Almeyda's  
revenge

Almeyda, refusing to yield to him, sailed on an expedition to attack the Musalmân fleet, and to avenge the death of his son.

(85 miles N. by  
E. from Bom-

He attacked Dâbul on his way, and burnt the city, with the most dreadful and atrocious cruelty.

Great Victory off Diu. Death of Almeida.

CHAP. VI. 151  
A.D. 1508.

He then sailed to the Gulf of Kumbay, where he met the combined fleets off Diu.

1508.  
1508.

He was completely successful, but stained his victory with the blood of his prisoners. This put an end to the designs of the Sultan. Portugal remained supreme in the Arabian Gulf.

On his return to Cochin, he was with difficulty persuaded to resign his office to Albuquerque, and set sail for Portugal. On the way home, he landed on the African coast, and fell in a miserable scuffle with a band of Hottentots.

Death of Almeida, 1509.

Thus ignobly perished (in 1509) the first Portuguese Viceroy.

PART III.—THE SECOND VICTORY. ALBUQUERQUE.

§ 12. ALBUQUERQUE, his successor, in the first year of his reign, burned with ambition to reduce all India to the sway of Portugal.

The amir of Gujarat, who had been a constant enemy of the Portuguese, was defeated by Albuquerque in 1501. He was then invited to the court of the Sultan of Gujarat, and in 1502 he was defeated by Albuquerque. He was then invited to the court of the Sultan of Gujarat, and in 1502 he was defeated by Albuquerque.

He was then lost in a battle with the Sultan of Gujarat.

He was then lost in a battle with the Sultan of Gujarat. He was then lost in a battle with the Sultan of Gujarat. He was then lost in a battle with the Sultan of Gujarat.

A second attempt was made after a great battle. He had thus a victory, which he put to use in the conquest of the city of Diu. He had thus a victory, which he put to use in the conquest of the city of Diu.

He immediately sent embassies to the Sultan of Gujarat. The four embassies were sent to the Sultan of Gujarat.

CH. VI. § 13, 14.  
A.D. 1510.

Albuquerque, the second Portuguese Viceroy, 1508-1515.

His policy.

native courts, and received their envoys with great splendour.

He encouraged internarrriages between his officers and respectable native families; and acted the part of a Romulus to this new Rome.

Ormuz, 1510.

§ 13. Ormuz, an island which commands the entrance to the Persian Gulf, had been nearly taken by Albuquerque on his way out. He now fitted out a splendid expedition, which easily wrested it from its petty ruler; and this place soon became the centre of the trade between India, Persia, and Western Asia. A splendid city rose on this uninviting spot. A.D. 1510.

Aden.

Albuquerque's  
comprehensive  
schemes.

An expedition planned by him against Aden failed.

Having secured such an admirable emporium as Ormuz in the Arabian Gulf, he now, with far-seeing wisdom, resolved to establish a city in the Eastern Archipelago, which should command the trade between India, China, and the vast islands of the Eastern seas. He fixed upon Malacca; and, not without difficulty, captured it from its Malay founders in 1511.

Malacca, 1511.

His policy  
towards  
natives.

Here, too, a splendid city speedily rose. He strove in the Malayan peninsula, as everywhere else, to join together the natives and the Portuguese by the bond of a common interest, treating them as friends and equals. Albuquerque also sent embassies to Siam, Jâva, and Sumatra.

Lope Soarez,  
1515.

§ 14. But Albuquerque was growing old, and, strange to say, was superseded by LOPE SOAREZ, the *third Portuguese Viceroy*. He had been in India before (§ 9).

Thus did Portugal prove signally ungrateful to her greatest men. So, at a later period, was France. Clive and Hastings, too, had to bear severe persecutions, though they outlived them. (Ch ix. § 32; x. § 13.)

Albuquerque, dismissed without a reason, and without anything that might have softened the blow, died broken-hearted.

## Albuquerque's Death.

CH. VI. § 15, 16  
A.D. 1515.

In a ship near Goa he breathed his last, tranquil at length as death drew near, and was buried on shore (A.D. 1515). A splendid monument still attests his merits. He was violent in some of his actions, yet his general administration led to such splendid results, and his personal qualities were of so high an order, that his countrymen unanimously style him "the great."

The death of Albuquerque, 1515.

§ 15. The Portuguese empire, if so it can be called, was now at its zenith of glory. A few additions were made afterwards, and during the reigns of Emmanuel and his son John III. (1494-1557), they acquired many settlements, some of which belong to Portugal. These were a few stations on the coast of Africa, the island of Ormuz, Diu in Guzerat, and some lesser places on the west coast of India, several others in Ceylon, a few inconsiderable stations on the Cochin side, Malacca on the Malayan Peninsula, and some of the Malacca islands. Their possessions thus extended over 12,000 miles of coast. Over this immense area they had about thirty factories in the most favourable positions. Their real strength was at sea; and their empire was not the dominion over extensive kingdoms, but the more really beneficial one of an absolute command of the lucrative trade between the East and the West, without rival or control. Their great object was to exclude all other nations from a share in this wealth-bestowing enterprise. We shall see in the sequel how quickly this imposing fabric fell to ruin.

The Portuguese empire, at its zenith, 1515.

Diu, an island (1515).

The extent of the Portuguese empire, 1515.

Bombay was acquired in 1530 from the Chief of Kutch.

## PART IV.—FROM 1530-1580.

§ 16. But we must resume the history. The circumstances under which Diu became a Portuguese city (1534) are remarkable. Bahâdar Shâh was King of Mâlwa from A.D. 1526. (Ch. ii. § 41.) The troubles of the times enabled the Viceroy of Guzerat to maintain, in general, their independence (ch. iii. § 4, 6); but Humâyûn (1531) made an expedition against Bahâdar, which was nearly successful.

The capture of Diu, 1534.

Then Bassein was taken (1534) by the Portuguese. (Comp. ch. v. § 51.)

CHAP. VI. § 17.  
A.D. 1534, 8.

**Murder of Bahádar Sháh. Siege of Diû.**

Nunho Cunha.

The death of  
Bahádar Sháh.

1532-1545.

Siege of Diû,  
1538.

Gracio de  
Noronha.

Francis Xavier,  
1506-1552.

This was the time chosen by Nunho Cunha, then the Portuguese viceroy, to attack Diû. The attack was unsuccessful; but Bahádar entered into negotiations with the Portuguese, which resulted in their occupation of Diû, and the erection of a fort. There was, however, much jealousy on both sides. Bahádar one day went on board the ship where the viceroy was sick, or pretended to be so, and an inexplicable tumult arose, in which Bahádar was killed and many others, both natives and Portuguese. The suspicion cannot be avoided that treachery was designed by the latter. About the same time they took Damán. These two small places still remain under the power of Portugal. (Introd. § 19.)

Bombay was occupied in 1530; and made over to England in 1661.

§ 17. The year 1538 is memorable for the siege of Diû by the Gujarát forces, aided by the Pasha of Egypt, under orders from his superior, Sulaimán the Magnificent, the Ottoman Sultán of Constantinople. Gracio de Noronha was now viceroy. But to the brave Silveira must be ascribed the glory of the gallant defence. The besiegers did not desist from the attempt, till the Portuguese, who had fought with unparalleled determination, were reduced to forty persons.

Rámí Khán, the Turkish engineer, was in command of the Gujarát artillery. (Ch. iii. § 4, p. 82.)

The greatest man connected with the Portuguese in India is FRANCIS XAVIER, born 1506, in Navarre, of an illustrious family of royal descent, companion of Ignatius Loyola, and one of the founders of the order of Jesuits. He came out under the patronage of John III., who appointed Martin Alphonso de Souza viceroy in 1541, especially because he was zealous for the propagation of Christianity.

Xavier preached, baptized, and founded missions, which still flourish, along the coast of Southern India, in Malacca, in the Spice Islands, and in Japan. He died on the Island of *Chang Chuen*, in an attempt to introduce Christianity into China (1552).

Juan de Castro. Luis de Ataíde.

CH. V. § 18, 19.  
A.D. 1545-71.

His body is buried in Goa. He was canonised, and is generally styled the "*Apostle of the Indies*." He was one of the greatest men of Christendom.

§ 18. In 1545, JUAN DE CASTRO, one of the most celebrated of the Portuguese viceroys, arrived, and found the port of Diu hard pressed. He relieved it, took possession of the native city, and gave it up to indiscriminate plunder and massacre. He then made a triumphal entry into Goa, with the royal standard of the Gujarât king dragged in the dust.

Juan de Castro.

His cruelty and pride.

It was well said in reference to this, that "Juan de Castro conquered like a Christian, but triumphed like a pagan."

This great viceroy was disinterested, brave, and successful; but his cruelties tarnished his fame, and prepared the way for the downfall of the Portuguese power in India.

In fact, this period of Indian history is full of accounts of expeditions in which the coast was ravaged, and villages burnt and plundered by the Portuguese.

§ 19. It is not surprising, then, that in 1571 a combination was formed by Ali Âdil Shâh of Bijapur, Murteza Nizâm Shâh of Ahmadnagar, and the Zamorin, to drive the Portuguese out of India. Goa was besieged by a mighty host under Âdil Shâh, and Chaul by another at the same time under Murteza. But the valour of the Portuguese, and the skill of their viceroy, *Luis de Ataíde*, prevailed; and, after a ten months' siege, Goa was saved. The other attacks too were repulsed. (Ch. iv. § 23.)

Confederation  
against the  
Portuguese,  
1571.

The Portuguese settlements in India were now divided into three distinct governments, Ceylon, Goa, and Malacca. But the sure progress of decay was felt in all.

CH. VI. § 20, 21.  
A.D. 1580-  
1656.

**Decay of the Portuguese Empire. Loss of possessions.**

**PART V.—DECAY.**

Decay of Portuguese power,  
1580-1656.

§ 20. From 1580 to 1640 Portugal was under the sway of Spain; and during that period, though isolated acts of heroism were occasionally performed, the trade of Portugal declined, her colonies languished, and her sceptre gradually passed into the hands of the Dutch. (Comp. ch. iii. § 8 [5].)

We find the degenerate successors of Albuquerque trembling before Sivaji in 1662, paying tribute to the Mahrattas, although at times valiantly opposing them, and, alas! surpassing them in barbarity.

Bassein.

In 1739 (ch. v. § 51) the Mahrattas took Bassein from the Portuguese after a terrible siege. This was a great triumph to that rising power.

The Dutch take the Portuguese settlements.

Sad is the record of the wresting from Portugal of her Eastern possessions, one by one.

In 1607 the Moluccas were seized by the Dutch.

In 1622 Persia seized upon Ormuz, and the Imâm of Muscat gradually stripped them of most of their possessions on the east coast of Africa.

In 1640 Malacca was occupied by the Dutch.

It was taken from them by the British in 1795, restored in 1818, and finally again came under England in 1824. (Ch. x § 82.)

In 1656 they were driven from Ceylon by the same indefatigable enemy.

Causes of the decline of Portuguese power in India.

§ 21. The causes of this rapid decline are, however, sufficiently obvious.

(1.) Spain had laid her benumbing hand upon the unhappy mother country. Philip II., too well known to England, ruled her. His tyranny and jealousy were the first causes of the decline of the Portuguese in India.

Under Prince Maurice.

(2.) The Dutch, having gained their independence, broke the monopoly, and entered upon their new career with an energy which enabled them to triumph over their rivals.

## THE PORTUGUESE IN INDIA.

257

### Causes of decay.

CHAP. VI. §22

(3.) The Portuguese power rested solely on their supremacy at sea. When this passed into other hands, their Indian empire collapsed.

(4.) The Inquisition was introduced into India as early as 1526. Sword and faggot were the ordinary means of conversion. The intolerance of the Portuguese lost them the confidence of the natives.

This intolerance was shown by the Portuguese especially in their treatment of the Christians of Travancore, who are now called Syrians, and whose ancestors were converted to Christianity in the fourth century.

They repeatedly carried away the Syrian bishop and imprisoned him; and in a synod at Diamper, in 1599, Menezes, Archbishop of Goa, decreed that all the Syrian books should be destroyed, and proceeded to the employment of the most cruel measures to reduce the Syrians to obedience to the Papal See. This, however, he failed to effect.

(Diamper, 14 miles E. from Cochin.)

(5.) They were, from first to last, cruel in their treatment of enemies. They never gained in the East a reputation for wisdom or humanity. Without this, no such dominion can hope to endure.

(6.) The successors of Albuquerque were, with one or two exceptions, corrupt and incapable; while in cruelty and violence they surpassed the founders of the empire.

The later viceroys were generally beneath contempt.

§ 22. The present possessions of Portugal in India are *Goa*, *Damán*, and *Diú*, with a population of about 500,000.

Portuguese possessions in India in 1868. (Intro. § 19.)



CH. VII. § 1, 2.  
A.D. 1492.

Attempts to reach India by sea.

## CHAPTER VII.

THE HISTORY OF THE EUROPEAN COMPANIES, WHICH  
AFTER THE PORTUGUESE, STROVE TO OBTAIN A  
SHARE IN THE EASTERN TRADE TO A.D. 1746.

## PART I.—EARLY COMMERCE WITH INDIA.

Ancient com-  
merce with  
India  
[Comp. ch. ii.]

Venice and  
Genoa.

Influence upon  
maritime affairs  
of this desire to  
reach India.  
Columbus, 1492.

§ 1. In ancient times, each empire, as it rose, aimed at the conquest of India as its crowning triumph. Traces of Phenician traders, probably of Hebrew, and certainly of very early Greek merchants, on the western coast of India, have been found. In the middle ages, the trade with India raised the imperial republics of Venice and Genoa to a surprising pitch of greatness.

In modern times, the maritime powers of Europe have vied with one another in their efforts to obtain a monopoly of the Eastern trade.

§ 2. The desire to find a western route to India led Columbus to the discovery of America. The hope of discovering a north-eastern or north-western passage

## EUROPEAN EAST INDIA COMPANIES.

### The Dutch in India.

to India was one of the great incitements to European sailors to undertake voyages into the arctic regions, the records of which contain such examples of heroic effort and endurance.

The voyages of Willoughby, Chancellor, Cabot (1497), Fro-bisher, Davis, Hudson, and many others, to the north-west and north-east, though they failed in their main object, were brilliantly successful in enlarging the bounds of geographical knowledge; and they laid the foundation of the naval supremacy of England.

The determination to find a route by sea to India led to those expeditions which, in A.D. 1498, were, as we have seen, crowned with success, when Vasco de Gâma landed at Calicut.

The Portuguese showed Modern Europe the way to the East. The record of their successes and failures has been given in chap. vi. They strove in vain to maintain an exclusive right to the navigation of the Eastern seas. Their monopoly was happily soon broken.

§ 3. The Portuguese were followed in succession by the Dutch (A.D. 1594); by the English (A.D. 1600); by the French (A.D. 1668); and by the Danes (A.D. 1616).

### PART II.—THE DUTCH EAST INDIA COMPANY.

§ 4. The Dutch had no sooner freed themselves from the tyranny of Spain than they turned their attention to the Eastern trade. They endeavoured first of all to find a northern route by sea to India and China.

This failing, they sent out four ships under a man called Houtman, who had obtained some knowledge of the East (A.D. 1594).

259

CH. VII. § 4.  
A.D. 1497-  
1594.

English naviga-  
tors  
Willoughby,  
1553.  
Hudson, 1597.

Vasco de Gâma  
1498. (Comp.  
ch. vi. § 2.)

European  
Powers in India.

The Dutch, 1580  
(Union of  
Utrecht, 1579.  
Maurice of  
Orange, 1585-  
1625.)

HAP. VII. § 4.  
A.D. 1594-  
1783.

The Dutch in India.

Dutch rivalries  
with the Portu-  
guese, 1594.

The destination of these and of several succeeding expeditions was the Eastern Archipelago, where they carried on a thriving trade in spices.

They soon began to try to supplant the Portuguese, and easily expelled them from the Moluccas.

This led to open war between the two nations; and in 1605 the Dutch expelled the Portuguese from Amboyna and Tidore, and fully established their own supremacy in the Eastern seas.

1623.

Dryden wrote  
tragedy on  
this in 1723.  
Comp. Introd.  
(37.)

The name of Amboyna is connected with a mournful occurrence, commonly called the Massacre of Amboyna, in which ten Englishmen, one Portuguese, and nine Japanese were put to death by the Dutch, for a supposed conspiracy.

In 1656, the Dutch drove their rivals from Ceylon, where they themselves established large and prosperous factories.

Ceded to England in 1799.

1610.

They at length founded the colony of Batavia, on the north-west coast of Java, which is still the capital of the Dutch settlements in the East.

In 1640, they drove the Portuguese from Malacca, and now their only rivals in the Eastern seas and islands were the English. They very soon lost their supremacy.

Their chief settlements in India were at Negapatam (taken from Portugal, 1660), Sadras, Pulicat, and Bimlipatam. These have all fallen into the hands of the British (1783). (Ch. xii. § 30.) Cochin was taken in 1796.

(Peace of Ver-  
sailles.)

NOTE.—Pulicat is on the coast, twenty-three miles N. from Madras. There is a lake near it, forty miles in length and six in breadth. The Dutch were here in 1609. The English took it in 1795.

Sadras is on the coast, forty-one miles S.W. from Madras. It was a populous and flourishing Dutch settlement in 1647.

Bimlipatam is on the sea-coast in the Northern Sirkars, sixteen miles N.N.E. from Vizagapatam.

EUROPEAN EAST INDIA COMPANIES.	261
The Danish Company. The English in India.	CH. VII. § 5, c.
<p><b>PART III.—THE DANISH COMPANY.</b></p> <p>§ 5. The Government of Denmark has only held two settlements in India, at Tranquebâr (bought from the Râja of Tanjore, A.D. 1616); and at Serampore, on the Hûglî.</p> <p>These were sold to the English in A.D. 1845.</p> <p>Both places have been celebrated for the laborious and learned men who were there engaged in translating the Christian Scriptures into the vernacular languages of India, and in other works connected with the propagation of Christianity in the East. The memory of Ziegenbalg (1706–1719) and Fabricius (1739–1791), who lived in Tranquebâr; and of the noble band of the Serampore missionaries, Carey, Ward, and Marshman, will ever command the respect of all who know how to value self-denying, benevolent, and heroic effort.</p> <p>Schwartz, another excellent Christian missionary (1750–1798), resided for eleven years in Tranquebâr, and afterwards in Trichinopoly and Tanjore. He was sent as an envoy to Haidar in 1779. (Ch. xii. § 25.)</p>	
<p><b>PART IV.—THE ENGLISH IN INDIA.</b></p> <p>§ 6. (a.) The example of the Portuguese and Dutch was not lost upon the English.</p> <p>One of the first Englishmen who visited India was a man of the name of Thomas Stevens, of New College, Oxford, who went to Goa in 1597. The narrative of his travels excited immense interest in England. He was principal of a college in Salsette in 1608. Then came the travels of Storey, Newberry, Leedes, and Fitch. They carried a letter from Queen Elizabeth to Akbar. Storey remained in Goa as a monk. Leedes took service under the Emperor Akbar.</p> <p>(b.) Accordingly in A.D. 1600 (at the time when England was in the zenith of her glory), the most extraordinary chartered body, as to its constitution and fortunes, that was ever formed, the British East India</p>	
	<p>The Danes in India, 1616.</p> <p>February 22.</p> <p>Tranquebâr and Serampore memorable places.</p> <p>Missionaries.</p> <p>(From 1800.)</p> <p>Schwartz.</p>
	<p>The first English in India, 1579.</p> <p>The first English East India Company formed, Dec. 31, 1600. (Spenser died in 1599.)</p>

CHAP. VII. §§.  
A.D. 1600-15.

English East India Company.

Company, was incorporated by Queen Elizabeth. At the time no great enthusiasm was shown. It was proved by the promoters of the undertaking that spices, indigo, and silk, could be bought for one third of the price in Malabâr than the English merchants were giving in Aleppo or Alexandria; but money came in slowly.

There were twenty-four directors and a governor. The first "chairman of the Court of Directors" was Thomas Smythe. Their first ships sailed in 1601; but the destination of these was the islands of the Eastern Archipelago.

Second com-  
pany, 1608.

(c.) The second company was formed in A.D. 1608, and the two were united by King William III. in 1702.

Captain  
Hawkins, 1608.  
(Milton born.)

(d.) Meanwhile an expedition (the first to India) under Captain Hawkins arrived in Sûrat in 1608, with letters to Jehângîr, from James I., and from the East India Company. Hawkins delivered his letters in person, was honourably received, and remained at Âgra for three years. (Comp. pp. 103-108.)

Middleton, 1609.  
1611.

(e.) Sir H. Middleton arrived at Sûrat in 1609. Here the Company's first factory was established in 1611; not without great opposition from the Portuguese.

1613.

(f.) Jehângîr, in the year of his marriage with Nûr Jehân, gave permission to the English to establish four factories in his dominions. This firman was signed in 1613.

Best's victory,  
1612.

This result was partly due to the fact that Captain Best, with four ships of war, had encountered and defeated a Portuguese fleet off Sûrat, and thus gained for the English a reputation for superior prowess. This was in 1612.

Sir Thomas  
Roe's embassy,  
1615.  
(Jehângîr, 1605-  
1627.)

(g.) The embassy of Sir Thomas Roe (in 1615) was of even more importance. He was received with great kindness, and had ample opportunities of seeing the emperor's court and capital. General permission to trade throughout the empire was now given to the English.

In 1616 we find an English factory at Ajmir.

# EUROPEAN EAST INDIA COMPANIES.

263

English East India Company, 1616-1642.

CHAP. VII. §6.  
A.D. 1616.

(h.) New Delhi was then in course of erection, and the magnificent buildings which have shed such a glory over the memory of Shâh Jeshân, were beheld by the English visitors in their foundation and growth. (Ch. iii. § 8.)

(Shâh Jehân,  
1627-1658.)

(i.) In 1616, the Company had factories at Sûrat, Calicut, and Masulipatam.

(Shakespeare  
died, 1616.)

They had also a settlement at Bantam in Java, and to this the Indian settlements were subordinate.

(j.) The year 1624 is rendered remarkable by the concession to the company of the power to punish their servants, even capitally.

The Company  
become rulers  
1624.

They had thus become rulers! This is looked upon as an era in their history.

In 1634, permission was given to the English to trade with Bengâl, but they were restricted to the one port of Pipli in Midnâpûr.

1634.

(k.) During the reign of Shâh Jehân (in 1636), Mr. Boughton, an English surgeon, was sent according to the emperor's request to attend his sick daughter; and, succeeding in curing her, he obtained from the emperor's gratitude extensive privileges for his countrymen.

Gabriel Boughton,  
1636.

(l.) In 1639, Fort St. George, or Madras, was founded by Mr. Francis Day. The Coromandel coast was, in fact, found more convenient for the purchase of "piece goods," muslins from Dacca, and cotton goods from the Dakhan.

Madras  
founded, 1639.

The factory had previously been placed at Armogam, thirty miles N. of Pulicat (1625). The Hindû governor offered to build a fort for the English at his own expense, and to exempt the trade from customs-dues, if the English would settle at Madras. (Ch. iv. § 29.)

Armogam.

(m.) Madras was fortified at the command of Charles I. He blamed the Company for "neglecting to establish fortified factories where the king's subjects could reside with safety." (Ch. iv. § 29.)

Madras fortified.

(n.) Curious it is indeed to reflect, that while the contests of the reign of Charles I. were going on; while Pym and Hampden were contending against arbitrary power; while Strafford and

The times of the  
Great Rebellion,  
1642-1660.

CHAP. VII. § 6.  
A.D. 1640-  
1702.

English East India Company, 1640-1702.

Land were dying with a courage worthy of a better cause while the battles of the civil war raged; and while Charles himself was being beheaded to make way for a military despotism, these factors were quietly laying the foundations of an empire which was to be handed over to the Queen of England two centuries later.

In 1650 we first hear of a factory at Hûgli; and a Bâlasôr in 1642.

1653.

(o.) In 1653, Madras was made a separate presidency. Cromwell, very characteristically, wished to abolish the Company's monopoly, but was prevailed upon to grant a charter in 1657.

1657.

1661.

The defence of  
Sûrat, 1664.

In 1661 Charles II. issued a new charter.

(p.) The military reputation of the English was extended through the defence of Sûrat by Sir G. Oxenden (Governor of Bombay, 1665-1667), when attacked by Sivaji in 1664. (Ch. v. § 17.)

All fled but the English, who resisted the invader and protected the inhabitants.

1667.

Aurangzib testified his admiration and gratitude by remitting certain duties and charges payable by them to the imperial treasury. [But compare ch. iii. §. 10 (20).]

Bombay, 1668.  
(It was made  
over to the  
British in 1661.)

(q.) In 1668, Bombay, which had been given as part of the dowry of Catherine of Braganza, was handed over to the Company, and became the chief presidency in India. It was made the chief seat of the British Government in 1683. As early as 1664 they traded with Malabâr, and in 1708 obtained a grant of Tell-cherry.

It was in 1688 that the "tea-trade" was first heard of.

(r.) In 1696, the villages of Chuttanatti, Calcutta and Govindpûr were purchased from Azim-u-Shân grandson of Aurangzib.

In 1702 the rival company, which had been formed in 1698, was amalgamated with the old one.

(Comp. table,  
ch. iii. § 10.)

# EUROPEAN EAST INDIA COMPANIES.

265

English East India Company, 1698-1742.

CHAP. VII. § 6.  
A.D. 1698.

Then was granted what is called Queen Anne's charter.

At this time the Company was authorised to raise troops for the defence of its settlements.

(s.) A fort was ordered to be built and called Fort William, in honour of King William III.

The history of Calcutta to 1756 is little else than a record of the efforts of the British merchants to resist the exactions of the Nuwáb of Mürshedábád. (Ch. iii. § 15.)

In 1715 a deputation was sent to the Emperor Farukhshir, to secure a greater degree of protection from the native powers. [Comp. ch. iii. § 12 (s).]

They were successful, and Calcutta was thereupon declared a separate presidency (1715).

The use of the term *presidency* requires explanation. The establishment at each principal seat of trade consisted of merchants, senior and junior, who conducted the trade, factors, who ordered goods, inspected them and despatched them, and writers, who were the clerks and bookkeepers. A writer after five years became a factor, after three years more a merchant. From these last the members of council were chosen, and one of them was selected as president of the factory. Soldiers, sepoy, and peons made up the establishment.

The directors doubted the expediency of accepting the territory granted by Farukhshir, for, say they, "as our business is trade, it is not politic for us to be encumbered with much territory." The letters of the directors abound in injunctions to their servants to be just, humane, unostentatious, and economical.

At the same time the heads of the presidencies were surrounded and pressed with all the works of a defensive character, all of a martial and warlike nature foreign to their plans.

The president, in A.D. 1725 charged them with all expenses of "cavalry and a pair of horses. Thus they allowed 'his agent will have such superfluities, let them pay for them.' All the time the directors discouraged "In some shape or other we shall have to pay for it." "It leads to penny."

Yet these presidencies in due time became profitable. Merchants gave way to governors. Profits were replaced by revenue. Trade gradually was exchanged for dominion.

The Nuwáb of Bengál, Jaffir Khán, died in 1725, and was succeeded by his son Shuja-ud-din-Khán. One of his Omrahs was the adventurer Ali-Vardi-Khán. (Ch. iii. § 15.)

In 1742 the Mahrattas attacked Bengál, demanding

Calcutta, 1698.

Presidency  
Establishments  
at the Presi-  
dencies

The President.

Moderate and  
humane coun-  
sels of the Di-  
rectors

Defensive  
works

No extra-  
vance allowed.

1725.

1742.



CHAP. VII. § 7.  
A.D. 1604-77.

French East India Company, 1604.

*Chout* (ch. v. § 57). It was then the Mahratta ditch was dug to afford protection against a repetition of the attack.

For the further history of the British settlements in Bengál, see chap. ix.

PART V.—THE FRENCH IN INDIA.

French East  
India Company,  
1604.

§ 7. (1.) Various French East India Companies were formed, and expeditions made by that nation, from A.D. 1604.

Colbert, 1664.

(2.) But the celebrated Colbert has the merit of establishing the Company on a firm footing, in 1664, Louis XIV. declaring that trade to India was not beneath the dignity of a noble.

This company was dissolved in 1769.

Caron, 1668.

(3.) Their first settlement in India was at Sûrat, where both the English and the Dutch had flourishing factories.

The leader was François Caron.

1669.

(4.) In 1669 they obtained a settlement at Masulipatam.

1672.

They took Trincomalee and Meilápûr (or St. Thomé) from the Dutch in 1672; but lost them again in 1674, the English being neutral.

1674.

April 1674.

(5.) They now bought a piece of land from the Bijapûr Government, on which they erected the city called now Pondicherry (Puthu-chêri = *new town*). [Comp. ch. iii. § 9 (13).]

I.  
François Mar-  
tin, the founder  
of Pondicherry.

François Martin, an honoured name in French history, was its founder. He died in 1706.

May 1677.

(6.) Martin's first danger was from Sivajî, who, during his expedition to the Carnatic, his last great

## EUROPEAN EAST INDIA COMPANIES.

267

### The early French in India. Pondicherry. Mahé.

CHAP. VII. § 7.  
A.D. 1677-  
1731.

effort, threatened Pondicherry; but was conciliated by the judicious measures of the French Governor. (Ch. v. § 23-24.)

(7.) Martin's next enemies were the Dutch, who in 1693 attacked and took Pondicherry.

Martin in Pondicherry.

In connection with this, the reply of Rām Rāj (ch. v. § 34), to the Dutch, who offered to buy Pondicherry from him, deserves to be remembered.

Rām Rāj gives an honest answer.

"The French," said he, "fairly purchased it, and paid a valuable consideration for it; and all the money in the world would never tempt me to dislodge them."

But poor Rām Rāj was soon cooped up in Gingi; and the Moguls received the Dutch bribe, and aided them in their attack.

The Dutch take it, Sept. 8, 1693.

(8.) In 1697 the Peace of Ryswick was signed, Pondicherry was restored; and Martin returned in triumph to enlarge and fortify it, and to raise it by skilful policy, good government, and fair dealing, to the rank of a great commercial city. He was an able man, and a magnanimous and disinterested patriot.

(William III., Louis XIV.)

Mr. Thomas Pitt, grandfather of the Earl of Chatham, was then Governor of Madras (1698-1700). It was at this time (1700-1702) that Aurangzib's great general, Dāūd Khān Fannī, paid a visit to Madras, and demanded 10,000 pagodas as a present. Mr. Pitt feasted him, and gave him abundance of the strong waters he loved; but some part of the present, at least, was given.

Pitt and Dāūd Khān Fannī.

(9.) In 1688 the French obtained from Aurangzib a settlement at Chandernagar, when Shayista Khān was Viceroy of Bengal.

Chandernagar, 1688  
(Ch. ix. § 8.)

(10.) In 1725 Mahé was added to the French possessions. Its name was Mahi; but it was taken chiefly by the daring and ingenuity of a young French naval officer, *Bertrand François Mahé de la Bourdonnais*; and the slight change in the name was made in honour of the captor, who was destined, twenty years afterwards, to act a memorable part in the affairs of South India.

Mahé, 1725.  
(- Fish)  
De la Bourdonnais.  
Born 1699.  
Died 1753.

(11.) In 1731 JOSEPH FRANÇOIS DUPLIX was appointed director of Chandernagar, which he raised from a well-nigh deserted port to a flourishing empo-

Duplex in Chandernagar.

CHAP. VII. § 7.  
A.D. 1731-47.

**The early French in India. Dupleix. Dumas.**

Mauritius and  
Bourbon, 1672.

rium. He also amassed by trade, then permitted to the Company's servants, a vast fortune. There he remained till 1741.

(12.) Meanwhile, in the Isles of France and Bourbon, a great colony had been founded.

The Isle of France, originally Cerné, was called Mauritius by the Dutch (in honour of Prince Maurice of Nassau), which name it now bears.

II.  
Dumas, 1735-  
1741.

The French governor of these islands, M. DUMAS, in 1735, became Governor-General of the French possessions in India, which position he filled till succeeded by Dupleix in 1741.

Dumas' system  
of interference.

(13.) DUMAS was worthy of his predecessor, Martin. In his time began that system of interference with the affairs of the Hindû princes, which has led to such mighty results.

Dôst Ali.

In 1710 Sâdat-ulla-Khân was appointed Nuwâb, or Deputy-Governor, of the Carnatic by Dâud Khân Pannî (8). He was the first who attempted to make the office hereditary. In 1733 he died at his capital, Arcot; and his nephew, Dôst Ali, succeeded him, without any sanction, however, from Delhi. He relied greatly on the French, as the only European nation whose position at that time commanded respect.

Arcot and Vellore (Vêlar = javelin town) were the chief towns of the Payîn Ghât, or Lower Carnatic.

1719-1747.

By his influence the right of coining was conceded to the French by Muhammad Shâh, the Emperor of Delhi. (Ch. iii. § 15.)

(14.) Meanwhile it must be remembered that Nizâm-ul-Mulk (ch. iii. § 16) was Viceroy of the Dakhan, and Bâjî Râo I. the great Peshwâ of the Mahrattas. (Ch. v. § 53.)

(15.) The most prominent person in the Carnatic, however, at that time, was a son-in-law of Dôst Ali (and his Dîwân), whose name was Chandâ Sahêb, who assumed the position of a free lance, and who was enthusiastically devoted to the French, by whom he was always supported. (See Table, p. 269.)

## § 7. THE NUWÂBS OF THE CARNATIC. [See Ch. vii. viii.]

I. SĪDĀT-ULĀ-KHĀN.<sup>1</sup>  
From about 1710. Died 1732.  
Adopted two nephews, viz. :—

II. DŌR ALĪ. Died 1740 at Ambūr.  
§ 7. (18.)

Edker ALĪ, Governor of Vellore.

III. SĀFĪR ALĪ.  
Murdered 1743 by  
Murtēza ALĪ. § 7 (26.)

DAUGHTER = MURTEZA ALĪ.

DAUGHTER = CHANDĪ SĀRER.

A relative of the family.  
Supported by the  
French. Killed 1752.  
His real name was  
Husein Dost KHĀN.  
The other was a familiar  
nickname.

Ch. vii.  
§ 7. (18.)

IV. SHĀD MUHAMMAD KHĀN.  
Assassinated 1743.

V. ANWĀR-UD-DĪN.

Appointed by Nizām-ul-Mulk, 1743. § 7. (20.)  
Killed at Ambūr, 1750. Ch. viii. § 16.

VI. MUHAMMAD ALĪ.

Supported by the English. Ch. viii. § 17.  
Died 1755.

VII. AMAUT-UL-OMRAH. Died 1801. Ch. x. § 44.

VIII. NĪZĀW : AZĪM-UD-DAULĀ. Died 1819.

IX. AZĪM JĪH. Died 1835.

X. MUHAMMAD GHŌZ. Died 1855.\*  
He left no heirs, and the title became extinct.

<sup>1</sup> These are called the Newayeteh Nuwābs. This tribe was, it is said, driven from Arabia to the western shore of India in the eighth century. Newayeteh signifies New-comer.  
\* An uncle of the last Nuwāb, whose title is Azīm Jāh, is the head of the family. He enjoys a liberal pension (Comp. ch. x. § 33), and has received the title of PRINCE OF THE CARNATIC.

CHAP. VII. § 7.  
A.D. 1733-40.

The early French in India. Dumas. Chandâ Sahêb.

Chandâ Sahêb's  
first appearance,  
1736.

(16.) In 1736 Chandâ Sahêb made himself master of Trichinopoly by treachery. The Râja of that place had died without heirs; and, a dispute arising, the widow, Minâkshi Ammâl, applied to Dôst Ali, Nuwâb of Arcot, for assistance. He sent to Chandâ Sahêb, who entered the city, after taking an oath to defend the Râni; but immediately imprisoned her, and assumed the government.

His perjury.

Usurpation.

(Ch. viii. § 23.)

In the very choultry where he swore the false oath; he was murdered sixteen years after!

Kâricâl gained  
by the French.

(17.) Another affair in which Chandâ Sahêb was concerned led to important results for the French.

The kingdom of Tanjore was held by Sâhuji, a relative of the great Sivaji (see Table, ch. v. § 27), who was about this time dispossessed by a pretended cousin.

Tanjore affairs  
and Sâhuji.  
(8 miles S. from  
Tranquebâr.)

This expelled king offered Dumas the town of Kâricâl, and some adjoining villages, as the price of his restoration. Meanwhile, however, he regained his kingdom without French aid. Dumas was disappointed.

1739.

Chandâ Sahêb, however, stepped in, offered Dumas to take the coveted villages from Sâhuji, with whom he was at war, and to make them over to the French. This he did, and from that date (1739) Kâricâl and the neighbouring villages have belonged to France.

This was Sâhuji's first experience of European affairs; it was not his last. (Ch. viii. § 15.)

Mahratta invasion  
of the Carnatic.

(18.) Meanwhile, the Mahrattas, jealous of these Muhammadan conquests, advanced with a large army into the Carnatic, under Râghuji Bhonslê (ch. v. § 55) and Morârî Râo.

Death of Dôst  
Ali, 1740.  
The first battle  
of Ambûr.  
(Comp. ch. viii.  
§ 16.)

Dôst Ali met them near Ambûr, at the Dâmalchêri Pass (about 120 miles N.W. of Madras), but was there defeated and slain (1740).

NOTE.—Ambûr is fifty miles west of Arcot, and thirty miles south of Dâmalchêri.

The early French in India. Dumas.

CHAP. VII § 7.  
A.D. 1740, 1.

The widow of Dôst Ali, with the wife and son of Chandâ Sahêb, found a refuge in Pondicherry.

Safder Ali, the new Nuwâb, sent his wife and children to Madras, having more confidence in the English. He also fortified himself in Vellore.

The Mahrattas made an engagement with Safder Ali, by which he was recognised as Nuwâb of Arcot, paying a large tribute and assisting the Mahrattas to expel his ambitious brother-in-law, Chandâ Sahêb, from Trichinopoly. (Comp. ch. v. § 53, 55.)

Safder Ali, son of Dôst Ali, Nuwâb of Arcot, 1740.

(19.) M. Dumas now showed his firmness and ability. Threatened by Raghuji with destruction, if he did not consent to surrender the fugitives, he replied that "all the French in India would die first." Meanwhile he put Pondicherry into a state of preparation for a siege.

Raghuji and Dumas, 1740.

(20.) Safder Ali and Chandâ Sahêb met in Pondicherry, from whence the former departed to Arcot, where he was soon assassinated (26); and Chandâ Sahêb to Trichinopoly, where his well-merited punishment was in due time to overtake him. The Mahrattas lost no time in investing Trichinopoly, took Chandâ Sahêb prisoner (March, 1741), and conveyed him to Satârâ, where he languished for seven years in prison. Morâri Râo was left Governor of Trichinopoly.

Assassination of Safder Ali.

Chandâ Sahêb a prisoner, 1741. (Ch. viii. § 22.)

There Chandâ Sahêb formed a romantic friendship with Muzaffir Jung (ch. viii. § 16), a grandson of Nizâm-ul-Mulk.

Muzaffir Jung and Chandâ Sahêb.

These were both destined to play an important part in the struggles between the French and the English, to have a temporary triumph, and to perish.

(21.) Raghuji still threatened Pondicherry; but, awed by the firm attitude of M. Dumas, and bribed by a present of French liqueurs, eventually left him unmolested.

Raghuji before Pondicherry. French firmness and liqueurs.

This brave resistance to the Mahrattas was M. Dumas' last act; and, amid the praises of all South India, with the thanks of the aged Nizâm-ul-Mulk, of Salder Ali, and of the Emperor himself, who even conferred on

Muhammad Shâh.  
1741.

CHAP. VII. § 7.  
A.D. 1741, 8.

**The early French in India. Dupleix.**

III.  
Dupleix in Pondicherry, 1741-1754.

The War of the Austrian Succession.

1740.

Shall there be a French empire in India?

IV.  
La Bourdonnais in Pondicherry, 1746.

1746.

His efforts.

(Nāga-paṭṭa-nam = Dragon-town, 20 miles S. of Tranquebār.)  
Preparation for the struggle.

him the title of Nawāb, he resigned his office to M. DUPLEIX.

(22.) Dupleix immediately assumed the state of a Nuwāb, proceeded to Chandernagar for installation; and used every effort to strengthen his position.

In the eyes of the natives the French were now supreme, and Pondicherry impregnable.

(23.) The war of the Austrian Succession now broke out in Europe, lasting from 1740 to the Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle in 1748. This war had been long expected; and Dupleix had prepared to strike the blow which should expel the English for ever from India. He had already conceived the idea of founding a French Empire in India.

The great Albuquerque, the splendid Dupleix, and the heroic Clive, each in his turn, formed the same design. To Clive alone was destined the honour of accomplishing for his country what these two before him had dared to plan for theirs.

(24.) Meanwhile a worthy coadjutor of Dupleix, who was afterwards to become his rival and enemy, was ready to join him at this eventful period. This was LA BOURDONNAIS (10). Mr. Morse was then Governor of Madras (1744-1749); and a squadron of English ships was cruising in the Indian seas, with the design of ruining the French trade.

La Bourdonnais was at that time Governor of the Isles of France and Bourbon, which, by his skill, energy, and indomitable perseverance, he had brought into a most satisfactory state. By wonderful efforts he contrived to equip and man a squadron of ships; and, in spite of opposition at home and tempests at sea, arrived off Negapatam in 1746, and engaged the English squadron, which unaccountably avoided a general engagement and put into Trincomalee.

(25.) Madras was thus left exposed (July 1746), while a French fleet was triumphant in the Madras seas.

The French in India. Dupleix and La Bourdonnais.

CH. VII. § 7.  
A.D. 1746.

Dupleix and La Bourdonnais in Pondicherry, and Governor Morse in Madras, were the antagonists.

The struggle between the two nations (which lasted fifteen years) must be detailed in the next chapter.

1746-1761

(26.) It is necessary here, as a preparation for these details, to glance at the history of the CAERNATIC from 1741 to 1746.

The Carnatic,

(A.) In 1742 Safder Ali (19) was assassinated by his brother-in-law, the treacherous and cowardly Murteza Ali. His family and treasures were now put under the care of the English.

Safder Ali's death.  
(Mortis.)

(B.) Seiad Muhammad Khân, his son, succeeded; but, as he was a mere youth, all was anarchy in the province.

(C.) Nizam-ul-Mulk, Viceroy or Sûbâdâr of the Dakhan in name, but really independent, now thought it time to come and claim arrears of tribute long due.

Nizam-ul-Mulk in the Carnatic  
1743.

The English factory at Madras sent a deputation to wait upon him at Trichinopoly; but they were thought too insignificant to obtain an audience.

(D.) After reducing all to order, he left Anwâr-ud-dîn, a veteran officer, to guard the infant Nuwâb (1743), who was, however, assassinated the same year.

See Table,  
p. 28.

(E.) Anwâr-ud-dîn (who was always suspected of complicity in the murder of which he reaped the fruit) was now appointed Nuwâb; and the first use he made of his power was to shield the French from the attacks of the English, on the breaking out of the war.

Anwar-ud-din,  
1744.

But the time soon came, as we shall see, when the English needed the friendly intervention of the Nuwâb on their own behalf.

(F.) Chandâ Sahâb, it will be remembered, was still in his Mabratta prison, chafing at the thought, that the prize he had coveted so eagerly had been grasped by another, while he was a powerless captive. *His time will come!*

Comp p. 184.



§ 7\*. TABLE OF THE EARLY HISTORY OF THE VARIOUS EAST INDIA COMPANIES.

A.D.			
1498	Vasco de Gâma lands at Calicut.		
1510	Conquest of Goa.		
1515	Death of Albuquerque.		
From 1580 to 1640	Portugal under Spain.		
1594	—	—	
1599	—	—	
1600	British East India Company.	First French expedition.	
1604	—	—	
1605	—	—	
1608	Hawkins in Sûrat.	—	
1610	—	—	
1615	Embassy of Sir T. Roe.	—	
1616	—	—	
1624	Power of life and death given to the E. I. Company.		
1636	Surgeon Boughton.		
1639	Madras founded.		
1654	Fort St. George (Madras) constituted a presidency.	—	
1661	Charles II. gives new charter.		
1664	Oxenden defends Sûrat.	French East India Company formed.	
1668	Bombay made over to East India Company.		
1672	—	French in Mauritius, &c.	
1674	—	Pondicherry founded.	
			Stevens in Goa (1579).
			Union of Utrecht (1579).
			Dutch E. I. Comp. estab. (1595.)
			Dutch send ships to India.
			Synod of Diamper.
			Dutch supreme in E. Archipelago.
			Batavia founded.
			Danes buy Tranquebâr (1617).
			Dutch take Ceylon (1656).

## EARLY HISTORY OF EAST INDIA COMPANIES—cont.

1687	Bombay made the English capital.		[N.B.—In 1716 a company, called the Ostend East India Company, was established. It lasted for 11 years only.]
1688	Tea-trade sprung up.		
1696	Calcutta, &c., bought.		
1698	The second Company formed; and the foundation of Fort William.		
1702	Amalgamation of Companies.		
1715	Surgeon Hamilton.		
1735	—	Dumas in Pondicherry.	
1739	—	French in Kâricâl.	Mahrattas take Bassein.
1741	—	Dupleix in Pondicherry.	
1746	Madras taken.	Paradis gains battle of St. Thomé.	

CH. VIII. § 1, 2.  
A.D. 1744, 6.

Dupleix and La Bourdonnais.

## CHAPTER VIII.

1746-1761.

THE RIVALRIES AND WARS OF THE FRENCH AND ENGLISH EAST INDIA COMPANIES, FROM A.D. 1746, TO THE SURRENDER OF PONDICHERY TO THE ENGLISH, A.D. 1761.

PART I.—1746-1748. THE CAPTURE OF MADRAS TO THE PEACE OF AIX-LA-CHAPELLE.

1744-1748.

§ 1. The period from 1744 to the Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle was an eventful one for India. The two greatest nations of Europe are beginning to struggle for supremacy upon Indian ground. The conqueror will rule in time from sea to sea.

La Bourdonnais  
and Dupleix  
meet in India,  
1746.

§ 2. We have seen the able and gallant naval commander LA BOURDONNAIS, after the departure of the English fleet, land in Pondicherry.

He and Dupleix met on the 8th July 1746

Profession and  
practice.

His words were:—"We ought to regard one another as equally interested in the progress of events, and to work in concert. For my part, sir, I devote myself to you beforehand, and

**Madras taken by La Bourdonnais.**CH. VIII. § 3, 4.  
A.D. 1746.

swear to you a perfect confidence." Yet the disunion of these two at last ruined their cause. With it we may contrast the generous conduct of Lawrence and Clive.

§ 3. Dupleix was a genius; a man of lofty, chivalrous mind; a great statesman, full of the most brilliant conceptions; but no warrior. La Bourdonnais was a soldier, ardent and impetuous; but not possessed of the transcendent abilities of Dupleix. The latter, too, was supreme in India, though at sea the former was independent.

Their  
characters.

Dupleix was greatly assisted by his wife, whose name was *Jeanne*, which she changed into *Jehân Begum*. She was of French extraction, born in *Bengâl*, and was very useful to him from her knowledge of native languages and manners.

The wife of  
Dupleix.

§ 4. After some delays, by no means creditable to La Bourdonnais, Dupleix prevailed upon him to advance to attack Madras; where Governor Morse in vain prayed Anwâr-ud-dîn, the Nuwâb of the Carnatic, to interfere for the protection of the English as he had formerly done in behalf of the French. He had the mortification, too, to hear that the English fleet had actually sailed for *Bengâl*.

The first siege  
of Madras, 1746.  
(The second  
Jacobite rebel-  
lion. The  
battles of FAL-  
KIRK and CUL-  
LODEN MOOR.)

La Bourdonnais had with him 4,000 men, of whom 400 were sepoys, 400 Africans, and the remainder Europeans; while the English garrison consisted of but 300 or 400 men, and the fortifications were of the slightest description.

On the 21st of September, Governor Morse, therefore, was compelled to capitulate. The whole of the English became prisoners of war; the town and all in it, with its dependencies, were made over to the French: conditions of ransom were to be settled afterwards. "*The French did not lose a man in the siege; the English only five.*" Thus Madras was taken, 107 years after its foundation.

Capitulation.

CH. VIII. § 5.  
A.D. 1746.**Dupleix and Anwâr-ud-dîn.**The city ransomed.  
The bribe.

The fate of the captured city had now to be decided by the French leaders. La Bourdonnais, influenced by a bribe of 100,000 pagodas, agreed to allow the English to ransom the city for four lakhs and 40,000 rupees.

Unpatriotic  
conduct of La  
Bourdonnais.

Dupleix refused his consent; as his wish was to drive the English out of India; and, if the conquest of Madras had been followed up, this might have been effected. A storm meanwhile shattered the French fleet, and La Bourdonnais, hastily signing the treaty, set sail on the 29th October, having spent about four months on the Indian coast. Having thus thrown away the opportunity of completely crushing the enemies of his country, and of gaining for himself undying fame, he returned to France, and was thrown into the Bastille, where he remained three years; and though acquitted, he died of a broken heart in 1753.

Conclusion of  
the history of  
La Bourdon-  
nais, 1746-1753.

We may lament his fate; but it was hardly undeserved.

The Nuwâb of  
Arcot inter-  
feres.

§ 5. Anwâr-ud-dîn had been no unconcerned spectator of the capture of Madras. Jealous of French aggrandisement, though inclined to favour them, he sent a messenger to Dupleix commanding the French to desist, and threatening to interfere with an armed force. Dupleix unhesitatingly replied, that he was only besieging the town for the Nuwâb, to whom he would surrender it when taken. But, when five weeks had passed, and the French flag still floated over the ramparts of Fort St. George, Anwâr sent an army to enforce his claims. Dupleix determined not to surrender the place till he had destroyed the fort; and accordingly gave orders to the French officer in command to hold his ground against the Nuwâb's army.

Dupleix de-  
ceives the  
Nuwâb.

1746.

The result was a defeat to the Nuwâb's forces, that should have taught him of how little value his army was before a handful of Europeans. M. Paradis (by

## Paradis, the fifth great Frenchman.

CH VIII § 6, 9.  
A D 1746.

no means the least of the remarkable Frenchmen who have distinguished themselves in India), with 230 Europeans and 700 native sepoys, put to utter route the Nuwâb's army of ten thousand men, under his son, Mâpluz Khân.

This action (which might have been the French Plassey) made Dupleix for a time the Nuwâb's master.

V  
The great victory of M  
Pondicherry  
The Battle of  
St. Thomas  
Nov 4

Dupleix master  
of the situation.

§ 6. Dupleix now utterly disavowed the treaty made by La Bourdonnais, and appointed Paradis Governor of Madras. The English prisoners were sent to Pondicherry. Some escaped to Fort St. David, a fortified town twelve miles south of Pondicherry, bought by the English in 1691 and now become the chief place occupied by the British on the Coromandel Coast. Among these latter was Ensign Clive, then in his 21st year.

Dupleix breaks  
the Treaty.

Fort St. David.

Clive.

§ 7. The next thing, of course, was for the French to attack Fort St. David. The attack failed, and was not resumed when opportunity presented itself. Meanwhile Admiral Griffin, with his fleet, appeared on the coast, threatening Pondicherry, and the English were saved.

Fort St. David  
attacked

Admiral Griffin.

The capture of Madras was of no real use to the French.

§ 8. Dupleix managed, in the interval, to make peace with the Nuwâb, whose assistance did not, however, materially benefit him; for, when the French were seemed to be desperate, he did not hesitate to forswear their alliance for that of the English.

Peace between  
Dupleix and the  
Nuwâb.

§ 9. We cannot give the details of the defence of Cuddalôr, attacked by Dupleix, in which the skill of the veteran Major Stringer Lawrence, who had recently arrived (Jan. 1748) to command the English forces in India, was conspicuous.

Defence of Cud-  
dalôr, 1747,  
1748.

CH. VIII. § 10,  
13.

A.D. 1748.

## First siege of Pondicherry.

The attack of  
Ariankûpam.  
Lawrence taken  
prisoner.

§ 10. Two miles from Pondicherry is a small place called Ariankûpam. This place, fortified by the skill of Paradis and defended by Law, was attacked by the English, who were at first repulsed, and Lawrence was taken prisoner. In the end, the French were compelled to abandon it and retire to Pondicherry, where they were now closely besieged.

The first siege  
of Pondicherry,  
1748.  
Boscowen.  
Dupleix makes  
great efforts.

§ 11. Admiral Boscowen, grand-nephew of the great Marlborough, was commander-in-chief of the English forces, both naval and military; but the wonderful qualities of Dupleix enabled him for five weeks to baffle every effort of the English leader, who was inexperienced in military operations. Paradis fell early in the siege. On Dupleix all depended; glorious and successful was his defence.

Death of  
Paradis.  
The siege  
raised.

CLIVE.  
(He obtained his  
Commission in  
1747.)

It was here that "ensign" Clive first gave indications of that wonderful military genius to which British India owes so much.

Dupleix  
triumphant.

§ 12. Dupleix had for the time saved his country's cause, and far and wide did he cause the note of triumph to be heard. All India resounded with acclamations, and the French were everywhere regarded as the greatest of European powers.

1748.  
The Peace of  
Aix-la-Chapelle.  
Dupleix  
mortified.

§ 13. The news of the Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle now reached India. Madras was to be restored to its English masters; and all things were to revert to the position in which they were before the breaking out of the war in 1744. Bitter was the mortification of Dupleix; but his genius will yet devise other methods for carrying out his cherished plan of expelling the hated English, and founding a French Empire in India.

Will they succeed?

India in 1748.

CH. VIII. § 14.  
A.D. 1748.

§ 14. Let us, before we seek an answer to this question, take a survey of the state of affairs in India (in 1718), at the time of the Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle.

Picture of India  
in 1748.

(1.) The twelfth Mogul emperor, *Muhammad Shâh*, the last who possessed even the semblance of power, died in April 1748. The puppet emperor who succeeded him was the victim of the Mahrattas and of his own viceroys. From this time there was no real Emperor of Delhi. (Ch. iii. § 18.)

Moguls.  
Delhi.

*Nâdir Shâh* was assassinated June 8, 1847.

(2.) *Shâh*, the grandson of *Sivaji* (Table, p. 172) died also in 1748 (ch. v. § 59); and under the third Peshwâ, *Bâlâji Râo*, now really supreme, the Mahratta power was attaining its greatest extent of dominion. There were four great leaders, *Holkâr*, *Sindia*, *Rajhujî*, and *Damaji Gâckwâr*.

Mahrattas.

(4.) *Nizâm-ul-mulk* died in June 1748, aged 104 years. The dignity of Viceroy, or *Sûbâdâr* of the Dakhan, having become hereditary in his family, this portion of the empire may now be considered to have been finally rent from it.

Nizâm-ul-Mulk.

The struggle for the succession between his sons led to the most momentous results. (Table, ch. iii. § 16.)

The disputed  
succession.

(5.) *Chandâ Sahéb* was liberated the same year, and came down to wrest, if he could, the Nuwâbship of Arcot from *Anwâr-ud-dîn*. (See Table, p. 269.)

Chandâ Sahéb.  
(Ch. viii. § 7  
(15).)

(6.) *La Bourdonnais* was in the Bastille. *Dupleix*, baffled and disappointed, but, in the eyes of all the native powers, covered with glory, is devising new schemes for the aggrandisement of France.

La Bourdon-  
nais.  
Dupleix.

(7.) *Clive* is an ensign. (Born September 29, 1725; landed in India 1744.) The English, taught by the example of the French, are beginning to train sepoy. *Warren Hastings*, the future Governor-General (born 1732), came to India in 1750. The veteran *Major Lawrence* (Governor of Madras in 1749) sails for England in 1750; to return (in 1752), and with the young hero, *Clive*, to do great things.

Clive.

Hastings.

Lawrence.

(8.) In *Bengâl*, *Bahâr*, and *Orissa*, *Alt-vardî Khân* has made good his position; and is ruling with a degree of talent and justice that reconciles the people to his usurpation. (Ch. vi. § 15.)

1740 1756.  
Alt-vardî-Khân.

(9.) Oudh is in the power of *Sâdat Khân's* nephew, *Safder Jung* (ch. iii. § 18), who is independent; though he condescends to call himself *Vazir* of the Empire.

Oudh.  
Safder Jung.



CH. VIII. § 15,  
16.  
A.D. 1748.

**The first English interference in native disputes.**

Rohilkhand.

(10.) In Rohilkhand the Afghāns have become virtually independent.

Hyder.

(11.) In Mysore, Haidar was now a rising chief. His son, Tippû, was born in 1750. (Ch. xii. § 11-13.)

**PART II.—FROM THE PEACE OF AIX-LA-CHAPELLE  
TO THE DEFENCE OF ARCOT.**

Tanjore  
disputes, 1741.

§ 15. In 1748 Sâhujî, ex-Râja of Tanjore [ch. vii. § 7 (17)], who had been dispossessed by Pratâb Sing (his illegitimate brother), applied to the English to restore him to his rightful possessions. He offered, as the price of their assistance, Dêvi Kôta (at the mouth of the Colleroon) and the surrounding territory. They consented, and dispatched a body of troops to restore Sâhujî. It was found that the people, who had suffered much under his weak rule, were averse to his return; but, after an unsuccessful attempt, the English notwithstanding sent Major Lawrence to storm Dêvi Kôta. This he effected; but Pratâb Sing now came forward, offered to confirm the captors in the possession of the fort and territory, and to give a pension to the ex-Râja, who retired to Madras.

Dêvi Kôta taken  
by the English.  
(= the Fort of  
the Goddess. It  
is 37 miles S.  
from Pondi-  
cherry.)

It will be seen that the English thus led the way, though feebly, and without either dignity or consistency, in the adoption of that policy of *interfering in the disputes of native princes*, which Dupleix, with well-matured plans, afterwards adopted on such a gigantic scale.

The disputes in  
the Dakhan.

§ 16. On the death of Nizâm-ul-mulk, his eldest son (see Table, p. 132), preferred to remain at court (ch. iii. § 18); and the succession of the Sûbâdârship of the Dakhan fell, according to his grandfather's supposed will, to Muzaffir Jung. But Nazîr Jung, the second

**The second battle of Ambûr.**

CH. VIII §  
A.D. 1750

son, who had already rebelled against his father, seized the treasures, gained over the army, and proclaimed himself viceroy.

In fact, six uncles of Muzaffir were his rivals.

The dispossessed Muzaffir repaired to Satârâ to seek Mahratta aid, met there with Chandâ Sahêb, who was impatiently beating his wings against the bars of his prison; and the two wrote to Dupleix, under whose protection Chandâ's wife and family were living in Pondicherry. [Ch. vii. § 7 (18).]

Muzaffir and  
Chandâ Sahêb  
meet.

Dupleix promptly negotiated 'handâ Sahêb's release; paid the ransom, seven lakhs of rupees, and sent an army of 400 Europeans and 2,000 sepoys towards Ambûr, where Anwâr-ud-dîn (now in his 107th year), at the head of 20,000 troops, was posted. There the French were joined by the released Chandâ (who was burning with impatience to gain for himself a kingdom) with 6,000 troops, and by Muzaffir Jung with 30,000.

Chandâ Sahêb  
release.

Their plan was to defeat and dethrone Anwâr-ud-dîn, seat Chandâ Sahêb on the throne of Arcot; and then, with the combined forces of the Carnatic and the French, to oppose Nazîr Jung, and place Muzaffir on the throne of the Dakhan.

The French  
scheme.

Two aspirants  
to power.

The plan was successful. The French leader, M. D'Auteuil, was murdered; but his place was taken by the French Clive, Bussy; Anwâr-ud-dîn and his eldest son were killed fighting gallantly; and the whole of his camp, artillery, and stores fell into the hands of Chandâ Sahêb, who took possession of Arcot the next day.

The Second  
Battle of  
Ambûr, 1750.  
[Comp. ch. v  
§ 7 (18).]  
Death of  
Anwâr-ud-d.

Muzaffir Jung now proclaimed himself Viceroy of the Dakhan, and appointed Chandâ Sahêb Nuwâb of the Carnatic.

The French  
party is  
triumphant.

Both then repaired to Pondicherry to offer their thanks to Dupleix, accompanied with the substantial gift of eighty-one villages around Pondicherry. Eight days were spent in magnificent festivities, in which the

French  
triumphs.

CH. VIII § 17.  
A.D. 1750.

## French reverses. Major Lawrence.

tokens of French wealth and power were ostentatiously exhibited to the princely victors.

Thus the curtain falls at the end of the first act of this changeful drama.

The rival  
Nuwābs.

§ 17. The younger son of Anwār-ud-dîn, Muhammad Ali, had escaped and fled to Trichinopoly. The question is a difficult one, whether he or Chandâ Sahêb was the rightful Nuwāb ?

It must be remembered that these officers were appointed by the Sûbâdâr, but their appointment required confirmation by the Emperor. The office was not *hereditary* under the Moguls.

Muhammad Ali  
asks for English  
aid.

Muhammad Ali sought help from the English governor, Mr. Floyer, who naturally hesitated to engage in so momentous a conflict.

Chandâ Sahêb  
delays.

The conquest of Trichinopoly and the capture of Muhammad Ali would have insured Chandâ Sahêb's final triumph ; but he delayed, turned aside to plunder Tanjore, and allowed himself to be detained there until Nazîr Jung, with a vast army, aided by the Mahrattas and by Major Lawrence, with 600 Englishmen, was in the field.

Nazîr Jung's  
victory.

Chandâ Sahêb, Muzaffir Jung, and their French allies were now compelled to retreat. There was disaffection among the French, and distrust everywhere. At Valdâr, in the neighbourhood of Pondicherry, they were routed ; Muzaffir was taken prisoner ; and Nazîr Jung, now undisputed Viceroy of the Dakhan, took possession of Arcot, and proclaimed Muhammad Ali, Nuwāb of the Carnatic.

Muzaffir  
prisoner.  
The Battle of  
Valdâr, April  
1750.

The French  
utterly cast  
down.

Thus ends the second act in the great drama. The French and English have fairly taken their sides. For the moment Dupleix is mortified ; while Lawrence and Clive are triumphant. Nazîr Jung is viceroy, and Muhammad Ali is Nuwāb ; while Chandâ Sahêb is a fugitive in Pondicherry, and Muzaffir is in irons in his uncle's camp.

**Muhammad Ali defeated. Bussy, the sixth great Frenchman.**

CH. VIII § 18.  
A.D. 1750.

§ 18. Dupl ix, nevertheless maintained a firm attitude; sent envoys to Nazir Jung, who were instructed to demand all that they could in fact have asked if they had been victors, and to tamper with the fidelity of the chiefs that made up his army. The Nuwâb of Kadapa, Kurnûl, and Savanûr and other leaders were thus corrupted.

The firmness of Dupl ix.

Corruption.

NOTE — 1. KADAPA (Cuddapa, Prop Kripa = *murey*, often Kûlpa). Here was a small independent Patân state.

Kadapa.

2. KURNÛL (*kundanul*), on the Tumbhadra. It was given as a Jaghir by Aurungzib, in 1651, to the father of Daud Khân Panî (Ch III § 10).

Kurnûl.

3. SAVANÛR (Shahnûr). The capital of a small Patân state, forty miles S.E. from Dhârwar.

Savanûr.

The French troops too had come to a better mind, and all were burning to wipe off the disgrace of their late defeat.

Moreover Muhammad Ali, who was timid and irresolute, refused to be guided by his English allies. They in consequence left him; and the result was an overwhelming defeat on the banks of the Punâr, a few miles from Cuddalôr.

Muhammad Ali defeated

The Battle of the Punâr  
Sept. 1, 1750.

The storming of Ginji, to which place the scattered remnant of Muhammad Ali's forces had retired, raised the reputation of the French to its highest point. It was always considered to be impregnable, strongly entrenched between its three hills, each crowned with a citadel. Bussy stormed it in twenty-four hours.

The storming of Ginji, 1750.  
(35 miles N.W. from Pondicherry)

VI.  
Bussy  
Born 1718.

This was an achievement that might be the precursor of the most signal triumphs.

Nazir Jung, sunk as he was in debauchery, and incapable of pursuing any consistent plan, was startled for the moment into something like vigorous effort. His mind was made up to come to terms with Dupl ix, to make any concession, so that the French king-maker would only allow him to remain in a position where he could gratify every desire of his sensual soul.

Nazir Jung aroused.

But, meanwhile, a conspiracy to liberate Muzaffir, and to murder Nazir Jung had been formed. The

Nazir Jung murdered.

CH. VIII. § 19.  
A.D. 1750.

The triumph of Dupleix.

Muzaffir  
enthroned.

conspirators were to desert, display the French standard, and to fall upon their master. While Nazîr Jung was awaiting an answer to his offers of submission from Dupleix, the French moved to the attack under M. de la Touche; and Nazîr Jung, on an elephant, took up his position with the captive Muzaffir on another elephant, guarded by an officer, who was ordered to behead his prisoner on the first appearance of treason; but who, fortunately for Muzaffir, was himself one of the traitors. In the midst of the action the traitors displayed the French standard, and Nazîr Jung gave instant orders to behead Muzaffir; but was himself shot through the heart by the Nuwâb of Kadapa, and his head laid at the feet of Muzaffir, who had expected a similar fate. The prisoner, over whom the sword had been hanging, found himself suddenly, not only free, but a mighty ruler; and resolved to march at once to Pondicherry to thank and consult the now triumphant Dupleix.

Table p. 132.

Four of Muzaffir's uncles were at the camp at the time in imprisonment.

Pondicherry was intoxicated with joy. This was in 1750.

Thus ended the third act of the imperial drama.

The arrogant  
triumph of  
Dupleix  
(About 16 miles  
N W. of Ginji.)

§ 19. Dupleix followed up his now assured triumph by ordering the building of a town on the battle-field, the scene of Nazîr Jung's assassination, to be called Dupleix-fattih-abâd, *the town of the victory of Dupleix*, with a pillar bearing on its four sides laudatory inscriptions in different languages. The town was scarcely built, when the pillar was, as we shall see, demolished by Clive (§ 23). Magnificent presents were given to Dupleix and to the French East India Company; while another installation, more imposing than the former, took place in Pondicherry.

His city and  
pillar.

**Bussy in the Dakhan.**

Dupleix now desired peace; but peace there could not be while Muhammad Alî was the rival Nuwâb of the Carnatic. This difficulty seemed to be removed, when Muhammad himself proposed to acknowledge Chandâ Sahêb, if his father's treasures were given him, and another government assigned to him in the Dakhan.

§ 20. In January 1751, Muzaffir left Pondicherry for Aurungâbâd, which was to be his capital. Bussy was to accompany him, at his own request, with a body of French troops, and to reside at his court. This arrangement, of course, made the French masters of the Dakhan.

On the march, when near Kadapa, the same three Nuwâbs, who were leaders in the conspiracy against Nazir Jung, conspired, for reasons not clearly ascertainable, to murder Muzaffir, whom they had before saved. A conflict ensued, in which Muzaffir was killed by the Nuwâb of Kurnûl. There happened to be in the camp, in irons, another son of Nizâm-ul-mulk, called Salâbat Jung (Table, p. 132). Bussy lost no time in releasing him and placing him on the throne.

Such were the rapid changes of those eventful times.

Bussy succeeded in conducting Salâbat in safety to Aurungâbâd; where, on the 29th of June 1751, he was installed as Sûbâdâr of the Dakhan. Bussy remained with him, the master-spirit of his court: and thus a Frenchman, at this period, really ruled the Dakhan.

§ 21. The year 1751 thus far seemed destined to be a most glorious year for France, and an equally disgraceful one to England. The vast territory ruled over by the Nizâm was in the power of a French general. The Northern Sirkârs were really French; since that nation possessed a strong force in Masulipatam. Chandâ

CH VIII. § 20,  
21.  
A.D. 1750, 1.

Muhammed Alî himself is willing to resign.

Bussy marches to the Dakhan.

Muzaffir Jung murdered. Salâbat succeeds.

Salâbat Jung made Sûbâdâr.

The successor to Nizâm-ul-mulk at last on the throne.

Triumphant position of the French at the beginning of 1751.

## RIVALRIES OF THE FRENCH AND ENGLISH.

§ 19.  
O.

### The triumph of Dupleix.

conspirators were to desert, display the French standard, and to fall upon their master. While Nazîr Jung was awaiting an answer to his offers of submission from Dupleix, the French moved to the attack under M. de la Touche ; and Nazîr Jung, on an elephant, took up his position with the captive Muzaffir on another elephant, guarded by an officer, who was ordered to behead his prisoner on the first appearance of treason ; but who, fortunately for Muzaffir, was himself one of the traitors. In the midst of the action the traitors displayed the French standard, and Nazîr Jung gave instant orders to behead Muzaffir ; but was himself shot through the heart by the Nuwâb of Kadapa, and his head laid at the feet of Muzaffir, who had expected a similar fate. The prisoner, over whom the sword had been hanging, found himself suddenly, not only free, but a mighty ruler ; and resolved to march at once to Pondicherry to thank and consult the now triumphant Dupleix.

12. Four of Muzaffir's uncles were at the camp at the time in imprisonment.

Pondicherry was intoxicated with joy. This was in 1750.

Thus ended the third act of the imperial drama.

unt  
f  
miles  
(inj.)

1d

§ 19. Dupleix followed up his now assured triumph by ordering the building of a town on the battle-field, the scene of Nazîr Jung's assassination, to be called Dupleix-fattih-abâd, *the town of the victory of Dupleix*, with a pillar bearing on its four sides laudatory inscriptions in different languages. The town was scarcely built, when the pillar was, as we shall see, demolished by Clive (§ 23). Magnificent presents were given to Dupleix and to the French East India Company ; while another installation, more imposing than the former, took place in Pondicherry.

## Bussy in the Dakhan.

CH. VIII. § 20,  
21.  
A.D. 1750, 1.

Dupleix now desired peace; but peace there could not be while Muhammad Ali was the rival Nuwâb of the Carnatic. This difficulty seemed to be removed, when Muhammad himself proposed to acknowledge Chandâ Sahêb, if his father's treasures were given him, and another government assigned to him in the Dakhan.

Muhammed Ali himself is willing to resign.

§ 20. In January 1751, Muzaffir left Pondicherry for Aurungâbâd, which was to be his capital. Bussy was to accompany him, at his own request, with a body of French troops, and to reside at his court. This arrangement, of course, made the French masters of the Dakhan.

Bussy marches to the Dakhan.

On the march, when near Kadapa, the same three Nuwâbs, who were leaders in the conspiracy against Nazir Jung, conspired, for reasons not clearly ascertainable, to murder Muzaffir, whom they had before saved. A conflict ensued, in which Muzaffir was killed by the Nuwâb of Kurnûl. There happened to be in the camp, in irons, another son of Nizâm-ul-mulk, called Salâbat Jung (Table, p. 132). Bussy lost no time in releasing him and placing him on the throne.

Muzaffir Jung murdered. Salâbat succeeds.

Such were the rapid changes of those eventful times.

Bussy succeeded in conducting Salâbat in safety to Aurungâbâd; where, on the 29th of June 1751, he was installed as Sûbâdâr of the Dakhan. Bussy remained with him, the master-spirit of his court; and thus a Frenchman, at this period, really ruled the Dakhan.

Salâbat Jung made Sûbâdâr.

The successor to Nizâm-ul-mulk at last on the throne.

§ 21. The year 1751 thus far seemed destined to be a most glorious year for France, and an equally disgraceful one to England. The vast territory ruled over by the Nizâm was in the power of a French general. The Northern Sirkârs were really French; since that nation possessed a strong force in Masulipatam. Chandâ

Triumphant position of the French at the beginning of 1751.



---

## VALRIES OF THE FRENCH AND ENGLISH.

---

**The Dakhan in 1751. Robert Clive.**

---

hêb, whom Dupleix had released and elevated to his esent dignity, was Nuwâb of the Carnatic; while uhammad Alî had consented to abdicate. The nglish now held nothing in the Carnatic but Madras, ort St. David, and Dêvi Kota, and had lost any repu- tion they had ever acquired among the natives; they ad, in truth, hardly one respectable name to oppose to ose of *Martin, Dumas, La Bourdonnais, Paradis, ussy, and Dupleix*. Yet, to these the historian of the rench in India can add but one other distinguished ame, that of the rash and unfortunate Lally, who itnessed the final downfall of French power in ndia; while Lawrence, Clive, and Hastings, whose reer had then scarcely begun, were the first names in long roll of English heroes, statesmen, and admi- istrators, of unrivalled fame.

This year, 1851, is the critical year in South Indian istory.

---

### PART III.—THE DEFENCE OF ARCOT TO THE DE- PARTURE OF DUPELIX FROM INDIA. 1751–1754.

§ 22. Muhammad Alî, though seemingly intent on naking terms with Chandâ Sahêb and the French, was secretly urging the English to aid him; and, at length, obtaining a reluctant promise of renewed help from hem, he determined to defend himself in Trichinopoly. Dupleix, for his part, resolved to assist Chandâ Sahêb with all his available resources. The English, too, fairly roused at last, made up their minds to support Muhammad Alî to the utmost of their power. Every- thing turned on the siege of Trichinopoly; and when the siege of that city became a blockade, and the English were dispirited, it must have been taken, if the genius of Lieutenant Robert Clive had not com- pletely changed the aspect of aïairs (1751).

Clive in Arcot.

He recommended to the Governor of Madras, Mr. Saunders (1751-1755), who was a man of firmness and judgment, a plan which he had devised for relieving Trichinopoly, by carrying the war into the enemy's own country. With 500 men, of whom 200 only were Europeans, and a few light guns, Clive, not more than twenty-five years of age, with officers none of whom had ever been in action, took possession of Arcot; put it into a posture of defence; and, though his force was reduced to 320 men and four officers, made good his position for seven weeks, against 10,000 men headed by Râja Sahêb, the son of Chandâ Sahêb.

The people, seeing Clive and his men march steadily in a storm of thunder and lightning, said they were bropt, and fled before him. The hero contemptuously rejected Râja Sahêb's bribes, and laughed at his threat. When provisions failed in the besieged town, the sepoys came with a request that they might cook the rice, retaining for themselves only the water it was boiled in, handing over every grain of it to the Europeans, who required, they said, more solid food. Such self-denial and heroic zeal had Clive's influence inspired in these men. Morâr Rao, the Mahratta chief of Gûti, and his 6,000 men, who were not far from Ambûr, waiting to see the course of events, joined Clive, saying, "Since the English can so nobly help themselves, we will help them." Mr. Saunders exerted himself energetically to aid the gallant garrison; and, after a desperate assault in which he lost 100 men, Râja Sahêb raised the siege. The moral effect of this memorable defence was incalculable.

§ 23. After this, Clive's course was one of continuous victories. On the 25th March 1752, he demolished the town and pillar of Dupleix (§ 19), a measure of importance, as destroying in the eyes of the natives the impression of French supremacy.

On the 26th March, Lawrence again landed in India. And now the English force marched to relieve Trichinopoly, under Lawrence, the experienced, scientific, veteran soldier, and his subordinate Clive, the youthful

CH. VIII § 23.  
A.D. 1751.

The defence of  
Arcot by Clive,  
1751.  
Mr. Saunders

Clive's  
new army

(On the 25th March  
1752, A.D.  
from Madras)

The defence of  
the town

(Compare p. 184.)

Clive's triumph-  
ant progress,  
1752.

Return of Law-  
rence.

The Veteran  
and the Genius

CH. VIII. § 24.  
A.D. 1752.

**Trichinopoly taken.**

The French  
siege of Trichi-  
nopoly raised.

hero, and untaught genius; trusting one another and co-operating, without a particle of envy or impatience on either side. An instructive sight!

should be noted here, that when the Directors voted to Clive, on his first return, a sword of the value of £500, he refused to receive it, till a similar honour had been conferred on General Lawrence. He also settled upon his old commander a pension of £500 a year, when the latter retired.

Remember, Muhammad Ali was blockaded in Trichinopoly. Chandâ Sahêb and Law (the vain and incapable) were pressing the siege. Lawrence and Clive were hastening to its relief. Dupleix and Saunders were at Pondicherry and Madras, making prodigious efforts to aid their respective armies. Bussy, the French Clive, who might have changed the aspect of affairs, was, alas! for the French, in Aurungâbâd.

Surrender of  
Law.

After many struggles, Law and the whole besieging force were invested in Srîrangam, a small island, on which stands a very famous temple of Vishnu, and within a long cannon-shot of the Fort of Trichinopoly. The result was that, on the 13th June 1752, Law and his force of 785 Frenchmen and 2,000 sepoys surrendered, with forty-one pieces of cannon and all military stores, to Lawrence, acting for Muhammad Ali.

Death of  
Chandâ Sahêb  
June 11, 1752.

Chandâ Sahêb had given himself up on the 11th to the Tanjôr commander, Manockji, who stabbed him to the heart; and his head was laid at the feet of his triumphant rival.

[Comp. ch. vii.  
§ 7. (16.)]

It was afterwards given to *Nandi Râj*, the Mysôr commander, who sent it to Seringapatam, where it was exposed over one of the gates for three days. Thus ended the career of this able, but unscrupulous man. Superior to most about him, free from the sordid and sensual vices of many of his contemporaries, we might have desired for him a better fate!

Thus too finally fell to the ground the plans of Dupleix for the settlement of the Carnatic. He should now at least have allowed peace to be made.

Summary of  
events from  
1752 to 1754.

§ 24. We will here briefly sum up the history of events in the Carnatic, from this famous 13th June

## End of Dupleix.

CH. VIII § 24.  
A.D. 1752.

1752, to the departure of Dupleix from India, October 14, 1754. It is simply the history of unwearied but abortive efforts on his part to retrieve his cause.

The Râja of Tanjôr, Pratâb Sîng; the Râja of Mysôr's General, Nandirâj (with whom was Haidar Naik, the future usurper); and Morârî Râo with his Mahrattas, had hitherto aided Muhammad Âli. These Dupleix contrived to detach from the English side. He even tampered with Muhammad Âli himself. He at the same time negotiated for peace with Mr. Saunders, who refused however to concede any one of the disputed points.

(Ch. vii § 11)  
Dupleix  
tamper with  
the allies of the  
English.

About this time he received from Salâbat Jung a firman containing his own appointment as Nuvab of the Carnatic and of all south of the Kishtna. Thus emboldened, Dupleix nominated Râja Sahêb (son of Chandâ Sahêb), his deputy; and finding him utterly worthless, appointed Murteza Âli (Ch. vii. § 7 (26)), who readily accepted the nomination.

Dupleix made  
Nuvab.

Clive, after the heroic capture of the forts of *Caroling* and Chingleput, accomplished with the most wretched troops, in the most astonishing manner, left for England in 1753; but Lawrence, feeble in health, yet with undiminished energies as a commander, remained.

Clive returns to  
England, 1753  
(On the coast, 22 miles  
S from Madras)

The French wrote Dupleix complimentary letters, and made him a Marquis; but sent him no efficient aid.

The "Prince," with reinforcements, commanded by De la Touche, was burnt at sea.

700 men burnt  
at sea, 1752.

Another siege of Trichinopoly was now undertaken, in which the English under Lawrence were the successful defenders; and this siege, marked by many most gallant conflicts, lasted till the truce preceding the peace of January 1755.

The Second  
siege of Trichi-  
nopoly, 1754-  
1755

Meanwhile Dupleix had lost the confidence of the French Government. It must be remembered, that, while all this fighting was going on in India, England

Dupleix  
recalled.

CH. VIII § 25.  
A.D. 1725.

## Peace between England and France.

and France were at peace! Saunders, not without reason, wrote to the English directors; who communicated with the Minister; who, in turn, urged it upon the French Government, that there could not be peace in India, or commercial prosperity, while the restless and ambitious Dupleix was in Pondicherry. M. Godeheu was accordingly sent to replace him. Whatever may have been the errors of this great man, he was now treated with injustice and contumely, which he bore with dignity and firmness. He left India, October 14, 1754, a ruined man; *for he had spent more than his all in this desperate struggle.*

Death of  
Dupleix, 1764.

He died broken-hearted, in the utmost poverty, at Paris, November 10, 1764.

---

PART IV.—1754-1761. FROM THE APPOINTMENT OF GODEHEU TO THE FINAL RUIN OF THE FRENCH CAUSE IN INDIA.

Truce between  
French and  
English.

§ 25. A truce was now agreed upon, October 1754, and a peace followed. Neither party was to interfere further in the concerns of the native princes. The possessions of the two countries in India were to be equalised. Muhammad Ali remained Nuwâb of the Carnatic. The plans of Dupleix were definitely abandoned. Bussy continued in the Dakhan, and the English supported their Nuwâb; but avowed hostilities between the two nations ceased for the present.

Treaty.

Saunders.

This treaty was signed January 11, 1755. Godeheu—like Cornwallis and Sir G. Barlow in 1805—with feverish haste sacrificed all for peace. Saunders, to whom England owes a debt of gratitude for his un-

## Clive's return to India.

CH. VII. 2,  
A.D. 1735.

wavering firmness in resisting Dupleix, and for the tact and skill with which he conducted all the negotiations, had the merit of bringing about this result so favourable to England.

§ 26. Peace did not continue long between France and England. Absolute cessation of military operations there was in fact none. The last struggle of the rival companies, however, began in January 1757, and ended in January 1761. The great names connected with it are Clive, Bussy, Count Lally, Colonel Forde, and Sir Eyre Coote.

The last struggle, 1757-1761

(French War from 1756 to 1763)

The English assisted the Nuwâb of the Carnatic, Muhammad Ali (of course the French governor no longer bore the title), to collect his tribute in the south from the refractory poligars. The French, in like manner, interfered to assist the Mysôr regent to collect his dues. Both, in fact, infringed the conditions of the treaty.

Treaty violated, 1753.

§ 27. Meanwhile, Clive, now a lieutenant-colonel, had arrived in India a second time, as Governor of Fort St David. Admiral Watson was sent with a fleet to watch over English interests.

Clive's return to India, 1755

Their first business, however, before proceeding to the Coromandel Coast, was to reduce the Fort of Gheriah and to lodge the famous pirate, Tulaji Angria. This was gallantly and effectively done; and thus commerce was freed from a great danger on the western coast. (Ch. v. § 65.)

Clive arrived in Madras in May 1756, and took charge of Fort St. David on the 20th of June, the very day of the Black Hole massacre.

It was at this time that a king's regiment, the 39th Foot, was sent to India. It was soon followed by the 79th Foot. The former was at Plassey, and still bears on its colours the motto, *Primus in Indis: first in India.*

CH. VIII. § 29,  
30.  
A.D. 1756.

Lally, the seventh great Frenchman.

The Seven  
Years' War  
breaks out,  
1756-1763

Ministry of Wil-  
liam Pitt the  
Elder, 1756-  
1761

VII.  
Lally, the de-  
stroyer of  
French influ-  
ence in India.  
Decay of the  
French.  
(Plassey, June  
23, 1757.)

The second  
siege of Madras,  
1758.

(Ch. x. § 9.)

§ 28. Soon after this, events in Bengál called Clive and Watson thither. (Ch. ix. § 6.) Clive never ceased to feel an interest in Madras affairs, and constantly corresponded with his old friends there.

A large French force was also sent to Haiderábád to assist Bussy. (Ch. iii. § 16.) Neither party could do much at this time in the Carnatic.

§ 29. In the end of 1756 came the long-expected tidings of the breaking out of war between France and England. It was the seven years' war, destined to strip France of all territory and power in both the East and West; the war in which Wolff won Quebec, and Coote took Pondicherry.

§ 30. Lally was the man destined by the French Government to drive the English out of India.

He was, however, to see the final overthrow of French power in India. He landed in Pondicherry in April 1758. His powers were all but absolute. It was unfortunate for him that he superseded many of the older officers, and, among others, Bussy. Lally knew nothing of India, and heartily despised all of every race who dwelt in it. He found Pondicherry full of corruption. There was neither ability nor honesty among those who should have seconded Lally's efforts. More especially the admiral, the Count d'Aché, failed to co-operate with him effectually. Yet in a few weeks he took Fort St. David. Bussy joined him soon after from the Dakhan, but seemed to have no other desire than to take care of his immense gains. His recall was a deathblow to the French interests in the Dakhan. (See ch. iii. § 16.)

After an ill-managed expedition to Tanjôr, it was resolved to attack Madras, which was invested in December 1758.

Mr. (afterwards Lord) Pigot (Governor of Madras,

The battle of Wandiwash.

CH. VIII § 11.  
AD 1759.

1756-1763), the veteran Lawrence, Major Calliaud, and others, were the defenders of the city.

The besiegers were ill-disciplined and disaffected, and, in spite of Lally's efforts, no progress was made; until the arrival of Admiral Pocock in the roadstead with the English fleet compelled the French to raise the siege, and to retreat towards Pondicherry in a miserable plight. (February 1759.)

Siege of Madras raised.

§ 31. In 1759 fresh troops arrived from England, under Colonel FYRE COOTE, one of the heroes of British Indian warfare. Lawrence had sailed for England in ill health.

Colonel Fyre Coote, Nov. 21, 1759.

Lally tried to set up Bussâlat Jung, brother of Salâbat Jung (see Table, p. 132), as Nuwâb of the Carnatic; but this prince had ceased to trust or respect the French, and the scheme failed.

The great campaign began in December 1759, and the struggle at Wandiwash (Vandivâsam) was the decisive battle, which destroyed for ever the idea of a French empire in India.

The Battle of Wandiwash (7½ miles S. W. from Madras) [Comp. ch. xii. § 28.]

Lally and Bussy attacked this town with a force of 1,350 European infantry and 150 cavalry. *The native troops refused to engage.*

(French loss of Quiber, Montevault, and all Canada, 1759, 1760.)

Coote hastened to the relief, with 1,900 Europeans, of whom 80 were cavalry; and 3,350 natives.

(Death of George II., 1760.)

The French were defeated (Jan. 22, 1760) and never again rallied. Bussy was taken prisoner.

(Louis XVI. sent to death by Girardot, 1793.) Bussy a prisoner.

Of him we hear once again. He returned to India in 1783 (ch. xii § 35) to fight again against Coote, failed as before, and died in the Carnatic.

Coote's course was now one of continuous success. Chittapet, Arcot, Timery, Dêvi-Kôta, Trincomalee, Alampârva, Kâricâl, Chillumbrum, and Cuddalôr fell successively into his hands; and in January 1761, Pondicherry surrendered. Lally was sent a prisoner to Madras; and thus ended the schemes and labours of

Pondicherry taken (June 1761) 6 miles S. W. of Arcot. (Ch. xii § 17.) Lally a prisoner.



CH VIII § 32.  
A D 1760.

(*Hardas usurped  
the Kingdom of  
Mysor, June  
1761*)

Death of Lally

Summary.  
Schemes of  
Dupleix.

Madras twice  
besieged

Pond cherry  
twice besieged.

Paradis.

Bussy and  
Clive.

The rivals.

### Summary of the Chapter.

Martin, Paradis, La Bourdonnais, Dupleix, Dumas, Bussy, and Lally.

Pondicherry was restored to the French in 1763, at the Peace of Paris. Muhammad Alî was acknowledged Nuwâb of the Carnatic, and Salâbat Jung, Sûbâdâr of the Dakhan at the same time.

It was again taken, 1778, on the breaking out of the war on account of America, and held till the peace of Versailles, 1783. Once more seized in 1793, it was held by the English till the peace of Amiens in 1802.

Lally was himself beheaded in Paris in 1766; and the French East India Company ceased to exist in 1769.

§ 32. Let us sum up this chapter.

(1.) The genius of DUPLÉIX conceives a stupendous plan; extending, no doubt, in his mind, to the occupation of the throne of the Mogul at Delhi by a Frenchman. The very existence of the English in India is incompatible with his vast designs. He prosecutes his schemes with unspeakable skill, energy, and perseverance. They fail utterly, and involve him in their ruin. His vanity almost equals his genius.

(2.) Madras is twice besieged, in 1746 (§ 4), and in 1757-8 (§ 30); successfully and unsuccessfully.

(3.) Pondicherry is twice besieged, unsuccessfully in 1748 (§ 11); and successfully in 1760 and 1761 (§ 31).

(4.) PARADIS shows that native troops cannot stand before Europeans (§ 5). This is the French Plassey.

(5.) BUSSY and CLIVE are heroes of rival fame. The one takes Ginjî (§ 18). The other takes and defends Arcot (§ 22) in 1751.

(6.) Of the rival candidates set up by the two nations, France maintains hers in Haidarâbâd (§ 24); and England hers, and a most unworthy ruler he was, in Arcot (§ 24). The original claimants, however, perish ignominiously in the struggle. *All but Muhammad Alî die a violent death.*



## CHAPTER IX.

THE FOUNDATION OF BRITISH POWER IN BENGÂL,  
1756-1774.

## PART I.—1740-1756. TO THE BLACK-HOLE TRAGEDY.

Circumstances  
that led to Bri-  
tish supremacy  
in the North-  
East, 1756-1765.

§ 1. The foundation, or, at least, the great extension, of British power in Bengâl is connected (1.) with Surâja Daula, the Black Hole, and its attendant cruelties, A.D. 1756; (2.) Clive, and the great battle of Plassey, June 23, 1757, which avenged those cruelties, and virtually made England supreme in Hindûstân; and (3.) the treaty of Allâhâbâd, by which Shâh Âlam II., in August 1765, made over to the English Company the Dîwânî of the Sûbâhs of Bengâl, Bahâr, and Orissa.

So much as is important to the student of the history of the first English settlements in Bengâl is given in chap. vii. § 6.

Bengâl at first  
an unimportant

§ 2. During the eventful period from 1744 to 1756, while the struggles in the Carnatic (the history of

## Suraja Daula's accession.

CH IX § 3, 4.  
A D 1756.

which we have given in chap. viii.) were going on, the English settlements in Bengal were of less importance than either those in the Carnatic, or those on the western coast.

British Settlement.

They were soon to become the most important of all. The greatest name here also is that of OLIVE. (Ch. viii. § 22.)

§ 3. When *Ali-vardi Khan* (ch. iii. § 15) usurped the government of Bengal, he protected the English. He had to contend repeatedly with the Mahrattas, whom he succeeded in repulsing; but the fertile plains of the north-east were repeatedly laid waste.

Ali-vardi Khan  
a little English,  
1740-1752

He frequently demanded contributions from the English, as the price of this protection: but as his exactions were not excessive, and his services in repelling the dreaded Mahrattas were real, they did not much complain.

Ch. viii. § 10, 11,  
p. 28

He had permitted them (in 1744) to enclose Calcutta with a moat, called the Mahratta ditch. (Ch. v. § 57.)

The Calcutta ditch

§ 4. But in 1756, the year when the memorable seven years' war broke out, *Ali-vardi* died; and was succeeded by his grandson, Suraja Daula, a young Caligula, guilty of the most detestable cruelties, and full of implacable hatred to the English. He, on one occasion, demanded from them the surrender of a fugitive, which they declined; and thus afforded him a pretext for attacking them.

Death of Ali-vardi Khan

His successor.

Unit rage given.

The idea of the wealth of the infidel men hunts fired him with an ambition to plunder their factories, one of which was at Cossimbazaar, near to his capital, Mûrshedâbâd. This he took, and then marched to Calcutta.

Avarice.

(or Ashmolean)

NOTE.—The Nuwâb of Mûrshedâbâd was called the *Nuâb Nuâm* (— military) to distinguish him from the Nuwâb Vazir of Oudh. He was also called *Sûbâddr*. (Comp. § 23, p. 315.)

CH. IX. § 5.  
A.D. 1756.

## Calcutta taken by Suraja Daula.

His ignorant  
contempt for  
the English.  
Hastings.

There were not, he told his courtiers, 10,000 people in all Europe. The triumph must be easy and final.

Among the prisoners he took at Cossimbazaar was a young writer, *Warren Hastings*, who had not been in India six years yet, and was then twenty-four years of age. His after career was destined to be as brilliant in its way as Clive's.

Comp. § 35.

The attack.

§ 5. The Council of Calcutta were unprepared for such an attack. Their means of defence were inadequate. Drake, the governor, was not a Dupleix, scarcely even a Morse; and they had among them no Clive.

To be unprepared seems a characteristic of the English.

The Nuwâb be-  
fore Calcutta.

They first tried to conciliate the Nuwâb. They then asked help from the Dutch at Chinsura, and from the French at Chandernagar; but were refused with taunts. The Nuwâb began to batter their miserable defences on the 18th June (memorable in 1815!); and soon the unhappy garrison was driven within the walls of the fort.

The fight by  
night.

At nightfall the fatal resolution was taken by the governor of escaping down the river. The women and children were sent on board one of the ships, and Drake put off in the last remaining boat. The soldiers of the garrison, and others who were left behind, tried in vain to find means of escape. The ships dropped down the river to Fulta, where the fugitives took refuge.

(About 20 miles  
below Calcutta  
on the left bank  
of the Hâgâ)Holwell and the  
Nuwâb.

Holwell, who was the chief among the deserted party, felt himself compelled to negotiate; and the army of the Nuwâb marched in. The Nuwâb summoned Mr. Holwell before him, and reproached him with defending the place against the rightful ruler of Bengâl; but assured him no harm should be done to the prisoners.

The BLACK  
HOLE, 1756.  
The first great  
Tragedy.

That evening, however, the whole of them, 146 in number, were crammed into a wretched dungeon, (ever since called the "Black Hole,") eighteen feet square, with two small apertures: a place which would have been an oppressively confined prison for one person.

## BRITISH POWER IN BENGÁL.

301

### Clive and Watson in Bengál.

CH IX § 6  
A.D. 1756, 7.

This night, the horrors of which no pen can describe, or mind adequately conceive, may be considered an era in Indian history. Scenes of equal atrocity were enacted in the Sepoy mutinies a century after. These are the things that fix the fate of empires.

Horror

In the morning twenty-three only were found alive and they were a fearful spectacle.

The Nūwáb is said to have been free from the guilt of ordering this frightful wholesale murder; but he evidently did not regret it. His great anxiety was to find the treasures which he imagined the English had concealed.

The Nūwáb's conduct.

### PART II.—1756-7. THE BLACK-HOLE TRAGEDY TO PLASSEY.

§ 6. These sad tidings soon reached Madras, where *Clive* and *Watson*, just returned from the destruction of Gheriah (ch. v. § 65), were soon ready to sail to avenge the cruel injury.

The avengers.

Clive was the Governor of Fort St. David. (Ch. viii. § 27.) He had learnt to estimate native power rightly.

900 English infantry and 1,500 sepoy, full of spirit, and devotedly attached to their leaders, constituted the army, which was destined to effect a mighty revolution in India.

It was the middle of December before the expedition reached the Húglí.

Madras troops in Bengál.

No time was then lost. Budge-Budge was taken, Calcutta re-occupied, and the town of Húglí stormed. At Budge-Budge, Hastings fought as a volunteer.

Budge-Budge.

There he and Clive first met. There was but seven years difference in their ages; but Clive had already gained a mighty

(10 miles below Calcutta, on the left bank of the Húglí.

CH. IX. § 7, 8.  
A.D. 1757.

## Surāja Daula feels alarmed

Clive and Hastings.

name. Hastings felt the assurance within him, that he too could immortalise himself. But his fame was not to be gained on the field of battle; and by Clive's advice he remained a civilian. (Comp. § 35, p. 318.)

Hûglî stormed.  
Coote.

The storming of Hûglî was the work of a young captain, Eyre Coote. He too has a niche among the heroes of British Indian history (p. 295). Here then are four historic names associated at this memorable crisis: CLIVE, WATSON, COOTE, and HASTINGS. To these must be added those of FORDE, then a major in a king's regiment, and of CARNAC.

Surāja  
frightened.

§ 7. Surāja Daula at length began to awake from his dream of fancied security. He knew something of the wars in the Carnatic, of Arcot, and of Gheriah; and now this same Clive was in Calcutta!

Clive had already acquired the name, by which he is still known, of *Sābat Khān*, or *daring in war*.

Calcutta re-  
taken, Jan. 1757.

An obstinate engagement took place, and the Nuwāb's attacks were repelled at every point. Calcutta was retaken January 2, 1757. Negotiations followed, and a hollow peace was made. The English were allowed to assume their old position, and *vengeance was postponed*.

Hollow peace.

Watson disapproved. The Nuwāb, he said, should be "well thrashed." Clive, who had now become a diplomatist, unwillingly consented, from political considerations, to sign the treaty. (February 9, 1757.)

War with  
France.  
The French  
settlement  
taken, May  
1757  
(Ch. vii. § 7.)

§ 8. There was now, strange to say, pretended peace between the English and the author of the horrors of the Black Hole.

Meanwhile in Europe the seven years' war had begun (ch. viii. § 29); and Watson and others wished to attack the French settlement of Chandernagar. Clive at first wished for neutrality in India. The Nuwāb was, however, asked for permission to attack the French; but

## BRITISH POWER IN BENGÁL.

303

### Further troubles with the Nawáb.

CH. IX § 9  
A.D. 1757.

he refused, and even aided them with arms and money. In defiance of his threats, the English forces under Clive attacked the place, and Watson co-operated with the fleet.

Chandernagar was thus taken in May, 1757.

On the tomb of Admiral Watson, who died in Calcutta, are these words, in relation to the events related above:—

Watson's tomb  
(Aug. 12, 1757.)

“Gheriah taken, February 13, 1756.

Calcutta, January 2, 1757.

Chandernagar taken, March 23, 1757.

Exegisti monumentum ære perennius.”

§ 9. The peace between the Nuwáb and the English was not real, and could not be lasting. The latter began to feel their power; and the former, full of hatred, fear, and distrust, acted in the most violent and inconsistent manner. He intrigued with Bussy, who was at Cuttack in the Northern Sirkárs (not more than two hundred miles from Calcutta), which had just been ceded to France. [Ch. viii. § 20, ch. iii. § 16 (5).]

The perfidy of  
Suraja Daula,  
1756.

He at the same time sent conciliatory messages and even money to the Council at Calcutta: in fact, acted like a madman. He had not a friend, even among his own subjects.

And now a formidable confederacy was formed against him. The plotters were Ráyduílub, his treasurer; Mír Jaffir, the commander of his troops; Jugat Seid, the richest banker in India; with Mr. Watt, the English Resident at Mírshedábád; and the Council at Calcutta.

The Plot.  
The con-  
spirators.

“He or we must fall,” said Clive.

A Bengálí named Omichand was the agent employed to transact the business between the English and the Nuwáb. He, of course, was in the plot.

Omichand.

The plan of the conspirators was this. Surája was

The plan.



CH. IX. §. 10.  
A.D. 1757.

## The Plot to dethrone Surâja Daula.

The price.

The hitch.

The nefarious  
expedient.The white and  
red treaties.

Forgery.

The morality of  
the plot against  
Surâja Daula,  
1757.

Deceit.

to be deposed, the British co-operating with Mir Jaffir. The most ample and exclusive privileges were to be granted to the English, and the fullest compensation for their losses; while a large sum was to be distributed among the members of the English Secret Committee.

A difficulty here arose. Omichand, at the last moment, threatened to disclose the whole, unless a sum of 3,000,000 rupees was guaranteed to himself. To satisfy him it was arranged that a clause should be inserted in the agreement, to be signed by Mir Jaffir and the members of the English Committee, relating to his claims.

But Olive and his fellow conspirators condescended to cheat the wily Hindû. Two treaties were prepared, one on white paper, the other on red. In the latter Omichand's claims were guaranteed; while in the other no mention was made of them. The white was the real treaty. The fictitious one was shown to Omichand, and he was satisfied. Admiral Watson had refused to be a party to this deceit, and his signature was forged.

This plan to dethrone the vicious monster, on whom no one could rely, and whose tyranny his subjects could no longer endure, was justifiable. The dissimulation connected with its execution was necessary, it was said; and was defended on the false principle, that the "end justifies the means."

But nothing renders deceit right. Olive and his fellow plotters disgraced themselves by fighting bad men with their own weapons.

§ 10. All was now ready, and Olive wrote a peremptory letter to the Nuwâb, demanding satisfaction for all injuries, and stating that the British army would wait upon him for an answer. The Nuwâb instantly put his army in motion, and the hostile armies met on the field of PLASSEY. The Nuwâb had 50,000 infantry,

# BRITISH POWER IN BENGÁL.

305

## The battle of Plassey.

CHAP. IX. 1  
A.D. 1757.

18,000 cavalry, and an enormous train of artillery; while Clive had 650 European infantry, 150 gunners, 2,100 sepoys, a few Portuguese, and 10 pieces of artillery.

Plassey, 1757.  
(30 mil. S.  
from Mur.  
abad.)

Meanwhile Mír Jaffir was terrified by the approaching crisis, and ceased to communicate with Clive. The wisdom of attacking the Nuwáb, with such fearful odds against them, seemed to Clive's officers to be doubtful; and, in a council of war (the only one Clive ever assembled), thirteen voted against fighting the enemy, and but seven for it. In the minority was Coote.

Mír Jaffir's conduct.

Clive dismissed the council, took a solitary walk in a grove hard by, and decided in his own mind that the attack must be made *now or never*, and that it should be made *now*. The next morning he crossed the river, and fought the battle of Plassey on the 23rd June, 1757. The victory was immediate and decisive; and the loss on the side of the English was only 22 killed and 50 wounded.

The Council of War.

Coote.

Clive makes up his mind.

Surája fled. Mír Jaffir, now that victory was assured, joined Clive, who did not condescend to notice his vacillation; but saluted him Nuwáb of Bengál, Bahár, and Orissa. Thus Clive did in Bengál what Dupleix had done in the Carnatic. (Ch. viii. § 16.)

Plassey, June 23, 1757.  
(Comp. ch. vi. § 5, and ch. vi. § 8.)

Mír Jaffir is made Nuwáb.

THE FIRST BENGAL REVOLUTION, 1757.

The new Nuwáb was, however, but a tool in the hands of those who had made and could unmake him.

A tool.

Omichand was soon undeceived as to his reward, and was stunned by the blow; but seems to have soon recovered, as we find him afterwards recommended by Clive, "as a person capable of rendering great services, and, therefore, not wholly to be discarded."

Omichand undeceived.

Clive degraded himself by his duplicity in this transaction, and injured that reputation for strict integrity which, in regard to individuals as well as States, is one of the most essential elements of success. It is not too much to say, that "Clive's treatment of Omichand was truly a national calamity."

Tricks.

CH. IX, § 11, 12.  
A.D. 1757.

**Surāja Daula dethroned and killed.**

Death of Surāja  
Daula, 1757.

§ 11. Surāja was soon seized, having been betrayed by a man whom he had wronged, and brought before Jaffir, whose son, Mirān, caused him to be put to death. The poor victim had not completed his twentieth year; and had not been on the throne fifteen months.

"Clive's Fund."

And now came the division of the spoil. Clive contented himself with between two and three hundred thousand pounds, besides an estate received at a later date; of which immense wealth a great part went, by his generous gift, to form what is called "Lord Clive's fund," and the proceeds were applied from the first to the relief of invalids in the service.

Clive was not, on the whole, mercenary; yet these immense sums, received in this irregular way, demoralised those who received them, and lowered Englishmen in the eyes of all men.

Gains to the  
Company, and  
to individuals.

Vast treasures, as indemnity for losses sustained, were poured into the Company's coffers; and all shared in the golden harvest.

Introd. § 8, 23.

What are called the twenty-four Pergunnahs (= *sub-districts*) were then given to the Company as a Zamindāry. The grant is dated December 20, 1757. They comprised an area of about 1,200 square miles.

**PART III.—1757–1760. CLIVE'S FIRST ADMINISTRATION.**

Clive, 1757–  
1760.

§ 12. Clive was now virtually ruler of these rich provinces. He was made Governor of the Company's settlements in Bengāl; and remained at the head of affairs till 1760. The transactions of this interval we have now to record.

Summary of  
affairs in 1757.

We must pause, however, to consider the state of affairs throughout India at this moment, June 1757.

(Ch. vi § 19,  
p. 137)  
Afghāns.

(1.) Ahmad Shāh Abdālī made his fourth invasion of Hindūstān this year, and Delhi was sacked by him in September 1757.

# BRITISH POWER IN BENGAL.

307

India in 1757.

CHAP. IX § 13.  
A.D. 1757.

(2.) Âlamgrîr II. was the nominal Emperor, and Ghâzi-ud-dîn IV. (Table, ch. iii. § 16, p. 132) was his Vazîr.

Emperor.

(3.) The Mahrattas were intriguing with Salâbat Jung and his brother Nizâm Âli in the Dakhan. Bussy was in the Northern Sirkârs; from whence he was peremptorily recalled by Lally in 1758. (Ch. iii. § 16.)

Nizâm.

Bâlâji Bâji Râo (1740-1761), was Peshwâ. (Ch. v. § 56-66.)

Mahrattas.

(4.) Seringapatam was attacked by the Mahrattas in 1757; and Nandirâj, the regent, consented to pay them tribute. Haider was then a rising general. (Ch. xii. § 12, 13.)

Mysôr.

(5.) A desultory warfare was being carried on between the French and English in the Carnatic. Lally sailed from France, May 1757, and arrived at Pondicherry, April 1758. (Ch. viii. § 30.) Madura was taken in 1757 by Colonel Calliaud.

Carnatic.

§ 13. A great danger threatened the new Nuwâb in 1759. Clive too was placed in a dilemma. It was thus. Poor Âlamgrîr II. was in the hands of Ghâzi-ud-dîn IV., who at last murdered him. His son, Âli Gôhar (commonly styled the Shâhzâda, or Prince), afterwards the unfortunate Shâh Âlam II. (by which name we shall call him), escaped from Delhi, crossed the *Karmanâsa* (which divides Oudh from Bahâr), at the very time (November 1759) of his father's murder, the news of which he did not receive for a month.

Shâh Âlam II.  
invades the  
Nuwâb's dom-  
inions, 1759.

He then assumed the title of emperor; appointed Shuja-ud-daula, Viceroy of Oudh, his Vazîr; and, with Nazîb Khân as his commander-in-chief, proceeded to take possession of the eastern districts. The Governor of *Patna* was a Hindû, Râm Nârâyan; who, being defeated by the imperial army, threw himself into Patna.

Affairs in Delhi.  
(Its waters are  
considered so  
impure, that he  
who touches it  
loses all his  
merit.)  
(Comp. ch. iii. §  
19, 20.)

Clive (thus involved in a necessary rebellion against the great Mogul!) wrote to the trembling Mîr Jufîr and to Râm Nârâyan to re-assure them; and Colonel Calliaud, marching promptly to the relief of Patna, defeated the imperial and Oudh forces in February and April 1760; and thus saved the Nuwâb for the time. Captain Knox, another distinguished officer,

(On the S bank  
of the Ganges.)

Clive defends  
the Nuwâb, and  
negotiates with  
Shah Âlam II.

The first Battle  
of Patna, 1760.

CHAP. IX. § 14.  
A.D. 1760.

*Intrigues of Mir Jaffir.*

(Introd. § 8.)

Clive's Jâghir.

Death of Mir-  
wan, 1760.  
§ 11.

The Northern  
Sirkârs.  
(Ch. iii. § 16.)

April 7, 1759.

The Nuwâb,  
Clive, and the  
Dutch.

Humiliation of  
the Dutch.

Clive sailed for  
England, Feb.  
25, 1760.

ained a splendid victory over the Râja of Pûrnia, who was in rebellion. Shâh Âlam now wrote to Clive, who sent him a sum of money, on condition that he should evacuate the province of Bahâr, which he did. Thus relieved, Mir Jaffir testified his gratitude by bestowing on Clive, as a Jâghir, the rent due by the Company for the villages round Calcutta.

Mirwan, the son of Mir Jaffir, a man of energy, but a monster of cruelty, was struck dead by lightning (in July 1760) while marching with Colonel Calliaud.

§ 14. Two other important achievements conclude this portion of Clive's history.

(1.) The *Northern Sirkârs* were at this period in the hands of the French; but Bussy had been recalled by Lally. (Ch. viii. § 30.) Clive sent an expedition under Colonel Forde in 1759, which drove the French out. He retained for the English only Masulipatam. The battle of Peddapûr, near Râjamandri, and the dashing capture of Masulipatam, with the French leader in it, are among the most glorious exploits of Anglo-Indian warfare.

(2.) The fickle Nuwâb now began to intrigue with the Dutch; for his English friends were so powerful that he dreaded their turning against him. The Dutch in Chinsura wrote to their chief at Batavia, and it was arranged that a Dutch armament should attack Calcutta. Clive got intelligence of the intrigue; and, though England was at peace with Holland, attacked the Dutch by sea and land, defeated them utterly, and laid siege to Chinsura. The Dutch, thoroughly humbled, agreed to the terms Clive imposed upon them; and Mir Jaffir's intrigues in that quarter were at an end.

Clive now sailed for England the second time, 1760.

## The second Bengal Revolution.

CH IX § 15, 1  
A.D. 1760

There he was received with great honour by the King, Mr. Pitt, and the whole nation. He was raised to an Irish peerage.

## PART IV.—1761-1765. ADMINISTRATION OF VANSITTART AND SPENCER.

§ 15. This was a most eventful period in Indian history. The French power in India was at this period utterly broken by Coote (ch. viii. § 31); and soon after the Mahrattas sustained the crushing defeat from which they never fully recovered. (Ch. v. § 69, 70.)

The crisis of  
1761  
French and  
Mahrattas  
humbled.

But in those stirring times Mr. Vansittart, an utterly incompetent person, though honest, was acting as Clive's successor in Bengal. There were quarrels between him and his Council; and, till Clive's return in 1765, nothing can be more painful than the annals of the administration.

Mr Vansittart,  
1760-1765.

§ 16. After the death of his son, Mirwan, the affairs of Mir Jaffir became worse and worse; and he at length sent his son-in-law, Mir Kâsim, to Calcutta to arrange his pecuniary matters. Mr. Vansittart and his Council, being struck with the ability of Mir Kâsim, resolved to dethrone the Nuwâb Nazim, and to put his son-in-law in his place. The Nuwâb was hopelessly in arrears in his payments to his British allies, was madly extravagant in his expenditure, and evidently looked with no favour upon those by whose hands he had been elevated.

Intrigues with  
Mir Kâsim.

Mir Jaffir was induced to resign and to take up his abode in Calcutta; while Mir Kâsim was installed (27th Sept. 1760). The latter ceded to the English the three provinces of Midnâpûr, Chittagong, and Burdwan, as the price of his elevation.

Mir Jaffir de-  
posed, and Mir  
Kâsim put on  
the throne, 1760.  
Cession to the  
Company.

CH. IX. § 17, 19.  
A.D. 1761.

MİR KÂSİM AND MR. VANSITTART.

The Second  
Bengal Revolu-  
tion, 1760.

Thus, for the second time in four years, had the British effected a revolution in Mûrshedâbâd.

The real object of this transaction was to enrich the members of the Bengal Government. Against every unjust measure of this period Mr. Vansittart and Mr. Hastings, then a young civilian, protested; but in vain.

Mîr Kâsîm's  
energetic con-  
duct.

§ 17. Mîr Kâsîm began with great energy to carry out reforms. He reduced expenditure; paid off his English friends; and, disgusted with his position, resolved to shake off their yoke; for which purpose he removed his capital to Monghyr, and there quietly gathered together and disciplined his army. This he did with surprising judgment and skill.

(Monghyr.)

Shâh Âlam II.,  
1761.

§ 18. At this time Shâh Âlam II., who dared not return to his capital (ch. iii. § 19-22), was hovering about Bahâr with a lawless host. Colonel Carnac attacked and dispersed them; and Law, the Frenchman (who had escaped from Chandernagar, and broken his parole), with his band was taken prisoner; but, to the surprise of the natives, was treated by the English with distinguished courtesy. The Emperor himself was persuaded by Colonel Carnac to join him, and accompany him to Patna; where Mîr Kâsîm was induced to pay him homage; and was, in consequence, formally invested by the Emperor with the Sûbâdârship of Bengal, Bahâr, and Orissa.

The second  
battle of Patna.Mîr Kâsîm ill-  
treats the G-  
vernors of Patna.

§ 19. Mîr Kâsîm's conduct at this time was, on the whole, vigorous and just; but he was cruel in his treatment of Râm Nârayan, the Governor of Patna, whom he despoiled; and Mr. Vansittart's failure to protect this unfortunate governor is one of the worst features in his administration.

## BRITISH POWER IN BENGAL.

311

### War with Mir Kásim.

CH. IX. § 20, 21.  
A.D. 1762.

A quarrel between the Nuwáb and the Calcutta Council soon arose. The cause was the immunity from the payment of transit duties claimed by the servants of the Company. This freedom had been formerly granted by imperial firman to the Company itself. It was now grossly abused. All the servants of the Company traded largely on their own private account; and they claimed freedom from the payment of all inland duties, not only for themselves, but for their servants and dependants also. Every native, in fact, by hoisting the English flag could now evade the payment of all duties. The Nuwáb was thus defrauded of his revenues, his servants were insulted, and the trade of the country was thrown into confusion.

Quarrel between the Nuwáb and the Calcutta Council.

After attempts at a compromise, in which Mr. Vansittart was thwarted by the cupidity of the other members of Council, the Nuwáb in desperation resolved to put his subjects and the English upon an equal footing, by abolishing all transit dues throughout his dominions.

Abolition of all transit duties.

§ 20. War ensued. Some English boats were stopped and examined by the Nuwáb's officers at Patna. Mr. Ellis, the Resident, then rashly began hostilities, and seized the city of Patna; but his European soldiers got drunk, and the native commandant recaptured the city. Mr. Ellis and the other Englishmen were taken prisoners; and the Nuwáb at once ordered every Englishman in his dominions to be seized.

Mr. Ellis seized.

§ 21. The Calcutta Council was now resolved to dethrone Mir Kásim, and reinstate Mir Jaffir, who was 72 years old, and afflicted with leprosy. This was done by proclamation. This was the third Bengal Revolution. A severe struggle ensued, and especially at Gheriah a battle was fought, which lasted for four

War with Mir Kásim, 1763.

July 7, 1763.  
The Third  
Bengal Revolution.  
Battle of  
Gheriah, 1763.



CHAP. IX § 22  
A.D. 1763.

## The Patna Massacre, and its punishment.

(A plain near  
Murshedabad,)

hours. In this the late Nuwâb's well-trained and disciplined troops showed most determined bravery, and were with difficulty overcome. This was in August 1763. Major Adams commanded. The Nuwâb's forces amounted to 28,000 men; the English had only 3,000. Monghyr was soon taken, and the Nuwâb had only Patna.

The massacre  
of Patna, 1763The second great  
Tragedy.

§ 22. Hitherto our sympathies have been with the Nuwâb, whose conduct was spirited, though his cause was hopeless, but the *Massacre of Patna*, the second great tragedy in British Indian history, places him in the list of men whose names history preserves only to hand down to perpetual infamy.

Crusities.

He cast Râm Nârâyan into the river with weights round his neck. The great bankers, the Serts, friends of the English, were thrown from one of the bastions into the river.

Noble conduct  
of the prisoners.

The Nuwâb threatened that he would murder every European the moment the troops advanced on Patna. The commanding officer addressed a letter to the prisoners, asking them to suggest some means of releasing them. Their reply was. "There is no hope of escape. Never mind us. Do not delay the advance of the army one hour." The army moved on to the attack, and the ferocious Nuwâb fulfilled his threat. He ordered his officers to kill all the Europeans in prison; but they nobly answered, "No! turn them out, and we will fight with them, but not massacre them." But an executioner was found! Walter Raymond, a German, who had been a sergeant in the French service, and now held a commission in the Nuwâb's army under the name of *Sumru* (a name since notorious enough, and now changed to *Sombre*) volunteered to do the bloody deed. He led a file of soldiers to the house, fired on them unarmed through the venetian windows; and soon forty-

The infamous  
Raymond.

## BRITISH POWER IN BENGAL

The great campaign of 1764 The battle of Panipat.

H. J. A. 1764

eight English and Mr. Pitt's army of 10,000 men.

Pitney's army of 10,000 men, which was defeated at Panipat, when the British captured the city.

Then three new armies were sent to the city and a campaign began, which was successful in the British hands. The Nawab of Oudh, who was at Panipat in 1761, was defeated by the British. The Emperor was the descendant of the Nawab and Mir Kāsim had shown him the way to the city. Their attack upon Panipat was successful and the city finally took up its position between the British and the Nawab.

§ 23. And now you place the city in the hands of the British army. The last campaign of 1807 was the last of that army and the British were defeated. The result of the battle of Panipat was the capture of the city. The British were brought back to the city and the city was finally taken. This firmness and power of the British army.

The First Step  
to the City, 1764  
The British  
Army

§ 24. In October 1764 Miran Shah was defeated by the Nawab Vazir, who was still in the city. He was defeated with an army of 50,000 men. He was defeated by the British pieces of cannon taken. The consequences of the battle were very great. (1) the Nawab of Oudh, who was master of the empire, was humbled, (2) the Nawab of Oudh were thus made supreme in Hindustan. (3) the Emperor himself came to the British camp and opened a negotiation with the Council of the British. The result of the negotiation was the capture of the city. It was reserved for the British to reap the full fruits of this victory.

The Nawab Vazir  
The British  
Army  
The Nawab of Oudh  
The British  
Army  
The Nawab of Oudh  
The British  
Army

§ 25. The Nawab of Oudh, Shuja-ud-Daula, retired towards Delhi, and obtained assistance from the Nawab of Delhi.

The Nawab of Oudh  
The Nawab of Delhi  
The British  
Army

CH IX § 26, 27  
A.D. 1765.

## Corruption in Bengal.

The Nuwâb of  
Oudh com-  
pletely hum-  
bled  
(On S.W. bank  
of the Jamna 40  
miles S.W.  
from Khanpûr)

rattas under Mulhâr Râo Holkâr and the infamous Ghâzî-ud-dîn (Ch v § 81, ch iii § 18) But Sir R Fletcher took Allâhabâd, Carnac, advancing to Kalpi, dispersed the Nuwâb's army, and the latter was obliged to throw himself upon the mercy of his conquerors. *The great central plain of India was now completely in the power of England.*

Death of Mir  
Jaffir, 1765

§ 26. The reinstated Mir Jaffir died in January 1765. The Calcutta Council, the record of whose proceedings for five years fills our mind with shame and disgust, had made enormous demands of money from him and it appears that he died partly of vexation. His son, a youth of twenty, Najim-ud-daula, was put on the throne, the members of the Council received large and undeserved presents, and the control of the country was virtually in their hands.

Succession of  
Najim-ud-  
daula.

A minister called Muhammad Reza Khân was appointed, whilst the Nuwâb wished to place in that office a most faithless and profligate man, whose name was Nand Kumâr. Râja Shitâb Râi was assistant to the minister. They were both tried in 1772, on charges of corruption, but acquitted.

"Nuncomar"

Lord Clive  
comes to India  
a third time,  
1765

§ 27. The Directors of the East India Company, aware of the profligacy of their servants, and alarmed at the state of affairs, now solicited Clive to return to India the third time, with full powers, which he had demanded, 3rd May 1765. Mir Kâsim had been expelled from Bengal. The Emperor Shâh Âlam II was a suppliant in the British camp at Allâhabâd. The Nuwâb of Oudh, stripped of everything, wanted his doom. The army and its leaders had covered themselves with glory, but the Council, with Mr Spencer (the successor to Vansittart) at their head had plunged into the lowest gulf of intamy.

State of affairs  
when he re-  
sumed the Go-  
vernment

PART V — (CLIVE'S SECOND VOYAGE)  
1765

§ 28. Clive's first mission was to force the orders of the British to be accepted by their rivals. His officers signed covenants of submission to British rule.

He then proceeded to Allahabad for negotiations with

(1) The Nawab of Oudh who was in England

(2) The British Ambassador in Oudh and

(3) The personage to whom the British had given the Company the right to Bengal, Bihar, and Orissa. He offered a tribute of twenty lakhs of rupees a year which the Nawab of Oudh and the government was to pay him. This was done on the 12th August 1765.

The Nawab of Oudh then retired in all haste. The British then proceeded to

It is a well known fact that the Emperor of Delhi

§ 29. This is the first time that the British had the right to enter Hindustan and to demand sovereignty from the Company.

This period from the year 1765 to the year 1765 is an era in British history.

316	<b>THE FOUNDATION OF</b>
CH. IX. § 30, 31. A.D. 1765, 7.	<b>Clive's reforms. Discontent and Mutiny.</b>
	<p>The only other powers of note in India at this time were the Mahrattas, Haidar, and the Nizâm of Hyderâbâd  Mâdu Râo and Haidar Ali were then in the zenith of their power. (Ch. v. § 74; ch. xii. § 15.)</p>
Clive's further Reforms.	<p>§ 30. Clive had now to carry out further reforms. The army was accustomed to what was called <i>double batta</i> when on the field. This was nominally an allowance of subsistence-money; but the amount was unreason-</p>
Double Batta.	<p>ably great: in the case of a captain, it amounted to an increase in his pay of 1,000 rupees a month. Clive was instructed to stop this anomalous system; but he</p>
The European Mutiny.	<p>was met by a combination of the European officers, which, in fact, was a mutiny. Two hundred officers agreed to resign in a single day; and, as the Mahrattas were advancing (ch. v. § 81), they thought themselves necessary to the State.</p>
Clive overcomes them, 1767.	<p>Clive accepted each resignation, and put the ex-officer in immediate arrest, while he sent to Madras for every available man. Even sepoys were employed in coercing their European officers. Clive's firmness subdued the mutiny in a fortnight. <i>This was a victory as important as Plassey: he thus saved the dominion which he had founded.</i></p> <p>Sir R. Fletcher, commander of the forces, was implicated in the mutiny, and was sentenced to be cashiered. He was restored and appointed commander-in-chief at Madras, where he was a leader in the opposition to Lord Pigot. (Ch. x. § 10.)</p>
Trading put down.	<p>§ 31. Clive's next contest was with the whole services, the members of which universally were engaged in trade, which their position made especially lucrative: to the injury of their character, as it prevented them from doing their duty as public servants. They were now absolutely forbidden to engage in any species of trade, and a compensation was granted; but the question</p>

## Corruption rife in Bengal.

CH IX § 82 &  
AT 1767, 72.

of official salaries was not actually settled till the time of Lord Cornwallis. (Ch. x. § 20.)

§ 32. Clive left India for the last time in 1767, a poorer man than he was when he returned to it in 1765. (He leaves India for the last time 1767.)

He was received in England with great honour, but his reforms had raised up for him a host of enemies. Nor had his course, as we have seen, been uniformly honest and incorrupt. All whom he had punished, or whose corrupt schemes he had thwarted, now leagued against him. The Court of Directors did not support him, as it ought to have done, but when it was proposed to censure him in Parliament, a counter-resolution was passed, "that he had rendered meritorious service to his country."

His reception in England.

He died in 1774, ten years after Dupleix.

His death Nov 2, 1774  
(Ch. viii § 24.)

## PART VI.—1767–1772. VERELST AND CARTIER.

§ 33. From 1767 to 1772, Mr. Verelst and Mr. Cartier were successively Governors of Bengal. The events of this period are chiefly connected with Mahratta and Mysôr history. (Ch. v. § 80–85, ch. vi. § 17.)

Mr Verelst,  
Mr Cartier,  
1767–1772

The curse of Bengal was the double government which has been called Clive's "masked administration." The government was nominally conducted by the Nawab's servants; while the European officials and warriors in making haste to become rich by every means of corruption. The governor in vain strove to stem the torrent. It was a sad period: the Mahratta Government had been destroyed; and now the English rule had been substituted. All the evil passions of a great crisis were felt.

(Ch. vi. § 17)

CH. IX. § 34, 35.  
A.D. 1772.

Warren Hastings, Governor of Bengal.

The constitution of the Home Government of India was equally vicious. The Directors were appointed but for one year, and their chief anxiety was to make the most of their patronage. It was a period of unblushing jobbery and corruption.

To add to the general affliction, famine, deadly fever, and small-pox took off 35 per cent. of the inhabitants of Bengal during the years from 1769-1771. It is estimated that ten millions of human beings perished in that awful visitation, which in addition ruined a great proportion of the landed aristocracy of Lower Bengal.

#### PART VII.—1772-1774. HASTINGS GOVERNOR OF BENGAL.

The double Government destroyed, 1772.

The great name for thirteen years.

Warren Hastings  
in his  
Summary of his  
history from  
1750 to 1772.

(Aug. 1758)

§ 34. The Directors resolved in 1772 to abolish the double government, and to assume the direct management, through their own servants, of the revenue of Bengal. WARREN HASTINGS was appointed Governor of Bengal to carry out this sweeping measure. He had to arrange the details of the change from a mercantile firm to a sovereign dominion.

§ 35. Warren Hastings was born in 1732, seven years after Clive landed in India in 1750 as a civilian; was taken prisoner at Cossimbazaar just before the Black Hole tragedy took place (§ 4); joined the fugitives at Fulta; fought as a volunteer at Budge-Budge (§ 6); was sent by Clive, who discerned his abilities, as Resident to Mûr-he-lind after the battle of Plassey; was appointed member of Council at Calcutta in 1760, where he supported Mr. Vansittart against his corrupt Council; and returned to England in 1764. There he

The Rohilla War.

CHAP. IX § 36.  
A.D. 1773

was summoned to give evidence before the House of Commons; and his evidence displayed such vigour and breadth of view, that his reputation was made at once; and he was appointed second in Council at Madras in 1768.

In 1772 he was sent as Governor (or President) to Calcutta, which now became the seat of Government instead of Mûrshedâbâd. Every arrangement for the constitution of new courts of civil and criminal justice was made by Hastings, and a code was drawn up by him within six months.

April 13th

§ 36. An account of the affairs connected with the treaty of Benâres, made between Hastings and the Vazir of Oudh, will close this part of the history of British India.

The Treaty of Benâres, 1773

The Mahrattas crossed the Ganges on their return home in 1773 (ch. v. § 81); and the Vazir of Oudh asserted that the Rohillas had offered him forty lakhs of rupees to defend them from those invaders, and that now they denied the debt.

The Rohilla War

Hastings believed and acted upon this statement. He proceeded to Benâres (in August 1773) to meet the Vazir; and a compact was made, that the latter should pay to the English Government forty lakhs of rupees, and that Hastings should lend an auxiliary force to the Vazir to expel the Rohillas.

His account of the Rohilla War

This was carried out in April 1774. Hafiz Rahmat, the Rohilla chief, who had 40,000 men under his banner, was defeated by Colonel Champion and slain, with 2,000 of his men. The Vazir kept aloof with his troops till the battle was decided, and then rushed eagerly to equal the defeated foe. "We," exclaimed Champion, "have the honour of the day, and these hands are the price."

The Rohilla War

The Peace of Benâres

These Afghân strangers, 20,000 in number, now abandoned their usurped possessions, which still bear the

The Rohilla War



name of Rohilkhand; and the province, with its million of Hindûs, came under the power of the Vazîr of Oudh.

This was the famous Rohilla war. Hastings was violently attacked for sending British troops as mercenaries to aid the Vazîr in expelling the intruders. (Comp. ch. v. § 53, 81.) The Court of Directors, however, wrote in 1775, "We, upon the maturest deliberation, confirm the treaty of Benâres."

The Regulating  
Act, 1773.

Warren Hastings  
Governor-General, 1774.

§ 37. The Regulating Act (ch. x. § 2) was passed in 1773; but the judges of the Supreme Court and the new members of Council did not arrive in Calcutta till October 19, 1774. Then Warren Hastings became the first Governor-General of British India. The remainder of his history belongs therefore to the next chapter, which gives a summary of the careers of the illustrious men who have filled that high office from 1774 to the present time.

#### SUMMARY.

It is difficult to say whether the struggle in the Carnatic, from the taking of Madras by the French in 1746, to the capture of Pondicherry by the English in 1761 (ch. viii.), or the series of events, from the seizure of Calcutta by Surâja Daula in 1756, to the final departure of Clive from India in 1767, is most important in the history of British India.

This latter period is marked by two terrible tragedies. (§ 5 and § 22.)

Five great battles were fought in it, at Plassey, in 1757 (§ 10); at Patna, in 1760, 1761 (§ 13, 18); at Buxar, in 1764 (§ 24); and at Kalpi, in 1764 (§ 25).

Four Bengâl revolutions are recorded.

By these Surâja Daula lost his dominions and his life, in 1757 (§ 10); Mir Jaffir was displaced to make way for his son-in-law,

## BRITISH POWER IN BENGAL.

321

### Summary.

CHAP. IX 17  
A.D. 1774.

Mir Kâsim, in 1760 (§ 16); Mir Jaffir, in his old age, was again put in authority, in 1763 (§ 21); and finally the British assumed the government, in 1765 (§ 28).

The French and Dutch were humbled (§ 8, 11). A strange series of events brought the young Emperor of India, the sixth Mogul, a suppliant to the British camp (§ 21, 27).

Thirty-six years after Clive's departure, the same Emperor was rescued, as we shall see, from the hands of his Mahratta friends by Lord Lake.

CHAP. X. § 1, 2.  
A.D. 1774.

The Regulating Act.

## CHAPTER X.

THE GOVERNORS-GENERAL OF BRITISH INDIA, FROM  
A.D. 1774 TO THE PRESENT TIME.

## PART I.—WARREN HASTINGS, 1774–1785.

Previous to  
1774.From April,  
1773,

(Ch. ix. § 33)

Discontent of  
the East India  
Company.

§ 1. There was, as we have seen, no Governor-General of British India till 1774. Before that date the Governments of Calcutta, Madras, and Bombay, were independent of one another, and were literally *presidencies*. (Ch. vii. § 7.) Some account of their proceedings has been given in the previous chapters; and the history has been brought down to the time when, under Warren Hastings, as head of the Bengal Presidency, the double system of government was destroyed. The Company was now the sovereign.

## § 2. THE REGULATING ACT (1773).

What led to this celebrated enactment?

The proprietors and Directors of the East India Company were essentially the partners and managers of a mercantile establishment; and nothing could con-

## GOVERNORS-GENERAL.

323

### The Regulating Act.

CHAP. V. 1773  
ACT 1774

sole them for insufficient dividends. The glorious successes of Clive, their recent acquisition of territory and influence, and the humiliation of their French rivals, could not compensate them for an empty treasury.

CHAP. V. 1773

In addition to this, the servants of the Company in many cases neglected their duties; made haste to become rich; and, in doing so, were guilty of oppression. Parliament determined to interfere; the Imperial Government, no less than the Directors, desired a reform.

CHAP. V. 1773  
ACT 1774

Lord North was then Prime Minister; and England was on the verge of the war with the North American Colonies which ended in the latter achieving their independence (1775-1783).

There were mutual jealousies. The ministers and Parliament feared that the Company would, in consequence of recent events, acquire too much influence. The nation in general, on the other hand, feared that, with the patronage of the East Indian Government in their hands, the ministers would become too strong. The result was a compromise; and the charter of the Company was renewed, some important changes being made in its constitution, with the added provisions that:—

CHAP. V. 1773  
ACT 1774

(1.) £400,000 a year should be paid by the Company to the nation;

(2.) That, while Madras and Bombay retained their subordinate governors and Councils, the Governor of Calcutta, Hastings, should be one Governor General, on a salary of £25,000 a year; and, assisted by a Council, should be supreme over all the British possessions in India; and,

(3.) That a Supreme Court of Judicature consisting of a Chief Justice and three other judges, should be established in Calcutta.

Many other minor reforms were made at the same time.

21 \*

CHAP X § 3, 4  
A.D. 1774, 5.

### I. Warren Hastings, 1774-1775.

This was the first Act of Parliament recognising the British East India Company as a ruling body.

The grand mistake.

The great mistake in the Regulating Act was, that *the four members of the Governor-General's Council were invested with equal authority in Council with himself.* The Governor-General was, in fact, made the mere President of a Committee.

The new Council.

§ 3. Warren Hastings accordingly became Governor-General, with his Council of four, in October 1774. He held this high office for eleven years. His councillors themselves were badly selected. They were Colonel Monson, General Clavering, Mr. Francis (afterwards Sir Philip Francis, the generally supposed author of the "Letters of Junius"), and Mr. Barwell.

Monson,  
Clavering,  
Francis, and  
Barwell.

Factional opposition to the Governor-General.

The last, who had been long in India, invariably supported Mr. Hastings. The other three as pertinaciously opposed him; and as the votes of the majority decided every matter, the new Governor-General found himself shorn of all his power by his accession of dignity. The majority of the Council were, moreover, ignorant of India, and full of eager animosity to Hastings, while Francis has seldom been surpassed in the faculty of energetic hatred.

Sir P. Francis.

Monson died in September 1776, and Clavering in August 1777. Sir Eyre Coote succeeded the latter.

Hastings struggled against his opponents with wonderful firmness, and with occasional errors in judgment, till the end of 1780, when Francis left the country.

1775.

§ 4. The affairs of Oudh first engaged the attention of the new Council; and the chief aim of the majority was to lower Hastings in the eyes of the people. The Vazir was compelled to make over the Zamindari of Benares to the English; and Cheyte Singh, its Zamindar,

The District of Benares added

# GOVERNORS-GENERAL.

32

I. Warren Hastings, 1774-1785.

1775 G.

dār, was elevated to the rank of Rājā, and placed on the footing of a feudatory prince. The Company of twenty-two and a half lakhs a year.

The affairs of the "Begums" of Oudha have become too notorious to be omitted here. The Nawab Vazīr, Shuja-ud-daula, died in 1775. His wife and mother, the "Begums," claimed by virtue of a supposed will of the late Nuwāb the whole of the treasure, two millions of rupees, which was hoarded up at the death of the Zenāna (§ 11). The acknowledgment of this preposterous claim Mr. Hastings opposed, but in vain. The young Nuwāb was thus left on his resources, with no money, an army to support, and a heavy debt to the English Government.

§ 5. Charges were soon poured in against Mr. Hastings by men who regarded his power and influence as extinct. The chief of the accusers was Nand Kumār, a man infamous for his treachery and perfidy, whom the triumvirate took under their protection, and installed as the Titus Oates of Calcutta. In the desk of this worthy were found, after his death, facsimiles of the seals of all the most eminent persons in Bengal. His accusations against Hastings, though implicitly accepted by the three councillors, were transparently false, and supported by palpable forgeries.

While this was going on, Calcutta was astounded by the intelligence that Nand Kumār had been arraigned on a charge of forgery, at the suit of an eminent native merchant.

He was tried on this charge in the new Supreme Court, and the jury found him guilty, and he was sentenced to be hanged.

This execution of a Brāhman created a profound sensation, and has been made a matter of discussion against Hastings. For this there is no shadow of reason. Sir Ehjah Impey, the Chief Justice, had said:

CHAP. X § 6, 9  
A.D. 1775.

**I. Warren Hastings, 1774-1785.**

Hastings guiltless.

nistered the existing law, which has since been altered. There was undue severity, but no injustice.

Mr Francis and his two associates had the power, if they had willed it so, to suspend the execution, and to refer the matter to England, but they declined to interfere. There is not, and there never was, the slightest evidence to connect Mr. Hastings, in any way, with the death of this atrocious miscreant.

Hastings' steady conduct.

§ 6. The biography of Hastings must be read by the student, who will see him often thwarted and misrepresented by the selfishness of the Directors of the East India Company in England, and always by the miserable perverseness of the majority of his colleagues in India; yet holding on his steady course, and twice saving the British Indian Empire by his vigorous conduct.

There are grave errors in his administration; but they are surprisingly few.

The first Mahratta War.

§ 7. The connection of Hastings with Mahratta politics must be studied in chap. v. § 91-103 (From the treaty of Sûrat in 1775, to the treaty of Salbâi in 1782.)

He saves the Carnatic.

§ 8. Hastings' conduct in aiding the Madras Presidency in its struggles with Haidar, from 1780 to his own departure from India, contrasts wonderfully with that of the Governors of Madras during the same period (Comp. ch. xii § 26) He was the only man of his day that saw the important transactions of the time in their true proportions.

§ 9. Madras affairs at this period require some notice.

**I. Warren Hastings 1774 1785**

100

[illegible]

(1) A Mc W 'e  
1750 1751)

(5) Then came Lord Mountbatten, the liberal and energetic governor (1781-1789).

His opposition to H. Stimson and the treaty of Manila, moreover, detract from his reputation. (Ch. xix, p. 101.)

§ 10. We now return to Bush's offer. The judges of the Supreme Court said in a famous 1856 opinion to "protect natives from oppression and to save India the benefits of English law," a mandate in many great mistakes.

They interfered between the Zamindars and the Ryots. Their attorneys started up state after state. Everything was to be brought under the jurisdiction of the "Supreme Court." They opposed Englishmen in Indian affairs in an unflinching manner.

Hastings interference, as far as he had to protect the landholders from the systematic interference in Parliament was petitioned for a better system, but meanwhile a remedy was discovered.



CHAP. X § 11.  
A.D. 1780.

I Warren Hastings, 1774-1785.

Sir Elijah Impey  
made supreme  
Judge

It was thus: there was a Court of Appeal in Calcutta, called the Subbia Diwan Adalat. In this the Governor-General himself and his Council had been appointed to preside. This they could not do; and Hastings offered the appointment of Chief Judge of this Court to Sir Elijah Impey, the Chief Justice of the Supreme Court. Thus reconciled all parties, and enabled Impey to turn his attention to the subject of the administration of justice according to such forms as might suit the greater simplicity of native habits.

Amalgamation  
of Courts  
§ 115.

This, though vehemently desired, and at length disallowed by the Court of Directors at the time, was the system restored at the renewal of the charter in 1853, by the amalgamation of the Supreme Courts in each Presidency with the Company's old Courts of Appeal. The Chief Justice now directs the whole judicial system in each government, as Hastings desired.

His financial  
difficulties  
(Chap. X § 11).  
XX § 26-27)

§ 11. Upon Hastings devolved the imperious necessity of providing the money to carry on the various wars which in 1780 were raging in India. Sindham has a heavier burden rested on the shoulders of one resolute man, but he bore it nobly, and without flinching.

The Mysoreans, the French, the Dutch, and the Marhattas were in the field against the English at once. The difficulty of the crisis was very great. Hastings, and his veteran general, Sir Eyre Coote, were equal to any emergency.

To provide for the expenses of these wars was the one study of Hastings. He has incurred much odium by the means he took to fulfil this pressing duty.

The district  
and the area

(1) He demanded from Chavte Singh (§ 4), whose Zamindari of Benares was sold to the English in 1775, a sum of money by him as a voluntary or dependent

J. Warren Hastings, 1774-1785

CHAP. X. 1781.

noble, on all sides, and its army and money, in a full of his own strength and power.

The result was, that the British was somewhat of a failure, and the British was somewhat of a failure.

The British was somewhat of a failure, and the British was somewhat of a failure. The British was somewhat of a failure, and the British was somewhat of a failure.

Irritated by the result of the Battle of Buxar, the British was somewhat of a failure, and the British was somewhat of a failure. The British was somewhat of a failure, and the British was somewhat of a failure.

Hastings was in an extreme peril, yet he lost no jot of his own strength and possession, but negotiated the treaty with the Mahratta chieftain as calmly as if his own life had not been in extreme jeopardy. Eventually he retired to Calcutta, troops were sent in from all quarters, the Raja's army of 20,000 men was defeated, and Buxhar, his hiding place, was taken. The troops, however, seized and divided the treasure found in the fortress.

Hastings was cruelly disappointed, for he had failed to supply the wants of the British of the army.

Chait Singh, a great warrior, who he lived for twenty-nine years. His body was placed on the throne.

The present Raja is a Perad Shah, who is a fondatory prince. See note p. 24.

(2) More doubtful is the treatment of the Begums of Oudh. (1) The young Nawab Vazir of Oudh represented his inability to pay his dues to the Company and asked permission to seize the treasures which the Begums had wrongfully appropriated. Charges were, moreover, made against these ladies of abetting Chait Singh, and supplying him with men and money.

The coolness of Hastings

The Begums of Oudh 1781.

CH. X. § 12, 13.  
A.D. 1781, 85.

I. Warren Hastings, 1774-1785.

Hastings consented. The Begums were compelled to give up seventy-six lakhs of rupees, which were paid over to the Company.

The whole affair was unjustifiable; and it is a sad sight to behold Hastings mixed up in doubtful transactions with men like the Nuwáb Vazír; though his own motives undoubtedly were entirely disinterested.

Discontent of  
the East India  
Company.

§ 12. The Court of Directors condemned these measures, and Hastings signified his intention of retiring. He proceeded in 1784 to Lucknow, when the Jâghírs of the Begums were restored; then addressed letters to all the chiefs and princes of India, taking leave of them; and, after putting everything into perfect order, resigned with dignity a trust which he had held, under different titles, for thirteen years. He left India finally in February 1785.

Hastings leaves  
India.

Hastings in  
England.

§ 13. In England, Hastings was received with favour by the King, the Ministry, and the Directors. But Pitt had a prejudice against him; though he openly extolled the Indian Proconsul, and even vindicated him in Parliament. Francis, his rancorous foe, was now in Parliament. The renowned orator Burke, and the Whig party in general, combined against him, and it was resolved to impeach him. His trial before the Lords began, with extraordinary formalities and pomp, on the 13th February 1788; and was protracted till the 23rd April 1795, when he was completely and honourably acquitted on every charge. The trial cost him £100,000. Though thus reduced to comparative poverty, he lived peaceably at Daylesford till his death in 1818. Once only did he again appear in public; and then he was called to give (in 1813) evidence before the House of Commons regarding Indian affairs. On that occasion

Impeachment,  
1788.

Acquitted, 1795.

Death, 1818.

## GOVERNORS-GENERAL.

331

### I. Warren Hastings, 1774-1785.

CH. X §14, 15.  
A.D. 1780, 84.

the whole assembly stood up and uncovered to do him honour.

It was well said that, "if there was a bald place on his head, it ought to be covered with laurels."

§ 14. Hastings, "the Chatham of the East," will always rank among the ablest, most resolute, and most disinterested administrators the world has ever seen. He was pre-eminently a far-seeing politician, labouring calmly and unceasingly to lay the foundations of an empire; where men around him cared only for their own immediate profit, or for thwarting him.

Character of  
Hastings.

Hastings was the enlightened patron of Oriental learning. The Asiatic Society was established in Calcutta in 1784 under his auspices. Sir W. Jones, Carey, Wilkins, Forster, and Colebrooke, were the illustrious men who first made Sanskrit literature accessible to English scholars.

§ 15. From 1780 to 1784 the affairs of the East India Company occupied a great deal of the attention of Parliament. Lord North, whose policy lost England her North American Colonies, seemed bent on ruining his country in the East, as he had in the West. Mr. Burke, Mr. Dundas, Mr. Fox, and Mr. Pitt (the younger), were the great statesmen whose influence was most felt in Indian affairs. Mr. Burke's reports on various matters affecting British India aroused all England to feel an interest in those Eastern possessions. Mr. Dundas, with strange ignorance of the merits of the case, denounced the first Mahratta war, and the English treatment of Haidar and Tippû; he also called for the removal of Hastings from Calcutta, Hornby from Bombay, and Rumbold from Madras (§ 9).

India in the  
British Parlia-  
ment, 1780-1784.

But the student will dwell chiefly upon what are called *Fox's* and *Pitt's India Bills*.

Fox's bill aimed at the transfer of British India to the direct government of the Crown. Seven Commissioners appointed by Parliament were to manage the government, and nine assistant-

Fox's India  
Bill, 1784.

## GOVERNORS-GENERAL.

CHAP. X. §15.  
A.D. 1784.

## I. Warren Hastings, 1774-1785.

directors the trade. Fox, who was a sincere but mistaken patriot, believed himself to be aiding in the emancipation of millions of men from a galling tyranny. The bill passed the Commons; but was rejected by the Lords, through the personal influence of the King. With this bill fell the *Coalition Ministry* (1784). The excitement in England was intense.

Pitt's India  
Bill 784.

William Pitt, the younger (born 1759, died 1806), England's greatest statesman, succeeded as Prime Minister. He immediately introduced his India Bill, the main object of which was "*to provide a machinery which should control the proceedings of the Company.*" Its chief provisions may be thus summed up:—

The Secret  
Committee.

1st. The Court of Directors, still chosen by the proprietors of India Stock, were to govern as before in appearance; while three of their number, forming a *Secret Committee*, were to be the real actors.

The Board of  
Control.

2nd. In reality the power was transferred to a "Board of Control," consisting of six privy councillors, whose decisions were final. The president of this board was the *Indian Minister*.

Peace policy.  
Non-interference

3rd. The bill forbade the Governor-General to enter upon any war, except in self-defence; or to make any treaty guaranteeing the dominions of any native prince. It was not till Lord Cornwallis made it a condition of his acceptance of the office, that the Governor-General was freed from subjection to his Council, and allowed to act in extreme cases in defiance of the other members of the Government. He was thenceforth virtually supreme.

The Governor-  
General made  
free.Changes in the  
constitution of  
the Council.

4th. The Governor-General's Council was reduced to three, of whom one was to be the commander-in-chief of the Company's forces in India, and the other two Bengal civilians. Similar councils were established at Madras and Bombay.

Mr. Dundas,  
1784-1800.

For sixteen years, Mr. Dundas, who was the first president of the Board of Control, filled that position in Parliament, after this, rarely interfered; and for many years showed little interest in Indian affairs.

## GOVERNORS-GENERAL.

333

### II. Lord Cornwallis, 1786-1793.

CH. X. § 18, 19.  
A. D. 1785, 6.

§ 16. One of the greatest scandals in British history is that connected with the Nuwáb of Arcot's debts. His creditors were men in the Company's service, of every grade. The claims were swollen by every species of dishonesty. It became a gigantic system of fraud. To lend money to the Nuwáb was the shortest way to fortune. For sixty years these claims were under investigation, and cost the country millions of money.

The Nuwáb of Arcot's debts, 1784.

§ 17. Sir John Macpherson, senior member of Council, acted as Governor-General for twenty months, from February 1785 to September 1786.

Sir John Macpherson.  
(Ch. v. § 105.)

The offer of the appointment was made to Lord Macartney, who judiciously demanded additional powers to add weight to an office of so much responsibility. Mr. Dundas was offended; and Lord Cornwallis, who not long before (October 19, 1781) had surrendered himself and a British army to Washington, was appointed (February 1786) Governor-General of India.

Feb 1786  
Lord Cornwallis

### PART II.—LORD CORNWALLIS, 1786-1793.

#### THE SECOND GOVERNOR-GENERAL.

§ 18. The new Governor-General arrived in Calcutta in September 1786.

His arrival.  
Sept. 14, 1786.

For the state of affairs among the Mahrattas and Tippú at this period, the student must compare chap. v. § 107, and chap. xii. § 39.

§ 19. Lord Cornwallis enjoyed the entire confidence of Pitt and Dundas. He came out pledged to avoid all occasions of war: his mission was to be that of a peacemaker and reformer.

His firmness repressed the factious, and he bent all his energies to the removal of corruption from all

He reforms the  
service  
(Ch. ix. § 31.)

CH. X. § 20, 21.  
A.D. 1782.

II. Lord Cornwallis, 1786-1793.

Adequate  
salaries given,  
and private  
trade forbidden.

branches of the service. Such a reform was never more needed than it was then. At this time small salaries were given to the Company's servants; and, as their opportunities were great, they easily yielded to the temptation of enriching themselves by every species of official depredation.

The coinage at this time was debased, insufficient, and various. Lord Cornwallis and Mr. Shore steadily worked out a reform in the currency. This materially aided the effect of the other measures of reform then adopted.

Trading and  
corruption put  
down.

§ 20. His first real measure of effectual reform was that of assigning to every officer of Government such a salary as should leave him no shadow of excuse for trading, or attempting to acquire money by corrupt practices. This measure, added to an incomparable firmness and consistency in resisting all jobbery and favouritism, and in punishing all frauds, soon cleansed the Augean stable. The purity of the Indian services soon became (and has continued to be) as conspicuous, as their corruption had been notorious. The example of this great man was as effectual as his legislation in this respect.

The Guntâr  
Sirkâr.

§ 21. The next step was to claim the Guntâr Sirkâr, which had been assigned by the Nizâm to the British Government on the death of Basâlat Jung. (Ch. iii. § 16.)

In 1788, Lord Cornwallis made a peremptory demand for its cession. The Nizâm complied at once, but begged for a British contingent to aid him against "Tippû," who had usurped the Bâlaghât. (Ch. xii. § 38; v. § 106.)

July, 1788

Lord Cornwallis promised this aid; stipulating, however, that the British troops should not be employed against any power in alliance with England. Of these

## GOVERNORS-GENERAL.

335

### II. Lord Cornwallis, 1786-1793.

(CH. X. § 22, 23.  
A.D. 1793.)

powers a list was given, and *Tippu's was not there*. This letter was the occasion, though not the real cause, of Tippu's breach of the treaty of Mangalôr.

§ 22. Lord Cornwallis was in the Madras Presidency from 1790 to 1792 (ch. xii. § 41), engaged in the conduct of the *Third Mysôr War*, the issue of which was entirely favourable to the English. This was the first time that the English armies had been led by a Governor-General.

The first war  
with Tippu.

He was censured in England for the acquisition of territory which was the result of this war; but the nation in general approved of his conduct, and he was made a Marquess. He generously gave up to the army his share of prize-money, amounting to £50,000; as did General Meadows.

His generosity.

§ 23. Some attention must be paid to Lord Cornwallis' PERMANENT SETTLEMENT. This is the chief ground of his fame.

The Permanent  
Settlement.

The land had been the principal source of revenue under every dynasty. The collectors of this revenue under the Mogul Emperors had, by degrees, converted themselves into Zamindârs, possessing military authority. These persons the British Government did not at first recognise; but in 1786, the Directors wrote out that all engagements should, as a matter of policy, be made with the Zamindârs. This was to be done for ten years, and the settlement was to be made permanent, if found to answer. Lord Cornwallis, by his regulations in 1793, conferred upon these persons the absolute proprietorship of the soil. They were constituted landlords, and the cultivators became their tenants. These last were left too much at the mercy of the Zamindâr, and this was the weak point in the whole settlement.

The Zamindâr  
System.

The Regula-  
tions of 1793.

The weak point  
in the Settle-  
ment.



CH. X. § 24, 26.  
A.D. 1793.

## II. Lord Cornwallis, 1790-1793.

Mr. Shore opposed its being made permanent. Lord Cornwallis, Mr. Pitt, Mr. Dundas, and Mr. Charles Grant, decided that it should. The settlement has occasioned much discussion; but on the whole its principle seems to be sound; though it requires modification to adapt it to the changed circumstances of Bengál. The system adopted in Bombay and Madras is the *Ráyatwár* system. (See General Index, *Ráyatwár*.)

Under this settlement the North-Eastern provinces have greatly flourished. The subject of land-tenures is, however, still surrounded with difficulties.

The Civil and Criminal Courts.

§ 24. The reform of the civil and criminal courts next occupied his attention. Sir Elijah Impey's rules were developed into a volume of regulations by Sir George Barlow; and the system of Civil Courts and procedure, which, with some modifications, still exists, was established.

Unfair exclusion of natives from office.

The greatest evil of this system was the power it gave to the police of oppressing the people. Natives, moreover, were excluded from all share in the administration of justice, and from all but the most subordinate offices in the public employ. This was remedied in after times (§ 94). It seems a serious and inexcusable mistake; but, regarding the great work of reform and reorganization before him, Lord Cornwallis determined that every responsible office should then be filled by a European.

War with France  
(Ch. viii. § 31.)

§ 25. The French Republican Convention declared war against England in February 1793; and Pondicherry was at once taken by the British troops. It was held till 1802.

Lord Cornwallis  
one of the  
founders of the  
British Indian  
Empire.

§ 26. Lord Cornwallis left India in October 1793. He was firm, dignified, vigorous. His administration consolidated greatly the Anglo-Indian empire: Clive and Hastings were its founders; Cornwallis gave it system and stability.

## GOVERNORS-GENERAL.

337

### III. Mr. Shore (Lord Teignmouth), 1793-1798.

CH. I. § 27, 28.  
A.D. 1793, 4.

Had Hastings possessed the authority which Cornwallis now compelled the Company, to concede to him, he would have left his successor little to do in the way of reform.

§ 27. For the important events, which made Mahatta power supreme in Delhi from 1781 to 1803, the reader must consult chap. v. 107, and chap. iii. § 24.

§ 28. To this period belong the *Declaratory Act*, and the *Charter of 1793*. In 1788 Mr. Pitt introduced a bill affirming that the bill of 1784 was intended to transfer to the Crown all real power in regard to Indian affairs. This was the *Declaratory Act*.

The Declara-  
tory Act.

The Company's charter was renewed in 1793 for twenty years, chiefly through the influence of Mr. Dundas.

The Charter of  
1793.

By it—(1.) the monopoly of the trade to India, and all other exclusive privileges, were continued. Free trade was supposed to be ruin.

Monopoly con-  
tinued.

(2.) Missionaries and teachers were excluded by its provisions. Knowledge, and especially religious knowledge, it was argued, would lead to rebellion.

Knowledge ex-  
cluded.

On these matters light has slowly dawned on the rulers of British India (§ 72, 103, 145).

### PART III.—MR. SHORE (SIR JOHN SHORE, LORD TEIGNMOUTH), 1793-1798.

#### THE THIRD GOVERNOR-GENERAL.

§ 29. Mr. Shore was a civilian, mainly instrumental in effecting the permanent settlement, though he wished that it should be decennial. He had attracted the

His former  
views.

CH. V § 30, 32  
A.D. 1794.

III. Mr. Shore (Lord Teignmouth), 1793-1798.

notice of Pitt and Dundas by his able conduct of that affair. He first arrived in India in 1769.

§ 30. The affairs of Tippû, of the Pûna Government, and of the Nizâm were very much complicated. The Governor-General tried to mediate, but with little effect. (Ch. v. § 111; vii § 47.)

1794.

1795.

Mr. Shore's subsequent neutrality and want of energy emboldened the Mahrattas to attack the Nizâm, left thus to his fate. (Ch. v. § 114.) The battle of Kûrdlâ humbled the Nizâm, and placed Nânâ Farnavis on the pinnacle of power.

Mutiny of  
Bengal officers,  
1795-1796.

§ 31. The mutiny of the European officers of the Bengal army, who clamoured for higher pay and every species of privilege, was only checked by a weak and injudicious yielding to the malcontents of nearly all they asked. The Home Government immediately superseded Sir John Shore, and Lord Cornwallis agreed to resume his office for a time; but the evident inclination of the Court of Directors weakly to yield to the discontented officers, led to his subsequent refusal at that time to return to India.

Oudh.  
Vazir Ali de-  
throned.  
(Ch. iii. § 17.)

§ 32. In 1797 *Asaf-ud-daula*, the Nuwâb Vazîr of Oudh, died. In vain had he been exhorted to pay some attention to the welfare of his kingdom. He lived and died a child in intellect, and a debased sensualist. A reputed son of the late Nuwâb, Vazîr Ali, succeeded him; but his proved illegitimacy and worthless character led Sir John Shore to displace him, and to elevate Sâlat Ali, brother of the late Nuwâb. The history of Oudh (ch. iii. § 17) will show how entirely its affairs were in the hands of the British Government. The tribute was seventy-six lakhs a year, and the subsidiary force 10,000 men.

Sâlat Ali placed  
on the throne.

## GOVERNORS-GENERAL.

339

### IV. Marquess Wellesley (Lord Mornington), 1798-1805.

CH. X. § 33, 34.  
A.D. 1798.

Mr. Cherry was then Resident at Benâres, and he negotiated the treaty with Sâdat Ali, who then lived at Benâres. Soon after, the new Nuwâh marched to Lucknow, where Sir John Shore was encamped. The Governor-General was in extreme peril from the displaced Vazîr Ali's hordes of lawless soldiers; but, with the utmost calmness and composure, he maintained his position, and the new Nuwâh was placed on the Musnud, Vazîr Ali being sent to Benâres.

Mr. Cherry.

Jan. 1798.

In 1799 Vazîr Ali assassinated Mr. Cherry in Benâres, and raised a temporary rebellion; but was defeated and taken prisoner.

Vazîr Ali of  
Oudh.

§ 33. Sir John Shore, who was created Lord Teignmouth, sailed for England in March 1798.

## PART IV.—THE MARQUESS WELLESLEY, 1798-1805.

### THE FOURTH GOVERNOR-GENERAL.

*"The Akbar of the Company's Dynasty."*

§ 34. (1.) The Marquess Wellesley (Lord Mornington), the fourth Governor-General, arrived in India in May 1798, and quitted it in August 1805: a most eventful period.

Lord Morning-  
ton.

(2.) The most brilliant of the Governors of British India, he is to be compared with *Clive, Hastings, and Dalhousie*.

Summary.  
Brilliant genl. a.  
His policy.

(3.) He departed altogether, necessarily, wisely, and boldly, from the *non-interference policy*.

(4.) The fourth Mysôr war was conducted to a happy issue. Tippû's overthrow took place in 1799. Mysôr became again a Hindû kingdom. (Ch. xii.)

Tippû, 1799.

(5.) The affairs of Oudh were regulated in 1801.

Oudh, 1801.

CH. X. § 35, 36.  
A.D. 1799.

IV. Marquess Wellesley (Lord Mornington), 1798-1805.

Treaty of  
Passeim, 1802.  
(Ch. v. § 123.)

Second Mah-  
ratta War, 1803.  
(Ch. v. § 123-  
136.)

Subsidiary  
Alliances.  
(Ch. v. § 124,  
125.)  
French influ-  
ence.

Shâh Âlam II.

Third Mahratta  
War.

(Ch. v. § 137.)

Character of the  
Marquess Wel-  
lesley.

The idea of a  
Balance of  
Power de-  
stroyed.

(§ 40)

(6) The Mahratta Confederacy was broken up by the TREATY OF PASSEIM, 1802.

(7) The second great Mahratta War, which lasted for a few months only, was brought by Lord LAKE and General WELLESLEY (the Duke of Wellington) to a triumphant conclusion.

The Râja of Berâr (Raghuji Bhonslê) and Sindia (Daulat Râo) submitted to form subsidiary alliances with the British Government, the former in November 1803, the latter in February 1804.

(8.) The state of Europe, torn by the conflicts of the French Revolution; and also the interference of France in Indian affairs, must be considered in studying this period.

(9) Shâh Âlam II. was released from Mahratta thralldom by Lord Lake, September 1803.

(10.) The war was renewed with Holkâr, 1805. Lord Lake was still in command.

(11.) Bhartpûr was unsuccessfully besieged, 1805; but its Râja submitted.

§ 35. The new Governor-General was a man of genius, refined by education; possessed of a most comprehensive mind; the friend of Pitt and Dundas; and for four years had been a member of the Board of Control. In his great measures the Directors of the Company opposed him; while Mr. Pitt enthusiastically supported him.

§ 36. It is his merit to have destroyed the foolish idea of maintaining a *balance of power* among the native princes: of balancing them one against the other, and of secretly encouraging their enmities, in order to obtain power over all, without seeming to interfere with any.

His was a bold, wise, and humane *policy of intervention*. It has been called the *subsidiary system*. He was not its author; but he developed it, and strove to introduce it into every native state. As the subsidiary system was the result of the greater resources, intelligence, and military skill of the English, so it led, of necessity, to the rapid extension of the supremacy of

# GOVERNORS-GENERAL.

341

## IV. Marquess Wellesley (Lord Mornington), 1793-1805.

CH. X. § 37, 38.  
A.D. 1798.

England; but, it must be conceded, that that system was rendered necessary by the selfish policy, the indolent incapacity, and the internecine wars of the various Dakhani chiefs.

The subsidiary system.

Without this system England must, at the close of the eighteenth century, have abandoned India, leaving it a prey to miserable anarchy; and relinquishing the fruits of all her labours in the East.

And it will be seen that, when once introduced, the subsidiary system could not but become universal.

§ 37. To estimate accurately the work the Marquess Wellesley had to do, we must compare chap. xii. § 47-51, and ch. v. § 117-123.

Tippû, the Nizâm, and Sindia were alike under French influence, relied upon French officers, and were disposed to aid the French to overthrow the English dominion in the East. French emissaries were at Seringapatam, Raymond with 14,000 men at Haidarâbâd, and De Boigne with 40,000 men in Sindia's camp. If the English had shrunk from their work, the French would have been the gainers.

Affairs in the Dakhn.

§ 38. Zemân Shâh, the grandson of Ahmad Shâh Abdâlî, the victor of Pânîpat, also threatened to invade India. There was thus apparent danger on every hand. This man, in his old age, quite blind, accompanied Pollock's army when it evacuated Kâbul, and ended his life in the Panjâb.

Zemân Shâh,  
1798.  
(§ 110.)

§ 39. Oudh was at this period mismanaged and oppressed by its ruler and his Vazîr. The troops were ill-disciplined and irregularly paid. Sâdat Ali, according to the terms of the treaty which placed him on the throne, was bound to maintain an efficient army, on which condition only the British Government had engaged to defend his throne and kingdom. This Lord Wellesley now compelled him to do. Mr. H.

Oudh affairs in  
1801.

(§ 32.)

CH. X. § 40, 42.  
A.D. 1798.

## IV. Marquess Wellesley (Lord Mornington), 1798-1805.

(Intro. § 9, 23.)

Ceded districts  
of Oudh.

Wellesley was sent to negotiate. Districts were ceded for the support of the army, and Oudh was thus placed for the time in security. These important districts comprised Alláhábád, Futteh-pûr, Khân-pûr, Azimghar, Goruckpûr, Bareilly, Morádábád, Bijnûr, Budaôn, and Sháh-jehân-pûr; forming the chief part of what are now called the North-western Provinces.

1798.

The Nizâm's  
affairs regu-  
lated.

§ 40. The first *subsidiary alliance*, formed at this time, was with the Nizâm, whom Kûrdlâ (ch. v. § 114) had well-nigh ruined.

The French force was disbanded, and a corps of British troops, paid by the Nizâm, and officered by Europeans, was substituted for it. The British henceforth garrisoned his territories, while he paid the cost.

If the Nizâm became thenceforth utterly powerless, he was at least rendered *secure*. This is the point to be considered in the whole question of the *subsidiary treaties*. The native states, it is true, lost their *independence*; but they gained a *security*, which they had no other means of obtaining. But for this they must, in fact, have ceased to exist.

Bellâri.  
Kadapa.

The districts of Bellary and Cuddapa were made over by the Nizâm in payment for the subsidiary force. They are called the *ceded districts* of Haidarâbâd. [Intro. § 23 (16).]

1798.

§ 41. The Peshwâ, by the advice of the Nânâ Farnavis, at this time, declined the closer alliance; but remained outwardly friendly to the British Government. The other Mahratta powers followed this example. (Ch. v. § 119.)

1799.  
Additions to the  
British terri-  
tories.

§ 42. The capture of Seringapatam firmly established the British power from Cape Comorin to the Kistna (Ch. xii. § 51.) The collectorates of Kanara and Coimbatôr, with the Wynâd and the Nilagiri hills, were then added to the Company's territories. [Intro. § 23 (16).]

## IV. Marquess Wellesley (Lord Mornington), 1798-1805.

CH. X. § 48, 44.  
A.D. 1799.

At this period the Governor-General was appointed by the King as Captain-General in India.

§ 43. The number of great men then in the English service, civil and military, is very remarkable. A great Governor-General seems to have the power of summoning around him, and even of creating, men of genius.

Colonel Sir Barry Close, Sir John Malcolm, the Hon. Mountstuart Elphinstone, Sir Thomas Munro, Henry Wellesley (Lord Cowley), Arthur Wellesley (the Duke of Wellington), Mr. Colebrooke, Sir Charles Metcalfe, General Lord Lake, Colonel Collins, Colonel Ochterlony, Major Walker, and Mr. Webber, were among the men who gave effect to the great "Proconsul's" wishes; and many of them were men formed and fitted for great achievements by his influence. Meanwhile the amount of labour, close and constant, performed by the Governor-General himself almost surpasses belief. A like remark may be made with regard to almost every one who has ever filled that high office.

The great men  
in the Indian  
service.

The worthy  
disciples and  
coadjutors of  
the "great  
Marquis."

§ 44. The extinction of the Tanjôr Râj, as an independent government, took place in 1800.

Serfoji, adopted by Tuljaji, was, after some disputes, put on the throne by Lord Wellesley; but so many were the liabilities of the country, that the government was taken over by the English, with the consent of all parties, allowing the Râj an income of a lakh of pagodas, and one-fifth of the revenues. (The Râj itself became extinct in 1855 on the death of Serfoji, having subsisted from 1637. Ch. v. § 7, 17, 21.)

Tanjôr affairs.  
(Table, ch. v. §  
27.)

In 1801 the Madras Presidency attained very nearly its present dimensions through the formal resignation of the Government of the Carnatic by the Nuwâb, Azim-ul-Daula, who received a liberal pension, amounting to one-fifth of the State revenues. The Nuwâbs, Muhammad Ali and Amant-ul-Omrah, had both been engaged in treasonable communications with Tippû. The collectorates of Nellôr, North and South Arcot, Trichinopoly, and Tinnevely, were thus formally added to the Company's territories. (See Table, p. 251. Intro. § 16.)

The Carnatic.



CH. X. § 45, 48.  
A.D. 1800.

IV. Marquess Wellesley (Lord Mornington), 1793-1805.

The Marquess  
leaves India.

§ 45. In August 1805, the Marquess Wellesley left Calcutta, attended by the applause of all right-judging persons. The Court of Directors, though opposed to his policy, recorded their opinion of his "ardent zeal to promote the well-being of India, and to uphold the interest and honour of the British Empire." A sum of £20,000 was granted to him, and his statue was placed in the India House.

Honours and  
rewards.

The College of  
Fort William

§ 46. An event which marked his career was the establishment on a grand scale (which was reduced by the Court of Directors) of the College of Fort William, for the education of civilians, and for the promotion of oriental learning. *Charles Theophilus Metcalfe* was the first student, in 1800. (Comp. § 96.)

Metcalfe.

Private trade.

§ 47. One of the subjects of continual debate during this administration was that of *private trade*. The Company in 1793 allowed 3,000 tons annually for this purpose; but the trade of private individuals soon passed this limit. Lord Wellesley wished to throw the trade open. The Court still dreaded *interlopers*, and continued to put off the inevitable day when India should be free to all. His liberality cost him the favour of the Company. The benefits bestowed on India by the unrestricted introduction of British enterprise and capital are now universally acknowledged. From this time there was little cordiality between the two parties. Financial embarrassment (for the cost of the Mahratta wars was enormous) was severely felt at this period.

Wellesley's  
liberality.  
(§ 98.)

Vexatious inter-  
ference of the  
Court of Direc-  
tors.

§ 48. In 1802 the Court of Directors reduced various items of expenditure sanctioned by the Governor-General; removed Mr. Webbe, the very able and upright Secretary of the Madras Government; and otherwise interfered in such a vexatious way with his prerogatives, that the Governor-General intimated his

V. Lord Cornwallis. Sir George Barlow, 1805-1807.

CH. X. § 48, 52.  
A.D. 1805.

intention of returning to England. Lord Clive, the Governor of Madras (1799-1803), son of the great Clive, resigned in consequence, and was succeeded by Lord W. Bentinck (1803-1807). The Marquess was, however, induced to remain another year. That eventful year fixed the destinies of British India.

The second Lord Clive.

It was the year of the Second Mahratta War. (Ch. v. § 124-136.)

PART V.—LORD CORNWALLIS, SECOND TIME. SIR GEORGE BARLOW, 1805-1807.

§ 49. LORD CORNWALLIS was appointed to succeed the great Marquess, and arrived a second time in Calcutta on the 1st of August 1805.

1805.  
Lord Cornwallis' second arrival.

§ 50. His main object was to overturn Lord Wellesley's statesman-like policy, and to terminate the contest with Sindia and Holkár at any cost. (See ch. v. § 124.) This new policy was essentially, though its advocates thought otherwise, *selfish* and *inhuman*.

§ 51. He condemned the treaty of Bassein. (Ch. v. § 123.) He was willing, despite the manly and energetic remonstrances of Lord Lake, to lay British honour at the feet of the successful freebooter, Daulat Râo Sindia and of Holkâr.

His policy.

§ 52. Death arrested his progress to the scene of war, at Ghâzipûr, near Benâres. The mild and virtuous old man died in the discharge of what he erroneously believed to be his duty; and his memory will always be held in honour.

His death, Oct. 5, 1805.  
(On the N. bank of the Ganges, 41 miles N.E. from Benâres.)

CH. X. § 53, 55.  
A.D. 1805, 6.

**Sir George Barlow, acting Governor-General, 1805-1807.**

**Barlow's views.**  
(He was not permanently Governor-General.)

§ 53. **SIR GEORGE BARLOW**, as senior member of Council, now succeeded. He entirely agreed with the views of his predecessor. "Lord Wellesley's policy of intervention," he said, "must in its nature be progressive, and must ultimately tend to a system of universal dominion." It has indeed progressed, and England is now the paramount power in India. It must be stated, however, that Barlow steadily refused to depart from the policy of Wellesley in regard to Puna. He maintained the position which the treaty of Bassein gave the English Government. At the same time he had to contend with great financial difficulties.

**Paramount power.**

§ 54. But those who are inclined to adopt the reasoning of the Marquess Cornwallis must observe that India has always been under some paramount power. There was the Buddhist, Asôka's, dominion. Then came the Afghan dynasties. Then the Mughal emperors. And finally arose the British dominion, more powerful and more beneficent than any that had preceded it.

Lord Wellesley's policy was the only one that afforded a hope for the down-trodden inhabitants of the land. This is now fully recognised. Sir G. Barlow himself was compelled to "interfere" in the Nizâm's affairs to preserve peace.

**The Vellore Mutiny.**

§ 55. During Sir G. Barlow's tenure of office occurred the *Vellore Mutiny*. There was dissatisfaction among the sepoys in the Madras Presidency on account of a change in their head-dress. Lord W. Bentinck was then Governor of Madras. The discontent was fomented by the sons of Tippû and their retainers, who lived in Vellore.

(Ch. xii. § 56.)

**Tippû's family.**

The family of Tippû had been permitted to live there, under scarcely any restraint, with princely incomes, surrounded by a large Muhammadan population; and

## GOVERNORS-GENERAL.

347

### The Vellore Mutiny.

CH. X. § 56, 58.  
A.D. 1806.

there can be no doubt that their agents had corrupted the native soldiery.

§ 56. On the 10th of July 1806, at 2 A.M., the native troops in Vellore rose against the European part of the garrison, consisting of two companies of the 69th Regiment, and massacred 113 persons.

The massacre.

Colonel Gillespie, who was at Arcot, sixteen miles distant, hearing of the attack, immediately marched to the spot, retook the fort, and dispersed the insurgents.

(§ 74)

Tranquillity was ultimately restored; but the Vellore mutiny showed, what the greater mutiny of 1857 confirmed, that nothing is too insignificant to excite the most wide-spread panic in India.

Indian panics.  
(§ 159, 160.)

§ 57. On this occasion, it was said that the new turban was a kind of hat, and that its introduction was a part of a systematic design to make the sepoys into Christians. The turn-screw attached to the uniform was said to be a cross. Vaccination, which had been recently introduced, was a part of the plan. It was asserted that all natives who did not put up the cross over their doors were to be massacred. Muhammadan Fakirs vied with Hindû Sanyâsis in fanning the flames.

The causes of the outbreak.

It is, however, a truth admitting of no dispute, that the world has never seen a government more liberal, and entirely tolerant, than that which Great Britain exercises over her Indian Empire.

A Native panic.

British toleration and fairness.

This has been carried to an excess. The Serampore missionaries, Carey, Ward, and Marshman, were for a time prevented from teaching Christianity in the Company's territories. Meanwhile it will now be readily admitted that Christian missionaries in India have been the unwearied, earnest friends of the people. They have in every part of the land striven to benefit the native races, and have been the best promoters of civilization and education.

§ 58. Tippû's family was now removed to Bengâl, where the colony, liberally supported by the Govern-

Tippû's family removed.

CH. X. § 59, 61.  
1808.

## VI. Lord Minto, 1807-1813.

ment, still exists. Lord W. C. Bentinck and Sir John Cradock, the commander-in-chief at Madras, were removed, though no real blame attached to the former; and the error of the latter was venial.

Sir G. Barlow  
removed to  
Madras.

§ 59. Sir G. Barlow, who was a good man of business, not of a high order of intellect, of unpopular manners, and destitute of tact, was now superseded by the Ministry (Lord Grenville's); and Lord Minto was appointed. Lord Lauderdale had been nominated, but his appointment was cancelled. Lord Minto had been President of the Board of Control.

Barlow in  
Madras.

Sir G. Barlow was consoled with the government of Madras, which he held from 1807-1813; when he was finally recalled.

---

 PART VI.—LORD (EARL OF) MINTO, 1807-1813.

India tranquil!

§ 60. LORD MINTO (who arrived in Calcutta early in 1807, and left it in October 1813) found India in a state of stupor, which the advocates of the "peace-at-any-price" policy called tranquillity. It will be seen, that this great man was by no means disposed to abide by the "non-interference policy." But compare ch. v. § 140, &c.

Travancore  
affairs.

§ 61. In 1808 disturbances broke out in Travancore, which did not cease till February 1809.

Summary of the  
former history  
of Travancore.

In 1790 Tippu had attacked Travancore. This led to the Third Mysor War (§ 22). (Ch. xii. § 40.)

The petty principalities of Travancore were reduced by Wâji Bâla Perumâl (1758-1799), who gradually became the Râja of the whole district.

He was the steadfast ally of Britain; and in 1784 (ch. xii.

# GOVERNORS-GENERAL.

349

VI. Lord Minto, 1807-1813.

CH. X. § 62, 63.  
A. D. 1806.

§ 36) he was specially mentioned in the treaty of Mangalôr. In 1788 British troops were stationed on his frontier for his protection.

In 1795 a subsidiary treaty had been concluded with this state, which was renewed in 1805.

§ 62. The management of Travancore had for some time been shamefully corrupt. The Resident had interfered, and the Diwân was irritated. He intrigued with the Diwân of the neighbouring state of Cochin, and with the French. Sir G. Barlow was then Governor of Madras, and took prompt measures to suppress the rebellion.

The outbreak.  
1806.

A vessel with thirty-one privates and a surgeon of the 12th Regiment put into *Allepie*. The men were decoyed on shore, seized, tied in couples back to back, and with stones tied round their necks, thrown into the back-water.

Massacre.  
(On the Coast, midway between Cochin and Quilon.)

The Resident's house at *Quilon* was attacked, and he escaped with difficulty.

(Coilan, 102 miles N N W. from Cape Comorin.)

§ 63. A detachment under Colonel H. Leger marched from Palamcottah to the Arambûli lines, constructed in the pass about twelve miles from Cape Comorin, where there is a broad level opening between the mountains, leading up from South Tinnevely into the Travancore country.

The storming of the Arambûli Lines, Feb. 2, 1806.

NOTE.—There are three passes. One into Coimbatôr, called the *Choragûdi* (near Trichûr); the second is the *Aryankûdi*, into Tinnevely, the third is the *Arambûli*.

These lines were soon occupied by the British troops under Major Welsh.

Kotâr, Nâgaracôil, *Udagiri*, *Pâpanâveram*, Killianôr, were taken, and all the passes seized. The Diwân finally committed suicide, and his brother was hanged in front of the 12th Regiment, in the murder of whose men he had participated.

Suicide of the Diwân  
(The former a fortress; the latter the residence of the Raja.)  
His brother hanged.

CH. X. § 64, 67.  
A.D. 1808, 10.

VI. Lord Minto, 1807-1813.

The Rājā denied all cognisance of the acts of his Dīwān.

Cochin.  
(Ch. xii.)

§ 64. The Travancore state remained under British management till 1813, when it was restored to the Rājā (§ 61).

Cochin was conquered by Haider Ali in 1776; was transferred by the treaty of 1792 to England, and is tributary. In 1809 an insurrection took place, which was put down. A treaty was then made by which the Cochin territories were placed under more immediate British control.

Madras mutiny,  
1809.

§ 65. There was great discontent in the Madras European army at this time, in consequence of a reduction in the emoluments of the officers. The commander-in-chief fomented this bad spirit, and was removed. He was lost on his way home, or he would doubtless have suffered the severest punishment. Sir G. Barlow seems to have been wanting in both temper and discretion.

Mauritius.  
Nov. 1810.

§ 66. It was now found necessary to send an expedition to take the islands of Mauritius, Bourbon, and Rodriguez, from which French cruisers constantly issued and made prizes of our ships. Expeditions in 1809 and 1810 accomplished this result in the most brilliant manner.

Mauritius still remains under the British dominion. Bourbon was restored to France in 1814.

Sir C. Metcalfe,  
1808.

§ 67. Lord Minto sent Mr. Metcalfe (afterwards Sir Charles and Lord Metcalfe), on an embassy to the sovereign of Lāhōr, the extraordinary *Ranjit Sing*. (Ch. xi. § 24-26).

Treaty with  
Ranjit Sing,  
1809.

First treaty of  
Lāhōr.

Metcalfe and  
Ranjit Sing,  
1808, 9.

A treaty was then concluded, by which he bound himself not to encroach upon the rights of the Cis-Satlaj states, and to maintain amicable relations with the British Government.

Such an effect is said to have been produced upon that astute chief by the demeanour of the young envoy (then in his twenty-sixth year), that he never could be persuaded in his after-life to break the treaty he then signed.

This treaty with Ranjit Sing marks the beginning of

# GOVERNORS-GENERAL.

351

VI. Lord Minto, 1807-1813.

CH. X. § 68, 70.  
A.D. 1809, 13.

a new period in British Indian history: the Panjâb now becomes of importance.

§ 68. As the French had at this time subdued the Netherlands, it became necessary for the Governor-General to take possession of the Dutch settlements in the Eastern seas. *Ambonina*, *Banda*, and finally *Jáva*, were taken by a force under Sir S. Auchmuty (April 1812).

Sir S. Raffles was appointed Governor. At the peace of 1814 these conquests were restored to the Dutch.

§ 69. Lord Minto not only made British influence supreme in the Western and Eastern Seas; but he opened negotiations with Sind, Kâbul, and Persia, with the object of preventing French intrigues, and securing peace in India. The Amîrs of Sind agreed to exclude the French.

Mountstuart Elphinstone was sent to Kâbul, where he concluded a treaty with the king, Shâh Shuja. (Comp. § 110 b.)

Sir John Malcolm was sent to Persia; and, another envoy having been sent from England at the same time, a treaty was signed by the Shâh, in which he bound himself not to allow the passage through Persia of troops hostile to Britain. It is the glory of Lord Minto to have selected such men as Metcalfe, Elphinstone, and Malcolm.

§ 70. The pacification of Bandêlkhand was also the work of this administration. Kalinjir (ch. ii. § 10) and Ajyghur were taken, and the lawless chiefs reduced to order. Lord Minto was now raised to an earldom; but died shortly after his return to England in 1813. He was, though the influence of the Prince Regent, recalled before his time, to make way for Lord Moira.

He is justly esteemed one of the greatest of the Anglo-Indian statesmen. He had been one of the

Dutch possessions taken:—

1. One of the Moluccas.
2. A Group, 120 miles S.E. from Ambonina.
3. Chief of the Sunda Islands.

Restored.

Treaty with Sind, 1809.

Elphinstone in Kâbul, 1809.

Malcolm in Persia, 1808, 1809.

The Envoys.

Bandêlkhand, 1807-1812.

Lord Minto made an Earl. His death.



CH. X. § 72, 73.  
A.D. 1813, 14.

VII. Marquess of Hastings (Earl Moira), 1814-1823.

managers of the prosecution of Warren Hastings. His Indian experience greatly altered his opinions on all Indian matters.

The Anglo-Indian empire now numbered 75,000,000 of subjects, of whom 15,000,000 were Musalmâns, 60,000,000 Hindûs, and 30,000 Europeans.

Renewal of the  
Charter, 1813.

§ 72. In 1793 the East India Company's charter had been renewed for twenty years. The time had now come for the reconsideration of the subject. The result was :—

Monopoly de-  
stroyed.

(1.) The destruction of the Company's monopoly, in defence of which the Court of Directors made a determined struggle. The trade to China was still to remain in their hands; but the trade to India was thrown open (§ 28).

Ecclesiastical  
Establishment.

(2.) An ecclesiastical establishment was formed, consisting of a Bishop of Calcutta, and an Archdeacon at each of the presidency towns. (Comp. § 103.)

The learned *Middleton* was the first Bishop of Calcutta. *Heber*, *Wilson*, and *Cotton*, among his successors, have left great names to be inscribed in the roll of British Indian worthies.

PART VII.—THE MARQUESS OF HASTINGS, 1813-1823.  
(EARL MOIRA.)

THE SEVENTH GOVERNOR-GENERAL.

Earl Moira.

§ 73. Earl Moira (afterwards Marquess of Hastings) succeeded. He was a distinguished soldier, an experienced statesman, and a man of noble manners and character. He arrived in Calcutta in October 1813. He found the finances embarrassed, and many disputes.

# GOVERNORS-GENERAL.

VII. Marquess of Hastings (Earl Moira), 1814-1823.

with native states pending. He was for nine years an indefatigable, resolute, and successful ruler. It was a truly critical period of British Indian history, in which he held the reins of government.

§ 74. The first dispute he had to settle was with the Court of Nipál, where the Ghúrkas had recently made themselves formidable. These were recent conquerors of Nipál (1767), acknowledged by the British, to whom they paid tribute for the lands about Makwanpúr. The native ruler of Nipál had encroached on the British territory on every side, and more especially had imprisoned the Zamindár of Bút-wál, who was under British protection, and had seized his territories. Eighteen English police-officers were murdered in Bút-wál; and it became necessary to proceed in the most energetic manner to vindicate the national honour.

Four divisions of troops were sent. One was to march on Katmandú by way of Makwanpúr. The second was to take possession of Bút-wál, Sheroáj, and Palpa. The third to penetrate the passes of the Dera Dún, occupy that valley, and seize the passes of the Jamna and the Ganges. The fourth, under General Ochterlony, was to act against the western provinces, where the flower of the Ghúrka troops were.

The advance by the Dera Dún into Gurhwal was slow. *Kalunga*, a strong fortress, twenty-six miles north from Hurdwar, was taken after several failures, and utterly destroyed. Here General Gillespie, the hero of Vellore (§ 56), fell. General Ochterlony occupied, after immense labour, and by great bravery and skill, the heights of Rámgarh; and the Rája of *Balas-púr* was detached from the Nipál cause. But on the whole the aspect of things was not cheering. The other detachment met with small reverses; and the Ghúrkas were elated, while the English troops were dispirited.

353

CHAP. X. § 74.  
A.D. 1814.

War with Nipál  
1814.

Buteel or But-  
sul, in Oudh.)

(Compare the  
Map, and Intro.  
§ 9  
The Plan of the  
War, 1814.

Discouraging  
aspect of the  
War.

(Balaspor, on  
the E. bank of  
the Satlej, 70  
miles N.E. from  
Lodiána.)

CH. X. § 75, 76.  
A.D. 1815-18.

**VII. Marquess of Hastings (Earl Moira), 1814-1823.**

General Ochterlony's successes, 1815.  
(Intro. § 23.)

The disaffected throughout India, and especially the Mahrattas, rejoiced in the apparent failure of the British arms. (Ch. v. § 149.)

The capture of Maloun, by General Ochterlony, May 1815, was the first very decided advantage gained. The whole of the forts between the Jamna and the Satlaj were then yielded to the British, and Gurhwâl was evacuated.

Treaty with Nipâl, March 1816.

Negotiations for peace were now set on foot; and, though retarded by the insincerity and vacillation of the Nipâl court, resulted at length in a treaty of peace, by which the territories of the Nipâl state were reduced to their present dimensions; the Ghûrkas losing the territory between the Satlaj and the Gôgra.

To Sir David Ochterlony's judgment and skill the successful result of this war is chiefly due.

Rohilkhand, April 1816.

§ 75. Disturbances, which were soon put down, took place in Bareilly, the chief town of Rohilkhand, where Afghâns still abounded.

Mahratta affairs, 1817-1819.

§ 76. The events of the Marquess of Hastings' administration, as connected with the Mahratta history, have been detailed in chap. v. § 148-164.

They procured for him the applause of the whole British people. His name is honoured as that of the man who gave tranquillity and good order to Central India. Such was gain for him that wages them the blessing of the "peace-maker."

They include:—

- (1.) The treacheries and downfall of Bâjî Râo II.;
- (2.) The Pindârî war;
- (3.) The treachery and downfall of Appâ Sahêb, Râja of Nâgpur;
- (4.) The restoration of the Râja of Satâra; and,
- (5.) The treaties by which the houses of Sindia and Holkâr were deprived of all power of disturbing the tranquillity of India, while their own independence was secured.

In these wars twenty-eight actions were fought in the field; 120 forts captured, and nineteen treaties made with native princes.

The Fourth Mahratta War, 1817, 1818.

## GOVERNORS-GENERAL.

355

### VIII. Lord Amherst, 1823-1828.

CH. X. § 77, 79.  
A.D. 1823.

The Governor-General was aided by that eminent statesman, George Canning; who, from June 1816 to 1822, was President of the Board of Control.

§ 77. The Marquess now retired. The Company's revenue had increased during his administration by £6,000,000 a year. He was a worthy follower of the Marquess Wellesley. Besides his elevation in the peerage, an estate of £60,000 was given him; and, at his death (in 1827), a further sum of £20,000 was placed in the hands of trustees for the benefit of his son.

Jan. 2, 1823.

The Marquess of Hastings' character and rewards.

His (perhaps) injudicious patronage of the firm of Palmer and Co. of Haidarâbâd caused him much trouble, and brought on him undeserved obloquy. [Comp. ch. iii. § 16 (12).]

Palmer and Co.

### PART VIII.—EARL AMHERST, 1823-1828.

#### THE EIGHTH GOVERNOR-GENERAL.

§ 78. Mr. Canning was nominated to succeed the Marquess of Hastings; but, being appointed Foreign Secretary, he declined the nomination; and LORD AMHERST, who had distinguished himself in his embassy to China, became the eighth Governor-General. He landed in Calcutta August 1, 1823.

Mr. Canning.

Lord Amherst.

Mr. Adam acted in the meanwhile (January 1 to August 1, 1823).

Mr. Frederick Adam.

Mr. Adam relieved the Nizâm of Haidarâbâd by lending him money to discharge his debts to the gigantic firm of Palmer & Co., and forbade any further pecuniary dealings of that firm with the Haidarâbâd court.

The Nizâm's debts.

The firm was ruined, but the Nizâm was saved (§ 77). (Ch. iii. § 16.)

§ 79. Lord Amherst's first undertaking was the war with *Birma*. The last wars took us to the Western

War with Birma.

CHAP. X. § 79.  
A.D. 1823, 4.

VIII. Lord Amherst, 1823-1828.

(Comp. Intro.  
§ 15.) Burma,  
Burma, or  
Brahma.

Ghâts. This takes us to the farthest east of India, and beyond its borders.

Alompra.

An adventurer from Pegu, called Alompra, in 1752, 3, obtained possession of Ava, enlarged the Birmese territories, subjugated Arakan and Munipûr, and placed Assam under a Birmese chief. He granted to the Company the island of Negrais and some land near Rangoon. He died in 1760.

Birmese insolence, 1812.

The insolent demand.

There were many causes of complaint against the court of Ava; but in 1818 a formal demand was made by the Birmese for the cession of Chittagong, Mîrshedâbâd, and Dacca, as belonging to the ancient kingdom of Arakan. This was, of course, treated with contempt. In 1823 the island of Shâhpûrî was occupied by thirteen 'sepoys, for the protection of British subjects. A body of a thousand Birmese expelled them. Cachâr was next attacked, and British troops were sent to aid the fugitive Râja. The arrogance of the Birmese was unbounded, and it became necessary to send an expedition to thoroughly humble them.

Shâhpûrî occupied, 1823.

NOTE.—There was a British factory at Bassein, where all the Europeans were murdered in 1759.

There was then a walled factory at Rangoon, where a Resident was appointed in 1796.

French influence was at work in Ava, as elsewhere, against the English for many years.

The Birmese expedition.

(Intro. § 38)

Sir Archibald Campbell.

(This is one of the branches of the Irawady.)  
Rangoon, May 11, 1824. Kemendin.

The Bengâl and Madras troops met at Port Cornwallis, in the Great Andaman, in May 1824, and sailed at once to the mouth of the Rangoon River. Sir Archibald Campbell was in command.

Rangoon was taken. The stockades at Kemendin were stormed, Major R. Sale (the hero of Jellâlâbâd), being the first to scale them. The force had now to endure the monsoon rains, sickness, and want. The commissariat department at Calcutta had failed in its duty; but Sir T. Munro, Governor of Madras, saved the army by promptly sending supplies.

Negrais and Cheduba.

Negrais and Cheduba were then carried. Ten

# GOVERNORS-GENERAL.

VIII. Lord Amherst, 1823-1828.

357

CHAP. I. § 79.  
A.D. 1824, 26.

stockades were stormed in one day. Martaban was taken, and successful expeditions were undertaken in the Tenasserim coast and in Assam.

The most noted Birmese chief, Mahā Bandūla, who had 20,000 men under his command, now appeared on the scene. At the capture of Donabew that leader was killed by a rocket.

Sir Archibald pushed on to Prome. Meanwhile Arakān was gallantly taken by another body of troops under General Morrison and Commodore Hayes.

Negotiations for peace were now entered into, but broken off by the refusal of the King of Ava (who had not even yet fully learnt the power of the English) to make any concession. The British force advanced, under great difficulties, to Patanagoh, where a treaty was nearly concluded, but again broken off.

Mellūn, on the opposite bank of the Irawādy, was then stormed, and the troops advanced to the city of Pagahn, where a decisive victory was gained by a British force of 2,000 against a Birmese army of 18,000. The English prisoners were now released.

Finally, at Yendabū, within four days' march (forty-five miles) of the capital, a treaty was signed, by which the King of Ava agreed to give up all claims to Assam, Cachār, and Jyntia; to cede Arakān, Rāmri, Cheduba, and Sandoway, with the provinces of Yeh, Tavoy, Mergui, and Tenasserim, the Salwīn river being the boundary; to pay a crore of rupees as a partial indemnification for the expenses of the war, and as a proof of the "sincere disposition of the Birmese Government to maintain the relations of amity and peace between the two nations." These provinces have wonderfully prospered since their cession. Akyāb and Moulmein have become flourishing ports.

NOTE.—Arakān is divided into four districts—Arakān, Rāmri, Sandoway, and Cheduba. Akyāb is the principal harbour.

This province was once the seat of a very extended dominion. (Intro. § 15.)

Martaban, Aug. 1824.

Mahā Bandūla. Killed at Donabew, Feb 2<sup>d</sup>, 1825.

Feb. 1825.

Dec. 1825.

Victory of Pagahn.

Feb. 1826.

Feb. 1826  
Treaty of Yendabū.

Cessions from the Birmese, 1826.

(Or, Martaban River.)

CH. X. § 80, 81.  
A.D. 1826.

VIII. Lord Amherst, 1823-1828.

Summary.

Thus ended a just war, carried on with wonderful bravery, and concluded by a peace, the tenor of which remarkably illustrates the moderation of the conquerors.

(Comp. § 140.)

A second war, in 1852-53, was necessary to ensure the permanent peace and prosperity of Further India.

The Barrackpūr mutiny.

§ 80. Connected with the First Birmese War was the disgraceful Barrackpūr Mutiny.

47th Native Infantry.

Sir E. Paget's summary justice.

The 47th N.I., resenting certain minor hardships to which they were temporarily subjected, broke out into open mutiny. Sir E. Paget, the commander-in-chief, hastened to the spot, surrounded the mutineers; and, on their obstinately refusing to submit, caused a battery to open upon them. They fled at once, and some who were taken prisoners were executed. The number of the regiment was erased from the list of the army.

The taking of Bhartpūr, 1826.

§ 81. The taking of Bhartpūr (which had been assaulted unsuccessfully by Lord Lake [ch. v. § 137]), January 18, 1826, is another event that renders this administration remarkable; and which produced a salutary feeling throughout India.

The following is a summary of the events that led to the war with Bhartpūr:—

Rāja Bandhar Sing died without issue in 1823.

His brother, Baldéo Sing, succeeded. Durjan Sâl, son of a younger brother, however, contested the succession.

Disputed succession in Bhartpūr, 1825.

Sir D. Ochterlony, Resident in Mâlwa and Râjpûtâna, examined these conflicting claims; and the result of his report was, that the Governor-General addressed Baldéo Sing a congratulatory letter on his accession, and authorised Sir David to give him formal investiture. The Resident did so, and also acknowledged his son, Balwant Sing, as his successor. Baldéo died the same month (January 26, 1825). Durjan Sâl instantly took possession of the fort, murdered the uncle of the young Rāja, and seized his person. Sir David at once took prompt measures to put down the usurper; but was

Sir David Ochterlony.  
15th June, 1825.

## VIII. Lord Amherst, 1823-1828.

CHAP. X. § 81.  
A.D. 1828.

forbidden to interfere by the Governor-General. This not unnaturally led to his resignation, which was followed by his death in a few weeks. For fifty years a soldier, he had served in every Indian war from the time of Haidar downwards. He was the especial hero of the war in Nipāl, and had distinguished himself as a diplomatist.

(Comp. § 74.)

Sir C. Metcalfe now arrived from Haidarābād to occupy the position of Resident of Delhi and of Rāj-pūtāna. The Governor-General was decidedly opposed to interference; but the able paper submitted by the new Resident, and the opinions of the Council, effected a change in his sentiments.

Sir C. Metcalfe  
in Delhi.  
(§ 105)

Sir C. Metcalfe's reasoning may be condensed thus:—

His reasoning.  
Intervention a  
duty.

"The British have by degrees become the paramount state in India. It is their mission to preserve tranquillity in India. It is incumbent on them to refuse to recognise any but a lawful successor. British influence is too pervading to allow of neutrality. If the Government allows anarchy to prevail in Bhartpūr, it invites the return of the confusion and pillage of 1817 and 1818."

He therefore urged that Balwant Sing should be supported, and a proper regency established. Lord Amherst gracefully yielded to the opinion of this eminent statesman.

It was evident that Durjan Sāl relied upon the supposed impregnability of the fortress of Bhartpūr; and supposed, with truth, that all who disliked the ascendancy of the British in India wished him success in his bold defiance of the paramount power.

Durjan Sāl's  
false hopes.

Lord Combermere, commander-in-chief, marched from Muttra, and the memorable siege began on the 28th December 1825. The vast fortifications of mud could not be beaten down by artillery; but a mine, with ten thousand pounds of powder, made a practicable breach.

Lord Comber-  
mere takes the  
fort, Jan. 1826.



CH. X. § 82, 85.  
A.D. 1826, 28.

VIII. Lord Amherst, 1823-1828.

It was stormed on the 18th January 1826 by two columns under Generals Reynell and Nicholls. The fort was dismantled, and its walls levelled to the ground.

The young Rāja was reinstated, and peace restored

Bharatpūr affairs  
since 1826  
Intro. § 36.

He died in 1854, and his son, Jeswant Singh, a minor, then four years of age, succeeded. This state has been in the interval under a Regency Council, with the supervision of a British Political Agent. The Rāja was formally placed on the musnud in 1869.

The Straits Set-  
tlements.

§ 82. In 1824, Malacca, Singapore, and the Dutch possessions on the Continent of India (Negapatam, &c.), were ceded to England, in exchange for Bencoolen, in Sumatra.

See map of  
Burma.  
Intro. § 15.

At Singapore arrangements were made with the native chiefs, by which the Company obtained the absolute possession of the island. The other British settlements in that quarter are Pulo Penang, or Prince of Wales Island, and the province of Wellesley on the mainland. The island was given by the King of Kirda, in 1786, to Captain Light, the master of a country ship, as a marriage portion with the King's daughter. He made it over to the East India Company, and was made its Governor. The province of Wellesley was purchased. The whole of the Straits Settlements were made over to the Colonial Office in 1866.

Nāgpūr.

§ 83. A treaty was concluded with the young Rāja of Nāgpūr on his attaining his majority, December 1826. (Ch. v. § 159.)

Sir T. Munro.

§ 84. Sir T. Munro, who had held the government of Madras from 1820, died of cholera near Gāti in July 1827. He was the chief advocate of the *Ryotwār* system. (See Gen. Index.)

Mr. Bayley act-  
ing Governor-  
General, 1828,  
for four  
months.

§ 85. Earl Amherst, who can hardly be numbered among the more eminent rulers of British India, quitted India in March 1828; Mr. Butterworth Bayley, one of Lord Wellesley's disciples, acting as Governor-General until his successor arrived.

Simla.

Simla was first occupied as a residence by Lord Amherst.

(Map, ch. xi.)

NOTE.—Simla is in Sirmūr, 7,000 feet above the level of the sea. Taken from the Ghūrkas in 1814-16 (§ 74).

# GOVERNORS-GENERAL.

361

## IX. Lord William Bentinck, 1828-1835

CH. X. § 86, 88  
A.D. 1828.

### PART IX.—LORD WILLIAM CAVENDISH BENTINCK 1828-1835

§ 86. Lord W. BENTINCK, the Governor-General, arrived in India in July 1828, and quitted it in March 1835.

About the same time Mr. F. B. was appointed Mr. F. B. and Sir John Malcolm to Bombay (p. 31). (Ch. X. § 86, 88.) This was for a very long time the voice of the great annual report.

§ 87. The period of Lord W. C. Bentinck's administration, which was distinguished by progress, improvements, necessary reforms, the sweeping away of obsolete and injurious institutions, and the introduction of an enlightened and philanthropic policy; was especially marked by:—

- (1.) The re-arrangement of Mysôr affairs, and the annexation of Kûrg; (§ 89-90.)
- (2.) Many economical reforms. (§ 91.)
- (3.) Improvements in the judicial system; (§ 92.)
- (4.) Abolition of Sati and the repression of Thuggee; (§ 93-95.)
- (5.) The downfall of the exclusively Oriental system of education, and the establishment of the European system; (§ 96.)
- (6.) Commencement of steam communication with India; (§ 97.)
- (7.) The assassination of Mr. F. B., and its punishment; (§ 98.)
- (8.) Negotiations with the rulers of Sind, Kabul, and the Punjab; (§ 99.)
- (9.) Disturbances in Jeddah, Jesspur, and Bhopâl; and, (§ 100.)
- (10.) The renewal of the Company's charter in 1833. (§ 101.)

§ 88. Lord W. Bentinck had been Governor of Madras, and was harshly and abruptly recalled in 1806. He was singularly benevolent, upright, firm, and liberal. He was anxious for this appointment, as tending to free his reputation from any stain that might be supposed to rest upon it from his former dismissal. It

His character. (§ 88.)

(§ 88.)

CH. X. § 89, 91.  
A.D. 1832, 4.

## IX. Lord William Bentinck, 1828-1835.

did so. A statue erected to his honour in Calcutta, with an inscription from the pen of Macaulay, preserves the remembrance of "*his wise, upright, and paternal administration.*"

Mysôr under  
British rule,  
1832.General  
Cubbon.

1836-1861.

§ 89. The administration of Mysôr was at this time assumed by the British Government, and placed under the system which still so efficiently provides for the welfare of that flourishing province. General *Sir Mark Cubbon* was appointed Commissioner; and for twenty-five years, administered its affairs with astonishing skill and energy. (Ch. xii. § 60.)

Kûrg affairs,  
1834.

Intro. § 14.

(Ch. xii. § 23, 37,  
44.)

§ 90. The principality of Kûrg, on the confines of Mysôr, is of great antiquity. The Vîra Râjas are mentioned as existing A.D. 1583 by Ferishta.

It was subdued by Haidar, and in 1779 the heir, Vîra Râjênda, was excluded from the succession, and imprisoned. Tippû made him a Musalmân by force; but he escaped, and after a long and chivalrous struggle regained his dominions in 1787. His nephew, Vîra Râjêndra Udaiyâr was Râja in 1832. He was a madman. Incest and wholesale murders are among the crimes of which he was guilty. Of the royal house he left no male alive. At length he defied the British authority; and, when every means of conciliation had been exhausted, troops were sent. After a short struggle Markâra was taken possession of, and the Râja was sent to Benâres. He afterwards was permitted to visit England, and died in London in 1863. As this monster's cruelty had removed every one who could have any pretensions to succeed him, the state came directly under British Government. The daughter of the ex-Râja, the Princess Gouramma, was baptized in London, 1852, Queen Victoria being a sponsor. She died in 1866. The ten days' war in Kûrg formed the only break in the profound peace of the seven years of Lord W. Bentinck's administration. Lieutenant-Colonel J. S. Fraser was the first Commissioner.

April 6, 1834.

Reforms.

§ 91. Lord W. Bentinck had to perform the unpleasant task of carrying out extensive reductions and reforms in the civil and military establishments of the Company.

Half-Batta  
order.

The first was the abolition of Batta, or the reduction of

## GOVERNORS-GENERAL.

IX. Lord William Bentinck, 1828-1835.

363

CHAP. X (32).  
A.D. 1835.

it to one-half the former amount. This was an *allowance* given to the troops when in the field, doubled when they marched beyond the Company's frontier, and reduced to a half when they were in cantonments where quarters were provided for them. This reduction of allowances, which was certainly a hard one, aroused much indignation. Lord Combermere opposed it, and resigned. The Duke of Wellington and the home Government, however, strongly upheld it. The measure was, in fact, wholly of home origin, and had been urged on preceding Governors-General. Lord W. Bentinck, though himself opposed to it, carried it out, undeterred by the abuse of private individuals, or of the public press. The saving effected was insignificant, and the irritation it produced was great and lasting.

Committees were appointed, which reduced the annual civil expenditure by about half a million sterling, and the military by about one million.

Retrench-  
ments

§ 92. Judicial reforms were also introduced, tending to relieve European functionaries from the overwhelming pressure of work. The whole system in regard to criminal justice was remodelled.

Judicial and  
Revenue Re-  
forms.

Sadr Amins were appointed, who were empowered to decide cases to the value of 5,000 rupees, and to receive appeals from the inferior Amins. The vernacular languages were substituted for the Persian in all courts.

Sadr Amins

A Court of Appeal was created at Alláhábád for the Upper Provinces.

The *Revenue settlement* of the North-west Provinces, carried out by Mr. Robert Bird (the Todar Mal of the Company's Government), still confers a blessing upon the millions under the British dominion in those districts. This minute and accurate survey of these districts, with the necessary examination of titles, the decision of disputes, and the ascertainment and register

Mr R Bird's  
Revenue settle-  
ment of the  
N. W. Pro-  
vinces.

CH X § 93 94  
A.D. 1828, 31.

**IX Lord William Bentinck, 1828-1835.**

of each man's holding, was a work of which England may justly be proud

The abolition of  
Sati, Dec 29,  
1829

§ 93. Lord William's name is more closely connected with the abolition of "Suttee"

"Sati" in Sanskrit means a 'virtuous woman'. It is a term applied to the woman who immolates herself on the funeral pile of her deceased husband. This barbarous superstition had prevailed from remote antiquity, though really unsanctioned by Hindu authorities, and the rulers hesitated to interfere. Lord Wellesley, in his day, wished to restrain it, and some cautionary measures were then partially enforced. Lord W. Bentinck and his two councillors Mr. Butterworth Bayly and Mr. Metcalfe, boldly and wisely caused an enactment to be promulgated, making it a punishable crime in any way to aid and abet a "Suttee". Police-officers were authorised to prevent it, and to apprehend all persons engaged in such a transaction. Twenty-five times the attempt was made to perform Suttee afterwards, but the police quietly stopped the consummation of the murderous rite.

Thus was this horrible crime put an end to. In Bengal, Bahâr, and Orissa, the number of victims had averaged 600 a year!

In the states of Râjpûtnâ the practice is now nearly, if not quite, extinct. On the death, in 1861, of the Mihâ Râna of Oudipûr, the first Hindû prince in India, and the acknowledged head of the Râjpûts, none of the wives could be prevailed upon to immolate herself. A favourite slave girl was the victim.

[The molat-  
tion was  
extended and  
enforced by  
Lord Har-  
dinge.]

The "Lex  
Loca"  
Offices thrown  
open to natives  
of India

§ 94. A law was also passed by which a convert to Muhammadanism, or to Christianity, was protected from the operation of the Hindû law, which declared such convert an outcast, and deprived him of his share

the time of Lord Cornwallis the only office (except the very lowest) of 1831 thus open many important offices to the service of every class. They are now found in every department of the public service. Thus Lord Wellesley shares with Lord Wellesley the honour of the *Admiral* of the Company's ship.

Regulation 11

§ 95. The humane and virtuous measures for the extinction of the land of the Thugs, who had infested Central India were a blessing to the whole. These Thugs were said by tradition have sprung from seven tribes, all of the Muhammadan religion, living near Delhi. They nevertheless especially devoted themselves to the worship of Kali Devi or Bhavani, the wife of Shiva, who is represented in the legends of the Purāṇas, as having appeared in various terrific shapes for the destruction of demons. Human sacrifices are supposed to be especially pleasing to her.

Added to this, the Thugs were fatalists of the most thorough kind.

These Thugs, assuming the garb of peaceable pilgrims or merchants, travelled in bands, and were accustomed to decoy and murder persons travelling through the forests of Central India.

When a favourable opportunity presented itself, they threw a noose round the neck of their victim, strangled, rifled, and buried him in an incredibly short space of time, every precaution being taken to keep the murder absolutely secret.

Their system of murder

Thus multitudes of travellers were perpetually vanishing from the earth, and leaving no trace behind them.

CHAP. X. § 96.  
A.D. 1829.

IX. Lord William Bentinck, 1828-1835.

Major Sleeman,  
1828.  
(He was after-  
wards Resident  
of Oudh, and  
died on his  
homeward voy-  
age in 1856.)

To the Thug this was his profession, his religion, his lawful calling. "My fathers have been Thugs for twenty generations," said one of them.

From time to time the Company's Government had striven to check these practices; but in 1829 Major Sleeman (afterwards Sir William Sleeman, one of the great philanthropists of the Anglo-Indian rule) was appointed commissioner for the extermination of the Thugs. Others were appointed to aid him; and the result has been the almost absolute suppression of the crime.

The labours of Captain Hall and Captain Dixon in Mairwarra resulted in the civilisation to a great extent of the *Mairs*, a wild people resembling the Bhils. (Comp. ch. v. § 165.)

Oriental system  
of Education.

§ 96. The "Oriental system of education" was made to give way to the "European system," by a resolution of Government, that "all the funds appropriated to the purposes of education should be employed in imparting to the native population a knowledge of English literature and science through the medium of the English language alone. In bringing about the change T. B. Macaulay's (afterwards Lord Macaulay) influence was largely used. He resided in Calcutta from 1835 to 1840 as the fourth, or legislative member, of the Supreme Council. Mr. (Sir Charles) Trevelyan and Dr. A. Duff were two other untiring leaders of the advocates of English education.

Macaulay in  
Calcutta.

The great leader of the Orientalists was H. H. Wilson, a distinguished Sanskrit scholar.

English and the  
Vernacular.

The new school went greatly too far, and it was reserved for Lord Auckland partially to correct the error; but there can be no doubt that immense sums had been wasted in the endowment of Oriental scholarships, and in translations into Sanskrit and Arabic. To promote the intelligent study of the vernacular languages of the country is a very different matter.

The great impulse to native education must, it will be conceded

## GOVERNORS-GENERAL.

### IX. Lord William Bentinck, 1828-1835.

be given through English. It is for well-educated natives to revive and enrich their own vernacular literature. The education imparted to them must tend to fit and inspire them to do this work.

§ 97. The commencement of steam communication with India constitutes a great era in the history of the connection of European nations with the East, and, in fact, in the history of half the globe.

The *Hugh Lindsay* made the first voyage from Bombay to Suez. In 1834 the matter was taken up by the House of Commons; and, though the Court of Directors were indifferent to the subject, the *Peninsular and Oriental Company*, in 1843, sent their first steamer to Calcutta; and the result has been a system, ever improving, and, in 1868, conferring upon all India the boon of a regular weekly communication with England; the time occupied in the transmission of letters being from twenty-eight to thirty days.

§ 98. Lord W. Bentinck spent a part of 1834 at Ootacamund, during which time the orders were promulgated which constituted Agra a distinct Presidency, under a Lieutenant-Governor. At this time also all restrictions upon the settlement of Europeans in India were removed.

§ 99. In 1833 Rāmmóhan Roy, a distinguished native scholar and reformer, died at Bristol. He had done much to weaken the attachment of his countrymen to idolatry. Unfortunately he allowed himself to become the agent of the Court of Delhi, which sent him to England to endeavour to obtain an increase to the king's stipend. He was thus lost to his countrymen.

§ 100. In 1834 Mr. Fraser, political commissioner and agent of the Governor-General at Delhi, was shot dead by an assassin. He had offended Shams-ud-din Khān, the Nuwāb of Ferōzpur, who instigated the murder. The Nuwāb and his tool were both hanged at Delhi.

CH  
I

Th  
lan  
Ind  
Th  
ste

Th  
Ge  
Oo  
In  
Ou  
tol

Ed  
Re

M  
m  
Di



CH. X § 101, 102  
AD 1831, 4.

IK. Lord William Bentinck, 1828-1835.

Interference in  
North-west and  
Afghan politics,  
1831Opening of the  
Indus.Meeting with  
Ranjit Singh at  
Rupn  
Colonel Henry  
Pottinger  
(Ch. v, 165.)

§ 101. During Lord W. Bentinck's administration, a fear of Russian intrigues in the countries north-west of the Indus, led the British Government to interfere in the politics of the Panjab, Sind, and Afghânistân.

Negotiations were carried on with the various princes through whose territories the Indus flows, for the free passage of vessels laden with British merchandise. Treaties for this object were made with the Amîrs of Sind, the Râja of Bahâwalpûr, and Ranjît Sing, the ruler of Lâhôr. The Governor-General met this great chieftain at Rûpar on the Satlaj in 1831. (Ch. xi. § 25.)

Colonel Henry Pottinger was the envoy to Sind. He found the Amîrs most averse to the idea of any connection with England. They at length yielded.

The result seems to have been that Ranjît Sing, espoused the 'cause of the ex-king of Kâbul, Shâh Shuja. (See § 110.)

Râjpût affairs.

§ 102. The affairs of the Râjpût and Bhôpâl states require our attention at this period. They illustrate the necessity for constant, firm, and kindly interference on the part of the British Government; in which respect Lord W. Bentinck failed to do his manifest duty.

Oudipûr.  
(Ch. lu. § 6  
(12) ]  
(Intro. 36.)

(1.) *Oudipûr*. Here *Bhim Sing*, who had reigned for more than fifty years, died in 1828; and was succeeded, after many disputes, by *Jivan Sing*.

The present Mâha Râna Sambhî Sing succeeded in 1861, being then fourteen years of age. The state was consequently under British supervision till 1865.

Mârwar.

(2.) *Jôdpûr* or *Mârwar*. Here the Râja Mân Sing was engaged in perpetual quarrels with his Thâkûrs, with the neighbouring states, and with the British authorities. In 1834 he was finally reduced to obedience.

He died in 1843. Takt Sing of Ahmadnagar was elected by the nobles to succeed. It has the reputation of being the worst governed state in India.

# GOVERNORS-GENERAL.

369

## IX. Lord William Bentinck, 1828-1835.

CHAP. X. A. D.  
A. D. 1823.

(3.) Jeypûr. This is the wealthiest state of Rājputāna, and full of historical associations.

Jeypûr.

Here a dispute regarding the regency led to British interference. The Resident was wounded in an affray, and his assistant, Mr. Blake, killed, in 1831. The murderers were discovered and punished.

Under its present Rāja, Rām Sing, it is well governed and prosperous.

(4.) Bhōpāl became closely allied to England in 1818 (ch. v § 163). Soon after this the Nuwāb died, and his widow, the able and energetic *Sikander Begum*, assumed the government. She affianced her daughter to her nephew, whom she adopted as heir to the throne; but retained the power in her own hands. He appealed to the Governor-General; but it was not till Sir C. Metcalfe, as Acting Governor-General, interfered in 1835, that this person obtained his rightful authority. He soon died, and his daughter succeeded. She governed, till her death in 1864, with wonderful ability and wisdom. She was faithful to the paramount power in the Mutiny of 1857, and was decorated with the grand cross "of the illustrious Star of India."

Bhōpāl.

Sikander Begum.

§ 103. The East India Company's charter (§ 72) expired in 1834.

The Charter of 1833, 4.

In prospect of this, parliamentary committees were appointed to investigate the Company's management of its extensive affairs. It was almost unanimously agreed that *the monopoly of the China trade* should be abandoned. Thus the Company ceased to possess any commercial character; though it was decided that its political functions should not be disturbed.

China trade thrown up.

Some additions to the ecclesiastical establishment were made, including the foundation of Episcopal Sees at Madras and Bombay.

Ecclesiastical foundations.

The result of the extinction of the Company as a commercial body was beneficial. It elevated the views and the policy of the Directors to somewhat of an imperial character.

The trade with China doubled in the following ten years; and the British exports to India and Ceylon increased in the same period from 2½ millions to 6½.

Beneficial effects of abolition of the monopoly.

CH. X. § 104, 105.  
A.D. 1834.

## IX. Lord William Bentinck, 1828-1835.

Agra.

Intro. § 9.

Character of  
Lord William  
Bentinck.His Adminis-  
tration.Sir C. Metcalfe,  
Acting  
Governor-  
General, 1835-  
1836.

The dividends of the Company were guaranteed by Parliame<sup>n</sup>t at £630,000 a year, to be entirely redeemable in 1874.

Âgra was made the capital of a fourth Presidency, and Sir C. Metcalfe appointed to it; but in 1834 this was changed, and the North-western Provinces have been administered by a Lieutenant-Governor from that time.

The new charter was granted in August 1833. It came into force in April 1834.

§ 104. Lord W. Bentinck left India in May 1835. He has been accused of vanity and a love of innovation. He was not a great politician, but his benevolence is unquestioned. Lord Dalhousie alone has surpassed him in the development of the resources of India.

He was guided by instructions from England in regard to his economical measures, and the policy of non-interference in the affairs of native states, which he carried too far. Indifference on the part of the paramount power in India, to what is done in the minor states, is always cruel and impolitic.

§ 105. Sir C. METCALFE succeeded provisionally, being senior member of Council in Calcutta at the time. He had just reached Âgra to assume his appointment of Governor of the new Presidency.

He had early distinguished himself as envoy (1808) to the court of Ranjît Sing (§ 67; ch. xi. § 25), and afterwards as Resident at Delhi (to 1819) and at Haidarâbâd (to 1827). Thence he went to Calcutta as member of Council. He was, after leaving India finally, Governor of Jamaica (1839 to 1841); and Governor-General of Canada (1843 to 1845). He was only second to Warren Hastings in genius and knowledge of the requirements of Indian diplomacy.

## GOVERNORS-GENERAL.

371

### X. Lord Auckland, 1836-1842.

CH. X. § 106, 107.  
A.D. 1836.

But Sir C. Metcalfe was only Acting Governor-General.

The high office was offered to Mountstuart Elphinstone, who declined it on the ground of broken health. It was then proposed to make Metcalfe permanent Governor-General.

The Whigs opposed this, on the ground that such an appointment should only be filled from England.

Lord Heytesbury was then appointed; but on the eve of his departure, the Whigs again came into power, revoked Lord Heytesbury's appointment, and conferred it on Lord Auckland. Metcalfe returned to Agra in 1826, but soon resigned in consequence of the displeasure of the Court of Directors, excited by the "liberation of the press." Great as he undoubtedly was, he had been too long in India, and was perhaps unfitted to be in the van of progress.

The one great act of this administration (which lasted till August 1836), was the *liberation of the press*.

Press freed.

The press in India at first had been subjected to a censorship, then to certain stringent rules drawn up by the Government.

It was now freed from all restrictions, save those of the laws that govern all orders of men in the realm. Macaulay, as member of Council, supported Metcalfe in this matter.

There was, it may be argued, imprudence in Metcalfe's passing such a measure when his tenure of office was merely temporary.

On the whole, however, the concession has proved beneficial, though the experiment was full of danger.

### PART X.—LORD AUCKLAND, 1836-1842.

§ 106. Lord Auckland, the TENTH Governor-General, arrived in India in March 1836, and left it in March 1842.

§ 107. His administration is marked by:

A. The disputed succession in Oudh (1837).

B. The supersession of the treacherous Râja of Satârâ (1839.)

Summary

CH. X. § 108, 110.  
A.D. 1839.

**X. Lord Auckland, 1836-1842. The Afghan expedition.**

C. The Afghan expedition and disasters (1839-1842). The idea of this expedition was conceived in July 1837; and the catastrophe happened in January, 1842; just before Lord Auckland's departure.

D. The occupation of Kurnool.

E. The first Chinese war (1840).

Oudh affairs,  
1837.

§ 108. *Oudh*. N. ar-ud-din Khan, King of Oudh, a profligate and weak prince, had made his son, who had been acknowledged by him as his successor, but afterwards disavowed.

The British Resident supported the claim of an uncle of the deceased king, Na ar-ud-din. An insurrection was headed by the Begum, but soon put down.

Establ., 1839.

§ 109. *Sikh*. Ch. v. § 147 (10). The Raja was deposed by Sir James Carmichael in 1839. His brother was placed on the throne in 1840. The Sikhs unhappily characterised the whole dynasty, which owed its origin to England.

The Afghan ex-  
pedition, 1839.

(Map 150)

(see - son)

§ 110. *The Afghan expedition*. (a.) The land between the Indus (see Map), inhabited by warlike hordes, have often given conquerors to India, from Mahmūd of Ghazni to Ahmed Shāh Abdālī, who was of the great family of the *Sadozys*.

The chief of these tribes was that which possessed Kābul. Dost Muhammad was then on the throne of that city.

§ 60.

(b.) When Mountstuart Elphinstone visited Kābul in 1801, the sovereign was *Shah Shuja*,\* a descendant of Ahmed Shāh Abdālī. This king was dethroned shortly

\* Ahmed Shāh Abdālī. Ch. vi. § 15 (10).

Timūr Shāh. Ch. vi. § 19.

Zemār Shāh. Ch. x. § 3.

Shāh Shuja.

## X. Lord Auckland, 1836-1842. The Afghan expedition.

CHAP. X. 1839.

after; and the states of Afghanistan were divided among various members of a rival family, called the *Barakzye* tribe. The most powerful of these was *Itt Muhammad*, who possessed Kabul and Ghazni. Ranjit Singh, the ruler of the Panjab, had seized on Kashmir and the districts east of the Indus, including Peshawar. Herat was occupied by a descendant of the Abdali, and Balkh was annexed to Bokhara.

(3) miles from Kabul.

(c.) Shâh Shuja lived in Lodiâna, in exile, under the protection of the British power; he had, in fact, a pension of 4,000 rupees a month from that Government.

Shâh Shuja.

An expedition he made in 1834, with the hope of recovering his lost dominions, was unsuccessful, owing to the bravery of Dost Muhammad. Shâh Shuja returned in 1835 to his old place of exile.

1834.

(d.) Soon after this, Persia began to aim at the subjugation of all the provinces up to the Indus, and began by attacking Herat. The Russian Government encouraged the Shâh of Persia (who was to repeat the exploits of Nâdir Shâh) in these undertakings; and there was a prospect (as many thought) that all Western Asia would soon form one vast confederacy, under Russian influence; thus threatening the tranquillity of British India. The question was:—*Shall England interfere in matters beyond the Indus? And if so, how?*

1835.

Persia and Russia.

The proverb is current in the East:—“*He who would rule Hindûstân must first conquer Kâbul.*” All previous rulers of India had done so. Must England also acknowledge, that paramount influence in Kâbul is essential to the lords of Hindûstân?

British interference necessary.

Captain Burnes (afterwards Sir Alexander) who had been sent as envoy to Kâbul, did much by his representations to determine the British authorities to the policy of active interference.

Burnes.

(e.) Lord Auckland resolved to restore *Shâh Shuja*,

Shâh Shuja to be restored.

CHAP. X. §110.  
A.D. 1839.

X. Lord Auckland, 1836-1842. The Afghan expedition.

The tripartite  
treaty.

1838.

Sir J. Keane's  
army of the  
Indus.

1839.

Mr. W. H. Mac-  
Naghten.

Defence of  
Herât. Siege  
raised, Sept. 9,  
1839.

whose claims were thought to be better founded than those of Dôst Muhammad, and whose cause was believed to be the more popular in Afghânistân. Thus, it was said, we should have a friendly and even dependent power in Kâbul as a bulwark against Russian aggression in the North-West. The whole scheme was foolish. If Lord Auckland had bent his energies to effect a reconciliation between Dôst Muhammad and Ranjît Sing, and had established friendly relations with the Afghân Court, the war would have been rendered unnecessary. Dôst Muhammad was prepared to act as an ally of England: Lord Auckland threw him into the arms of Russia. A treaty was signed, however, between Ranjît Sing, Shâh Shuja, and the British in June 1838; and a British force was marched to the Indus, for the invasion of Afghânistân. Everyone acquainted with India regarded the expedition with dismay.

This army, called "*the army of the Indus*," was drawn from all the three Presidencies, and was under the command of Sir John Keane. One division of it was called the Shâh's army, and the other the Shâhzâda's (or Prince's), being nominally under the command of Teimûr, the son of Shâh Shuja.

(f.) Mr. W. H. MacNaghten was appointed envoy and Minister at the Court of Shâh Shuja. He was a profound Oriental scholar, had served in many capacities with honour, and was then Secretary to the Supreme Government.

(g.) Meanwhile the Shâh of Persia's army, 40,000 strong, which had laid siege to Herât, the gate of Afghânistân, was compelled to retreat, mainly through the genius and gallantry of Lieutenant Eldred Pottinger, who had been sent into Central Asia by his uncle Sir Henry Pottinger, Resident of Katch, to pursue ethnological researches. This led to a reduction of the forces

**X. Lord Auckland, 1836-1842. The Afghan expedition.**CHAP. X. § 1  
A.D. 1839.

sent to Afghānistān, and might well have put an end to the enterprise. The defence of Herāt by Pottinger may fairly be compared with Olive's defence of Arcot.

(h.) The "Shāh's army" marched from Ferōz-pūr in December, crossed the Indus, took possession of Bukkur, thence advanced to Shikarpūr, to Dadur, at the entrance of the *Bolān Pass*, and to Kettah, where it arrived March 26, 1839; and was followed by the Bombay force in April.

Army marches through Sind and Kandahār.

(Its crest is 5,793 feet high; its length about 54 miles.)

(Comp. Intro § 18, and map

Kurāchi was taken in February by a naval armament. The Amirs of Sind were opposed to the passage of the British army, but their objections were roughly set aside. (§ 125.)

The army passed through the Kojut Pass, and thence to *Kandahār*, where all had arrived early in May. There Shāh Shuja was solemnly enthroned. The march had been one of terrible privation, bravely borne. While the force was recruiting at Kandahār, tidings reached them of the death of the Panjāb lion, Ranjīt Sing, 27th June, 1839. A grand meeting between him and Lord Auckland had taken place in November 1838, only second in magnificence to the meeting at Rāpar (§ 101).

Enthronement of Shāh Shujā (1839) (280 miles S. V. of Kābul.)

Death of Ranjīt Sing, 1839. (Ch. xl. § 25, 26.)

(i.) The force now marched on towards Kābul, and the leaders were surprised to find Ghazni a well-fortified city. They had no battering-train; but the Kābul gate was blown open with a charge of 900 lbs. of gunpowder. Major Thompson of the Bengal Engineers was the real captor of Ghazni. Brigadier Sale (the immortal hero of Jellālābād) and Colonel Dennie were among the foremost of a band of heroes who stormed the fortress. Thus "the bride of the East" came into the hands of the English.

Storming of Ghazni, 1839

The army moved on and entered Kābul, August 7, Dōst Muhammad having fled before it to Bokhārā.

An auxiliary force which had marched through the



CHAP. X. § 110  
A.D. 1840.

X. Lord Auckland, 1836-1842. The Afghan expedition.

Army sent back.  
A subsidiary  
force retained.

Khyber Pass, having taken Ali Musjid and Jellalâbâd by the way, arrived at Kâbul early in September.

(j.) The Shâh being thus restored to his kingdom, the army was sent back; General Nott and Colonel Sale remaining with a part of the Bengâl force to defend the newly restored king. This subsidiary body of troops was left there against Shâh Shuja's wishes. Sir W. MacNaghten was Resident at the court of the restored king. The difficulties of the supposed conquerors began with the completion of the military enterprise.

The Bombay force, under General Willshire, on their homeward way, took Kelât, the Khan of which had most treacherously attacked the army on its march towards Kâbul.

Honours.

(k.) Lord Auckland was now rewarded by being created Earl of Auckland. Sir John Keane was made Lord Keane of Ghazni. Mr. MacNaghten and Colonel Henry Pottinger (afterwards Governor of Madras) were created Baronets. Many others were knighted, among whom were Robert Sale and Alexander Burnes. A great many severe, and sometimes disastrous, conflicts had to be engaged in, before Afghânistân was even nominally subdued. The last was at Parwân, a village in the Panjshu valley, near the Ghôrband Pass, where Dôst Muhammad sustained a final defeat, and surrendered himself to Sir W. MacNaghten (November 1, 1840).

Dôst Muham-  
mad surrenders.

He was treated with respect, and sent to Calcutta, where he had a pension assigned to him, and was an honoured guest at the Government House.

The calm before  
the storm, 1841.

(l.) Profound peace prevailed (at least on the surface) from that time till the beginning of October 1841. Sir William had been nominated to the Governorship of Bombay, and was on the eve of departure, when the Ghilji chiefs revolted. Sir R. Sale was marching to Jellalâbâd, on his return to India, and was encountered

## X. Lord Auckland, 1838-1842. The Afghan expedition.

CHAP. X. III  
A. 1840.

by these insurgents. He forced the Kûrd Kâbul Pass made his way with continual fighting to Tâdû, thence to Juduluck, in the direction of Gundamaik, and to Jellâlâbâd (November 12), which he found invested on every side by hordes of enemies. *Afghans had risen.* And the scheme of the insurgents was, that the British should be permitted to set out on their return to India; but should be by degrees cut off, till only one man was left alive; and that he should be placed, deprived of his limbs, at the eastern entrance of the Khyber Pass, with a letter in his teeth, announcing him to be the last survivor of the Afghan expedition. General Sale's skill and bravery prevented the full consummation of this plan.

At Kandahar  
He was met by  
the British  
141.

Jellâlâbâd was a ruinous fortress; but Sale and Major Broadfoot soon set it to rights, turned out the Afghan population, and put everything into such a state as to defy his countless enemies.

(Comp § 117)

(*in.*) Meanwhile at Kâbul the storm broke on the morning of 2nd November 1841. Sir Alexander Burnes was assassinated, with his brother and other officers.

Kandahar, No. 2, 1841.

There were brave men at Kâbul; but in an unaccountable apathy seized upon them in command Captain Colin Mackenzie valiantly held the fort of Nishan Khar in the city of Kâbul, against overwhelming numbers from the 2nd to the 11th; and then, his ammunition being expended, cut his way through bringing off the wounded, the women, and children. General Elphinstone, the chief military authority, was old and ineffectual.

Apathy.

Days passed, and the insurrection was allowed to gather strength. Lady Sale and her daughter were there. Her narrative, and that of Vincent Eyre (§ 175), give a full account of those painful events.

Sir W. MacNaghten seems to have retained his energy and coolness; but he could not command the army. Negotiations were commenced with the insurgent

CHAP. X. § 110.  
A.D. 1841.

**X. Lord Auckland, 1836-1842. The Afghan expedition.**

Murder of Mac-  
Naghten, 1841.

Deplorable in-  
fatuation in  
Kâbul.

Evacuation of  
Kâbul, Jan.  
1842.

Army perishes.

Fighting Akbar  
Khân gets many  
of the English  
as prisoners  
into his hands.

chiefs; and at length Sir William was induced to meet Muhammad Akbar Khân, a son of Dôst Muhammad, who had deceitfully offered to put an end to the insurrection, upon being assured of the situation of Vazîr to Shâh Shuja, and receiving an immense pecuniary reward. At the conference the British envoy and Captain Trevor were shot by Akbar Khân; and Captains Colin Mackenzie and Lawrence were made prisoners. Even this did not arouse the military authorities. They agreed to bind the British Government to pay fourteen lakhs as ransom, to evacuate the country, and to restore the deposed king. Against this humiliating agreement Major Eldred Pottinger, acting as political agent, protested, but in vain.

(n.) On the morning of the 6th January 1842, the miserable retreat began. Shâh Shuja was left behind. He was for a time acknowledged as king; but in April 1842, he was shot, and his body thrown into a ditch. Incredible disorder, piercing cold, want of every necessary of life, and the constant attacks of the blood-thirsty Afghâns, who hovered around, rendered this march one of continual disaster. They struggled through the tremendous pass of Kûrd Kâbul, and a hot fire was opened on them by Ghiljîs on the heights. Lady Sale was wounded by a shot. Three thousand perished in the pass.

(o.) Now Akbar Khân appeared again on the scene. He offered to take charge of all the ladies and married officers, and to escort them safely to Jellâlâbâd. To this at length they were obliged to consent, and thus General Elphinstone, Colonel Shelton, Colonel Palmer, Majors Pottinger and Griffiths, with Lady Sale, Lady MacNaghten, and a few others, became prisoners in the hands of the murderer of Sir W. MacNaghten. Of the remainder, only one, Dr. Brydon, arrived at Jellâlâbâd to tell of the fate of the thousands who had left Kâbul.

**X. Lord Auckland, 1836-1842. The Afghan expedition.**CH. X § 111.  
A.D. 1842

This was a calamity almost without a parallel in British history. There was but one survivor (besides 120 in captivity), out of an army of 10,000 men.

(p.) At this time it must be remembered that the veteran General Nott was maintaining his post at Kandahâr, Sir R. Sale at Jellâlâbâd, and that General Pollock was at Peshâwar with an army destined to force its way through the Khvber Pass to rescue Sale and his companions. Akbar Khân was now supreme in Affghânistân.

Nott, Sale, and Pollock.

Sir Henry Rawlinson, a man of profound learning and sagacity, added to large experience in Eastern politics, was the British political agent at Kandahâr.

Rawlinson.

The sequel of the history must be reserved for another section (§ 116). Relief will come, and retribution follow. Lord Auckland before leaving India made every preparation for the advance of that force, which in the time of his successor retrieved these disasters.

§ 111. The history of the Earl of Auckland's administration would not be complete without some account of the first Chinese war. The cause of it was the smuggling of opium into China by English merchants.

First Chinese War, 1840.

The Emperor of China, in order to check the pernicious habit of opium eating and smoking among his subjects, had laid a very heavy duty on this drug.

Opium

In putting down the smuggling of opium into the country, which naturally became frequent, the Chinese authorities committed unwarranted outrages on the ships and subjects of Great Britain.

To avenge these outrages, and to put the Chinese trade on a proper footing, the war was undertaken.

Troops from India, under Sir Hugh Gough, were sent; and, after a series of brilliant exploits, were successful in bringing the Chinese to terms.

By the treaty of Nankin the island of Hong-Kong was made over to England; and four ports were opened to European ships. These were Amoy, Fu-chow, Ningpo, and Shanghai.

Hong Kong ceded, 1842.

The "Opium War" was not popular in England.

§ 112. At this time the Râja of Kurnûl, who appears to have been insane, conducted himself in such a manner as to call for the

The Râja of Kurnûl removed, 1841

CH. X. § 113, 114.  
A.D. 1842.

Lord Auckland's departure, 1842.  
His character.

The connection of the State with Hindû temples severed.

Summary of Lord Ellenborough's administration.

# **XI. Lord Ellenborough, 1842-1844. Afghan disasters retrieved.**

interference of the British Government. He was removed, to the great relief of his oppressed subjects, and sent to Trichinopoly, where he was in the habit of attending Christian service in the Fort Church, in which he was assassinated by a Muhammadan fanatic.

§ 113. The Earl of Auckland left India on the 12th March, 1842. His name is inseparably connected with the Afghan expedition; but the impression he left in India was that he possessed high qualities, and might have done much for the country, had his lot not been cast in troublous times, when the fear of Russian aggression hurried England into this ill-fated undertaking.

At the beginning of this war there was, owing in part to his good management, a clear balance in the treasury of £10,000,000 sterling; at the close of it there was a large debt.

The connection of the British Government with the Hindû temples and worship was terminated in 1842. The State had acted as trustee for the endowments, and had caused various marks of respect to be paid on Hindû festivals. This was now properly discontinued.

## **PART XI.—LORD ELLENBOROUGH, 1842-1844.**

§ 114. Lord Ellenborough arrived in Calcutta, February 28, 1842. He was a statesman of high repute, eloquent, industrious, and energetic; and had been President of the Board of Control.

§ 115. His administration is remarkable for:—  
A. the measures adopted to retrieve the national honour in Afghanistan;  
B. the chastisement of the Gwáliôr Durbâr;  
C. the conquest of Sind.

**XI. Lord Ellenborough, 1842-1844. Afghán disasters retrieved**

CH. X § 116, 119.  
A.D. 1842.

§ 116. We must now resume (from § 110) the history of the disastrous Afghán expedition. In March 1842 Ghazni was evacuated by the British troops, almost all of whom perished. This was disastrous and disheartening.

Ghazni evacuated (Map p. 50)

§ 117. Jellálábád held out. The annals of warfare contain few things more glorious. An earthquake added to the miseries of this heroic garrison, throwing down defences that had cost them months of labour. Yet it only did they maintain the fort; but, issuing forth, drove Akbar Khán away, and burnt his camp.

The "Illustrations" of the siege of Jellálábád.

The heroic Colonel Dennie fell in the action. Major Duff and Captain (Sir Henry) Havelock were among the most brave and energetic of the defenders of the fortress.

Duff, Major Duff, and Captain Havelock

General Pollock (an old officer of Lord Lake's, who had seen forty years of arduous service), with the relieving army, forced the Khyber Pass on the 5th April, and soon after reached Jellálábád. He baffled the Khyberis, who were bent on obstructing the march, by crowning the heights on either side with his troops.

§ 118. General Nott meanwhile gallantly held Kandahár. Throughout the war it is to be noted that the Afgháns never for a moment held their ground in presence of a capable general.

Nott in Kandahár.

A body of troops under General England advanced through the Bolán Pass to Kettah; but were driven back in an attempt to advance to relieve General Nott. A second effort was more successful, and they reached Kandahár; but the credit of their leader had no share in the credit of the expedition.

§ 119. The unfortunate Sháh Shuja was murdered in April, at Kábul (§ 110).

Death of Sháh Shuja

At this time (April 1842) the Governor-General ordered Pollock and Nott to return direct to India, leaving the national honour unvindicated and the captives unrescued; but then

Lord Ellenborough's decision.

CH. X. § 120, 122.  
A.D. 1842.XI. Lord Ellenborough, 1842-1844. *Afghan disasters retrieved.*Pollock's  
glorious march.

generals, with Major Rawlinson, evaded compliance with his orders; and eventually they were permitted, at their own risk, to take the noble course they did.

§ 120. General Pollock now moved on by way of Gundamuck, Mammû Khail, Tezîn, Kûrd-Kâbul, and Bûthâk to Kâbul, where he arrived on the 15th September. Continual attacks of the enemy were repulsed, and the most decided victories atoned for the disgraces of the British arms on this same route a year before.

Nott joins  
Pollock.

§ 121. General Nott having sent a portion of his troops back to India, by way of Kettah, now marched with the remainder to meet General Pollock at Kâbul. Several smart engagements were fought against Shams-ud-dîn, in which complete and signal success crowned the British arms. Ghaznî was again taken, and its citadel utterly destroyed. The gates of the tomb of Mahmûd of Ghaznî, which had eight centuries before been taken from the temple of Sômnâth, were carried off, and finally deposited among old lumber in the fort at Âgra! Nott joined Pollock at Kâbul, September 5.

(Ch. ii. § 11.)

The proclamation by which the Governor-General (who received the returning army with great pomp at Ferôzpur) notified the termination of the war was lamentably deficient in good taste. It censured Lord Auckland, and its bombastic reference to the *Sômnâth gates* brought on its author deserved ridicule and rebuke from every quarter. It was dated October 1, 1842.

Recovery of the  
captives, Sept.  
1842.

§ 122. The prisoners in the hands of Akbar Khân were happily and strangely recovered, and joined Sir R. Sale at the Urgandî Pass, on the 20th September.

It had been Akbar Khân's intention to take them to Tûrkistân, and there to sell them for slaves; but their keeper, Saleh Muhammad Khân, was bribed to restore them. Sir R. Sale thus recovered his wife and daughter on his fiftieth birthday.

**XI. Lord Ellenborough, 1842-1844. Afghán disasters retrieved.**CH. X. § 123, 124.  
A.D. 1842.

Great numbers of the Afgháns had retired to Istalíf. Thither the English troops, under General MacKenzie, with an auxiliary force of Kuzzilbash horse under Captain Colin Mackenzie, followed, stormed the fort, and recovered vast quantities of property stolen from the British in Kábul. The great bazaar at Kábul was blown up: an act which can hardly be justified.

Istalíf.

§ 123. The army was now withdrawn from Afghánistán, and arrived without serious molestation at Feróz-púr. Dôst Muhammad and the other prisoners were released, and the whole scheme was definitely abandoned. It had cost £15,000,000, and 20,000 lives! The war had been undertaken in defiance of the dictates of prudence. One portion of the transaction is humiliating; but the whole leaves on the mind a vivid impression of the indomitable courage and boundless resources of the great majority of the Englishmen whose names appear in the history.

Settlement of  
Afghán affairs,  
1842.

NOTE.—Dôst Muhammad was reinstated immediately. From 1842-1855 no intercourse existed between him and the Indian Government (§ 146). He died in June 1863, leaving sixteen sons. Of these, Shír Ali, after many struggles, made good his position as Amír (1868).

§ 124. The troubles at Gwáliôr next demand our attention. Doulat Ráo Sindia (ch. v. § 161) died in 1827.

Troubles in  
Gwáliôr

His widow, daughter of the infamous Shírzí Khán Ghâtge (ch. v. § 116.), governed as guardian of her adopted son Jankojí till 1833, when the latter assumed the actual management. He died, February 1843, childless. His widow, a girl of thirteen, adopted Bhagrat Ráo, a relative, and a contest for the regency commenced between the Mahārání and Mamá Saháb, an uncle of the deceased chief. The Resident espoused the cause of the latter, whom the Queen notwithstanding expelled.

Gwáliôr affairs  
from 1827 to  
1843(See table, ch. v.  
§ 46.)

It was evident that affairs in Gwáliôr were fast tending to a state of such utter disorganisation as



CHAP. X § 125  
A.D. 1842.

**XI. Lord Ellenborough, 1842-1844. Afghan disasters retrieved.**

would have disturbed the peace of the surrounding countries. There was in the city an army of 30,000 infantry, and 10,000 horse, with 200 cannon; and the officers were mostly men of European descent. At Lāhōr, too, there was an army of 70,000 Sikhs, officered by Europeans, anxious for some pretext for crossing the Satlaj. The troubles in the Panjāb had begun. (Ch. xi. § 27, 28.)

The Governor-General rightly judged that prompt interference was necessary. The British troops, accompanied by Lord Ellenborough himself, advanced across the Chambal, and unexpectedly found the Gwāliōr army drawn up at *Mahārājpur*. Sir H. Gough, the commander-in-chief, had under him Generals Littler, Valiant, and Dennis. A complete victory was gained, but with severe loss. Sir Hugh says in his despatch, that he had not "done justice to the gallantry of his opponents."

On the same day another victory was gained at *Punnuir* by Major-General Grey. In these two battles, the guns, standards, ammunition, and treasure of the enemy were taken; and there was nothing left the Gwāliōr durbār but to throw themselves on the clemency of their conquerors. A council of regency was formed, the British contingent was increased, the debts owed by Sindia's Government to the English were paid, and affairs were put on such a footing as to afford a prospect of stability and tranquillity to the Gwāliōr state. (Intro. § 12.)

§ 125. The conquest of *Sind* (Intro. § 18), and its wise government by its conqueror, Sir Charles Napier, render this period memorable.

In 1786, Sind was seized by a tribe of Belūchis called *Talpūrs*, whose chief was Mīr Fatih Khān. By him the country was divided between various members of

Battle of Mahārājpur, Dec. 20, 1843.  
(A few miles from Gwāliōr)  
Map of Central India agency.

(Map of Central India, p. 7)

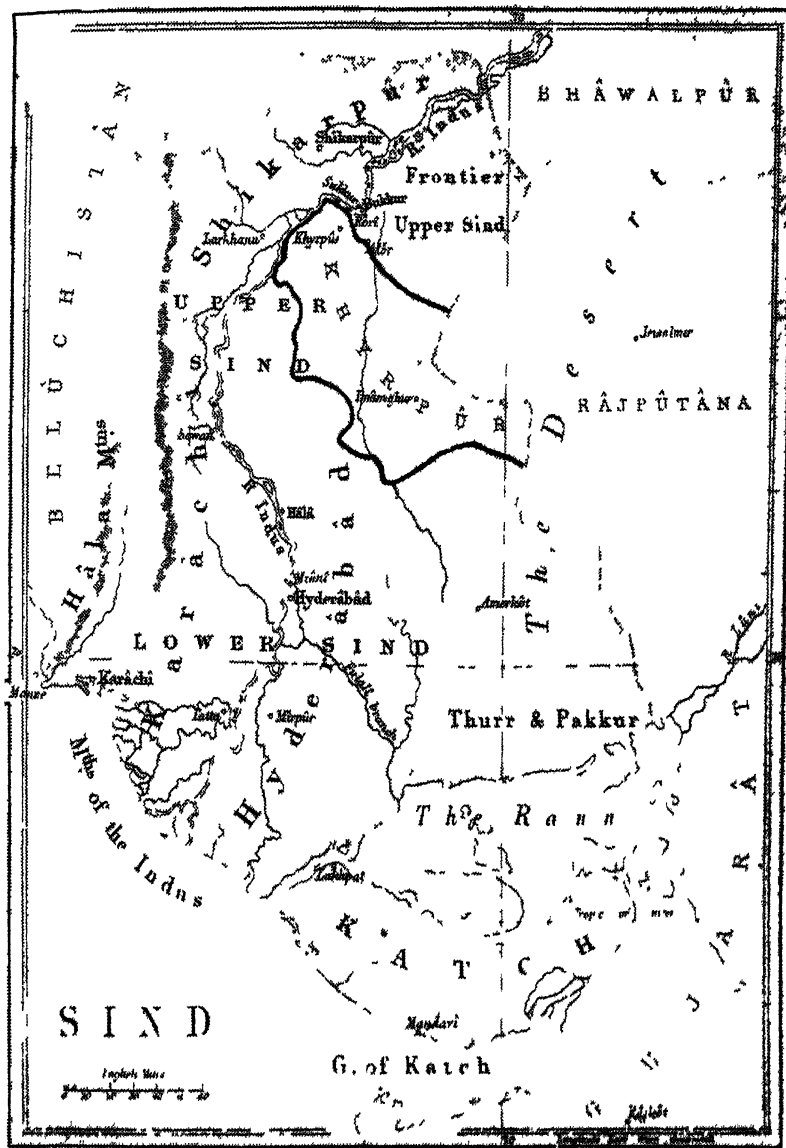
Punnuir, Dec. 1843.  
(A few miles from Gwāliōr)

Settlement of Gwāliōr affairs

(Com. § 178)

Sind a summary of its history

Belūch usurpers, 1786





## XI. Lord Ellenborough, 1842-1844.

CHAP. X §125.  
A D 1843.

his family. Thus arose the three states of *Haidarâbâd*, *Khyrpûr*, and *Mirpûr*, in each of which a plurality of Amîrs held sway. These Amîrs—foreigners in the country—dwelt in castles, followed the chase, and treated their subjects much as the Norman barons did their Saxon tenants in the days of King Stephen.

Every attempt to trade with the country was discouraged by the Amîrs, who drove away the chief of the British factory from *Tatta*, where an establishment had existed from 1799.

Their unwise  
management.(The ancient  
*Pattala*.)

(§ 69.)

In 1809 a treaty between the Amîrs and Lord Minto had been signed. In 1820 another treaty permitted free intercourse and trade. In 1832 the Indus was thrown open, as the result of Sir Henry Pottinger's mission (§ 101). In 1838 a British Resident was appointed to *Haidarâbâd*, and the state was thus secured from the attacks of *Ranjit Sing*.

Sind had always been a dependency of *Kâbul*; and *Shâh Shuja* now made demands of arrears of tribute. This led to further British mediation. The Amîrs were certainly in a great measure dependent on England, and yet were her bitter and jealous enemies.

(Compare  
§ 11.)

In fact, the Amîrs, who had some cause to complain, seem to have been thoroughly hostile and treacherous; and an attack upon the Residency, which Sir James Outram defended with consummate bravery, brought matters to an issue.

The Sind Amîrs.

In October 1842, Sir C. Napier was sent to Sind as commander-in-chief and plenipotentiary; and as he was not a man to be trifled with, and had gone to Sind determined to take possession of the country, he took measures at once to seize and destroy the desert stronghold of *Imân-ghur*, whither one of the leading Amîrs had fled. This was an exploit of remarkable daring.

*Imân-ghur*, Jan.  
9, 1843.

Sir Charles then advanced to *Miânî*, a place six miles from *Haidarâbâd*, where the Sindian army was en-

*Miânî*, Feb. 17,  
1843.

CHAP. X. § 126.  
A.D. 1844.

XI. Lord Ellenborough, 1842-1844.

Dubba, a village  
near Haidar-  
âbad, March 24,  
1843.(Or *Amarkôt*.)Amirs sent to  
Benâres.Good govern-  
ment of Sir C.  
Napier.Lord Ellen-  
borough re-  
called, 1844.Was it right or  
wrong?

trenched. A victory was gained by the British, and which six of the Amirs, three of Khyrpûr and three of Haidarâbâd, surrendered themselves.

Shîr Muhammad of Mirpûr was still in arms; against him the battle of Haidarâbâd (or *Dubba*) fought on the 24th March, resulting in a complete victory to the British troops. Mirpûr was then occupied and Umerkôt (the birthplace of Akbar) was captured.

Sind was now taken possession of; the Amirs, whose tyrannous assumption had lasted about sixty years, were sent to Benâres with liberal pensions; the Ir was fully opened; and "Little Egypt" began, under the administration of the great Pro-consul, a career of unexampled prosperity.

The feeling, however, then prevailed, and posterity will deliberately confirm the opinion, that the war was unrighteous. It is the one annexation upon which the British nation can look with no satisfaction. It has, however, arisen out of *manifest evil*.

The Bengâl and Madras sepoys refused to garrison Sind, out extra allowances. This was one indication, amongst many, of the decay of discipline in the "Sepoy army." Sind was garrisoned by Bombay troops.

§ 126. The Earl of Ellenborough returned to Calcutta in February 1844, and set himself vigorously to the task of governing the empire, the bounds of which he had so much enlarged; but in a few months he was recalled (and, on the whole, rightly so,) by the Court Directors, from whom he had differed on many points. This was an extreme exercise of power on the part of the court, and it was censured by the Duke of Wellington and the country generally; but the wisdom of the choice of a successor reconciled the nation to the vigorous act of the twenty-four princes of Leader Street.

# GOVERNORS-GENERAL.

387

## XII. Lord Hardinge, 1844-1847.

CH. X. § 127, 129.  
A.D. 1845.

Lord Ellenborough left Calcutta in August 1844.

He was ambitious, fond of display, and self-reliant; but industrious, able, disinterested, a true friend of the army, and a man of undoubted genius.

His character.

To Mr. Wilberforce Bird, his second in Council, many useful measures, such as the extinction of slavery in India, are to be ascribed.

Mr. Wilberforce Bird.

## PART XII.—LORD HARDINGE, 1844-1847.

### § 127. *Sir Henry* (afterwards Lord) *Hardinge*.

(1.) *Summary*. A. His appointment was made to satisfy (§ 126) all parties. He was a highly distinguished soldier and statesman, and an intimate friend of the Duke of Wellington, under whom he had fought in the Peninsula and at Waterloo, where he lost an arm.

Summary of Lord Hardinge's administration.

B. The great events of his administration are connected with the first *Panjáb war*, and its four battles (fought and won in fifty-four days): *Múdké*, *Feréz-sháh*, *Álwal*, and *Sobráon*.

C. The efforts to put down infanticide, human sacrifices, &c., in *Gúmsúr*.

§ 128. At this time the *Panjáb* was in a state of miserable anarchy. (Ch. xi. § 26, 27.)

The first *Panjáb war*, 1845, 1846.

The *Sikhs* were the aggressors. They crossed the *Satlaj*, December 1845. They were repulsed, December 18, at *Múdké*, by Lord Gough; again, December 21 and 22, at *Feréz-sháh*, by Lord Gough and Lord Hardinge, after a very severe contest; again, January 28, 1846, by Sir Harry Smith, at *Álwal*; and finally, by Lord Gough, Lord Hardinge, and the whole British forces, at *Sobráon*, February 10, 1846, after a most gallant and determined resistance. (Ch. xi. § 28-32.)

Four great battles.

§ 129. *Dhulip Sing*, the youngest putative son of *Banjtt Sing*, was now recognized as *Rája* of the *Panjáb*; the *Doáb* between the *Bías* and the *Satlaj* (the *Jullindhur Doáb*) was annexed to the British empire; and an indemnity for the expenses of this unprovoked war was paid by the *Sikhs*. (Ch. x. § 83.)

Treaty of 1846.

CH. X. § 130, 133.  
A.D. 1846.

## XII. Lord Hardinge, 1844-1847.

Kashmir.

§ 130. Kashmir was then made over to Golāb Sing, a Rājput, the most prominent Sikh leader, who paid £1,000,000 of the tribute. This was on many accounts a wise arrangement. His son now rules over that province in peace; and measures for the improvement of the country have been adopted at the suggestion of the British Government, and more especially of the late Sir H. Lawrence. Still its management is hardly satisfactory.

Honours.

§ 131. Sir Henry Hardinge and Sir Hugh Gough were both raised to the peerage for their gallant exploits. (Ch. xi. § 34.)

It seemed as if wars must now cease in the Indian possessions of Great Britain. Between February 1843 and February 1846, eight great battles had been fought, in which the three armies of Sind, Gwāliōr, and the Panjāb, numbering 120,000 men, had been annihilated. For a few years after this, India in fact enjoyed an eventful peace, the fruit of war. A large reduction in the army was now made.

Lord Hardinge's liberal policy.

§ 132. Lord Hardinge, while averse to any undue interference with the prejudices of the people of India, promoted education; and, among other wise enactments, forbade the prosecution of Government works on the Sunday. He also gave his assistance to the project for the Ganges canal, and to the plan for the construction of railways in India. § 142-146.

Inhuman customs put down.

§ 133. His administration was happily marked by vigorous, and ultimately successful, attempts more completely to put down infanticide, Satī, and human sacrifices. These horrible crimes were still committed in many parts of India; and especially in Gūmsūr and in some other parts of Orissa, and in Gondwāna, among the Khonds and other hill-tribes, the most revolting cruelties were often perpetrated. The chief of these was called the Meriah sacrifice. The Khonds, according

(Comp. Introd. § 13.)

Or Kandha.

# GOVERNORS-GENERAL.

389

## XII. Lord Hardinge, 1844-1847.

CH. X. § 134, 136.  
A.D. 1847.

to Captain Macpherson's report, were in the habit of sacrificing as many as twenty-five human victims at one festival. These were kidnapped, or bought, and were tortured, with every refinement of cruelty, before being actually sacrificed.

This has now been effectually put down, chiefly by the efforts of those laborious, earnest men, Captain S. C. Macpherson, Colonel Campbell, and their assistants.

§ 134. Free-trade was promoted; duties paid for the introduction of merchandise into some of the large towns, such as Lûdiâna, Umbâla, and Sûrat, were abolished; and the real prosperity of the country was promoted by this noble ruler, who was at once a wise and beneficent administrator and a brave and determined warrior.

Encouragement  
to trade.

Among the men he selected for high office were Sir H. Elliot, Sir John Lawrence, and Sir Patrick Grant.

§ 135. The Tâj Mahâl at Âgra, and other architectural remains, were at this time repaired and restored; and measures adopted to check the rash and careless habits by which the many interesting monuments of past times were being destroyed in various parts of the land.

Ancient build-  
ings.

§ 136. The Engineering College at Rûrkî, planned by the benevolent and laborious Lieutenant-Governor of the North-West Provinces, Mr. Thomason, was sanctioned and promoted by Lord Hardinge.

The Rûrkî  
College.

Scarcely any Governor-General has ever gained so much influence over the minds of men in India as this admirable man. He left Calcutta early in 1848, after a government of forty-two months' duration.

Departure of  
Lord Hardinge.

March 15.



CH. X. § 137, 138.  
A D. 1848.

XIII. Lord Dalhousie, 1848-1856.

## PART XIII.—EARL OF DALHOUSIE, 1848-1856.

§ 137. THE EARL OF DALHOUSIE was the thirteenth Governor-General.

Summary of  
Lord Dal-  
housie's admi-  
nistration.(1.) *Summary.* He arrived in Calcutta early in 1848, and departed early in 1856. He died soon after his return, worn out with his Indian work. He assumed the supreme power in India in his thirty-sixth year. He may be called the last of the *Company's* Governors-General.(2.) The first great event of this administration was the *second Panjâb war*, with its *two battles* and *one siege* :

(Ch. xi. § 40.)

Chillianwallah . . . . . January 13, 1849.

Gujarât . . . . . February 21, 1849.

Mûltân, taken . . . . . January 21, 1849.

(3.) The commencement of railways and electric telegraphs in India was owing to Lord Dalhousie's energetic influence.

(4.) The "*Lex loci*" was passed in 1851.(5.) The *Second Burmese war*. Pegu annexed (1852-3).

(6.) Peace with Dôst Muhammad (1855).

(7.) Annexation of OUDH (1856).

(§ 44.)

(8.) Tanjore (1856) and Nâgpur lapsed for want of heirs (1853).

(9.) Compare also Ch. iii. § 16 (13); and Ch. v. § 164.

His plans and  
policy.

§ 138. Lord Dalhousie came out as a "peace Governor;" as many before him had done, whom circumstances hurried into war. When war broke out a second time in the Panjâb, the Governor-General in Calcutta said:—"I have wished for peace; I have longed for it; I have striven for it. But, if the enemies of India desire war, war they shall have; and, on my word, they shall have it with a vengeance."

Lord Dal-  
housie's decla-  
ration.The "*Lex*  
*loci*."  
(Comp. § 94.)In October 1849 a modified form of trial by jury was introduced. A law, called the "*Lex loci*," was passed, ordaining that no penal consequences should attend the change of religion by any man.

# GOVERNORS-GENERAL.

391

## XIII. Lord Dalhousie, 1848-1856.

CH. X. § 139, 140.  
A.D. 1852.

§ 139. A. The second Panjáb war began with the outbreak in Múltán (ch. xi. § 35-43), under Múlráj. (April 1848.)

Messrs. Agnew and Anderson were basely murdered.

B. A conspiracy was formed in Láhôr at the same time to massacre all the British officers in the Panjáb, and to make a complete revolution in the province.

C. Lieutenant Edwardes (afterwards Sir Herbert Edwardes), General Sampson Whish, Lord Gough, and General Gilbert are the names that most attract our attention in this short but brilliant war.

D. The result was the annexation of the Panjáb, which was placed under a Board of Commissioners, of whom Sir Henry Lawrence was president, Sir John Lawrence was second, while Mr. Mansel and Sir E. Montgomery were the other members. Under these, fifty-six gentlemen were employed as assistants. A general disarming of the people from the Biás to the Satlaj now took place, when 120,000 weapons were surrendered. The result was a decrease of crime throughout the whole province.

Lord Dalhousie was made a Marquess.

Lord Gough, beloved by the army, left India in May 1849.

Sir C. Napier, who was of a fiery temper and unyielding disposition, was Commander-in-Chief in India, after the departure of Lord Gough. There was something approaching to a mutiny among the sepoys in the Panjáb. On this occasion Sir C. Napier exceeded his powers in his attempt to satisfy the discontented sepoys; and being rebuked by Lord Dalhousie, resigned in 1850.

The Duke of Wellington decided that the Governor-General was right.

§ 140. The second Birmese war, which broke out after India had enjoyed the blessings of peace for three years, ended in the annexation of Pegu. It arose from the oppression of British subjects by the King of Áva and his officials. The arrogance of the Birmese seems to have suffered no abatement by the first war, though its result was so disastrous to them. However, Commodore Lambert by sea, and General Godwin by land, soon brought the Birmese to their senses. In annexing Pegu (December 21, 1852), by which the kingdom of Birma was deprived of the whole of its seaboard, Lord Dalhousie, who had entered upon the war with the sincerest reluctance, gave the King of Áva a severe

The second Pan-  
jáb war, 1848.

Múltán.

Edwardes,  
Whish, Gough,  
and Gilbert.

The annexation  
of the Panjáb.

Sir C. Napier's  
resignation,  
1850.

The second  
Birmese war,  
1852.

(Comp. § 79.)

CH. X. § 141, 142.  
A.D. 1853.

## XIII. Lord Dalhousie, 1848-1856.

(§ 79.)

lesson; secured a rich province for his country; and threw open a noble river to the trade of the world. Pegu had not been in the hands of these Birma sovereigns more than about a century. The war was concluded June 30, 1853, after lasting eighteen months, and costing a little less than two millions sterling. The marvellous energy, skill, and forethought, with which Lord Dalhousie himself arranged every detail of the expedition, astonished all India.

*NOTE.*—Rangoon, the capital of Pegu, is on one of the branches of the Irrawaddy, called the Syrian river. It is now a place of extensive trade. (Comp. § 79.)

Colonel (Sir Arthur) Phayre distinguished himself by his successful administration of the new Province.

Changes in the  
Panjāb, 1853.

§ 141. In 1853, the Panjāb Board of Commissioners was abolished, and Sir John Lawrence was made Chief Commissioner, while Sir Henry became agent to the Governor-General at Ajmir. Infanticide was suppressed by the co-operation of the Panjāb nobles themselves.

(Afterwards distinguished in Abyssinia, and now Lord Napier of Magdala.)

The most magnificent system of roads and canals was planned and commenced under Colonel (Sir R.) Napier. Roads extending for 2,200 miles, and a grand canal 465 miles in length, will perpetuate the renown of Sir R. Napier and Lord Dalhousie.

Deaths in 1853.  
(Ch. XI. § 43.)

The same year Sir Walter Gilbert (the "flying General" of the Panjāb), and Sir Charles Napier (who assumed the command of the Indian army in May 1846) died; Colonel Mackeson, Commissioner of Peshāwar, was stabbed by an Afghān fanatic; and Mr. Thomason, Lieutenant-Governor of Agra, just appointed Governor of Madras, was taken away in his fiftieth year.

Railways, 1853.

§ 142. The year 1853 saw the opening of the first Indian railway, from Bombay to Tanna. To Mr. (afterwards Sir Macdonald) Stephenson, who ably carried

# GOVERNORS-GENERAL.

393

## XIII. Lord Dalhousie, 1848-1858.

CH. X. § 142, 145.  
A.D. 1853.

out Lord Dalhousie's plans, India is chiefly indebted for the introduction of railways. Their extension since that time has been rapid and most beneficial.

There are now 5,051 miles of railway in India, upon which a sum of £70,000,000 has been expended.

§ 143. Telegraphic communication, under the energetic superintendence of Dr. O'Shaughnessey (now Sir William O'Shaughnessey Brooke), began to extend itself, with extraordinary rapidity, over the length and breadth of the land.

Telegraphs.

§ 144. In December 1853, the Rāja of Nāgpūr died without issue, and having adopted no heir. (Ch. v. § 159.) Lord Dalhousie, as lord paramount, annexed this state, as having lapsed to the power which reorganized it in 1818.

Nāgpūr affairs.  
Dec. 11, 1853.

This "annexation policy" has been fiercely condemned, and as warmly defended. It is one of the distinguishing characteristics of Lord Dalhousie's brilliant administration.

(Comp. § 187.)

It is convenient to notice here the less important annexation of the Sattara territory in 1840. The Rāja died without an heir in 1840. (Ch. v. § 164.) Sir G. Clerk, Governor of Bombay, strongly advocated the placing of his adopted son on the throne. His successor, Lord Falkland, took a contrary view. Sir John Malcolm had held that adoptions should be sanctioned. Lord Dalhousie decided that the adoption should entitle the person adopted to succeed to the personal property, but not to the political dignity. The Court of Directors then laid down this general principle:—"By the general law and custom of India, a dependent principality like that of Sattara, cannot pass to an adopted heir, without the consent of the paramount power. We are under no pledge, direct or constructive, to give such consent, and the general interests committed to our charge are best consulted by withholding it." (January 24, 1849.) (Comp. § 187.)

The Sattara case.

Diversity of opinion.

Lord Dalhousie's decision.

The Directors lay down the general principle.

§ 145. The renewal of the Company's Charter, for the last time, occupied the attention of the Imperial Parliament during several months of 1853.

Renewal of the Charter, 1853.  
(§ 103.)

The Court of Directors was reduced from twenty-four to eighteen; six of these were to be appointed by the Crown; civil appointments were thrown open to competition; the Macaulay code was introduced; Bengal was put under a Lieutenant-Governor; the Company's Sudder Courts were blended with Her Majesty's Supreme Courts at the presidency towns; and a comprehensive system of State education for India was sanctioned. The despatch in which the present system of education was announced has been called "the intellectual charter of India."

Changes.

CH X §146, 150.  
A.D. 1855.

### XIII. Lord Dalhousie, 1848-1856.

The Ganges  
Canal, 1854.

§ 146. Early in 1854, Colonel Cantley's great Ganges Canal, 500 miles long (which had been commenced in Lord Auckland's time), was opened with great ceremony; and its author left India with unanimous applause.

Jhānsi and  
Kerowli, 1854.  
(Keraoli)

§ 147. The Rājā of Jhānsi and the chief of Kerowli both died childless in 1854. The dominions of the former were "annexed;" we shall see more of Jhānsi affairs. (§ 181.) Those of the latter were handed over to Madden Pāl, a new relative of the late chief, by whom it is still well governed. The Mahārāja has been appointed Grand Commander of the Star of India. (Intro. § 36.)

The Nuwāb of  
the Karnatic,  
1854.

The titular Nuwāb of the Karnatic died in 1853. His uncle, Azim Jāh, claimed to succeed him. This was disallowed, but suitable provision was made for the latter, as the representative of the family (Comp § 44)

The ex-Peshwā.

[For the conditional annexation of Berār, see Chap. III § 16 (12).]  
The death of Bājī Rao, the ex-Peshwā, took place in 1855. (Ch. V. § 158.)

Local officers.

§ 148. Sir P. Halliday was appointed first Lieutenant-Governor of Bengal, and Lord Harris succeeded Sir H. Pottinger as Governor of Madras. Colonel (Sir) James Outram succeeded Colonel (Sir) William Sleeman as Resident of Oudh.

Events of 1855.

§ 149. In 1855, a treaty was made with the restored Dōst Muhammad; a loan for public works was opened; and the crime of torturing people to extract evidence, or to compel payment of arrears of taxes—a crime often committed by native officers—was put an end to. Of this last measure, Sir J. Lawrence in the Panjāb, and Lord Harris in Madras, were the most zealous promoters. An outbreak of the Santāls among the hill ranges of Rājmahāl (Intro. § 33) was put down only by the proclamation of martial law in the disturbed districts, and the vigorous measures of General Lloyd. This district is now a non-regulation commissionership.

Torture.

The Santāl  
insurrection.

The Santāls.

The Santāls are an aboriginal race, inhabiting the western frontier of Bengal from near the sea to the hills of Bhagulpur, and numbering about two millions.

The annexation  
of Oudh.  
(Ch. X. § 32; III.  
§ 17.)

§ 150. The annexation of Oudh is the greatest event of this period. Oudh, by the treaty of 1801,

## GOVERNORS-GENERAL.

395

### XIII. Lord Dalhousie, 1842-1856.

CH. X. § 151, 152.  
A.D. 1856.

was under the especial guardianship of the British power. It had been shamefully ill-governed. Intervention was a duty of common humanity. Colonel Sleeman urged it, and Lord Dalhousie, with the unanimous concurrence of his council, advised it. The Home Government, going beyond the Indian authorities, commanded annexation; and Vajid Ali ceased to reign. The king wept and put his turban into Colonel Outram's hands, but would sign no treaty. He receives £120,000 sterling a year. Oudh will require another reference before we close this history.

Feb. 7, 1856.

(\$ 164, 174, 184)

§ 151. Lord Dalhousie left Calcutta, 6th March 1856, utterly broken down by eight years of unspeakable anxieties and toils. He very closely resembled, but in many points excelled, his great predecessor, the Marquis of Wellesley, who had governed and mightily extended the British dominions in India fifty years before.

Close of Lord  
Dalhousie's  
administration,  
1856.

Every part of the empire felt his influence. The Panjáb, Pegu, and Oudh were added to the British dominions. A vigorous and beneficial impulse was given to every department. Every means of improving India, and of communicating to her all the advantages of Western civilisation, was adopted.

A pension of £5,000 a year was voted to him.

The renown of James Andrew Ramsay, Marquis of Dalhousie, who died 19th December 1860, will never perish.

Death in 1860

### PART XIV.—THE ADMINISTRATION OF LORD CANNING, 1856-1861.

§ 152. Lord Canning, the fourteenth Governor-General, and the first Viceroy of British India, succeeded on the 29th February 1856. He was a scholar,

Lord Canning.

CH. X. § 153, 154.  
A.D. 1856.

**XIV. Lord Ganning, 1856-1861.**

Intense Angli-  
can feeling.

a statesman of experience, and a man of wonderful coolness, patience, and firmness.

His administration may almost be said to begin and end with the "Sepoy war."

§ 153. Lord Dalhousie's influence had stirred up throughout India an intense desire for progress and reform. The tendency was undoubtedly to throw everything into an English shape, and to urge on a civilisation which may be called "epidemic" rather than "endemic;" rather forced upon the country from without, than arising from the development of higher principles within the minds and hearts of the people of India themselves.

Reforms in the  
Bengal army,  
1856.

§ 154. An important though unpopular reform among the high-caste soldiers of Bengal was carried out in 1856; all sepoys enrolled in future were to be enlisted for general service, as soldiers should be.

The Persian  
war, 1856-1857.

§ 155. The Persian war began in November 1856, and was ended by a treaty signed in Paris in March 1857. It was caused by the insolent behaviour of the Persian Court, which had never forgiven the English for hindering their acquisition of Herât [§ 110 (g).]

(Bushairs.)

The island of Karrack was taken (December 4, 1856). An engagement was fought at Rushair; and, a few days after, Bushair, the object of the expedition, surrendered. The loss of life was very trifling.

Treaty with  
Dost Muham-  
mad.

§ 156. An additional treaty was now signed by the old opponent of England, Dost Muhammad, by which he bound himself to aid the British against Persia, by maintaining an army of 18,000 men, the British Government paying him £120,000 per annum to maintain this army. Sir J. Lawrence and Major Edwardes were the

## GOVERNORS-GENERAL.

### XIV. Lord Canning, 1856-1861.

main authors of this beneficial arrangement, which had a great effect in disposing the Shâh of Persia to retire from the contest.

§ 157. The gallant Sir James Outram, the Bayard of India, had now joined the Persian expedition as its commander-in-chief. On the 5th February he drove the enemy from their entrenchments at Barasjûn (forty-six miles from Bushair), and on the 7th the battle of Kûshâb was fought, in which the Persian army was well-nigh annihilated.

Muhamrah, commanding the passage of the Euphrates and the water approach to Ispahân, was taken on the 26th with scarcely any loss. This ended the war; a truce was granted to the prayer of the Persians, and plenipotentiaries signed a peace in Paris, March 4.

The Persians made amends for the slights they had put upon the British power, and formally renounced all claim upon Herât and Afghânistân.

§ 158. Disturbances now took place in China. The mandarins of Canton were the aggressors, and the Chinese Governor Yeh offered a reward for the head of every Englishman. After some severe reprisals on the English part, and two bombardments of Canton, Lord Elgin was sent on a special mission to Peking.

Hearing the news of the troubles in India, he brought up to Calcutta all he could spare of his troops. On his arrival at Canton, in conjunction with the French plenipotentiary, Baron Gros, he ordered an attack on that city. Yeh was taken prisoner and sent to Calcutta, where he died. The expedition then proceeded to Shanghai; and was nearing Peking, when the childish emperor agreed to treaties with England, France, America, and Russia, by which all commercial privileges were conceded to those powers.

§ 159. Now broke out the *Sepoy Mutiny*. We cannot give its full history; but will sketch an outline, which the student must fill in for himself.



CH. X. § 160, 161.  
A.D. 1857.

XIV. Lord Canning, 1856-1861.

Causes of the  
mutiny.

The Bengal native army had been in an unsatisfactory state for some time. Sir C. Napier had given the warning that the Bengal sepoys were not to be trusted.

The want of intercourse and sympathy with their men on the part of the European officers; the taking away of authority from the officers commanding regiments; the issue of the Afghân war; a want of firmness in the attitude of the Government towards its sepoy army; a dread of the violent introduction of Christianity; and of changes affecting their caste and customs; and the annexation of Oudh, from which a great majority of the sepoys came; all these, and many more reasons, having weight with none but uninstructed minds, rendered the sepoys ready for revolt.

It was also the centenary of Plassey. A hundred years had been assigned as the duration of the British Rāj, and the hundredth year had come.

The "greased  
cartridges."

§ 160. Early in 1857 the new Enfield rifles were introduced into the Indian army; and the absurd report was spread abroad that the cartridges issued had been smeared with the fat of pigs and of cows, in order that Mussulmān and Hindū alike might be defiled.

The first out-  
breaks  
March 1857.  
Mungul Pāndi.

§ 161. The mutiny began at Berhāmpūr, in the 19th Regiment, which was disbanded in March 1857.

Soon after occurred the disgraceful circumstance which gave a name to the mutineers.

A young sepoy called Mangal Pāndi, of the 34th Regiment, maddened with *bhang*, rushed out of his hut, called upon his comrades to unite in defence of their religion, and levelled his piece at the serjeant-major. The piece missed fire, but not one soldier interfered to hinder his mad attempt. He then attacked his adjutant and another officer. He at last aimed at General Hearsay; but, changing his purpose, turned his weapon

# GOVERNORS-GENERAL.

399

## XIV. Lord Canning, 1856-1861.

CH. X. § 162, 164.  
A.D. 1857.

against himself. He fell wounded, and ten days after was hung, with a Jemadâr who had stood by without doing his duty.

Mutineers after this were generally called *Pandis*.

*Pandis.*

§ 162. Fakîrs and other emissaries were now in every village and bazaar, from the slopes of the Himâlayas to Cape Comorin, spreading the most atrocious falsehoods, uttering the wildest prophecies of the downfall of British power, and striving to excite a rebellion. Small flat cakes of flour and water, called *chappatties*, were sent from village to village, and were passed on by the villagers, who only learnt from this token that some great struggle was impending. The English in India were seated over a mine ready to explode.

Emissaries of rebellion.

*Chappatties.*

§ 163. Meanwhile the adopted son of the late Peshwâ, who lived at Bhitûr, near Khânpûr (ch. v. § 158), was the mainspring of disaffection. His secretary, Azim-ulla-Khân, a plausible miscreant, had been sent to England as the agent of Dhundu Pant, and had been treated there with a foolish consideration, to which he had no right whatever. He and his master now passed hither and thither, lying and plotting. The old King of Delhi and his sons were ready for anything that might give them a chance of restoring the Mogul dominion; forgetting that they owed their very existence to the English, who had saved them from the Mahratta oppressor in 1803

Nânâ Dhundu Pant.

Ingratitude of the Mogul.  
(Ch. iii. § 25.)

§ 164. The ex-King of Oudh, in Calcutta, was in the conspiracy. Mân Sing, chief of the Pûrbias, from which tribe very many of the sepoy came; and the members of the families of the dispossessed Mahratta chiefs of Nâgpûr and Satârâ, were also in the secret; but the British Government was in profound ignorance of the

The conspirators.  
(§ 150.)  
(Introd. § 28.)

CH. X. §165, 166.  
A.D. 1857.

**XIV. Lord Canning, 1856-1861.**

The saviours of  
the Anglo-  
Indian empire.

extent and nature of the danger; and warnings were disregarded.

Yet never were more resolute and able men in India than those who saved the British Indian empire in that eventful crisis. Lord Canning, Sir H. Lawrence in Lucknow, Sir John Lawrence at Lâhôr, and Lord Elphinstone in Bombay, are to be added to an illustrious band of warriors, whose deeds surpass anything of the kind in ancient or modern history.

The outbreak at  
Mirut, May 10,  
1857.  
(About 30 miles  
N E. from  
Delhi.)

§ 165. Incendiary fires at the various cantonments, insolence of demeanour, and murmurs against the officers, were now constant; but the 10th May witnessed the first great outbreak of the rebellion, at Mirut. At that station ninety-five troopers of the 3rd Light Cavalry had refused to use the cartridges issued; though every assurance was given to the men that these cartridges had been prepared in the same way as those they had always used. These mutineers were sentenced to imprisonment for various terms. To rescue them, the whole of the natives in Mirut rose, massacred all they found of European parentage of every class and age, burnt the station, and marched off to Delhi. No adequate effort to check them was made by the old general in command.

The massacre at  
Delhi, May 11,  
1857.

§ 166. On the 11th of May the same horrible scenes were enacted in Delhi. The commissioner, Mr. Fraser; the captain of the king's guard, Captain Douglas; Mr. Jennings, the Residency chaplain; and his daughter; were murdered in the palace, in the sight of the king; and, almost certainly, with his sanction.

Yet this scene of carnage and sickening treachery is connected with one of the grandest feats of heroism that history records.

## GOVERNORS-GENERAL.

### XIV. Lord Canning, 1856-1861.

When the tidings of the Mirut massacre reached Delhi, nine officers, commissioned and non-commissioned, managed to close the gates of the arsenal, the greatest in the north-west of India. They then made some hasty preparations for defence, and laid a train of powder from the magazine to some distance. Alone, those heroes defended their post, till swarms of assailants were, by means of scaling-ladders, surmounting the walls. Then the train was fired, and the little band of devoted men made their way through a sally-port on the river face, covered with wounds. They were Lieutenants Willoughby, Raynor, and Forrest; Conductors Shaw, Buckley, and Scully; Sub-Conductor Crow; Sergeants Edwards and Stewart. Scully fired the train, and was seen no more. Willoughby, their young leader, scorched and crippled, died of his wounds at Mirut.

From the city, now a pandemonium, many Europeans escaped; but what pen can describe the miseries of the fugitives, or the calmness and courage with which they were borne!

§ 167. The occupation of the Mogul capital by the rebels was the signal for risings and massacres in almost every station in Bengál and the north-west. The Mirut massacre was premature. What would have been the result if this gigantic plot had fully ripened!

Ferôzpûr, Bareilly, Morâdâbâd, Shâhjahânpûr, Khânpûr, Jhânsi, Benâres, Allâhâbâd, Hansi, Hissar, Fâtiaghur, Dînapûr, Jullindhur, and many other places, furnished sad tales of perfidy and cruelty.

§ 168. At Lâhôr, Messrs. Montgomery, M'Leod, and Brigadier Corbett disarmed the sepoys, whose traitorous inclinations were evident, in a prompt and masterly style.

401

CH. I § 167, 168  
A.D. 1857.

Willoughby and his heroic comrades.

The heroes of the Delhi arsenal.

General insurrections, May 1857.

Lâhôr.

CH. X. § 169, 171.  
A.D. 1857.

XIV. Lord Canning, 1856-1861.

The Panjâb  
saved.

At Peshâwar, Reid, Cotton, Chamberlain, Nicholson, and Edwardes, communicating with Sir John Lawrence by telegraph, disarmed the native troops; and hung a few native officers, traitors caught in the act. These measures saved the Panjâb.

The 55th N.C. at Murdân mutinied. Swift, inexorable, awful punishment followed.

Sir John Lawrence comes to the rescue.  
(Ch. xi. § 8.)

§ 169. Sir John Lawrence had now leisure to come to the rescue of the Cis-Satlaj stations: to save the empire.

Fidelity of the Cis-Satlaj protected States.

The Sikh chiefs, British feudatories, stood nobly and loyally by the paramount power. The ruler of Kashmîr, the Râjas of Jhînd, Kapurthala, and Pattiala; the old Sirdârs, Têj Sing, Shamshîr Sing, Jouâhîr Sing, and many others, raised Sikh troops, and armed their retainers to aid their former foes. Thus fresh relays of troops were constantly sent from the Panjâb to the scene of action.

Delhi.

§ 170. Thither we must now return. "On to Delhi" was the watchword. To Delhi each regiment, as it mutinied, marched off to swell the army that was to restore the Empire of the Mogul. On the other hand, every detachment of British troops and allies was destined to the service of wresting from the hands of the rebels a place whose very name was strength to them.

Lieutenant de Kantzow.

At Mynpûrf, a young Lieutenant, called De Kantzow, with wonderful "courage, patience, good judgment, and temper," almost alone, withstood the roaring tide of mutiny. Not a rupee was taken from the treasury, not a life was lost. And this was only one among many instances of heroic firmness.

Mr. Colvin.

§ 171. Mr. Colvin, the Lieutenant-Governor of Âgra, failed in energy; and his proclamation, offering immu-

## GOVERNORS-GENERAL.

403

### XIV. Lord Canning, 1856-1861.

CH. X. 172-173.  
A.D. 1857.

nity to all who would give up their arms, and go quietly home, was deservedly ridiculed as an attempt to "wash out with rose-water the reek of a blood-stained rebellion." It was repudiated at once by Lord Canning.

Sternier, wiser men were soon on the spot.

§ 172. The memories of Khānpūr are among the saddest in the history of British India. There under Sir Hugh Wheeler, aided by Captain Moore, the garrison held out gallantly for three weeks (June 6th to 27th), in wretched buildings, suffering every privation, and surrounded by a vast multitude of savage enemies. They were then overpowered by the miscreants *Dhyendu* and *Azim-ulla* into a surrender. Numbers were shot in the boats which were, as they imagined to carry them to Allāhābād and the others, women and children, were cut to pieces in a small room, and their bodies, still quivering with life, thrown into a well.

The Khānpūr massacre, June 1857.

Lieutenants Mowbray, Thompson and Deinfosse, with a band of thirteen privates, after a heroic defence, escaped.

Thus, while many and terrible were the scenes of treacherous carnage during these mutinies, Khānpūr and Delhi will remain associated in English minds with the *Black Hole*, *Patna*, *Seringapatam*, and *Vellore*, as having been rendered especially infamous by the atrocities there perpetrated.

Circumstances like these account for, while they cannot justify, the indiscriminate slaughter that too often disgraced the British soldiers at this maddening crisis.

§ 173. Meanwhile two of the most distinguished heroes of the war were on their way to the fatal spot. These were Lieutenant-Colonel James Neill and Sir Henry Havelock. Neill, when the station-master at Howrah would have started the train without some of

still and  
avaleck.

CHAP. X. § 174.  
A.D. 1857.

**XIV. Lord Canning, 1856-1861.**

his soldiers, simply put him under arrest till all had arrived. British troops began to pour into Benâres, and were passed on to the upper provinces. On 17th June Sir P. Grant, from Madras, took the place of the Commander-in-Chief, General Anson, who had died of cholera at Kurnâl on the 27th of May.

Mr. Carre  
Tucker and Mr.  
Gubbins in  
Benâres.

Benâres was kept safe, under incredible difficulties, by Mr. Carre Tucker, the commissioner, and Mr. Frederick Gubbins, the sessions judge, aided by Sîrat Sing, a loyal State prisoner, Râo Nârân Sing, the Râja of Benâres, and a few others.

On the last day of June Havelock reached Allâhâbâd, and Neill left for Khânpûr.

Khânpûr.

The battle of Khânpûr was fought on the 16th of July. The Bîtûr troops were completely routed. Major Renaud and Captain Beatson, two noble soldiers, died about this time of wounds and cholera.

On the 25th July Havelock marched into Oudh; and his subordinate Neill was at the same time inflicting condign punishment on the butchers of Khânpûr.

Sir H. Lawrence  
in Lucknow.

§ 174. In Lucknow, which he had held (aided by Banks, Inglis, and Fulton), Sir H. Lawrence was killed, on the 2nd July, by the bursting of a shell. In him England lost one of her best, most generous, and heroic men. The defence was maintained by the survivors with equal spirit. It was not till he had three times crossed the Ganges, that Havelock (on the 25th September), after innumerable victories, made his way into Lucknow. The chivalrous Sir James Outram was now in command; but he waived his right, and entered the city as a subordinate of Havelock, from whom he would not take the glory of effecting the relief of the city, for which he had undergone so much.

Havelock  
relieves it.

Sir James Out-  
ram.

Death of Neill.

Brigadier-General Neill was killed in the final ad-

## GOVERNORS-GENERAL.

### XIV. Lord Canning, 1856-1861.

vance. He was in his forty-eighth year, when his brilliant career thus terminated.

Outram was now master of Lucknow, but he could do nothing more than hold the place.

§ 175. The defence of Arrah must not be forgotten. This place is on the west of the Sône, and a little to the S.W. of *Dinapûr*, where three native regiments had mutinied. For a whole week *Arrah* was kept by two gentlemen of the names of Wake and Boyle, with a small band of Sikh and English refugees, against upwards of 3,000 rebels. Their fortress was an open bungalow. On the 2nd August Major Vincent Eyre gained the brilliant victory of Bibigung; which was followed up by other successes, by which the rebel Koer Sing was driven into the jungles, and that part of the country cleared of rebels.

§ 176. But the great interest of the rebellion centres in Delhi. We must pass from the banks of the Gâmâtî to those of the Jamna. On the 8th June, Sir H. Barnard, after a severe action, took possession of the heights near Delhi, and the siege began. The besieged had everything in their favour. The city, thoroughly fortified, was seven miles in circumference. Its defenders were almost countless, and they had an inexhaustible supply of heavy guns and ammunition. The Jamna flowed beneath its eastern wall, and the well-defended bridge over it freely admitted reinforcements and supplies.

The besiegers (more besieged than besieging) were few, sickly, overworked; many of them raw recruits; and their guns did not suffice even to check the enemy's fire. We cannot give the details of those patient, prudent, and valiant operations, which ended in the capture of Delhi on the 20th of September 1857.

CH. X. 175, 176.  
A.D. 1857.

The heroic defence of Arrah.

(*Dinapûr* is on the S. bank of the Ganges, about 10 miles W. of Patna.) (*Arrah* is 35 miles W. from Patna.)  
Eyre.

Siege of Delhi.

Taken Sept. 20, 1857.



CH. X. § 177, 178.  
A.D. 1857.

XIV. Lord Canning, 1856-1861.

Battle of 23rd  
June.

There was a great struggle on the centenary of Plassey, 23rd June; but the mutineers were triumphantly repulsed. The prophecy had indeed been everywhere confidently uttered that the hundredth year from Plassey, the year 1857, would see the extinction of the British Rāj. This was said to be founded upon some astrological calculations.

Heroes of  
Delhi.

Sir H. Barnard died of cholera on 4th July, and was succeeded by General Archdale. Wilson, Baird Smith, Hodson of the Guides, Nicholson, and Hope Grant, among a multitude of others, distinguished themselves.

Muhammad Bahādar Shāh's  
sons shot.  
(Ch. III. § 25.)

The King of Delhi was taken prisoner by Hodson, and his two sons and grandson shot.

Other places,  
Sind, Bombay,  
and Haidarābād.

§ 177. The rebellion was now really put down. Sind was kept quiet by Sir Bartle Frere and General Jacob. Lord Elphinstone was equal to the emergency in Bombay. The able and patriotic Sir Salar Jung maintained tranquillity in the Nizām's dominions. It was well that the Haidarābād force and the contingent were under such men as General Coffin and Colonel Hill.

Indōr.  
Oct. 1857.

The Indōr mutineers were disposed of by Brigadier Greathed's flying column.

Gharkas.

Nipalese troops under Sir Jung Bahādar did good service.

Lord Clyde's re-  
lief of Luck-  
now.  
April, 1858.

§ 178. The relief of Lucknow and the rescue of the garrison by Sir Colin Campbell (afterwards Lord Clyde), was another great event.

Death of Havelock,  
Nov. 25,  
1857.  
Gwālīor.

Sir H. Havelock died on the 25th November, and his name will live as a man of the purest and bravest type.

June 1858.

The Gwālīor contingent mutinied in the middle of October, dethroning their Rāja; but their triumph was short (§ 181.)

# GOVERNORS-GENERAL.

407

## XIV. Lord Canning, 1856-1861.

CH. X. § 179, 181.  
A.D. 1857.

Whitlock's Madras column in Bandélkhand annihilated the forces of the Râja of Banda.

Feb. 1858.

Cotton and Edwards guarded the north-west frontier.

§ 179. The murderers of English men and women met on all sides with their just punishment, swiftly and inexorably inflicted.

Punishment of murderers.

Muhammad Bahâdar Shâh, the last Mogul, was brought to trial (January 27 to March 9). He was skilfully defended; but found guilty of murder, treason, and arson, and was sentenced to transportation for life to Burma. His favourite wife, Zinat Mahâl, and his youngest son, Jamna Bakht, whom he had designed to succeed him, accompanied him. (Comp. p. 141.)

Trial of the last Mogul emperor. Condemnation, deportation, and death.  
1858.

In Maulmain he died.

§ 180. Lord Canning was at the time blamed much for his statesman-like and Christian "clemency;" but justice was done, while vengeance was disclaimed. Lucknow was finally taken, and the re-conquest of Oudh completed in March.

Lord Canning's clemency.

Khân Bahâdar of Bareilly, the Mûlvi of Faizâbâd, the Begum of Oudh, Prince Ferôz Shâh of Delhi, and the infamous Nânâ of Bitûr, were still in arms in Rohilkhand. Bareilly was taken and Rohilkhand cleared in May. The rebel leaders, however, escaped for the time.

The rebel leaders.

§ 181. Sir Hugh Rose, in Central India, made one triumphant, and scarcely paralleled march, from Bombay to Indôr, Sâgar, Jhânsî, Kalpi, and at last to Gwâliôr. His chief opponent was Tantia Tôpî, a Mahratta Brahman, a relative of the Nânâ, who was, in fact, a Pindâri leader, ruthless and desperate. Kalpi, the great arsenal of the rebels, was stormed on the 25th May.

Sir Hugh Rose.  
Jan. 1858.

Kalpi.

408	GOVERNORS-GENERAL.
CH. X § 182 184 A.D. 1857	XIV. Lord Canning. 1856-1861.
Jhansi April 1858	The strong fortress of Jhānsī, defended by its heroic but cruel Rānī, Lakshmī Bāi, was taken, and she escaped, to fall in battle at the siege of Gwālōr.
Gwālōr (See table, ch. v § 45) Tantia Tōpī (Ch. XII § 60)	Gwālōr was taken, and the noble young Māhāāja restored, in the middle of June 1858. Tantia Tōpī, the skilful but cruel leader, was taken by Major (now Sir Richard) Meade, tried, and hanged in April 1859 as his share in the Khānpūr massacres deserved. Man Singh had surrendered himself some days before, and he gave the information which led to the capture of this great criminal, near Parone.
The Nānā	The capture of Tantia Tōpī seemed to extinguish the last spark of the rebellion. The Nānā perished, it is supposed, in the Nīpal jungles. The Begum escaped to Katmandū.
Peel and Venables	§ 182. Among others, Sir W. Peel, commander of a naval brigade, and Mr. Venables, of Azimgurh, an indigo planter, lost their lives after covering themselves with glory.
The three great military movements	§ 183. The turning of India the first capture of Lucknow and the British (afterwards Lord Strathnairn) campaign in Central India are among the masterpieces of modern warfare.
Onda	§ 181. Lord Canning, in July 1858, declared by proclamation the lines of Oudh fortified, save in the case of our loyal underwriters offering indulgence to all who threw themselves on British mercy. As his "clemency" had been blamed for the cause he was accused of undue severity. But in fact the measure of confidence was so great that the very plan for placing the Government in the hands of a democracy of Oudh on a footing of respectability.

## 400

CH X 3185, 198  
AD 1857.

Assumption of  
the (1) veru  
1 1 11 12  
1 1 1 1 1 1

11 em  
 1 1 ne  
 1 1) ger  
 1 1) a  
 1 1) m

100 + Sir  
Lawrence

1994, 1995, 1996, 1997, 1998, 1999, 2000, 2001, 2002, 2003, 2004, 2005, 2006, 2007, 2008, 2009, 2010, 2011, 2012, 2013, 2014, 2015, 2016, 2017, 2018, 2019, 2020, 2021, 2022, 2023, 2024, 2025, 2026, 2027, 2028, 2029, 2030, 2031, 2032, 2033, 2034, 2035, 2036, 2037, 2038, 2039, 2040, 2041, 2042, 2043, 2044, 2045, 2046, 2047, 2048, 2049, 2050, 2051, 2052, 2053, 2054, 2055, 2056, 2057, 2058, 2059, 2060, 2061, 2062, 2063, 2064, 2065, 2066, 2067, 2068, 2069, 2070, 2071, 2072, 2073, 2074, 2075, 2076, 2077, 2078, 2079, 2080, 2081, 2082, 2083, 2084, 2085, 2086, 2087, 2088, 2089, 2090, 2091, 2092, 2093, 2094, 2095, 2096, 2097, 2098, 2099, 2100, 2101, 2102, 2103, 2104, 2105, 2106, 2107, 2108, 2109, 2110, 2111, 2112, 2113, 2114, 2115, 2116, 2117, 2118, 2119, 2120, 2121, 2122, 2123, 2124, 2125, 2126, 2127, 2128, 2129, 2130, 2131, 2132, 2133, 2134, 2135, 2136, 2137, 2138, 2139, 2140, 2141, 2142, 2143, 2144, 2145, 2146, 2147, 2148, 2149, 2150, 2151, 2152, 2153, 2154, 2155, 2156, 2157, 2158, 2159, 2160, 2161, 2162, 2163, 2164, 2165, 2166, 2167, 2168, 2169, 2170, 2171, 2172, 2173, 2174, 2175, 2176, 2177, 2178, 2179, 2180, 2181, 2182, 2183, 2184, 2185, 2186, 2187, 2188, 2189, 2190, 2191, 2192, 2193, 2194, 2195, 2196, 2197, 2198, 2199, 2200, 2201, 2202, 2203, 2204, 2205, 2206, 2207, 2208, 2209, 2210, 2211, 2212, 2213, 2214, 2215, 2216, 2217, 2218, 2219, 2220, 2221, 2222, 2223, 2224, 2225, 2226, 2227, 2228, 2229, 2230, 2231, 2232, 2233, 2234, 2235, 2236, 2237, 2238, 2239, 2240, 2241, 2242, 2243, 2244, 2245, 2246, 2247, 2248, 2249, 2250, 2251, 2252, 2253, 2254, 2255, 2256, 2257, 2258, 2259, 2260, 2261, 2262, 2263, 2264, 2265, 2266, 2267, 2268, 2269, 2270, 2271, 2272, 2273, 2274, 2275, 2276, 2277, 2278, 2279, 2280, 2281, 2282, 2283, 2284, 2285, 2286, 2287, 2288, 2289, 2290, 2291, 2292, 2293, 2294, 2295, 2296, 2297, 2298, 2299, 2300, 2301, 2302, 2303, 2304, 2305, 2306, 2307, 2308, 2309, 2310, 2311, 2312, 2313, 2314, 2315, 2316, 2317, 2318, 2319, 2320, 2321, 2322, 2323, 2324, 2325, 2326, 2327, 2328, 2329, 2330, 2331, 2332, 2333, 2334, 2335, 2336, 2337, 2338, 2339, 2340, 2341, 2342, 2343, 2344, 2345, 2346, 2347, 2348, 2349, 2350, 2351, 2352, 2353, 2354, 2355, 2356, 2357, 2358, 2359, 2360, 2361, 2362, 2363, 2364, 2365, 2366, 2367, 2368, 2369, 2370, 2371, 2372, 2373, 2374, 2375, 2376, 2377, 2378, 2379, 2380, 2381, 2382, 2383, 2384, 2385, 2386, 2387, 2388, 2389, 2390, 2391, 2392, 2393, 2394, 2395, 2396, 2397, 2398, 2399, 2400, 2401, 2402, 2403, 2404, 2405, 2406, 2407, 2408, 2409, 2410, 2411, 2412, 2413, 2414, 2415, 2416, 2417, 2418, 2419, 2420, 2421, 2422, 2423, 2424, 2425, 2426, 2427, 2428, 2429, 2430, 2431, 2432, 2433, 2434, 2435, 2436, 2437, 2438, 2439, 2440, 2441, 2442, 2443, 2444, 2445, 2446, 2447, 2448, 2449, 2450, 2451, 2452, 2453, 2454, 2455, 2456, 2457, 2458, 2459, 2460, 2461, 2462, 2463, 2464, 2465, 2466, 2467, 2468, 2469, 2470, 2471, 2472, 2473, 2474, 2475, 2476, 2477, 2478, 2479, 2480, 2481, 2482, 2483, 2484, 2485, 2486, 2487, 2488, 2489, 2490, 2491, 2492, 2493, 2494, 2495, 2496, 2497, 2498, 2499, 2500, 2501, 2502, 2503, 2504, 2505, 2506, 2507, 2508, 2509, 2510, 2511, 2512, 2513, 2514, 2515, 2516, 2517, 2518, 2519, 2520, 2521, 2522, 2523, 2524, 2525, 2526, 2527, 2528, 2529, 2530, 2531, 2532, 2533, 2534, 2535, 2536, 2537, 2538, 2539, 2540, 2541, 2542, 2543, 2544, 2545, 2546, 2547, 2548, 2549, 2550, 2551, 2552, 2553, 2554, 2555, 2556, 2557, 2558, 2559, 2560, 2561, 2562, 2563, 2564, 2565, 2566, 2567, 2568, 2569, 2570, 2571, 2572, 2573, 2574, 2575, 2576, 2577, 2578, 2579, 2580, 2581, 2582, 2583, 2584, 2585, 2586, 2587, 2588, 2589, 2590, 2591, 2592, 2593, 2594, 2595, 2596, 2597, 2598, 2599, 2600, 2601, 2602, 2603, 2604, 2605, 2606, 2607, 2608, 2609, 2610, 2611, 2612, 2613, 2614, 2615, 2616, 2617, 2618, 2619, 2620, 2621, 2622, 2623, 2624, 2625, 2626, 2627, 2628, 2629, 2630, 2631, 2632, 2633, 2634, 2635, 2636, 2637, 2638, 2639, 2640, 2641, 2642, 2643, 2644, 2645, 2646, 2647, 2648, 2649, 2650, 2651, 2652, 2653, 2654, 2655, 2656, 2657, 2658, 2659, 2660, 2661, 2662, 2663, 2664, 2665, 2666, 2667, 2668, 2669, 2670, 2671, 2672, 2673, 2674, 2675, 26

The Queen's  
Innovation  
18.4

It is taken by  
the crow

**Allegiance due.**

Now therefore, we do by these presents certify and declare that by the advice and consent of the Senate we have taken upon ourselves the said government and we hereby call upon all our

CHAP. X. § 186.  
A.D. 1857.

**XIV. Lord Canning, 1856-1861.**

**The first  
Viceroy.**

subjects within the said territories to be faithful, and to bear true allegiance to us, our heirs and successors, and to submit themselves to the authority of those whom we may hereafter, from time to time, see fit to appoint to administer the government of our said territories, in our name and on our behalf.

"And we, reposing especial trust and confidence in the loyalty, ability, and judgment of our right trusty and well beloved Cousin and Councillor, Charles John, Viscount Canning, do hereby constitute and appoint him, the said Viscount Canning, to be our first Viceroy and Governor-General in and over our said territories, and to administer the government thereof in our name; and generally to act in our name and on our behalf, subject to such orders and regulations as he shall from time to time receive from us through one of our principal Secretaries of State.

**Officers con-  
firmed.**

"And we do hereby confirm in their several offices, Civil and Military, all persons now employed in the service of the Honourable East India Company, subject to our future pleasure, and to such laws and regulations as may hereafter be enacted.

**Treaties con-  
firmed.**

"We hereby announce to the Native Princes of India that all Treaties and Engagements made with them by or under the authority of the Honourable East India Company, are by us accepted, and will be scrupulously maintained, and we look for the like observance on their part.

**Native Princes  
respected and  
protected.**

"We desire no extension of our present territorial possessions; and while we will permit no aggression upon our dominions or our rights to be attempted with impunity, we shall sanction no encroachment on those of others. We shall respect the rights, dignity, and honour of Native Princes as our own; and we desire that they, as well as our own subjects, should enjoy that prosperity and that social advancement which can only be secured by internal peace and good government.

**India one with  
England.**

"We hold ourselves bound to the natives of our Indian territories by the same obligations of duty which bind us to all other subjects, and those obligations, by the blessing of Almighty God, we shall faithfully and conscientiously fulfil.

**Impartiality.**

"Firmly relying ourselves on the truth of Christianity, and acknowledging with gratitude the solace of religion, we disclaim alike the right and desire to impose our convictions on any of our subjects. We declare it to be our Royal will and pleasure that none be in any wise favoured, none molested or disquieted, by reason of their religious faith or observances, but that all shall alike enjoy the equal impartial protection of the law; and we do strictly charge and enjoin all those who may be in authority under

## GOVERNORS-GENERAL.

411

### XIV. Lord Canning, 1856-1861.

CHAP. X '186.  
A.D. 1857.

us, that they abstain from all interference with the religious belief or worship of any of our subjects, on pain of our highest displeasure.

Toleration.

"And it is our further will that, so far as may be, our subjects, of whatever race or creed, be freely and impartially admitted to offices in our service, the duties of which they may be qualified by their education, ability, and integrity duly to discharge.

Offices thrown open.

"We know and respect the feeling of attachment with which the natives of India regard the lands inherited by them from their ancestors; and we desire to protect them in all rights connected therewith, subject to the equitable demands of the State, and we will that generally, in framing and administering the law, due regard be paid to the ancient rites, usages, and customs of India.

Rights of succession.

Usages.

"We deeply lament the evils and misery which have been brought upon India by the acts of ambitious men, who have deceived their countrymen by false reports, and led them into open rebellion. Our power has been shown by the suppression of that rebellion in the field. We desire to show our mercy by pardoning the offences of those who have been thus misled, but who desire to return to the path of duty.

The Rebellion.

"Already in one province, with the view to stop the further effusion of blood, and to hasten the pacification of our Indian dominions, our Viceroy and Governor-General has held out the expectation of pardon, on certain terms, to the great majority of those who in the late unhappy disturbances have been guilty of offences against our Government, and has declared the punishment which will be inflicted on those whose crimes place them beyond the reach of forgiveness. We approve and confirm the said act of our Viceroy and Governor-General, and do further announce and proclaim as follows --

Amnesty.

"Our clemency will be extended to all offenders, save and except those who have been, or shall be, convicted of having directly taken part in the murder of British subjects; with regard to such, the demands of justice forbid the exercise of mercy.

"To those who have willingly given asylum to murderers, knowing them to be such, or who may have acted as leaders or instigators in revolt, their lives alone can be guaranteed; but in apportioning the penalty due to such persons, full consideration will be given to the circumstances under which they have been induced to throw off their allegiance; and large indulgence will be shown to those whose crimes may appear to have originated

CHAP. X §187.  
A.D. 1857.

XIV. Lord Canning, 1856-1861.

Promotion of  
the good of  
India.

in too credulous acceptance of the false reports circulated by designing men.

"To all others in arms against the Government, we hereby promise unconditional pardon, amnesty, and oblivion of all offence against ourselves, our Crown, and dignity, on their return to their homes and peaceful pursuits.

"It is our Royal pleasure that these terms of grace and amnesty should be extended to all those who comply with their conditions before the 1st day of January next.

"When by the blessing of Providence internal tranquillity shall be restored, it is our earnest desire to stimulate the peaceful industry of India, to promote works of public utility and improvement, and to administer its government for the benefit of all our subjects resident therein. In their prosperity will be our strength; in their contentment our security; and in their gratitude our best reward. And may the God of all power grant to us, and to those in authority under us, strength to carry out these our wishes for the good of our people."

To this prayer all India said, Amen.

The subsequent history of British India shows how thoroughly these principles have been carried out. May it ever be so!

The Queen has since assumed the title of Empress in India.

State of India  
after the mutiny.

§ 187. The mutiny thus swept away the last relics of the empire of the Moguls, and the last who could claim in any sense to represent the Peshwā. Lord Canning in 1860 thus wrote:—"The Crown of England stands forth the unquestioned ruler and paramount power in all India, and is for the first time brought face to face with its feudatories. There is a reality in the suzerainty of England which has never existed before, and which is not only felt but eagerly acknowledged by the chiefs."

The "Magna  
Charta" of the  
Indian feudatories  
of the  
Queen of Great  
Britain.

Then was issued the Sunnud, or patent of nobility, by which the one hundred and fifty-three feudatories of Britain (see Table in Intro. § 24) were constituted nobles of the English empire.

To these has since been added the adopted son of the late Māharāja of Mysôr. (Ch. xi. § 63.)

## XIV. Lord Canning, 1856-1861.

CHIEF JUSTICE  
1857.

The patent was thus, with the necessary alterations, in the case of the British Government.

"The British Government, in the case of the British Government, should be perpetual, and the dignity of the House of Commons, of this date, this sum, and the assurance that, on failure of the British Government will recognize and confirm any and all laws made by yourself or by any future chief of your State that may be in accordance with Hindû law and the custom of your race. Be assured that nothing shall disturb the peace and tranquility to you so long as your House is loyal to the Crown and faithful to the conditions of the treaties, grants, or agreements, which record the obligations to the British Government."

(Signed) LORD CANNING

"11th March 1862."

§ 188. It may be convenient to the student to have at hand a summary of the chief events which have marked the Viceroyalties of the xvth, xvth, and xvth Governors General. The time has not yet arrived for history to deliver an impartial verdict in regard to the men and measures of this period. We will, therefore, do little more than give a table of the chief events of the years 1860 to 1870.

1860. LORD ELPHINSTONE, who had been Governor of Madras, and afterwards as Governor of Bombay during the midtimes rendered admirable service to his country, died in England immediately after his return. He was succeeded by Sir Battle Frere; and he again by Sir Seymour Fitzgerald.

The supreme law courts at the seats of government were amalgamated. The High Courts now take cognizance of all cases.

Similar courts were constituted at Lâhôr and Agra in 1860.

Sir James Outram died, worn out by his patriotic exertions.

1861. The Penal Code, first drawn up by Macaulay, and afterwards thoroughly sifted and tried, was now introduced. It has worked well.

In addition to munificent rewards to those princes who were faithful to England at this stormy period (and these included all the really important native chiefs) an order, called the Star of

Lord Elphinstone  
at 1860  
(§ 13)The High  
CourtsOutram  
(187, 174)  
(§ 186)  
The Penal  
Code.



## GOVERNORS-GENERAL.

CHAP. X. § 189.  
A.D. 1857.

## Summary of recent events.

Sir C. Trevelyan.  
(§ 196.)

British India, was instituted; and in its different grades have been enrolled a large number of eminent natives, and also of British officials, civil and military.

Sir C. Trevelyan, Governor of Madras, who had begun his work with much energy, was removed from his office for his published protest against the income tax, for the first time introduced into India by Mr. Wilson. The course of events has tended to show that the income tax is not adapted to India. Sir C. Trevelyan was succeeded by Sir W. Denison; and he again by Lord Napier of Merchistoun.

1862. In March, Lord Canning left India, and in June (17) he died. Cold and haughty in manner, and slow in conception, he was firm and humane. He never for a moment lost his presence of mind during the terrible excitement of the mutinies, and will be remembered as one who loved justice and mercy.

## SUMMARY OF RECENT EVENTS.

## PART XV.—LORD ELGIN.

(Comp. § 188.)  
Lord Elgin.  
1862.

§ 189. LORD ELGIN, who had distinguished himself in Canada and in China, took the reins of government, March 12. He soon left Calcutta for the North-west Provinces, and died at Dharma-sála, in the Himálayas, November 20, 1863.

The Wáhabis at  
Sittána.

1863. Some Wáhabí fanatics at Sittána, on the extreme north-west of the Panjáb, commenced a petty rebellion, which threatened to spread among the Afghán tribes, and which was evidently supported by traitors in the north-east and south. Every Mogul emperor had to contend with these hill tribes. It is said that twenty-five English expeditions have at various times been conducted against them.

Sir W. Denison  
Viceroy pro-  
tem.  
(§ 20.)

Sir W. Denison, Governor of Madras, had proceeded to Calcutta, as Acting Viceroy; and Sir Hugh Rose was Commander-in-Chief. Owing to their firmness, the stronghold of the enemy, at the top of the Umbeyla pass, was taken, and the mountaineers were, for the time at least, humbled.

At this time the American civil war caused an immense rise in the price of cotton. Western India became suddenly wealthy; but a mania for speculation arose, and the commercial credit of the enterprising capital of the western coast was terribly shaken. Berár especially has been greatly enriched by cotton cultivation. (Introd. § 20.)

## GOVERNORS-GENERAL.

415

### Summary of recent events.

CHAP. I § 190.  
A.D. 1864-6.

### PART XVI.—LORD LAWRENCE.

§ 190. SIR JOHN LAWRENCE, landed again in Calcutta, January 12, 1861, and retained office till the end of 1863.

His appointment was the reward of past services; but it was also felt both in England and in India that the reins of government at that critical period could not be in safer hands than those of the great administrator of the Panjâb.

A great impulse was given during this administration to sanitary reforms, to municipal institutions, and more especially to measures for the improvement of the condition of European soldiers, whose importance in India has so much increased since the mutinies.

1864-5. A war, tardily begun, badly conducted, and injudiciously ended, was supposed to avenge the insults heaped by the State and people of Bûtân, or Bhôtân (a small district east of Sikkim), on Mr. Eden, a British envoy.

The year 1866 is remarkable for the famine in Orissa, which is said to have swept away two millions of people. While the Government of Bengâl failed in its duty at this emergency, Lord Napier, at the head of the Madras Government, nobly did his. The North-west Provinces suffered in the same way, though not so severely, in 1861; and more recently Râjputâna has added half a million of victims to those sacrificed in Orissa. Such awful calamities, occurring in a time of exceptional prosperity, have excited a deep and abiding feeling of the duty of the Government to be prepared for such emergencies; and they have given an impulse to the various schemes of irrigation by which their recurrence may in part, at least, be avoided. India has always been liable to these terrible disasters at pretty regularly recurring periods.

1866. The Bishop of Calcutta, the greatly beloved and admired ORROR, was accidentally drowned while on a tour of visitation. He was succeeded by Dr. Robert Milman.

In 1866, Sir R. Temple became Resident of Haidarâbâd. He had previously rendered good service as Chief Commissioner of the Central Provinces. A distinguishing feature of this period is the number of able and vigorous administrators who, in charge of provinces where scope was permitted them for the exercise of the highest qualities of statesmanship, and where the increased prosperity of the country has altered the conditions of native society, have earned for themselves reputations almost equal to those of Mountstuart, Elphinstone, Malcolm, and

Sir John Lawrence.  
1864.

War in Bhôtân.  
1864.

Famine in Orissa.

Lord Napier of Merchistoun.

Bp. Cotton.

Bp. Milman.

Sir R. Temple.

(Introd. § 16.)  
Distinguished administrators.

CHAP. X. § 191.  
A.D. 1869.

## XVII. Lord Mayo.

Murro. The time, however, has not yet come for fairly estimating the value of the labours of Grey, Temple, Strachey, Muir, Durand, Meade, and many others, to whom the present flourishing condition of the country is in a great measure due.

Nor will the future historian of India pass over such names as those of Sir Barnes Peacock, Sir William Mansfield, and Mr. Sumner Maine, who have done such good service in the Council Chamber at Calcutta.

Hazara war.

1868. Another frontier war broke out during this year. The scene was near that of the former, among the Hussanzye tribe, in the district of Hazara. The same Wâhabî influences were at work.

(Ch. xi. § 6.)

Sir A. Wylde.

Sir Alfred Wylde, at the head of a splendid force, in a few days brought the insurgents to terms. The whole question of the north-western and western frontier will yet require consideration.

Afghan affairs.  
(§ 156.)

Afghan affairs, again, at this time became of great importance. Shîr All Khân, son of Dôst Muhammad (who died in 1863), after many struggles, made good his claim to his father's kingdom. England did not interfere. The old fear of Russian aggression still exists in many minds; but while India is well governed, and every effort is made to preserve the Anglo-Indian military establishments in a state of efficiency, Russia may be safely left to do what she can in Central Asia. Her task is sufficiently arduous. The fact that Russia has occupied Bokhâra is, of course, important; but the idea of a Russian invasion of India from the north-west is gradually dying away.

Russians invasions.

The second Afghan war, during which Shîr All died, and which has just closed with a treaty between the English and Jacob Khân, the present Amir, was undertaken to give a "scientific frontier" to the British dominions. 1879.

Tenancy bills.

The Panjâb and Oudh tenancy bills close Sir John Lawrence's administration.

They were passed in a somewhat hurried manner, and were warmly supported by some, and denounced with peculiar vehemence by others. Their effect remains to be seen.

Lord Lawrence in England.

The Viceroy on his retirement was raised to the peerage, and Lord Lawrence is still actively employed in furthering schemes for the good both of England and India.

(He died in 1879, and was buried in Westminster Abbey.)

## PART XVII.—EARL MAYO.

Recent events.  
1869.

§ 191. EARL MAYO was the next Viceroy. His meeting with Shîr All, the ruler of Afghanistan, at Umbâla; the visit of the Queen's second son, the Duke of Edinburgh; and the financial

## XVII. Lord Mayo.

CHAP. X. 191.  
AD 1869.

embarrassments of the Government of India, are the chief topics of the day. The construction of railways is vigorously proceeding in every part of the country.

Among the questions now agitating the minds of Indian statesmen, the financial one is felt to be all-important. Pressing requirements

The income tax, raised to 3 per cent. in 1870, and lowered to 1 per cent. in 1871, seems destined to disappear altogether.

It is generally believed that the Indian revenue has been sacrificed unnecessarily and unwisely in one of the settlements executed in the central and north-western provinces.

The decentralization, in part, of the Government, by granting greater liberty of action to the subordinate governments, is under consideration.

A more thorough system of vernacular education, that shall touch the mass of the rural population, is a pressing necessity.

The department of Public Works is on the eve of a thorough and greatly needed reform.

The progress of Brahmoism, which is a reform of Brahmanism, somewhat resembling the ancient Buddhist movement, indicates a great change in the tendencies of Hindu thought.

All things in India seem in a transition state. There is reason to fear that the changes in some cases may be too rapid; and that we are exposed to the dangers indicated in § 153 of this chapter.

[The above summary was hardly written before all the civilized world was agitated by the announcement of the assassination of Lord Mayo, at Port Blair, in the Andaman Islands, on the 8th February 1872. The assassin was a convict, under sentence of transportation for life. No political motive could be traced. The voice of the nation pronounced Lord Mayo's career "worthy of his predecessors." The time has not come for an account of his successors.]

Brahmoism

(that is to say, many and rapid)

# § 192. TABLE OF THE GOVERNORS-GENERAL OF BRITISH INDIA.

1774-1869.

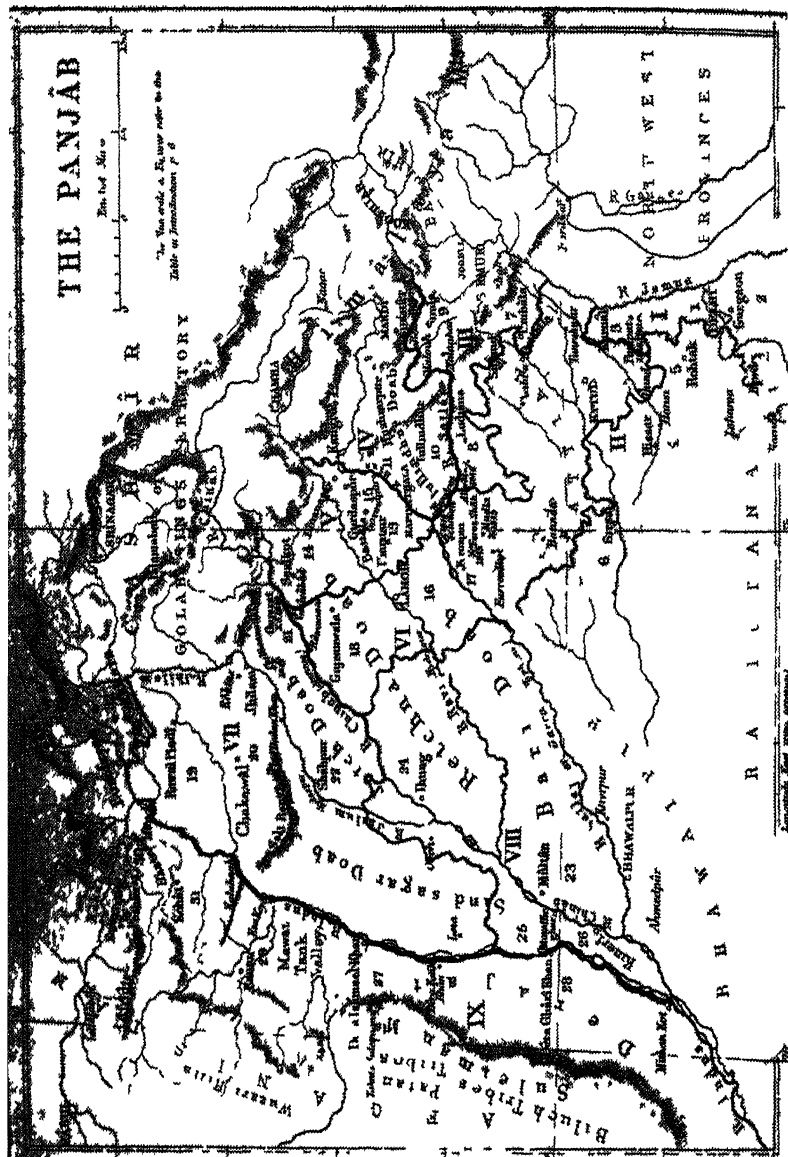
I.	Warren Hastings . .	1774-1785	First Mahratta War. Haidar.
	Mr. Macpherson . .	1785	Acting. (Mahādajī Sindia.)
II.	Lord Cornwallis . .	1786-1793	Third Mysôr War. Permanent settlement.
III.	Lord Teignmouth . .	1793-1798	Neutrality. (Oudh. Kârdlâ.)
	[Mr Shore.]	—	Acting.
IV.	Sir A. Clarke . . .	—	Acting.
	Marquess Wellesley .	1798-1805	Fourth Mysôr War. Second and Third Mahratta Wars. Subsidiary System.
	[Lord Mosnington.]	—	Peace-at-any-price policy.
V.	Lord Cornwallis . .	1805	Non-intervention. Vellore Mutiny.
	Sir George Barlow .	1805-1807	Travancore. Embassies.
VI.	Lord Minto . . . .	1807-1813	The Pindâri War. Nîpal. Mahratta settlement.
VII.	Marquess of Hastings	1814-1823	Acting.
	[Earl of Moira.]	—	Acting.
	Mr. Adam . . . . .	—	Acting.
VIII.	Lord Amherst . . .	1823-1828	First Birmese War. Bhartpûr.
	Mr. W. B. Bayley . .	—	Acting.
IX.	Lord W. Bentinck . .	1828-1835	Mysôr. Kârg. Reforms. Progress. Peace.
	Sir C. Metcalfe . . .	1836	Acting. Freedom of Press.
X.	Lord Auckland . . .	1836-1842	Afghân expedition. First Chinese War.
XI.	Lord Ellenborough .	1842-1844	Afghânistân. Sind. Gwâlîôr.
XII.	Sir H. Hardinge . .	1844-1847	First Panjâb War. Progress.
	Mr. Bird . . . . .	—	Acting.
XIII.	The Marquess of Dalhousie.	1848-1856	Second Panjâb War. Second Birmese War. Annexation. Progress.
XIV.	Viscount Canning . .	1856-1862	Mutinies. Extinction of the Company's dominion.
	(First Viceroy.)	—	Acting. Border War.
XV.	Lord Elgin . . . . .	1862	Oudh settlement.
	Sir W. Denison . . .	1863	Assassinated, Feb. 8, 1872.
XVI.	Sir John Lawrence .	1864-1869	
XVII.	The Earl of Mayo . .	1869-1872	



THE P<sup>\*</sup>ANJAB

100  
 90  
 80  
 70  
 60  
 50  
 40  
 30  
 20  
 10  
 0

<sup>a</sup>The Van der Waals  $a$  Eq. was used to estimate the  $\sigma$  of Table III. Introduction of  $\sigma$  is



## THE PANJÂB.

419

### Divisions of the Panjâb.

CH. XI § 1, 2

## CHAPTER XI.

### The Panjab.

#### PART I.—THE GEOGRAPHY OF THE PANJÂB.

§ 1. The history of the Panjâb, the India of antiquity, is the beginning and end of Indian history. It will therefore be useful to the student to have a summary of the leading facts regarding the magnificent "Land of the Five Rivers."

Importance of this part of Indian history

Although the Panjâb formed, from the very first, a part of the Mogul empire, a great portion of it on the west was nothing but a battle-field, where Afghâns, Sikhs, and others were constantly fighting, sometimes against one another, and oftener against the emperor himself.

The Panjâb a battle-field

Its shape is an irregular triangle, containing more than 50,000 square miles. Its population, when it was conquered by the English, in 1849, was 4,000,000. [Comp. Intro. § 10, p. 5, 6.]

Area and population.

§ 2. A study of the map will show that the territory historically connected with the Panjâb consists of:—  
(1) Five Doâbs (Intro. § 9); (2) the Trans-Indus

Divisions.  
Five Doâbs.



	frontier, or Dêrajât; (3) the Hazara valley; (4) Golâb Sing's territory, or Cashmîr; and (5) the Cis-Satlaj districts.
Inhabitants.	In the central plains are now found Sikhs and Jâts. Along the valley of the Indus and the north-western borders, Patâns and other Muhammadan tribes abound.
The five Doābs. ( <i>Sutledge</i> )	§ 3. The Doabs are :— (1) the <i>Julindar</i> (Julindhar). between the Satlaj and Biâs;
( <i>Beas</i> .)	(2.) the <i>Bari</i> , between the Biâs, Satlaj, Chinâb, and Ravi;
( <i>Chand.</i> )	(3.) the <i>Rechnâ</i> , between the Ravi and Chinâb;
( <i>Jhelum</i> .)	(4.) the <i>Jetch</i> , between the Chinâb and Jhîlam; and (5) the <i>Sind-Sâgar</i> between the Jhîlam and the Indus
The Bari the most important. (Prop <i>Amritsara</i> = the fountain of nectar)	The <i>Bari Douab</i> is the most important of these, as it contains the central home of the Sikh nation, and the three most important cities of Lîhôr, Umritsîr, and Multân.
The fertile Sub-Himâlayan plain.	From the base of the lower Himâlayan ranges southward, there extends a strip of country, varying in breadth from fifty to eighty miles, watered by the innumerable affluents of the Panjâb rivers, unsurpassed in the world for fertility.
	Here are Lal or, Umritsîr, Dînanagar, Battâla, Seal-kôt, Gujarânwâla (the birth-place of Ranjît Sing), Rânnaagar, and Gujarât
The centres of the Doābs	The centres of all the Doābs are wastes overgrown with grass and bushes; inhabited by lawless, nomad, pastoral tribes. Yet the whole is covered with ruins of cities and temples. These cities and monuments are Muhammadan.
The Salt Range.	The sterile Sind-Sâgar Doāb is divided into two parts by the Salt Range; which, broken by the Indus, stretches over to the Suleimân mountains. Its inex-

## 421

1172

There are three considered to be the most important in the  
Bawal Pindi Chakawan and Poo Bawal Chakawan.

§ 4. We find that the Tribes of the Denagat, or *nomads*, of the Afghân chiefs in the region of Amud (Ch. II § 18) have been

(1) the province of ...

This contains the names of Elizabeth Hester and Peshawar prior to the advent of Peshawar to frontier customs. But I do not know the names from which they have been taken.

IL was 34 1 4 r 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48 49 50 51 52 53 54 55 56 57 58 59 60 61 62 63 64 65 66 67 68 69 70 71 72 73 74 75 76 77 78 79 80 81 82 83 84 85 86 87 88 89 90 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 99 100 101 102 103 104 105 106 107 108 109 110 111 112 113 114 115 116 117 118 119 120 121 122 123 124 125 126 127 128 129 130 131 132 133 134 135 136 137 138 139 140 141 142 143 144 145 146 147 148 149 150 151 152 153 154 155 156 157 158 159 160 161 162 163 164 165 166 167 168 169 170 171 172 173 174 175 176 177 178 179 180 181 182 183 184 185 186 187 188 189 190 191 192 193 194 195 196 197 198 199 200 201 202 203 204 205 206 207 208 209 210 211 212 213 214 215 216 217 218 219 220 221 222 223 224 225 226 227 228 229 230 231 232 233 234 235 236 237 238 239 240 241 242 243 244 245 246 247 248 249 250 251 252 253 254 255 256 257 258 259 260 261 262 263 264 265 266 267 268 269 270 271 272 273 274 275 276 277 278 279 280 281 282 283 284 285 286 287 288 289 290 291 292 293 294 295 296 297 298 299 300 301 302 303 304 305 306 307 308 309 310 311 312 313 314 315 316 317 318 319 320 321 322 323 324 325 326 327 328 329 330 331 332 333 334 335 336 337 338 339 340 341 342 343 344 345 346 347 348 349 350 351 352 353 354 355 356 357 358 359 360 361 362 363 364 365 366 367 368 369 370 371 372 373 374 375 376 377 378 379 380 381 382 383 384 385 386 387 388 389 390 391 392 393 394 395 396 397 398 399 400 401 402 403 404 405 406 407 408 409 410 411 412 413 414 415 416 417 418 419 420 421 422 423 424 425 426 427 428 429 430 431 432 433 434 435 436 437 438 439 440 441 442 443 444 445 446 447 448 449 450 451 452 453 454 455 456 457 458 459 460 461 462 463 464 465 466 467 468 469 470 471 472 473 474 475 476 477 478 479 480 481 482 483 484 485 486 487 488 489 490 491 492 493 494 495 496 497 498 499 500 501 502 503 504 505 506 507 508 509 510 511 512 513 514 515 516 517 518 519 520 521 522 523 524 525 526 527 528 529 530 531 532 533 534 535 536 537 538 539 540 541 542 543 544 545 546 547 548 549 550 551 552 553 554 555 556 557 558 559 560 561 562 563 564 565 566 567 568 569 570 571 572 573 574 575 576 577 578 579 580 581 582 583 584 585 586 587 588 589 590 591 592 593 594 595 596 597 598 599 600 601 602 603 604 605 606 607 608 609 610 611 612 613 614 615 616 617 618 619 620 621 622 623 624 625 626 627 628 629 630 631 632 633 634 635 636 637 638 639 640 641 642 643 644 645 646 647 648 649 650 651 652 653 654 655 656 657 658 659 660 661 662 663 664 665 666 667 668 669 670 671 672 673 674 675 676 677 678 679 680 681 682 683 684 685 686 687 688 689 690 691 692 693 694 695 696 697 698 699 700 701 702 703 704 705 706 707 708 709 710 711 712 713 714 715 716 717 718 719 720 721 722 723 724 725 726 727 728 729 730 731 732 733 734 735 736 737 738 739 740 741 742 743 744 745 746 747 748 749 750 751 752 753 754 755 756 757 758 759 760 761 762 763 764 765 766 767 768 769 770 771 772 773 774 775 776 777 778 779 780 781 782 783 784 785 786 787 788 789 790 791 792 793 794 795 796 797 798 799 800 801 802 803 804 805 806 807 808 809 810 811 812 813 814 815 816 817 818 819 820 821 822 823 824 825 826 827 828 829 830 831 832 833 834 835 836 837 838 839 840 841 842 843 844 845 846 847 848 849 850 851 852 853 854 855 856 857 858 859 860 861 862 863 864 865 866 867 868 869 870 871 872 873 874 875 876 877 878 879 880 881 882 883 884 885 886 887 888 889 890 891 892 893 894 895 896 897 898 899 900 901 902 903 904 905 906 907 908 909 910 911 912 913 914 915 916 917 918 919 920 921 922 923 924 925 926 927 928 929 930 931 932 933 934 935 936 937 938 939 940 941 942 943 944 945 946 947 948 949 950 951 952 953 954 955 956 957 958 959 960 961 962 963 964 965 966 967 968 969 970 971 972 973 974 975 976 977 978 979 980 981 982 983 984 985 986 987 988 989 990 991 992 993 994 995 996 997 998 999 1000 1001 1002 1003 1004 1005 1006 1007 1008 1009 1010 1011 1012 1013 1014 1015 1016 1017 1018 1019 1020 1021 1022 1023 1024 1025 1026 1027 1028 1029 1030 1031 1032 1033 1034 1035 1036 1037 1038

The first

(2) The value of  $\alpha$  is 1.

(3) the Value of a man,

(4) the Valley of Marwat,

(5.) the Valley of Ezer Kevl

(6) the Turk Valley

(7) the Deputy, with their Imanuel Klam D r Kath i D r ,  
Klam and Lara (Hazi Klam and

(8) die Transportkommissionen des Kalbwegs  
und dithmar-Kot

Sulman ramp. The Minda vi, of the Kyster and Kohat Poles, are the most important.

§ 5. In the Judgment of the Tribunal, India is the protected State of Kuwait.

Its Raja is the only representative of the Sikh race in  
Khalsâ.

In the north of the Trans-Sulay territory is Kanger, formerly Nagarkot, which was celebrated in Mahmud's madan-namas (1148-50).

CH. XI. § 6, 7.

Cashmîr.

Hazara.  
(= thousands,  
from the  
number of  
petty chief-  
fains)

The Caggars.

§ 6. The district of Hazara is the extreme north-west angle of the Sind-Sâgar Doâb, between the rivers Jhîlam and Indus. It consists of a series of valleys, encircled by hills, and has an area of 2,500 square miles. The Caggars, or Gakkars (ch. ii. § 16), were aborigines of Hazara. (Comp. ch. x. § 190.)

Cashmîr.

§ 7. Cashmîr is an extensive upland plain, situate among the Himâlâya mountains, more than half-way up their height. It is elliptical, and widens toward Islamâbâd. It is about sixty miles from north to south, and 110 miles from east to west. It was once the bed of a large lake, said to have been drained by the Hindû sage Kâsyapa. It is watered by the Jhîlam, which traverses it from east to west. Rice, wheat, barley, and a variety of fruits are produced at different elevations. It is especially famed for its shawls, made from the wool of the Tibetan goat. Saffron is also produced largely there.

Produce of  
Cashmîr.

Summary of  
Cashmîrian his-  
tory.

(The Kâsh-  
mîras are men-  
tioned in the  
"Vishnu  
Purâna.")

Cashmîr had been governed by Hindû chiefs from remote antiquity, but was over-run by Mahmûd of Ghaznî, in A.D. 1012. (Ch. ii. § 8.) The Tatâr chiefs held it till it was conquered by Akbar. [Ch. iii. § 6 (17).]

Ahmad Shâh Abdâlî next took possession of it. (Ch. iii. § 22.) The Afghân governor made himself independent in 1809. In 1846 the British made it over to Golâb Sing, whose son now rules it. (Ch. x. § 129.)

Its chief towns are Srinagar, on the Jhîlam, and Islamâbâd.

The serpent  
worshippers.

A race of kings of Tatâr descent, who were Buddhists, but also serpent worshippers, reigned in Cashmîr from A.D. 21 to the sixth century. They were the authors of many remarkable monuments such as the excavations of Nassik and the cave-temples of Adjunta. They extended their conquests even to Ceylon.

## Cis-Satlaj States.

## CHAP. XI § 2.

§ 8. Intimately related to the Panjáb are the *Cis-Satlaj States*.

(1.) The first of these is *Pattidla*, a protected State. The division of the Sikhs south of the Satlaj was called the *Máhwá Sikhs*, in distinction from those of the Panjáb, who were called *Manjhá Sikhs*. Of those on the south, who are Jíts, the chief was the *Phulkean* tribe (from *Phul*, their ancestor, a peasant), and at the head of these is the Rája of *Pattiala*. His territories were enlarged after the mutinies of 1857, as an acknowledgment of his unwavering fidelity to the paramount power. From 1808 (ch. x § 67) a political agent has been stationed at *Umbála* for the protection of these *Cis-Satlaj* chiefs. The great-grandfather of the present Rája, *Allá Sing*, was a poor peasant, but raised himself. In this State is *Batinda* (ch. ii. § 7), a grand old fortress, exceeding any of those erected by the Moguls.

(2.) *Jhind* is also a protected State. The origin of this State is like that of *Pattiala*. The Rája, *Murúp Sing*, was faithful in 1857; and was the first man who appeared in arms before Delhi, on the British side, after the outbreak. He was rewarded with a lakh of rupees per annum.

(3.) *Nabha* (or *Nabha*) is the third protected State. The Rája of this small territory is a relative of the two preceding Rájas. He also was faithful during the mutinies of 1857, and has been rewarded.

(4.) The British territory on the south of the Satlaj has been divided into five districts:—(a) *Peróz-púr*, (b) *Lúdiána*, (c) *Umbála*, (d) *Tanéshtar*, (e) *Simla*.

There are altogether, besides the three more important States, six other dependent States, and fifty dependent chiefships in the *Cis-Satlaj* circle.

(Cis-Satlaj States.)

*Pattiala*.  
(*Pattiala* = the chief's abode.)

(117 miles N. W. from Delhi.)

*Pattiala* faithful.

English Resident at *Umbála*.  
(*Umbála*.)

*Batinda*.

*Jhind*  
(The town is 67 miles N. W. from Delhi.)  
The Rája faithful in 1857.  
Rewarded.

*Nabha*.

Faithful and rewarded.

British territory south of the Satlaj.

(Comp. Intro. § 10.)

PART II.—SUMMARY OF PANJÂB HISTORY TO THE  
RISE OF RANJIT SING.

Darius and  
Alexander in  
the Panjâb.  
B.C. 518.  
B.C. 327.

§ 9. The accounts of the conquest of the Panjâb by Darius, and by Alexander the Great [ch. i. (ii.) § 17-18], are the first glimpses of authentic Indian history afforded us.

Pôrus.

In the time of Alexander, *Pôrus*, who was the principal chief, possessed but one-eighth of the whole of the Panjâb. It was occupied by a multitude of petty rulers.

Bactrians.

§ 10. The Panjâb was after this under the Bactrian kings (ch. i. § 19) till B.C. 126.

Muhammadians.

§ 11. Muhâlib, in A.D. 664, and Kâsim, in 711, conquered Mûltân; but seem to have advanced no further. (Ch. ii. § 4.)

Jeipâl,  
A.D. 1001.

Lâhôr occupied  
by Muhamma-  
dians, A.D. 1022.

§ 12. The next person connected with Panjâb history is Jeipâl. He is called King of Lâhôr, but was probably a Râjpût king of Delhi, who had annexed Lâhôr to his dominions. His contests, and those of his son, with the first Muhammadan invaders, are related in ch. ii. § 6, 7, &c.

Lâhôr the Mu-  
hammadan  
capital.

§ 13. Masâud II. (ch. ii. § 14) resided at Lâhôr; and there Khûsrû Malik, the last of the race of Mahmûd of Ghaznî, died in 1186. (Ch. ii. § 15.)

The Gakkars.

§ 14. The Gakkars took Lâhôr in 1203, but were expelled by Muhammed Ghôrî, who conquered the whole of the Panjâb.

## THE PANJÁB.

Summary from 1414 to Akbar's conquest.

(Ch. X.)

§ 15. For centuries the Panjáb was subject to Delhi and became the battle-field where the Mogul and Afgháns fought for the possession of India. It was often rebelled; but it was not till 1414 that one of these, Khizr Khán, seized the supreme power and reigned in Delhi, nominally as a viceroy of the Sultan (Ch. ii. § 45-46.)

§ 16. The Lodís were from the Panjáb (Ch. ii. § 47) and their accession to the throne of Delhi transferred the province to the empire, if empire it could then be called.

§ 17. Daulat Khán Lodí, the Viceroy of the Panjáb, united with Bálor to invade India.

Láhór was taken and burnt, as the preliminary to the Mogul conquest of India. Bálor  
Láhór

§ 18. The Panjáb was yielded by Humáyún to his brother Kámrán, who was compelled to cede it to Shír Sháh [Ch. iii. § 4 (5)] and flee to Kábul. Shír Sháh then founded Róhtas, which he named after his favourite stronghold between the Ganges and the Sóné. It cost him £1,500,000. Shír Sháh  
1540.

§ 19. Sikander Súr, a nephew of Shír Sháh, proclaimed himself king of the Panjáb in 1554; but was driven into Sirhind by the returning Humáyún, who took possession of Láhór early in 1555. [Ch. iii. § 5 (6); § 6 (5).] The  
turns

§ 20. Akbar was compelled to repel several invasions of the Panjáb made by his brother Mirza Hakím; and in 1581 Rájá Bhagaván Dás was made viceroy. [Ch. iii. § 6 (15).] Akbar's  
brother  
is Vikram  
1581.

## CH XI § 21, 22.

## The Sikhs and their Gurus.

Akbar conquers  
Cashmir, 1586.

"Eusefzyes,"  
= sons of  
Joseph.  
Amritsir.

Cashmir was conquered by Akbar in 1586. The tribes who occupy the hills around the plain of Peshâwar, the Yusufzyes and Roshenîyes, gave Akbar much trouble, and were never thoroughly repressed. Their descendants are at perpetual war with the English to this day.

Akbar granted to Rām Dās, the fourth guru in succession from Nanak, a piece of ground, in which he dug a tank, and called it Amritsir (= the lake of immortality). Around this arose a city, the sacred city of the Sikhs.

Prince Khûsrû,  
1605.

§ 21. Lâhôr was the residence of Khûsrû, who was a near relative of Râja Bhagavân Dâs; and it was the scene of his bitter humiliation. (Ch. iii. § 7.)

The Sikhs.

§ 22. The frequent wars of the Mogul emperors with the Afghâns of Kâbul and Kandahâr rendered Lâhôr of great importance; but the Sikhs, in due time, became more formidable than the Afghâns themselves. The rise of the Sikh power was, in fact, about contemporaneous with that of the British in India. [Ch. iii. § 10 (5).] To this generation the SIKH name gives the Panjâb its greatest interest. The Sikhs have been the worthiest antagonists, and are now among the firmest friends of the paramount power.

Guru Govind,  
1675

Banda, 1707.

His "Dis-  
ciples."

It was in 1675 that *Guru Govind*, the tenth spiritual chief in succession from Nanak, formed the sect of the Sikhs (= *disciples*) into a religious and military commonwealth, or KHÂLSÂ (= *pure*). In their training there was a combination of the ascetic and the knightly character. Cruel persecution converted them into relentless, gloomy fanatics, equally ready to inflict and to suffer the most cruel torments. [Ch. iii. § 12 (9).]

They were saved from utter extermination only by the breaking up of the Mogul empire upon the death of Aurungzib.

## The life of the "Lion of the Panjâb."

CH. XI § 21, 25

§ 23. In 1738 an invading army again marched through the Panjâb, under Nâsir Shah; and again five times under the Afghân, Ahmad Khân, of the Aitdâlî or Durâni tribe, in 1747 1750. In 1751 the province was finally severed from the Mogul empire. (Ch. iii. § 15-18, 19, 20.)

The Panjâb under the Afghâns, 1751

## PART III.—THE PANJÂB UNDER RANJÎT SING.

§ 24. The British Government first came into contact with the Sikhs in 1808, 9. The chiefs then applied to the Governor-General to protect them from the encroachments of Ranjît Sing.

The Sikhs and Ranjît Sing in 1808, 9

These chiefs were independent of one another, and were divided into twelve confederacies called MINES (— *confederations*) (Ch. x. § 67.) The treaty of *Amritsar* was then concluded between Lord Minto and the Râja (§ 26). Disunion had already prepared the way for their subjugation.

Met also in the Panjâb

§ 25. RANJÎT SING was born November 2, 1780, and died 27th June 1839. He first rose into importance in 1798, when he recovered some guns for Zeman Shah which had been lost in the Jhilm. He was then appointed Governor of Lâhôr, by the Afghân monarch, in his eighteenth year. (Ch. x. § 38.)

The early history of Ranjît Sing

In 1803 he proposed to Lord Lake to form a defensive and offensive alliance, on condition that the territory occupied by the Sikhs south of the Satlaj should be made over to him. This was declined.

Seeks the British alliance, but

The life of the wily Sikh was given up to the one object of enlarging his territory, and improving his army for this purpose. He obtained Colonel Ventura, two of Napoleon's old officers, and (generals) Court and Avastabile, entered his service in 1822, and under their training the Sikh army became most effective.

His French generals.

Ranjît Sing is said to have on one occasion visited Lord Lake's camp in disguise, to see for himself what a British army was like.



CH. XI. § 26, 27.

Ranjit Singh and his Successors.

Charles Metcalfe in Lâhôr, 1839.

Rûpar, 1831.  
The Indian  
"Field of the  
cloth of gold."

His unswerving  
attachment to  
the English.  
(Ch. x. § 110, x.)

His army.

§ 26. When the Sikh Sirdârs of Jhînd, Kytul, and Pattiâla appealed for protection to Lord Minto (§ 24), Mr. Metcalfe was sent as an ambassador to Lâhôr.

A present of horses was afterwards sent to Ranjît Sing by Lord Ellenborough, when he was President of the Board of Control. These were conveyed up the Indus by Alexander Burnes, afterwards famous in Kâbul.

In 1831 Lord W. Bentinck had an interview with Ranjît Sing at Rûpar, on the Satlaj, conducted with extraordinary pomp and magnificence; when an assurance of perpetual amity was given him by the Governor-General. Till his death, which occurred while he was co-operating with the British in the ill-fated attempt to restore Shâh Shuja to the dominion of Afghânistân, he maintained an undeviating course of friendly conduct towards the British Government. His army numbered 82,000 men. His artillery consisted of 376 guns and as many swivels. He was the most remarkable ruler in the East in his day.

#### PART IV.—THE FIRST PANJÂB WAR.

Ranjit's successors, 1839-1845.  
(Table, § 47,  
p 442)

§ 27. The death of "the Lion of the Panjâb" was the signal for strife and confusion. The chiefs he had held in subjection, and the kinsmen who aspired to succeed, began to contend in the usual method of Eastern kingdoms.

Kurruk Sing, an imbecile, succeeded. He died on the 5th of November 1840, after a reign of four months, not without suspicion of poison. His son, Nihâl Sing, was killed (by a supposed accident) on the day of his accession; and an uncle, Shîr Sing, seized

II  
Kurruk Sing,  
1840

III.  
Nihâl Sing.

IV.  
Shîr Sing.

## The first Panjáb war.

CH. XI. § 28, 30.

the reins of government, aided chiefly by Dian Sing, the favourite minister of Ranjít. This man, in 1843, caused both Shír Sing and his son to be assassinated; and anarchy ensued till 1845; when, after many bloody episodes, Dhulip Sing, son of Ranjít Sing, by his favourite wife Rānī Jindan, was acknowledged as "Mahārāja"; Hira Sing being prime minister, and the Sirdárs, or chiefs, constituting themselves a council.

V  
Dhulip Sing

§ 28. In 1845 (ch. x. § 12) the most prominent persons there were Goláb Sing of Jamú, the Ulysses of the Panjáb; Lál Sing, the paramour of Chand Kowr (widow of Kurruk Sing), and her brother Jowaher Sing; and Chatter Sing, the commander of the forces. After several massacres Lál Sing became Vazir. It seemed clear that the large and well-trained Sikh army would not long refrain from some outrage; and the Governor-General, Lord Hardinge, prepared himself, by increasing the number of British troops between Mirut and the Satlaj to 32,000 men, with sixty-eight field-pieces. The wily Sikh chiefs saw an easy way of getting rid of a troublesome army by urging them on to cross the Satlaj, and attack the hated English.

1845.  
IntriguesWar with the  
Sikhs

§ 29. On the 11th of December 1845, the Sikh army began to cross the Satlaj, and took up a position not far from Ferôz-pûr. They were numerous, well trained, and glowing with enthusiasm. On the 13th of December 1845, Sir H. Hardinge issued a proclamation, setting forth the unprovoked aggression committed by the Sikh soldiery, and calling upon the protected chiefs to aid the British Government against the common enemy. THE FIRST PANJÁB WAR, which lasted exactly two months, had commenced.

The Sikhs cross  
the Satlaj, Dec  
11, 1845.The proclama-  
tion of Dec. 13The first Panjáb  
War.

§ 30. The first battle took place between the Umbála and Lúdiána divisions of the British army, and the

Dec. 17 1845  
Feb. 13, 1846

## CHAP. XI. § 31.

## Múdkí. Ferôz-Shâh.

I.  
Múdkí, Dec. 18,  
1845.

Sale and M'Caskill fall.  
(Comp. ch. x.  
§ 110.)

The Governor-General a volunteer.

II.  
FERÔZ-SHÂH,  
Dec 21, 1845.  
(Or, Ferôz-Shuhur.)

The night of  
Dec. 21.

The renewed  
battle, Dec. 22.

Sikhs under Lâl Sing. The armies met at MÚDKÍ, about twenty miles from Ferôz-pûr. (Lord) Gough's army consisted of 11,000 men; and the Sikhs, had 30,000 men, with forty guns. Under Gough were, among others, the brave generals Sir H. Smith, Sir Walter Gilbert, and Sir J. M'Caskill. The Sikhs were defeated, after a short and sharp conflict, losing seventeen guns. The English had 215 killed and 657 wounded. The charge of the British infantry soon decided the battle. Sir R. Sale and Sir J. M'Caskill, brother heroes of the Afghân war, fell in this battle.

§ 31. On the next day the Governor-General, who had joined the camp, waiving his rank as Governor-General, placed himself as second under Sir H. Gough. Sir John Littler, from Ferôz-pûr, with 5,000 troops, now joined the main body; and a combined attack was made upon the Sikh encampment at FERÔZ-SHÂH, about ten miles from Múdkí, and about the same distance from Ferôz-pûr. The enemy had entrenched themselves in a camp in the form of a horse-shoe, a mile long and half a mile deep. They had upwards of a hundred guns, well appointed and served, and about 30,000 men. An equal number lay on the further bank of the Satlaj. On the 21st December the whole British army was brought in front of this entrenched camp. The assault began an hour before sunset, and during that remarkable night the English and the Sikhs were mingled on the battle-field in utter confusion.

Sir H. Hardinge and Sir Hugh Gough bivouacked with their troops in the bitter cold, without food or covering, waiting with anxiety for the eventful dawn. The Sikhs had stood to their guns so nobly, that when night fell, they still held their camp; and the British soldiers lay down where they had fought, weary, hungry, and far from enthusiastic. Sir Henry himself, about

midnight, led two regiments to silence a battery which was annoying his men. Some even talked of retreat, but that would have roused all Upper India against the Government. Gough, Hardinge, and their brave subordinates, were not men to speak of retreat. At day-break Hardinge placed himself at the head of the left, and Gough rode at the head of the right wing; and by one rapid, daring movement, drove the enemy out of their encampment and from the village of Ferôz-Shâh. Then, after sweeping the camp, and dislodging the enemy from their whole position, "the line," to use Gough's own words, "halted, as if on a day of manœuvre, receiving the two leaders with a cheer, and displaying the captured standards of the Khâlsâ army." Seventy-three cannon had been taken. Six hundred and ninety-four of the British army had, however, been killed, and 1,721 wounded. The British army was too much exhausted to pursue.

Complete victory.

Later in the day, Têj Sing, with a fresh body of troops, came down upon the exhausted British force. The ammunition was spent; and therefore Sir H. Gough moved on his cavalry to attack their flanks, and prepared his wearied infantry for one more charge. But the Sikhs, awed by the resolute demeanour of their opponents, suddenly retreated, and the field was won. The Sikhs had suffered terribly, but the loss of the British was also very great; and it was generally felt that the English had purchased the victory at too dear a rate.

Dear bought.

Major Broadfoot, distinguished alike as a soldier and a political officer, fell in this battle.

§ 32. There was now a pause. For a month the British force lay all but inactive, waiting for reinforcements and supplies; while the Sikhs again crossed the Satlaj,

A month of waiting, Jan. 1846

## CHAP. XI. §33.

## The first Panjáb war. Aliwál.

in front of Lúdiána, with a train of seventy pieces of artillery.

III  
Aliwál, Jan 28,  
1846.

Buddowál.

On the 28th January was fought the decisive battle of ALIWÁL. Sir Harry Smith, with a small body of troops, had been sent towards Lúdiána to deter the increasing bodies of Sikhs from crossing the Satlaj. In this march he was encountered by a body of the enemy under Goláb Sing, at *Buddowál*, and was not able to attack them, though he suffered severely from their fire. This was looked upon by the Sikhs as a victory; but, in a few days, having been reinforced by the brigades of Godby, Wheeler, Forster, and Wilson, Sir Harry marched out and attacked them at Aliwál. The Sikhs had been disciplined by General Avitabile, and their gunners were especially efficient. Yet they were driven into the river by the steady advance of the British soldiers, who hemmed them in. They lost fifty-six guns and all their stores of every kind. This victory determined the Muhammadan chiefs on the Cis-Satlaj border, who now openly hailed the defeat of their Sikh oppressors. Goláb Sing, too, began to negotiate with the British authorities.

Goláb Sing.

IV.  
SOBRÃO, Feb.  
10, 1846.

Shám Sing.

§ 33. It only remained for the British to force the passage of the Satlaj, and to take possession of the Panjáb. The Sikhs entrenched themselves at SOBRÃO, on both banks of the Satlaj. Their camps were connected by a strong bridge of boats, that seemed to say the Sikhs were still determined to maintain a position in British territory. They had one noble leader, the aged Shám Sing.

Sir Harry Smith now joined the Commander-in-Chief; and a siege-train from Delhi having arrived, Sir Hugh drew out his forces crescent-wise along the whole Sikh front, and the battle began before dawn on the morning of February 10. After a terrific cannonade, kept up

The Conclusion of the first Panjáb War.

CHAP. XI. 31.  
A.D. 1840.

for three hours, and replied to with equal energy by the Sikh batteries, it was determined to carry the entrenchments at the point of the bayonet. This was done. Sir Harry Smith, Sir W. Gilbert, and Sir Joseph Thackwell, won the left and centre of the Sikh position in gallant style. Shâm Sing, of Attari, in white garments, devoted himself to death, and fell at length on a heap of his countrymen. After two hours of close fighting, the wreck of the Sikh army was in full retreat across the river. Eight thousand of these gallant, but unfortunate and misguided men, fell either in the battle or in the attempt to cross the river. The British had 320 killed, and 2,063 wounded. Sir R. Dick fell at the head of his men. Sir H. Hardinge was to be seen riding about in the hottest of the fire. The Panjáb now lay at the mercy of England.

The Sikhs drive into and across the Satlaj.

§ 34. On the 13th February the whole British force crossed the Satlaj; and on the 14th a proclamation was issued taking possession of the Panjáb, and announcing the terms on which its occupation would be relinquished. These were marked by moderation and wisdom.

The Panjáb occupied, Feb 1846.

(1.) The Jullindhur Doâb between the Satlaj and the Biâs was annexed.

The terms. Annexation

(2.) Cashmîr and Hazara were retained by the conquerors.

(3.) Dhulip Sing was to be sovereign of Lâhôr, under a council of regency; and a British Resident was appointed (assisted by a number of the ablest and most gallant men ever brought together into one province in British India), with full authority to direct and control all matters in every department of the State, till September 4th, 1854, when the young Mahârâja would attain the age of sixteen years.

The Mahârâja.

CH. XI. § 35, 36.  
A.D. 1848-49.

The second Panjâb War.

Residents.

The first Resident was Sir Henry Lawrence, and the second Sir F. Currie. The Queen-mother was at first Regent, and Lâl Sing was minister. (§ 28.)

Indemnity.<sup>1</sup>

(4.) A million and a half sterling was to be paid as part indemnity for the expenses of the war.

British tin-  
gent.

(5.) A British force was left in Lâhôr for the protection of the Mahârâja.

Cashmîr handed  
over to Golâb  
Sing.

(6.) Golâb Sing, the Râja of Jumtû, the chosen minister of the Khâlsâ, was appointed Râja of Cashmîr, on the payment of one million sterling. The final arrangement was ratified by the Governor-General on the 26th December 1846. (Comp. ch. x. 128-131.)

First Treaty of  
Lâhôr.

This treaty was signed at Lâhôr; but is often called the treaty of Byrowâl.

Honours.

§ 35. The thanks of both houses of Parliament were voted to the gallant army. Sir H. Hardinge and Sir Hugh Gough were raised to the peerage, and Sir H. Smith was made a baronet. General Gilbert was knighted. A donation of twelve months' batta was also given to the troops. The Governor-General, after arranging these matters, left Lâhôr in January 1847. It was little more than a year, however, before again was heard the muttering of a coming storm!

Chând Kowr  
and Lâl Sing,  
1847.

In 1847 a rebellion broke out in Cashmîr against Golâb Sing. The instigator was discovered to be Lâl Sing, the infamous paragon of Chând Kowr. He was sent to the fort of Âgra. Chând Kowr herself was sent a prisoner to Shaikpura, twenty-five miles from Lâhôr, in August 1847, as her constant intrigues destroyed the peace of the kingdom.

PART V.—THE SECOND PANJÂB WAR.

Sir F. Currie.

§ 36. In March 1848 Sir F. Currie succeeded Sir Henry Lawrence as Resident at Lâhôr. At the same

## The Multán outbreak.

CHAP. XI. § 37.  
A.D. 1848.

time, Múlráj, the Governor of Múltán, was negotiating to be relieved from his arduous duties; and Sirdár Khán Sing, accompanied by Mr. Vans Agnew, a Bengál civilian, and Lieutenant Anderson, proceeded thither to be installed as his successor. These two Englishmen were assassinated with every circumstance of savage wanton barbarity. "You can kill me if you like, but others will avenge my death," were Anderson's last words.

Ch. x. § 139.

Assassination  
of Vans Agnew  
and Anderson,  
1848

If Múlráj did not actually arrange the assassination, he rewarded the murderers, and summoned his followers to defend the fort. The reason for the change of purpose in Múlráj seems to have been the indignity put upon him by appointing a Láhór Sirdár to succeed him. He would, it is said, have gladly resigned the district to be taken absolutely by the British Government.

Múlráj's conduct.

§ 37. *Múltán*, so often mentioned in this history, was a city celebrated for its strength.

Múltán.

In the days of Alexander it was the capital of the Malli, from whom it obtained its name. The province is chiefly inhabited by Játs (*Yats*, *Yakhs*), descendants of the Scythian invaders (Ch. i. § 20.) A Muhammadan viceroy ruled there in the days of the Moguls. Conquered by Ahmad Sháh Abdálí (in 1759), it belonged to Kábul till 1816, when Ranjit Sing annexed it to the Panjáb. Bháwalpúr alone remained under its own Muhammadan Khán.

Bháwalpúr.

Lalla Múlráj was governor of the district of Múltán in 1848. It had been resolved to replace him by Sirdár Khán Sing, and this was believed to be agreeable to Múlráj himself, as well as to all the Sikhs; but the Sikh soldiery joined with Múlráj, and were induced to revolt. The result was an outbreak, and the murder, as mentioned above, of Messrs. Vans Agnew and Anderson. A holy war against the Feringhis was now proclaimed. Bháwal Khán, of Bháwalpúr, stood firm as the English ally. Colonel Cortlandt (commanding at Dera Ismael Khán), and Lieutenant Herbert Edwards, whose energy and determination speedily gave him the lead, raised a few Sikhs and Patáns, and joining their

Bháwal Khán.



(C. I. XI § 38, 39  
A. D. 1848.

The general insurrection of 1848.

Battle of Kineri,  
1848.  
(Kinneyree.)

forces on the 20th May, won the hard-fought battle of Kineri, on the Chināb, about twenty miles from Mūltān, on the anniversary of Waterloo, 1848.

"Suddosam."  
Battle of Sud-  
dosam, July 1,  
1848.

The victory of Suddosam, July 1, gained by Edwardes, Cortlandt, and Lieutenant Lake, shut up Mūlrāj in his fort, which was invested; but troops and guns were wanting for the capture of a strong fort a mile in circumference.

Chāud Kowr.

Meanwhile it was believed that the outbreak was merely local; but the restless Queen-mother's influence was at work, and a plot was discovered for the massacre of all the Europeans in Lāhōr. The Queen-mother was then sent to Benāres.

General Whish  
before Mūltān.

§ 38. It was not till the 5th of September that a field force, with a siege train, under the command of Major-General Whish, commenced in earnest the siege of Mūltān. The success of the siege was delayed for a while by the treachery of Rāja Shīr Sing, who, with five thousand men, went over to the enemy. General Whish, safely and commodiously encamped about seven miles off, was compelled to wait for reinforcements; and the Sikhs in Mūltān were, in fact, in a safe prison.

The whole  
Panjāb rises.

§ 39. Meanwhile the whole Panjāb had risen. Chhattar Sing was offering to restore Peshāwar to Dōst Muhammad, as the price of aid from Afghānistān; and Golāb Sing was waiting to see which side was likely to gain. Major George Lawrence was taken prisoner at Peshāwar, and Colonel Abbott was besieged in Attock.

It was well that the Sikhs now, since they could not reconcile themselves to the new order of things, should openly and unitedly rise against their rulers, so as to render it necessary to give them the benefit of a strong and beneficial government once for all. The question required, in the interests of the people of the Panjāb, a final decision.

## The second Panjáb War.

CH XI § 41  
A D 1849

§ 40. The Sikh chiefs were not satisfied with their previous trial of strength. A wide-spread conspiracy, which had long existed in the Sikh army, speedily developed into the SECOND PANJÁB WAR, which lasted till February 1849. The storming of Multán (January 21, 1849); the questionable victory of Chillianwallah (January 13, 1849); and the complete and decisive success at Gujrat (February 21, 1849), led to the final annexation of the Panjáb (March 29, 1849). An army, headed by Lord Gough, speedily marched past Láhôr, across the Ravi, and encamped on the further bank. The Sikhs were in force at Rám-nagar, and it was desirable to drive them across the Chináb. This was done; but in a splendid cavalry charge, Colonel Havelock, of the 14th Dragoons, and General Cureton were killed. It was "*a victory where nothing was gained.*"

THE SECOND  
PANJÁB WARSummary  
Ch. x. § 139.

Cavalry skirmish at Láh-nagar.

§ 41. Meanwhile, at Multán, an attack of Múlráj upon General Whish's encampment was repelled with immense loss to the enemy, by Edwardes, Cortlandt, and Markham; and reinforcements having arrived from Bombay, the siege was renewed. On the 27th December, a combined attack was made on the city, which was stormed, after some days of continuous fighting, on the 3rd January; when, after a determined resistance, Múlráj surrendered the citadel itself.

Storming of  
Multán, Jan.  
1849.

The bodies of Anderson and Vans Agnew were then disinterred, and borne in solemn procession to the topmost point of the citadel, where they were buried. Edwardes was put in charge of the captured city, and General Whish—his work well done—joined Lord Gough. Múlráj was sent off a prisoner to the Governor-General at Láhôr.

Múlráj a prisoner.

§ 42. On the 10th Lord Gough's army moved on, and on the 12th came in sight of Shír Sing's army, near the now famous Chillianwallah. Here, at 3 P.M.,

I.  
Chillianwallah  
Jan. 12, 1

CHAP. XI. § 43.  
A.D. 1849.

## The second Panjáb War.

Terrible loss  
and doubtful  
victory.Lord Gough's  
rashness cen-  
sured.Sir C. Napier  
appointed to  
command.

p. 42.

II.  
Gujarát, Feb.  
20, 1849.  
(60 miles N. of  
Láhor.)  
Splendid and  
decisive vic-  
tory.

on a most unfavourable ground, amid jungles and brushwood, was fought a battle, of which the plan had never been arranged; and in which any but British troops must have been defeated. The enemy were driven off the field, and forty guns taken; yet at nightfall General Gough had to retire a mile to a convenient camping-ground. The loss of the British troops was unequalled in any of their Indian battles, being 38 officers, 53 serjeants or havildars, and 511 privates. The wounded were 1,600 of all ranks. The loss of the Sikhs trebled that of the English. Shir Sing, however, fired a royal salute from the neighbouring heights of Rasûl that evening, and claimed the victory.

Public opinion in India and England now grew very excited; and Lord Gough's rashness was the theme of every conversation. Sir C. Napier was appointed to supersede him; and, with half a day's notice, was on his way to India. But ere the news of Chillianwallah had reached England, the decisive and almost bloodless battle of Gujarát had shown how the preceding battle had weakened the gallant foe.

§ 43. Instead of retiring on the Jhílám, the Sikhs had taken possession of Gujarát, not far from Vazir-ábád, the scene of Alexander's victory over Pôrus, and of some great victories won by the Khálsá in former days: *the Páñipat of the Panjáb*.

Here, on the morning of the 20th February 1849, Lord Gough, with an army of 24,000 men, and ninety guns, met for the last time the Sikh army. The battle of Gujarát completed the overthrow of the Khálsá. Lord Gough himself led on the right, and Sir J. Thackwell the left wing of the army. More use was made on this occasion of artillery, the terrible effect of which has seldom been more seen than in this battle. The Sikhs fought bravely, but were driven from the field in utter

## THE PANJÁB.

439

### Annexation of the Panjáb.

CHAP. XL 44.  
A.D. 1849.

confusion, and pursued for fourteen miles by the British cavalry. By the evening of the 21st fifty-six guns had been taken. The Sikh standards, camp equipage, and stores all fell into the hands of the victors, who lost only ninety-two killed and 700 wounded. General Gilbert, the "flying general," steadily followed up the fugitives; until, on the 8th March, Shih Sing himself came into the camp. Thousands of Sikhs laid down their arms, and received a rupee each as they added their weapons to the vast pile of swords, matchlocks, spears, shields, and camel-guns. On the 14th, at Ráwal Pindí, the same scene was repeated, until more than sixteen thousand had surrendered. On the 17th, Gilbert was at Attock, and thence he pursued Dôst Muhammad's flying troops past Pesháwar, to the mouth of the Khaibar Pass.

General Gilbert's pursuit.  
Shih Sing's surrender.  
The Sikhs disbanded.

The Afghans chased to the mouth of the Khaibar.

Thus, to use Lord Dalhousie's words, the war was carried on "to the entire defeat and dispersion of all in arms against England, whether Sikhs or Afghans."

The Sikhs had left all to the final arbitration of war, and it was decided against them.

§ 44. The annexation of the whole country of the Five Rivers was the natural and necessary result. The previous clemency of Lord Hardinge had been thrown away. British officers had been imprisoned and murdered. Every obligation had been violated by these faithless chiefs. On the 28th March, the Maharaja Dhillip Sing signed in open durbar the treaty which conveyed the realms of Ranjit to the British. A pension of fifty thousand pounds per annum was given to the young Rája.

The annexation of the Panjáb.

The justice of the annexation.  
Dhillip Sing.

Among other spoils, the Koh-i-nûr (hill of light), the largest diamond in the world, was taken and set aside for the Queen of England, who wears it now in a brooch at her levees. From a prince of Málwá it had been taken by one of the Lódís; and Ranjit Sing had obtained it from Shah Shuja, who had inherited it from Ahmad Shah Abdali.

The Koh-i-nûr.

CH XI § 45, 46.  
A.D. 1843.

### Consequences of the Annexation.

Second treaty  
of Láhôr  
The Panjáb  
heroes.

This treaty may be called the second treaty of Láhôr. The names of the Panjáb heroes—Gough, Gilbert, Thackwell, Colin Campbell, Cheape, Wheeler, Tennant, Edwardes, Lake, Taylor, Herbert, Abbott, and Cortlandt—will ever shine in the annals of British India.

The fate of the  
Panjáb leaders.

The Sikh leaders were still restless and treacherous; and eventually were sent to Fort William, where they remained in arrest for some years. Múlraj was tried for the murder of Vans Agnew and Anderson, and found guilty; but his sentence was commuted to imprisonment for life.

The Mahārāja.

The Mahārāja Dhulip Singh was thoroughly educated; and, while still a youth, embraced the Christian faith. He subsequently married a Christian lady of Arabic extraction, and is living in England a dignified and useful life. On him the battle of Gujarat entailed no real loss.

The famous  
Panjáb Com-  
mission.

§ 45. The Governor-General had now to arrange the details of a new system of government for the Panjáb. It was made what is called a "non-regulation" province; a Commission, consisting of Sir Henry Lawrence, Mr. John Lawrence (since Governor-General of India), Mr. Mansell, and Mr. Montgomery, being appointed, to which the administration of the country was intrusted. Assistants, civil and military, were placed in the five circles of Láhôr, Jhílām, Múltān, Leía, and Peshāwar. The whole number of covenanted and commissioned officers was eighty-four. The names of many of these men have become household words; but the details of their work must be studied in the famous reports of the Panjáb administration.

The Chief Com-  
missioner, Sir  
J. Lawrence,  
1853-1858.

§ 46. In February 1853, it was judged desirable to replace this Board of Commissioners by a Chief Commissioner; and Sir John Lawrence was appointed to that office, which he filled till the assumption of the government of India by the Crown.

# THE PANJÁB.

441

Administration of the Panjáb.

(CHAP. XI.)  
A.D. 1857.

The history of the Panjáb and its rulers during the rebellion of 1857 must be read in chap. x. § 17, 18

It has now a Lieutenant-Governor, and the province of Delhi has been added to its jurisdiction. (Comp. Intro. § 10.)

The Panjáb  
during the  
mutinies  
The present  
Government.

# § 47. GENEALOGICAL TABLES TO ILLUSTRATE THE HISTORY OF THE PANJAB.

## CHAPTER XI.

**Mahā Sing**, of the *Sukurchakka Misl*, = daughter of a Jhind Rājā.

I. RANJIT SING. (1780, 1809, 1839.) § 26.

II. Khuruk Sing. (1840.) § 27. = <i>Chānd Kaur</i> (1868).*	(putative.)	Tāra Sing.	V. Dhulip Sing. Born 1838. § 34.
	IV. Shih Sing. (1843.) § 27.		
III. Nihal Sing. (1840.)	Pertāb Sing. (1843.)		

\* Her partner was Lal Sing. (§ 28.)

## TABLE OF THE SIKH GURUS. (Ch. iii. § 10.)

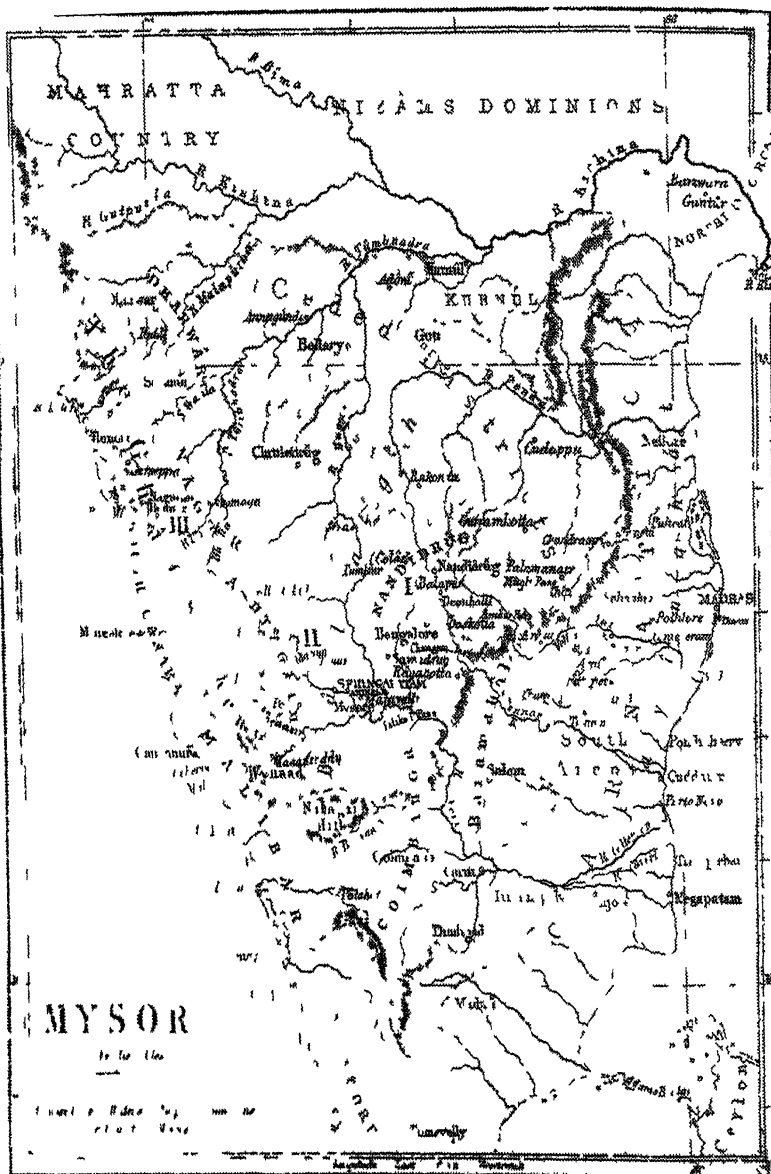
1. Nanak. 1469-1539.	2. Unggal. Died, 1552.	3. Ammar Dās. Died, 1574.	4. Rām Dās. Died, 1581. (Ch. xi. § 20.)
5. Arjuna.* Died, 1606.	6. Har Govind † Died, 1645.	7. Har Rai. † Died, 1661.	8. Harkishen. Died, 1664
9. Tegh Bahadar. § Died, 1675.	10. Govind Sing.    Died, 1708.	Bonda was not a Guru, but a temporal ruler. Died, 1716. (Ch. iii. § 12.)	

\* Made Amritsar the capital, and compiled the Granth.  
† A friend of Dara § Died to death by Aurangzib.

† Fought under Jehangir.  
|| The Muhammad of the Sāha.







## CHAPTER XII.

## The History of Mysôr.

## PART I—THE GEOGRAPHY OF MYSÔR.

§ 1. HAIDAR ALI and TIPU SULTAN were two of the most remarkable men that ever appeared in India. The capture of Seringapatam in 1799, more than any other single event, rendered British supremacy in India inevitable, and therefore the history of their kingdom, Mysôr, demands the attention of the student.

Mysôr (prop. *Mysour*) is bounded on the north-west by the Collectorate of Dharwar, on the north and east by the Haidarâbâd Ceded Districts, on the south by the Collectorates of South Arcot, Salem, and Coimbatôr; and on the west by Kanara, Malabar, and Kârg.

It is a table-land with a general elevation of 2000 feet above the level of the sea, having several hills of granite, gneiss, and rubble, rising in isolated grandeur and crowned with forts, such are Nandidrug (4,856 feet) and Saverndrug (4,004 feet).

Bounded  
Mysôr

Description  
(Nandidrug is 31  
miles N. E. of  
from Mysôr)  
(Saverndrug is  
Golden Fort)

CH. XII. § 2, 3  
A.D. 1507.

2) miles W. by  
S from Banga-  
lor.)  
Divisions.  
(Chittidrûg was  
a fourth divi-  
sion.)

Déonhalli.  
(10 miles N N.E.  
from Bangalôr.)  
(70 miles from  
Seringapatam,  
N.W.)

Rivers.  
(Intro. § 34.)  
(Intro. § 34.)

Division of the  
history of  
Mysôr.

Ancient capi-  
tals.

Ballâla kings,  
A.D. 950-1310.

### The ancient Dynasty.

It is divided into three districts :—

(1.) Bangalôr; (2.) Ashtagrâm, of which Mysôr is the chief town; (3.) Nagar. (Intro. § 14.)

Besides the other places mentioned in the history, *Déonhalli*, the birth-place of Tippû, is to be especially noted. At Manzerâbâd, on the borders of Kûrg, are large and prosperous coffee plantations.

Many rivers rise in and about Mysôr :—

(1.) The Câvêri rises in Kûrg. Seringapatam is on an island in its course.

(2.) The Tûnga and the Bhadra, whose union forms the Tûmbhadra, and the Hugri, a tributary of the Tûmbhadra, rise in the Ghâts between Nagar and Kûrg. The Pennâr and Pâlâr rise near Nandidrûg.

The history of this province is divided into :—

- A. The records and traditions of the ancient dynasties from 1507, to the usurpation of Haidar Ali in 1760;
- B. To the death of Haidar in 1782;
- C. To the death of Tippû Sultân, in 1799;
- D. To the death of the Râja, in 1868; and events since.

## PART II.—THE HISTORY OF MYSOR TO THE RISE OF HAIDAR.

FROM 1507-1760.

§ 2. The whole Karnâtaaka country was in ancient times under Ballâla sovereigns, who were overthrown by Malik Kâfûr in 1310. (Ch. iv. § 9-17.) The capital was then Dwâra Samudra. (Ch. ii. § 28.) Its ruins are at Halabid, 100 miles north-west of Seringapatam. Tonûr (or Yâdavapuri) then became the capital.

§ 3. The earliest authentic account of any settled government in the country after this is the history of a

## THE HISTORY OF MYSŌR.

445

*Mysŏr rises to be an independent state.*

CH XII § 47  
A.D. 1507,  
1559.

Râja or Zamîndar called (Kam, or) Châm Râj, the six-fingered, who possessed a part of the country in 1507.

Châm Râj, the six-fingered, 1507.

§ 4. His successor, Betad Châm Râj, in 1524, divide 1 the little sovereignty among his three sons; of whom the youngest, Châm Râj the Bald, became master of the site of the present city of Mysŏr, where a fort was erected and called Mahisâsura, from a buffalo-headed demon, said to have been slain by the wife of Siva. This is the origin of the name Mysŏr.

Foundation of Mysŏr, 1524

5. The fall of the great Hindû city of Bijanagar in 1565 (ch. iv. § 29) rendered the infant Mysŏr state independent.

Risen an Hija-nagar falls

The rulers of the various Muhammadan states did not at that time pay any attention to the petty kingdoms in the south.

The expelled Bijanagar princes for a time took up their abode at Seringapatam, where they kept up a kind of state.

(A - range) of - nam - the sacred town of Vishnu)

§ 6. Gradually the portions of the divided (§ 4) territory were re-united; but it was Râj Udeiyâr (or *Wade-yâr*) (died in 1617) who, after completing the re-union, extended the limits and greatly consolidated the power of the kingdom.

Raj Udeiyâr, 1617.

Seringapatam became the seat of the government in this reign, the Bijanagar dynasty having become extinct. This Râja was at that time the chief Hindû prince south of the Kishtna.

Seringapatam, 1610

§ 7. The greatest of his descendants was Kanti-Rava Narsa Râj (1640-1659), who repelled an invasion of Mysŏr by the Bijapûr state; added to the fortifications of Seringapatam; established a mint; made war with

Kanti Rava Narsa Râj, 1640-1659  
( - the deep-voiced, a lion; corrupted "Antireya")

CH. XII. § 8, 9.  
A.D. 1659,  
1731.

The decline of the Hindû Dynasty.

Madura; and annexed several of the neighbouring petty states.

Mysôr between  
the Dakhan  
kingdom and  
the Mahrattas,  
1659-1704.

§ 8. The crown now passed to a distinct branch of the royal family. The two next kings were Dodda (*Senior*) Dêo Râj (1659-1672), and Chick (*Junior*) Dêo Râj (1672-1704).

Mysôr, now a considerable state, had to contend with the Muhammadan power in the Dakhan, then in its zenith, as well as with the rising Mahrattas.

Chick Dêo Râj,  
1672-1704.

Sivajî possessed Ginji and Vellore; while Tanjôr, Bangalôr, and other places not far off, were in the hands of other Mahratta chiefs. (Ch. v. § 24.) Chick Dêo Râj prudently avoided all contact with the belligerent parties, and set himself to bring his own feudatories into absolute subjection. He was the Philip Augustus of Mysôr.

Despotic.  
(The Jangams  
are worshippers  
of Siva, and  
wear the  
Lungam.)

His government was most despotic, and his exactions drove many villagers to the neighbouring Nilagiri hills, where their descendants dwell, under the name of Burghers, or Badagas (*people from the north*). He put down all opposition, however, by an indiscriminate massacre of the Jangam priests.

Purchase of  
Bangalôr.

(Ch. v. § 7.)

He bought Bangalôr from the Tanjôr Râja (Êkojî or Venkajî) for the small sum of three lakhs of rupees; and obtained from Aurungzîb the title of Râja, with the privilege of sitting on an ivory throne. This throne still exists.

The powerful  
Ministers, 1731.

§ 9. The next two Râjas were Kantî-Rava II. and Dodda Kistna, both imbecile. The result was the virtual sovereignty of the two ministers, Dêo Râj and his cousin Nandi-Râj.

They may be said to have completely usurped all the functions of government before 1731; and they actually deposed and imprisoned the next Râja, Châm Râj.

# THE HISTORY OF MYSÔR.

447

## First appearance of Haidar.

CH. XII. § 12, 13.  
A.D. 1738-39.

The Peshwâs in Pûna were doing the same thing at the same time. (Ch. v. § 40.)

§ 10. In 1738, Mysôr was invaded by Dôst Alf, Nuwâb of the Carnatic: he was, however, defeated by Dêo Râj, whose cousin, the first Nandi Râj, had died shortly before. Nizâm-ul-Mulk now demanded tribute at the head of an army (1743), and Dêo Râj thought it better to submit.

Invasions of  
Mysôr.

§ 11. Dêo Râj had a younger brother, called also Nandi Râj, to whom he now made over the virtual sovereignty. This Nandi Râj (the second) to strengthen his position, married a daughter of the titular king, Chick Kistna Râj. We find him aiding Muhammad Alf in 1752.

Nandi Râj the  
Younger.

(Ch. viii. § 34)

In 1749, Nandi Râj undertook the siege of Dêon-halli, where Haidar Naik, then a comparatively young man, distinguished himself as a volunteer. From this time this remarkable person is the most prominent figure in the history.

Siege of Dêon-  
halli. Haidar's  
first appear-  
ance.

§ 12. In 1755, Dêo Râj was compelled to pay a tribute of fifty-six lakhs of rupees to Salâbat Jung, who was aided by Bussy. There was now a quarrel between the brothers regarding the treatment of the young Râjâ, whom they kept in a state of splendid captivity.

Mysôr hampered  
and distracted  
by dissension,  
1756  
(Ch. iii. § 16)

On one occasion Nandi Râj blew open the palace gates; set the trembling Râjâ on the musand; and mutilated his principal adherents before his face. About this time (1756) the Mahrattas under Bâljâi Bâji Râo appeared before Seringapatam, and compelled Nandi Râj to pay a heavy tribute, and to surrender a large portion of territory.

(Ch. v. § 62.)

CH. XII § 13.  
A D. 1760.

The rise of Haidar Ali.

PART III.—FROM THE USURPATION OF HAIDAR TO  
THE CONCLUSION OF HIS FIRST WAR WITH THE  
ENGLISH.

1760-1769.

Haidar Ali.

§ 13. It was now time for some strong hand to grasp the reins, and Haidar Ali stood ready. The history of Mysôr henceforth is the history of this daring adventurer, and that of his son; and is a most important portion of the British Indian annals.

His usurpation.

In 1760 Haidar made himself master of the kingdom.

His origin.

He was the grandson of a religious mendicant from the Panjâb, and the son of a brave cavalry officer. He was born at (or near) Kolâr in 1702; entered the Mysôr service at the age of thirty; and was soon promoted to the command of 50 horse and 200 infantry, with authority to augment his forces as he could. He was then put into command in the Dindigal district; where by plunder, deceit, and cunning he obtained large funds and a considerable army.

Haidar's history.

He now induced the minister, Nandi Râj to resign; and had then only the Queen-mother, the young Râja, and their general, Khandi Râo, to contend with.

(A valley formed by spurs of the W Ghâts; 75 miles long and 20 broad.)

Contest with Nandi Râj, 1761.

After a smart engagement, in which he was defeated, and some wily negotiations, Haidar, at last, in June 1761, received from the Râja a formal renunciation of the kingdom, three lakhs a year being assigned to the Râja for his support, and one lakh to Nandi Râj. The latter personage, being detected afterwards plotting against Haidar, was consigned to perpetual imprisonment.

# THE HISTORY OF MYSŌR.

449

## Haidar's struggles with the Mahrattas.

CH XII § 14, 17.  
A D 1761.

§ 14. Haidar now attacked and took Bednôr, where he found immense treasures, which materially aided him in his rise. This was an era in his history. He afterwards reduced the whole province, which was before this under a Nâyakan Râja.

Taking of Bednôr, 1763  
(Bednôr.)

The son of Chandâ Sahûb joined him about this time. Bednôr, or Nigar, was a great city, the seat of a viceroy of the Marhatta Raja. It is now in ruins. Haidar gave it the name of *Haidar-nagar*, or Haidar's town. Here (§ 34) Matthews was taken prisoner and poisoned. Eighteen miles to the north are the ruins of Ikerrî, the ancient capital of that district.

§ 15. In 1765, the warlike Mâdu Râo (ch. v. § 74) determined to chastise the audacious Mysôr usurper, who had now 20,000 horse and 40,000 foot soldiers under his banners.

Contest with Mâdu Râo, 1765.

Haidar was signally defeated by the Mahratta hero; and was compelled to relinquish his new conquests, and to pay thirty-two lakhs of rupees.

Terrible defeat

Ragobâ, the uncle and guardian of Mâdu Râo, was the mediator between the young Peshwâ and Haidar.

Haidar seemed to rise more powerful after each overthrow.

§ 16. In 1766, he invaded Malabâr and took Calicut, the Râja of which burnt himself in his palace to avoid captivity. (Ch. iv. § 8.)

Malabâr.

§ 17. A confederacy against Haidar was now formed by the Mahrattas and the Nizâm; into which, unfortunately, the Madras Government was drawn, by the terms of its treaty with the Nizâm.

Triple confederacy against Haidar. (Comp. ch. iii. § 16, and ch. v. § 74-75.)

The Mahrattas under Mâdu Râo, without waiting for their allies, passed the Kishina, and began to plunder; but were bought off by Haidar.

The Mahrattas bribed, and the Nizâm.

The Nizâm was also bribed by Haidar, not only to forsake the confederacy, but to join in an attack on the



CH. XII. § 18, 20.  
A.D. 1766-68.

The first MysŌr war with England.

The First MysŌr War, 1766-1769.

(R. Smith came out with Clive in 1765)

Battles of Changāma and Trinomali, Sept 3, 26, 1767.

English. Colonel Smith, who commanded the British contingent, thus found himself with about 7,000 troops and sixteen guns, opposed to an army of 70,000 with one hundred guns.

He defeated them, however, at *Changāma* (Singarepetta) and *Trinomali*, taking sixty-four guns and killing 4,000 of the enemy.

NOTE.—*Trinomali* (*Tiru-anṇa-malai*) is a place of great repute among the Hindūs. It is a few miles north of the Ponnār, or Southern Penār. *Changāma* is a little to the east. They are both in the Collectorate of South Arcot.

The quarrel with England, which was to lead to four great wars, which Haider was to maintain till his death, and which his son was to take up and carry on to his destruction, had begun. Thirty-three years of hostility to England accomplished the ruin of the dynasty.

Tippū.

§ 18. It was at this time that Haider's son, Tippū, then seventeen years of age, was employed with a body of 5,000 horse in plundering up to the very gates of Madras.

British treaty with the Nizām, 1763.

(Ch. iii. § 16.)

Haider badly treated.

§ 19. The Nizām sought for peace, his territories having been invaded by a Bengāl force under Colonel Peach. A peace was signed in 1768, which was in every way discreditable to the Madras Government. In this treaty Haider was referred to with extreme contempt, as a rebel and usurper; and it was stipulated that the English should take the Carnatic Bālaghāt from him, and hold it under the Nizām.

The influence of Muhammad Ali was injuriously felt in all these negotiations.

Haider triumphant on the Western Coast.

§ 20. A British force from Bombay now invaded the Western Coast, destroyed the MysŌr fleet, and took MangalŌr and HonŌr. Haider, however, soon drove the assailants away; and the British commander abandoned even his wounded, 260 in number, to the MysŌrean's fury.

# THE HISTORY OF MYSŪR.

451

## Haidar's struggles with the Mahrattas.

NOTE—*Mangalūr*, a very ancient city, whose bazaars are crowded with every nation.

*Hondwār* There was a British factory here in 1670. Mr. Best and seventeen of his companions were massacred here by the Brāhmaṇs. It belonged to the Rāni of Gerseppa. Near it are the famous Gerseppa falls.

§ 21. The war in the *Baramahūl* and Carnatic was pushed on, however, by Colonel Smith with such energy and success, that Haidar lost eight of his principal forts and all the mountain passes, and was prepared to make considerable sacrifices for peace. The Madras Government foolishly declined. The tide now turned. Colonel Smith had been superseded; and Haidar recovered in six weeks all he had lost, and ravaged the Carnatic almost unchecked. The Madras Council now, in their turn, sued for peace. Smith was again put at the head of the army, and kept Haidar at bay. But the wily Mysŏrean, sending his guns, baggage, and infantry back, advanced with unexampled rapidity, with 6,000 chosen cavalry, to within a few miles of Madras.

Here he dictated a peace, on the basis of a mutual restitution of conquests, with the stipulation, that "in case either of the contracting parties should be attacked, they should mutually assist one another to drive out the enemy."

Thus ended, in disgrace to the English, the FIRST MYSŪR WAR, 1766–1769.

## PART IV.—FROM THE CONCLUSION OF THE FIRST MYSŪR WAR TO THE DEATH OF HAIDAR.

1769–1782.

§ 22. Haidar now resolved again to defy the Mahrattas, who were commanded by Trimback Mamā. The result was an overwhelming defeat at Chērkūlī, and he was

CH. XII § 21, 22  
A.D. 1769.

(*Mangalūr* —  
Town of *tild*  
ness) *Hondwār*

Smith victo-  
rious in the  
*Baramahūl*  
(This is a small  
province,  
having Mysŏr  
on the N. and  
W.; Salem on  
the S., and the  
Central Carna-  
tic on the N.  
and E.)

Reverses.

Haidar dictates  
a peace, 1769

The Mahrattas  
defeat Haidar  
at Chērkūlī,  
March 5, 1771.

CH. XII. § 23, 25.  
A.D. 1772-78.

**Haidar recovers himself.**

(Or Chirrikûrî,  
not far from  
Seringapatam.)

The English  
refuse to help  
him.

His sacrifices,  
1772.

soon shut up in Seringapatam. Haidar was often drunk at this period; and in a drunken fit once beat Tippû with savage cruelty. Haidar, in his distress, applied, but in vain, for the promised assistance of the Madras Government; and he was at last obliged to purchase the departure of the Mahrattas by a payment of thirty-six lakhs of rupees, the promise of an annual tribute of fourteen lakhs, and the cession of territory to an extent that reduced the kingdom to almost its original size (1772). (Ch. v. § 79.)

Haidar never forgave the English

His savage con-  
duct in Kûrg.  
(Ch. v. § 83.)

(Comp. ch. x.  
§ 90.)

§ 23. The troubles of the Mahratta Confederacy gave the indomitable Mysôrean time to recover himself. He attacked Kûrg; and, the people making a noble resistance, he treated them with savage ferocity, offering five rupees for the head of each male: seven hundred heads were thus laid at his feet, and paid for by himself.

His progress,  
1776-1778.

Before the end of 1776 he had regained all the lost territory; and had, moreover, taken Bellâri (or Bellary), Gûti, and Savanûr. By 1778 the Kishtna was his northern boundary; and in 1779 he annexed Kûrpa.

(Or Kadapa, or  
Cuddapah.)  
(See Map,  
p. 444.)

With these acquisitions the Mysôr dominion had now reached its utmost extension.

Haidar's offers  
of assistance  
rejected by the  
English.

§ 24. During this period Haidar, dreading the Mahrattas, would willingly have made peace with the English, and offered to assist in carrying Ragobâ to Pûna. (Ch. v. § 90.) His offers were neglected.

Haidar quarrels  
with the Eng-  
lish about  
Mahé, 1779.

§ 25. On the breaking out of war between France and England in 1778, the English took Pondicherry (held till 1783), and proposed to take Mahé. This Haidar resented: it was in his dominions, and unde-

## League against the English.

CH. XII. PART II.  
A.D. 1770-80.

his protection; but the place was taken in 1779, Haidar angrily protesting. The missionary Schwartz was sent as an envoy to him, but could effect nothing.

(Ch. vii. § 5)

§ 26. A confederacy was now formed, consisting of all the Mahratta chiefs (except the Gaekwār) Haidar, and the Nizām, to drive the English out of India. The confederates might have succeeded, if Warren Hastings, with incomparable energy and genius, had not come to the rescue. Mr. Hornby, the President of Bombay, seconded him with admirable vigour and prudence. (Ch. x. § 9.)

Triple confederacy against the English.  
(Ch. v. § 101.)  
1779.

§ 27. Haidar was, however, the only one of the confederates that was thoroughly in earnest. Though he was in his seventy-eighth year, he personally superintended every preparation for the war; and in June 1780 had collected an army of 90,000 men, mostly trained and led by European officers, with a powerful artillery, also under European direction. England had never up to that time had to contend in India with a worthier foe.

The vast preparations of Haidar in 1780.

Having caused solemn supplications for the success of his expedition to be made in every mosque and Hindū temple, he poured his mighty armament down the Changāma Pass, on the 20th of July 1780.

The Success of Mr. R. Wallis, 1780-1784.

Ruthlessly he laid waste the whole country. Muhammad Ali's commandants treacherously abandoned to him all the forts in his way; and in a few days he was at Conjeveram, fifty miles from Madras. The SECOND MYSŌR WAR had begun in good earnest.

His invasion of the Carnatic, July 30, 1780.

Sir Hector Munro, who had distinguished himself in Bengal (ch. ix. § 24), was commander-in-chief, with 5,000 troops; and Colonel Baillie, in command of 2,800 men, was on his way to occupy Guntūr. These bodies

Munro.

Baillie.

CH. XII § 28.  
A.D. 1780.

The second Mysŏr war.

I.  
Baillie's defeat  
and captivity.  
The first battle  
of Pollilŏr, near  
Conjeveram,  
Sept. 10, 1780.

of troops should have been united; but Munro allowed Haidar to interpose: the result was that Baillie's force was cut up; his stores, baggage, and equipments taken; and Baillie himself, with about two hundred men, was taken prisoner, after gallantly sustaining thirteen attacks of the enemy. The lives of the prisoners were saved only by the humane interposition of Haidar's French officers. Munro was no more than two miles distant, and his appearance on the spot would have converted the disaster into a decisive victory. He now retreated to Madras; and thus ended this memorable campaign of twenty-one days.

Hastings to the  
rescue.

§ 28. A vessel was immediately sent to Calcutta, to bear the tidings to Hastings of the greatest reverse the English arms had ever sustained in India.

He hesitated not a moment; but bent all his energies to the one task of saving the Carnatic for the English.

Sir H. Coote in  
Madras, Nov.  
1781.

In three weeks an army under the veteran Sir Eyre Coote, now commander-in-chief in Bengál, was on its way to Madras, with fifteen lakhs of rupees for the use of the army. Coote reached Madras on 5th November; but was not able to take the field till the 17th of January 1781. Meanwhile Haidar had besieged Arcot, and after six weeks, took it, through the treachery of its Bráhmaṇ commandant. Lieutenant Flint defended Wandiwash in a manner that reminds us of Clive's defence of Arcot; but he was allowed to remain unrewarded.

(Cuddalŏr, 16  
miles S. of  
Pondicherry.)

II.  
The battle of  
Porto Novo,  
1781.  
(33 miles S.  
from Pondi-  
cherry.)

Coote marched towards Cuddalŏr, but was obliged to remain inactive for four months for want of provisions. Haidar now determined to engage him; and, marching 100 miles in two days and a half, took up a strong position near Porto Novo. Coote instantly attacked him; and, after a battle which lasted six hours, obtained a decisive victory. Haidar lost 10,000 men, and fled,

## The second Mysor war.

CH XII § 29 90.  
A D 1781.

almost alone, from the field of battle. Tippu immediately raised the siege of Wandiwash, which the hero Flint had thus saved.

§ 29. Meanwhile, for the second time, Hastings had sent a large army by land to aid a distant Presidency (Ch. v. § 96). Some Bráhmán sápy had refused to go by sea; and had mutined, with circumstances of peculiar atrocity. To remove the difficulty of a sea voyage, Hastings sent them along the coast by land, a distance of 700 miles.

The second great land war.  
1781.

Colonel Pearce marched on the 7th of January 1781, and, though he lost a great number of men by cholera in Orissa, reached Pulicat in July. Coote, by a masterly movement, effected a junction with this force on the 2nd of August.

Colonel Pearce and Coote

Haidar met Coote's combined forces, at the same spot where Baillie had been defeated, and on the anniversary of that day, according to the lunar year. His astrologers promised him another victory on that lucky spot, and on that auspicious day (August 27). Haidar lost 2,000 men, and Coote 400; but the result, though favourable to the English, was not decisive.

III  
Coote avenges Baillie's defeat on its anniversary.  
The second battle of Pollilur Aug 1781.

A third great battle was fought at Sólinghar, near Vellore, 27th September. Coote's victory here was complete. Haidar's loss was 5,000 men, while that of the English did not exceed 100.

IV  
Battle of Sólinghar, Sept 27.

The Mysôrean by this time had learned to tremble at the name of Coote.

§ 30. Lord Macartney now succeeded as Governor of Madras. War had been declared with Holland, in consequence of the Dutch having joined the "armed neutrality," a confederacy which aimed at destroying the maritime supremacy of Great Britain. Haidar Ali at

Lord Macartney, 1781  
(Ch. x. § 9)

Intrigues with the Dutch.

CH XII. § 31. 32.  
A. D. 1782.

## The second Mysŏr war.

(Negapatnam)

Trincomali  
taken.V.  
Defeat of  
Colonel Braith-  
waite.VI.  
Defeat of  
Haidar's troops  
before Telli-  
chĕri, 1782  
(Tellicherry.)French naval  
expedition in  
aid of Haidar.VII.  
(74 miles S W.  
from Madras.

once began to negotiate with the Dutch authorities at Negapatnam, who gladly made a treaty with him. Lord Macartney, having a force collected from all sides, without the consent of Sir Eyre Coote, sent Sir H. Munro; and, with the co-operation of the fleet, Negapatnam was attacked and taken on the 12th of November. Stores and goods of great value were found there. The noble harbour and town of Trincomali, in Ceylon, was taken from the Dutch in January 1782.

At the peace of Versailles, in 1783, these conquests were finally made over to England.

§ 31. At this time Colonel Braithwaite, deceived by treacherous spies, was defeated by Tippu with an overwhelming force, on the banks of the Coleroon, after a heroic struggle of twenty-six hours. To counterbalance this, the garrison of Tellichĕri, after having been besieged for eighteen months, made a sortie, and took 1,200 of Haidar's troops prisoners, with all their baggage, ammunition, and cannon. This roused the whole Western Coast and Kŭrg against their detested conqueror.

Hastings' measures, too, were producing a sensible effect on the position of affairs.

The terms of the treaty of Salbāi were arranged in January 1782. (Ch. v. § 102.)

§ 32. Haidar was now beginning to despond, when a French armament under Admiral Suffern appeared at Pulicat. Admiral Hughes encountered and defeated the Frenchman; who, however, succeeded in landing 2,000 French soldiers and 1,000 Africans at Porto Novo. Several indecisive engagements were fought by sea and land, of which the chief was before *Arni*, 2nd July 1782. The French admiral took Trincomalee. Admiral Hughes sailed for Bombay to refit; but his fleet was

## The death of Haider.

CH. XII. 1782.  
A.D. 1782.

dispersed by a tremendous gale, October 15. Admiral Bickerton landed 4,000 English troops at Madras, and immediately set sail. Madras was a prey to famine, from which the deaths were 1,500 a week. To crown all, Sir E. Coote returned at this very crisis to Bengal. There had been disagreements between him and Lord Macartney; and Coote's temper was irritable. He resigned his command ostensibly from ill-health. The prospects of the English were gloomy on every side, when tidings arrived of the death of Haider, on the 7th of December 1782, at the age of eighty, of a carbuncle.

Haider's reign  
was  
there.

Coote resigns.

The death of  
Haider, Dec  
1782.

Utterly uneducated, he raised himself by mere force of character and will to the lofty eminence on which he so long stood. He was the saviour of the south, and the resemblance in some points is striking. Yet Sivaji had a tutor at his back, and was the defender of their faith, while Haider was in MysŌr an alien, and a persecutor of the religion of his subjects.

His character

## PART V.—TIPPŪ'S HISTORY TO HIS HUMILIATION.

1782-1792.

§ 33. Pūrṇi and Kishna Rāo, two able Brāhman ministers, concealed Haider's death, and sent word to Tippū, who was 400 miles distant on the Malabār coast. Tippū reached the army on the Coromandel coast on the 2nd of January 1783, and found himself at the head of an army of 100,000 men, with three crores of rupees in his treasury, besides jewels and other valuables to an enormous amount.

Tippū took  
possession of  
the coast.

§ 34. Tippū, happily for British interests, speedily set out again for the Western coast, where he imagined the greatest danger to be.

Tippū on the  
western coast,  
1783.



CH. XII. § 35.  
A.D. 1783.

The second Mysôr war.

(36 miles S. by  
E. from Cali-  
cut )  
(\$ 20.)

Sieges of Bed-  
nôr and Manga-  
lôr, Jan 30,  
1784.

General  
Stuart's failure.

Bussy again in  
the Carnatic.

Death of Sir E.  
Coote, 1783.

Indecisive con-  
flicts.

Bernadotte.

The French  
leave Tippû's  
army.

There Major Abingdon had reduced Calicut, and Colonel Humberstone and Colonel Macleod had intrenched themselves at *Ponâni*.

General Matthews had taken possession of Honôr; five large ships belonging to Tippû had been taken; and now Bednôr was given up to Matthews without a struggle.

This intelligence took Tippû to the spot with all his army. Bednôr was retaken, and subsequently Mangalôr; though both were defended with the utmost gallantry. These sieges cost him half his army. Matthews himself was taken prisoner. (§ 36.)

§ 35. Meanwhile, General Stuart, who had succeeded Sir E. Coote, was not the commander to retrieve the British fortunes in the Carnatic. Moreover, Lord Macartney seems to have injudiciously controlled him.

The veteran Bussy, with 2,300 French troops and 5,000 French sepoys, landed at Cuddalôr, to aid Tippû, April 10, 1783. Sir E. Coote was again sent from Calcutta to take the command; but the veteran expired in his palanquin two days after his arrival at Madras, April 26. He was one of the greatest of generals. His gallant services extended from 1756 to 1783.

Stuart now undertook, in his imbecile way, the siege of Cuddalôr. Sufferin and Hughes also fought at sea, but with no decisive result.

In one of the sorties at Cuddalôr, Bernadotte, then a sergeant, afterwards one of Napoleon's Marshals and King of Sweden, was taken prisoner.

Tidings happily arrived at this juncture of the peace of Versailles; in consequence of which Bussy immediately ceased all military operations, and recalled the French officers in Tippû's army. Lord Macartney, who had repeatedly found fault with General Stuart, now sent him to England in arrest.

# THE HISTORY OF MYSOR

459

## The second Mysor war.

CH. XII. 1797  
A.D. 1794

Stuart had not yet died; but the  
Mahratta (Sir John) had been  
Munro (Sir John) was the

§ 36. An expedition of the British was now sent into the heart of Mysore.

He took Carur, Dinlagal, Palghat, and Cheralath, and was on the point of marching for Seringapatam when Lord Macartney, with strange ignorance of Tippu's character, sent envoys to Tippu to propose a peace, and despite all the opposition of Hastings, whose Indian career was drawing to a close, and of others, carried it on; so that Tippu was obliged to make it appear that the English were supplicants to him for peace.

Colonel Fullerton, at the head of his army, would have negotiated more effectually before Seringapatam.

The surviving British prisoners, whom Tippu had treated with disgusting and savage cruelty, were released; and all conquests on either side were restored. Baillie, Matthews, and the chief among them had already been murdered in prison by the miscreant.

This ended the Second Mysore War, in the disastrous treaty of Mangalore (1784).

It required another war to undo the evil effects of this foolish treaty. The day it was signed Tippu assured his French allies that he would as soon as possible renew the war with England.

§ 37. Tippu was now at liberty to carry out his own schemes; and it soon became evident that he was ambitious of making himself the greatest, if not the only, ruler in India.

His blind and furious zeal for Muhammadanism, his mad hatred of the English, and his ferocity, detract from what would otherwise be almost a great character. In his career, lofty ambition, some military genius, and

Ch. XII. 1797  
A.D. 1794

Ch. XII. 1797  
A.D. 1794

Ch. XII. 1797  
A.D. 1794

Treaty of Mangalore 1784

Effects of the treaty on Tippu (Ch. XII. § 104.)

Tippu's ambitious schemes.

His character.

CH. XII. § 38, 39.  
A. D. 1788.

## Tippû's insane ambition.

consummate bravery were conspicuous; but he was wild and visionary.

His character much resembles that of Jûna Khân Tughlak. (Ch. ii. § 36.)

Kanara and  
Kûrg.

His first two expeditions were into Kanara and Kûrg, whence he carried away upwards of 100,000 persons; whom he forcibly made into Musalmâns, and then distributed among his garrisons. This was their punishment for taking advantage of the late war to assert their independence.

His assumption  
of supreme  
authority.  
[Ch. iii. § 3 (4).]

His next step was to assume the title of "Pâdshâh," which properly belonged to the Emperor of Delhi alone; and, from that time, his name was inserted into the public prayers instead of that of Shâh Âlam II., who was the nominal Emperor of Delhi.

Mahrattas and  
the Nizâm com-  
bine against  
him.

§ 38. Tippû now had to encounter a great and pressing danger. The Mahrattas under the rule of Nânâ Farnavîs (ch. v. § 106), and the Nizâm, combined to crush him, and to share his dominions between them. The result was, that the Mysôrean boldly carried the war into the districts north of the Tûmbhadra, took Adônî and Savanûr, and brought the confederates to terms. He agreed to pay arrears of tribute, and to restore the captured towns; while they abandoned the war, acknowledging him sole ruler up to the Tûmbhadra.

He gains the  
victory.

Tippû at his  
zenith of  
power.

§ 39. Tippû was now beside himself with pride. He forthwith made an expedition into the Malabâr district, where he offered the Nâyars the option of death or the Kurân.

His blind  
bigotry, 1788.

He thus converted or expelled the whole population; and destroyed, according to his own account, 8,000 temples.

## Tippū in Travancore.

CH. XII § 40, 41.  
A.D. 1788, 89.

There is no doubt that Tippū, at this period, even aimed at becoming a kind of prophet in the estimation of the people.

Lord Cornwallis (ch. x. § 18) could not interfere, unless Tippū should first violate the treaty subsisting between himself and the English.

§ 40. This the infatuated MysŌrean soon did. Travancore, protected by the Ghāts and by its lines (a wall and ditch covering the whole frontier), had hitherto escaped the horrors of war. Its Rāja had formed a defensive alliance with the English a few years before. Tippū now found out various grievances which rendered it necessary for him to punish the Travancore Rāja. The harbouring of some fugitive Nāyars was the crowning injury. Accordingly, in December 1788, he made an attack on the Travancore lines; but was repulsed with immense loss, escaping almost alone, his palanquin and all his ornaments, seals, and rings, having fallen into the hands of the enemy.

Tippū attacks  
Travancore  
(Ch. v. § 108)His defeat,  
Dec. 1788  
Tippū's loss and  
mortification.

His rage was terrible, and he vowed not to leave his encampment till he had taken ample revenge. Three months were passed in preparations, carefully concealed from the English; and in April 1790, he began the work in earnest, and was soon inside the wall.

He renews his  
attack.

Sir A. Campbell was then Governor of Madras. General Meadows became Governor of Madras in 1790; and Sir R. Abercrombie at the same time became Governor of Bombay. Both were employed in the war against Tippū.

§ 41. Lord Cornwallis now, of course, interfered. A treaty was signed by the Nizām, in which he ceded Guntūr, according to the terms of the treaty of 1768; and an arrangement was made by which he was to co-operate in the war against Tippū, and to share in the territory which might be taken from him. The Mahratta

Lord Cornwallis  
interferes.

CH XII § 42, 43.  
A D. 1790.

## The third Mysŏr war.

Another triple  
alliance,

Government (ch. v. § 108) were also invited to join the confederacy, and were to share in the spoil. Nânâ Farnavis consented to this; for his fear and hatred of Tippû overcame even his reluctance to co-operate with the English.

THE THIRD  
MYSŌR WAR,  
1790-1792.

The Marquis now informed Tippû that his conduct in attacking an ally of England had made him an enemy of the British power. General Medows began the campaign in such a way as to show that an abler general was needed to cope with Tippû. Lord Cornwallis himself then came down from Calcutta to take the command of the army; which advanced up the Ghâts at once by the Mûglî Pass, having deceived Tippû (who was lingering near Pondicherry, anxious to conclude an alliance with the French) by a pretended march to Ambûr.

Lord Cornwallis  
in Madras,  
1790Advances into  
Mysŏr.

(Palcooda.)

NOTE.—The principal passes into Mysŏr from the Carnatic are the Mûglî, the Palikôdâ, the Ambûr, the Changâmâ, and the Attûr.

Takes Bangalôr.

Bangalôr capitulated on the 21st of March Tippû now marched to defend his capital; and on the 13th of May at Arikêra, a short distance from Seringapatam, was fought a battle, in which Tippû sustained a complete defeat.

Battle of  
Arikêra.  
1791.

At this time Tippû sent an embassy, asking for aid of Louis XVI. of France, who refused to assist him.

Delay in taking  
Seringapatam.

§ 42. Seringapatam would now have been taken; but the British force and the Nizâm's contingent were in want of every necessary; and Lord Cornwallis was obliged to return towards Madras. A day after his homeward march had begun, the Mahrattas came up: their dilatoriness had mainly caused the failure of the campaign Harî Pant, their general, was intent only on plunder.

Hartley and  
Little, Dec. 8,  
1793.

§ 43. Meanwhile two officers had especially distinguished themselves. These were Colonel Hartley

## First siege of Seringapatam.

CH XII § 44.  
A.D. 1792.

(ch. v. § 98-101) and Captain Little. The former defeated Husain Ali, before Calicut, taking him prisoner with 2,500 of his men. Hartley's force was only 1,500 strong. His loss was 52.

Captain Little took *Sīmoga*, after thirty-six hours hard fighting. The Mahrattas perpetrated horrible cruelties on the wretched inhabitants, after the British had taken the fort. General Abercrombie, Governor of Bombay, reduced the whole province of Malabar

Sat. Mar. 28  
Ch. XII § 44  
A.D. 1792  
The British  
troops  
took  
Sīmoga  
after  
thirty-six  
hours  
of  
fighting  
in  
Malabar

§ 44. Lord Cornwallis employed the remainder of the year in clearing the Bīramahāl, and in reducing Tippū's fortresses, deemed by the Mysoreans impregnable; but which were taken with ease by the British troops.

Lord Cornwallis  
in the Bīramahāl.

In January 1792, the Governor-General's arrangements were complete, and the British army took the field with a splendour and completeness of equipment which astonished all India. Hari Pant, with a small body of troops, and the Nizām's son with 8,000 men, showy but unserviceable, joined Lord Cornwallis, and on the 5th February the siege began. Tippū had strengthened his defences to the utmost. They consisted of three lines protected by 300 cannon, the earthworks being covered by an impenetrable hedge of thorn. These works were stormed on the night of the 6th, with the loss of 530 killed and wounded. Tippū lost in killed, wounded, and deserters, 20,000 men.

THE FIRST  
SIEGE OF  
SERINGAPATAM,  
1792

The siege was pressed on; and Tippū at length, by the advice of his officers, acceded to the terms dictated by Lord Cornwallis. He was to cede half his territories, to pay three crores of rupees, besides thirty lakhs to the Mahrattas, and to give up two of his sons as hostages.

Tippū yields.

The treaty was nearly broken off, when Tippū found that Kūrg was included in the territories to be ceded; but the

CH. XII. § 45, 46.  
A.D. 1792.

The third Mysôr war ended.

Governor-General was ready at once to push on the siege, and the Sultân was obliged to yield.

Unfaithfulness  
of the Nizâm  
and the Mah-  
rattas.  
(Ch. v. § 108.)

Territory  
gained.

§ 45. The Nizâm's troops and the Mahrattas had rendered no assistance, and had even treacherously corresponded with the enemy; but Lord Cornwallis divided the territory and the indemnity money scrupulously between them. The English territorial gain was: (1.) the district of Dindigal; (2.) the Baramahâl; and (3.) the province of Malabâr. Kûrg was restored to its own Râja. (Ch. x. § 90.)

NOTE.—The Baramahâl is the district above the Ghâts, of which Salem is the capital.

The Southern  
Panjâb.

The territory between the five rivers, the Kishtna, Gutpûrba, Malapûrba, Southern Warda, and Tûmbhadra, was thus wrested from the Mysôrean, and restored to the Mahrattas.

Honours.

§ 46. Much discussion arose about this treaty. In England it was at length approved of, the thanks of Parliament were voted to Lord Cornwallis, and he was made a Marquess.

Indian powers  
of recent  
origin.

It must be remembered that, of the great powers of India at the time, the Peshwâ, Sindia, Tippû, and the Nizâm, none had existed sixty years; and that the dominion of each was founded on usurpation, fraud, and violence.

English posi-  
tion at the  
close of this  
war, 1792.

England had now shown to all India that her power far surpassed that of any of these rival states; which had, in fact, sunk into insignificance in this struggle; while the might of England was felt to be matchless in the East.

The disgraceful convention of Wargâom, and the infamous treaty of Mangalôr, were alike forgotten. A new era had begun.

*Thus gloriously for the English ended their Third Mysôr War. February 1792.*

Tippū prepares again for war.

CH XII § 47 4)  
A D 1798.

## PART VI.—TIPPŪ'S HISTORY FROM HIS HUMILIATION TO HIS DEATH. 1792-1799.

§ 47. Six years elapsed without any breach of this treaty; and the two hostages were sent back to their father in 1794.

Tippū meanwhile strengthened himself, nursed his hatred against the English, and entertained a body of French officers, by whom his army, in all its branches, was brought to a state of great efficiency.

The "*Mauritius Proclamation*" brought matters to an issue. This was put forth by the French Governor of the Mauritius, and announced that envoys from Tippū had arrived in the island, proposing an alliance offensive and defensive, and asking for troops in order to expel the English from India.

A french frigate at this time landed 100 men, civil and military, at Mangalōr. These, on reaching Seringapatam, organised a Jacobin Club under the auspices of "Citizen Tippū," planted a tree of liberty, crowned it with the cap of equality, and proclaimed the French Republic, one and indivisible!

§ 48. The Marquess Wellesley (ch. x. § 37) at once called on Tippū to disavow his embassy to the Mauritius; and meanwhile prepared for war. The Madras Presidency was weak in men, and almost bankrupt; the Nizām and the Mahrattas could not be relied on; but the Governor-General said:—"If Tippū is stronger than we are, he is master of the Dakhan"; and he resolved that England should at any cost retain the mastery.

§ 49. Lord Wellesley first negotiated with the Nizām (ch. iii. § 16); and a subsidiary alliance was the result (1798). Captain Malcolm (Sir John) contrived to

Peace, 1792-1798

Tippū's intrigues with the French.

The Mauritius proclamation, 1798 (Battle of the Nile, 1798)

"Citizen Tippū!"

Lord Wellesley's determination to put down Tippū.

The Nizām joins the alliance



CH. XII. § 50, 51.  
A.D. 1798.

The fourth Mysôr war.

arrange the placing of the Nizâm's army on its new footing (including the elimination of the French element), without loss of life.

(Ch. v. § 117.)

The Peshwâ, while refusing to form a subsidiary alliance, gave an assurance of his fidelity to the existing engagements.

THE FOURTH  
MYSÔR WAR,  
1798.

Marquess Wel-  
lesley in  
Madras, 1798.  
Tippû's efforts.

Bonaparte's  
letter.  
(First Consul,  
1798.)

§ 50. Bonaparte was now in Egypt. The Directors wrote out, authorising a war with Tippû; and the Marquess Wellesley made all his arrangements with promptitude, and sent down to Madras His Majesty's 33rd Regiment, commanded by his own brother, Colonel Wellesley (afterwards the Duke of Wellington). He himself arrived in Madras, December 31, 1798; and proceeded to negotiate with Tippû, who tried to procrastinate, and actually wrote to Zemân Shâh, inviting him to join the Holy War, in which the infidel English were "to become food for the swords of the pious warriors." (Comp. ch. x. § 38.)

Bonaparte wrote him, that "he had arrived on the borders of the Red Sea, with an innumerable and invincible army, full of the desire of delivering him from the iron yoke of England.

Preparations  
for War.

§ 51. Tippû treated the Governor-General's envoy Major Doveton's embassy with contempt; and Lord Wellesley at length informed him, that General Harris, who was advancing with an army into Mysôr, would be prepared to receive any embassy he might send.

The British  
forces.

The Nizâm's  
contingent.

The Marquess Wellesley and Lord Clive (Governor of Madras, son of the great Clive), by unparalleled efforts had raised and fully equipped an army of 20,800 men, of whom 6,000 were Europeans. To this was added 10,000 of the Nizâm's cavalry, with 10,000 foot, under European officers, led by Colonel Wellesley and Captain Malcolm, though nominally commanded by the Nizâm's

Second siege of Seringapatam.

CH. XII. § 22, 23.  
A.D. 1798.

son. (Ch. iii. § 16.) General Harris was commander-in-chief of the whole combined forces. Colonels Read and Brown were in the Baramahâl and Coimbatôr; and General Stuart led the Bombay troops, who marched from Cannanûr through Kûrûg to *Periapatam* (*Priyapatnam* = *beloved town*). General Hartley, and Colonel Montessor and Dunlop, were with this army.

At Sedasir, a few miles from Periapatam, the first battle was fought. Tippû's forces, commanded by himself, were routed with the loss of 2,000 men.

§ 52. General Harris (under whom were, among others, General Baird, General Floyd, Colonel Wellesley, Lieutenant-Colonel Barry Close, Lieutenant-Colonel Agnew, and Captain Malcolm), marched through the valley of Ambûr and the Baranuahâl to Râyacotta, where he encamped, March 4. From thence he advanced to Malayalli, twenty-six miles from Seringapatam. Here took place the second struggle. The result was a loss to the Sultan of 1,000 men, while the English lost only sixty-nine.

NOTE.—Râya-Kôta = *King's fort*. It is ninety-two miles from Seringapatam, and the key to the Mysôr table land.

General Harris now crossed the Cávêrî to the south of Seringapatam. This movement, secretly carried out, was unexpected by Tippû, and threw him into a state of deep despondency.

§ 53. The whole united army was before Seringapatam by the 15th of April. Tippû was now in despair. He consulted soothsayers; caused prayers to be offered in Muhammadan mosques and in Hindû temples; sent vakils to propose terms of peace; and then, in rage and mortification, refused to yield to the terms imposed

The army sent against Tippû, (27 miles W from Seringapatam. The seat of an ancient Poligar.) Priyapatnam

I  
The battle of Sedasir, March 6, 1798.

General Harris's staff.

II.  
The battle of Malayalli, March 27 (Malayavelli, E. of Seringapatam.)

The crossing the Cávêrî.

The whole besieging army on the ground.  
Tippû's state of mind.

CH. XII. § 54.  
A.D. 1799.

## The fourth Mysôr war ended.

by Lord Harris. No trace of common sense, or of generalship, is discernible in his behaviour at this period.

The breach.

The storming.  
May 4, 1799.

Baird.

The storming  
of Seringa-  
patam.The death of  
Tippû.

His burial.

(= pleasure-  
garden.)

His barbarity.

Tippû, the  
tiger.Tippû's play-  
thing.

§ 54. The breach on the south-western face of the fortifications was reported practicable on the evening of May the 3rd. On the 4th, General Baird, who had for four years been a prisoner in the dungeons of the city, led the troops to the assault. Colonel Sherbrooke commanded the right column, Colonel Dunlop the left, and Colonel Wellesley the reserve; and 4,376 men were in the trench waiting for the signal to advance. General Baird, a few minutes before 1 p.m., ascended the parapet, drew his sword, and, with the exhortation to the troops to "follow him, and prove themselves worthy of the name of British soldiers," led on the gallant band.

In seven minutes the British flag was planted on the summit of the breach. The two columns, after encountering many obstacles, and stout opposition from a small band of Mysôr troops, met over the eastern gateway. The city was taken.

The body of the Sultân himself was found in a palanquin under an archway, beneath a heap of slain. It was buried with military honours the next day by the side of Haidar, in a beautiful mausoleum in the Lal Bâgh. A terrible thunderstorm raged during the burial.

It was ascertained (and it takes away any lingering feeling of pity for the tyrant) that every European prisoner taken during the siege had been put to death by Tippû.

Tippû signifies *tiger*. A tiger was his favourite badge. He kept numbers of them chained in his fort. And this one word best expresses his disposition.

A curious illustration of Tippû's mingled ferocity and childishness is still in existence. In the palace of Seringapatam was found a clumsy piece of mechanism, which, when put in motion, represented a tiger tearing an Englishman. An arrangement within the machine caused the tiger to growl, and the Englishman to cry out! This, which was the plaything of the Sultân and his court, is in the India Museum in England.

## Effects of the conquest.

CH XII § 43.  
A.D. 1799.

§ 55. Pūrnīa, the minister; Kām-ud-dīn, the chief officer; Fatih Haidar, the Sultān's eldest son, and all the principal officers, civil and military, now surrendered themselves. The whole kingdom lay at the feet of the victor. Immense stores, about a million sterling in money, and many costly jewels, were taken in the city, and the collection of state papers revealed the surprising extent and variety of the Sultān's intrigues against the hated English.

The surrender  
of the chief  
officers.

State papers

Colonel Wellesley was made commandant of the captured city, in which he soon restored order and confidence; and the Governor-General proceeded to make arrangements for the disposal of the conquered kingdom.

Wellesley in  
command.

§ 56. This conquest undoubtedly rendered the British supreme in the Dakhan. It was the first manifestation of that wonderful energy with which English wars in India have ever since been conducted. It remained for the victors to show an example of moderation in the hour of triumph. The arrangements made were the following:—

Effects of the  
conquest.

1st. The family of Tippū was justly set aside, and its members were removed to Vellore, where a suitable provision was made for them. (Chap. X § 55, 56.)

Tippū's family.

2nd. The representative of the ancient Hindū royal family, a child of five years of age, was living with his mother in an obscure hut in the suburbs. They were brought forth from their obscurity; and the child, whose name was Krishnarāj Udaiyār Bahādar, was put upon the throne.

Restoration of  
the ancient  
dynasty.The new Pūjā  
of the old  
stock.

3rd. The Company took possession of Kanara, Coimbatōr, and the Wynaul.

Territory taken  
by English.

4th. The districts of Gurrameotta, Gūti, and others near Haidarābād, were made over to the Nizām.

The Nizām's  
share  
(or Gurrame-  
otta, 130 miles  
N.W. from  
Madras, in the  
Bālaghat.)

5th. Some districts were offered to the Peshwā, but rejected by him.

CH. XII. § 57.  
A.D. 1799.

Mysôr affairs from 1799 to 1832.

The Seringapa-  
tam commis-  
sion.

The commission that sat in Seringapatam to arrange these matters was composed of General Harris, Colonel Wellesley, Mr. Henry Wellesley, Colonel Fitzpatrick, and Colonel Close. The secretaries were John Malcolm and Thomas Munro.

The new Râja's  
history.  
(= tenth A  
great festival in  
honour of  
Râma.)

### PART VII.—MYSÔR UNDER THE HINDÛ DYNASTY AND BRITISH CHIEF COMMISSIONERS, 1799—

§ 57. The history of the ancestor of the new Râja is curious. When the puppet Râja, Châm Râj, died (in 1775), the direct male line was extinct. Haidar had been accustomed to exhibit, on the feast of the *Dasara*, the poor Râja on a throne of state to his subjects. To keep up the pageant, he resolved to appoint another Râja. For this purpose he collected a number of children belonging to all the families related to the royal house. These were introduced into a room, where were scattered abroad in abundance all things that could attract a child. One little fellow selected for himself a lime, which he held in his left hand, and a little dagger, which he grasped with his right. "This," exclaimed Haidar, "is our Râja. With one hand he takes the fruits of the earth, and with the other the means of protecting his subjects."

The Mysôr  
royal family.

The assembly murmured applause. The little boy, under the name of Châm Râj, was installed as Râja. He died of small-pox in 1795; and Tippû, resolving no longer to maintain the pageant of a Râja, turned the widow and her son, then two years of age, out of the palace, and caused them to be conveyed to a miserable hovel in the suburbs of the city. This boy was the Râja now put on the throne by the Governor-General. The story throws light upon Haidar's own character; and shows the slender claim of the family in question to the sovereignty of the land.

## The present administration of the province.

(H XII 534, 60.  
A 1 1812, 32.

§ 58. During the minority of the Rājā, the able minister Pūrnia conducted the affairs of the kingdom. General Wellesley remained, during the intervals of his campaigns, till March 1805, to discharge the duties of Commissioner of Mysŏr; and by his administration conferred permanent benefits upon the people. Colonel (Sir Barry) Close was the first Resident at the new court.

Pūrnia

Wellesley  
(Nayabon  
and Fuzeror,  
1805) Pradgar,  
(1805)

Close.

§ 59. In 1812, Pūrnia retired, and a sum of £2,812,500 was then found in the treasury. Pūrnia was handsomely pensioned, and Līngā Rāj was made Dīwān, with diminished powers. The Rājā soon dissipated the treasure; and oppressed his subjects to such an extent that a rebellion broke out.

Pūrnia's retire-  
ment.

Everything was venal. The troops were unpaid, and the Rāyats were ground down by excessive and arbitrary taxation.

§ 60. In 1832, the British Government interfered, as the treaty of 1799 required them to do. (Ch. x. § 89.) The mismanagement had been so gross, and the Rājā had been so entirely deaf to advice pressed upon him, that it was felt that the Governor-General could do nothing but take the entire management of the state from his unworthy hands. Sir T. Munro, when Governor of Madras, had visited Mysŏr, and personally urged amendment upon the Rājā, but in vain. Sir Mark Cubbon was chief commissioner under the new system from 1836 to 1861. A liberal pension was assigned to the Rājā. The country has been exceptionally prosperous from that time. The administration reports are of exceeding value. Mr. L. B. Bowring, who had charge of the province from 1862 to 1870, introduced many important reforms; and, in fact, remodelled the whole administration. The present (1871)

The British  
Government  
interference.Lord W. Bentinck,  
Governor-General

1830.

The Rājā's  
mode

CH. XII. § 61.  
A.D. 1868.

The present administration of the province.

His death.  
Adoption.

The new Mahārāja.

chief commissioner is Colonel R. J. Meade. (Ch. x. § 181.)

§ 61. The Rāja died March 27, 1868, without heirs. He had, however, adopted, in 1865, a distant relative called Chām Rājendra. In 1867 Her Majesty's Government were pleased to recognise this adoption; and the young chief has been proclaimed Mahārāja of Mysŏr. He is about six years old, and will receive a training suitable to his rank and prospects.

While much difference of opinion exists as to the propriety of again confiding this important district to the care of a Hindŭ prince; we may be sure that the interests of 4,000,000 of people will ever be carefully watched over by the paramount power.

## NOTE.—1879.

Sir R. J. Meade was succeeded by Mr. C. B. Saunders.

The present Chief Commissioner is Mr. J. D. Gordon, C.S.I.

The district is slowly recovering from the effects of the terrible famine which swept away one-fourth of its inhabitants.

Arrangements are being made for the transference of the province to the Mahārāja.

## CONCLUSION.

WE here draw our brief summary of Indian History to a close.

The student has now in his hands the clue which will serve to guide him through its intricate mazes.

In the Introduction his attention has been directed to the spectacle, unique in the history of the world, of a vast Oriental Empire, consisting of many flourishing states, administered by Englishmen under the British Crown.

Intro. § 1-25.

We have surveyed, in a cursory manner, the immense and varied tracts of country to which the title of the Anglo-Indian Empire has been given.

Intro. § 26-33.

In the first Chapter we have seen an ancient race, possessed of marvellous powers, civilised to a considerable extent, and kindred to our own, spreading itself abroad in Hindûstân. They elaborated great systems of philosophy; and composed splendid poems in a language, the flexibility, copiousness, philosophic structure, and sonorous grandeur of which are the admiration of the learned. They founded and propagated two religions; one of which, no longer possessing votaries in India itself, is yet the most widely extended religious system in the world.

Ch. I. § 1-15.

The history of India then becomes, in a great measure, the record of a series of invasions of Hindûstân by Western and North-Western races,—Persians,

Ch. I. § 16-22.



## CH. IV., III.

## Afghan dynasties.

B.C. 518.

B.C. 330-126.

Ch. II. § 4.

A.D. 711.

Ch. II. § 6.

Ch. II. § 16.

1186-1206.

Ch. II. § 19.  
1206.

Ch. II. § 19-48.

1526.

Ch. III.

Greeks, Afghâns, and Ta(r)tars; and the annals of the dynasties which some of these invaders founded. The ancient Persian Empire numbered the Panjâb among its satrapies; and the Grecian conqueror, by whom that empire was subverted, achieved a wider and a more lasting conquest of North-Western India and the adjacent provinces. Traces of Grecian rule long lingered around the Indus.

After the interval (hardly bridged over by a weak and wavering tradition) of nearly a thousand years, the fiery zeal of the Muhammadans led to the conquest of Sind, at the very time that Gebir and Mûsa founded the famous Moorish kingdom in Spain.

Nearly three hundred years after this, and about the period of the Norman conquest of England, the Ghazni-vide dynasty established itself on the banks of the Ravi, having passed from Ghazni to Lâhôr.

Mahmûd of Ghazni's dominion is followed by that of Muhammad of Ghôr; and each of these conquerors, or rather plunderers, is said to have made twelve marauding, iconoclastic expeditions into India, north of the Nerbudda.

About the time of the first English Edward, a "slave of the Sultân of Ghôr" made Delhi the capital of a Muhammadan empire in India. Amid many vicissitudes it remained so, till England took possession of it. The Muhammadans thus in about a century and a half made a permanent advance from Lâhôr to Delhi.

Successive dynasties, five in number, chiefly founded by slaves, exercised dominion in Delhi and Âgra for 320 years; till, in the time of Henry the Eighth, Bâber, the founder of the great Mogul empire in India, begins the conquest of Hindûstân. The Moguls and Tatârs had, before this, repeatedly crossed the Indus; and Teimûr in 1398, had actually for a short time occupied Delhi. His descendant, Bâber, founded the most illus-

## Summary: the Dakhan.

CH IV, V

trious and enduring dominion that has ever existed in India.

Meanwhile, when Edward I. was conquering Wales, Allā "the Sanguinary" was subjugating the Dakhan, where ancient Hindu races had hitherto lived undisturbed by the commotions in Hindustan. Cruel emperors and their generals followed in his footsteps. In the Dakhan, we see, fifty years after Allā's memorable invasion, a Muhammadan kingdom hardly inferior in splendour to that of Delhi itself, arising at Kulbūrga.

1296.  
Ch. d. § 31.

Ch. iv.

Ch. iv. § 20.  
1247.

The fragments into which, after about 150 years and about the time of Bāber's conquest of Delhi, that kingdom was broken up, were not again entirely brought under the Mogul dominion, till the time of Aurungzib, when the Mogul empire itself was hastening to dissolution.

The last great Hindū kingdom in the south, that of Bijanagar, had fallen before the combined armies of these Dakhani Muhammadan kings in A.D. 1565.

Ch. iv. § 20.

Yet the Hindū races were not extinct. They possess a wonderful vitality. During the long period of the Mogul ascendancy, we see the Rājputs, the proud representatives of the ancient Hindū Rājas, identifying themselves with their Muhammadan conquerors in a singular manner. Though thus closely connected with the Moguls, their independence survives the downfall of the house of Teimūr.

Ch. III. § 1

Moreover, there now arises in the Dakhan a Hindū power, which never for a moment is really at peace with the Muhammadans; which holds itself ever ready to spring upon them, like the tiger on its prey; and which at length reduces the thirteenth Mogul emperor to ignominious servitude. The Delhi Musalmāns, in fact, overcame their brethren in the Dakhan, only, as it seemed, to prepare the way for a universal Mahratta dominion.

Ch. v.

## CH. VI-IX.

## Summary: the Portuguese, &amp;c. in India.

- Ch. v. § 70. But the Mahrattas themselves, in the plenitude of their power, received a check from an Afghan invader, who crossed the Indus six times; and after inflicting a crushing defeat upon the combined forces of that ambitious people, declined to ascend the throne of the Moguls.
- Ch. vi., vii. Meanwhile, the discovery of the route to India by the Cape of Good Hope led to a series of more important invasions of India by the nations of modern Europe, who came in the garb of merchants; but soon began to entertain the design of founding a permanent dominion in the East.
- Ch. vi. Of these, the Portuguese, after a brief but splendid career, sank from absolute incapacity for the performance of the task which they had set themselves.
- Ch. vii. § 4. The Dutch followed them; but the decay of their fortunes in Europe prevented the permanent success of their schemes in India.
- Ch. vii., viii. The English and the French alone remained; and, in the middle of the eighteenth century, it seemed uncertain which of these two races was to govern India.
- Ch. ix. The genius of Clive, who did what Albuquerque and Dupleix had failed to do, mainly decided the question in favour of England.
- Ch. ii. The year 1760 saw the irretrievable ruin of the French in India.
- Ch. v. § 70. The next year is the date of the disabling blow that fell on the Mahrattas at Pānīpat.
- Ch. ix. From 1757 to 1765 Britain, chiefly under Clive's guidance, advanced by rapid steps to sovereign power in the East.
- Ch. x. A series of British Governors-General, beginning with the illustrious Warren Hastings, were thenceforth the foremost men in India. Their line of seventeen proconsuls ranges grandly in history over against that of the seventeen great Mogul Emperors.

## CONCLUSION.

477

### The Marathas.

CHAP. I. XII.

Yet England did not become the paramount power in India without a long series of severe struggles.

There were the wars in the Carnatic with the French, from 1744 to 1761; in Bengál with Surája Daula and other Muhammadan Nuwábs, from 1757 to 1765, including the glorious ten months in 1765 on the banks of the Ganges; the four Mahratta wars, in the course of which the Mogul Emperor, Sháh Álam II., was released from Mahratta thralldom, and placed under British protection, and every single Mahratta leader suffered a signal overthrow, which momentous struggles lasted from 1775 to 1819; the four Mysór wars, in which the short-lived but vigorous Muhammadan usurpation in Seringapatam was extinguished, and the ancient Hindú Ráj restored under the auspices of Britain; the war with Nípal; two wars with Birma, which transferred the whole sea-board of further India to the sway of England; the lamentable struggle in Afghánistán\*; the war in which the Ámirs of Sind were rudely stript of their dominions; the brief but bloody episode of the Gwáliór struggle; the two Panjáb wars, in which was subjugated the land of the five rivers, where all other conquerors began their conquests: these are the chief of the conquests which England has come forth triumphant. The sad history of the "Sepoy Mutiny," in which England had finally to conquer its own rebellious army, and in the course of which the last of the Moguls, and the sole surviving, and most unworthy, representative of the Peshwás were swept away; and which ended in the assumption by the British Crown of the direct government of India, which until then had been under the administration of the ever-

Ch. vii., viii.  
Ch. ix.

Ch. v. § 90-100.

Ch. xii.

Ch. x.

\* 1879. The time has not come for more than a reference to the second Afghán war, with its second massacre.

## British rule in the East.

memorable British East-India Company, closes the eventful history. The romance of Indian history is over. No such wonderful histories as those of Sivaji, Ranjit Sing, and Haidar can repeat themselves in this land, now resting itself, after the struggles of a thousand years. May future historians record that in 1859 her millenium of peace and prosperity began!

The student's attention may be drawn, with propriety to one or two inferences.

(1.) It will be discerned, that, while in many cases the English have appeared as the liberators of oppressed races, in none have they overthrown a dominion that had existed before their own advent in the East, and which could be called a legitimate and ancient Hindî dominion. The only really ancient states of India which were in existence in the beginning of the eighteenth century, those of Rājputāna and of Mysôr are in being still, and owe their continuance to British protection. This is a fact which the student should minutely examine and verify for himself.

(2.) The rise and progress of British rule in the East has been what may be termed *spontaneous*.

Every step has been taken with reluctance, and under the pressure of that imperious necessity which Clive was the first to feel: the last battle was but the necessary corollary of the first.

(3.) It can hardly be necessary to do more than to direct the attention of the student to the circumstance that many of England's greatest statesmen and brave warriors have been concerned in the establishment, guidance, and defence of this Anglo-Indian empire.

May it not safely be affirmed, that the annals of the world afford no examples of constancy, prudence, and fortitude more illustrious than those which shine forth in the pages of British Indian history? Hence the value and importance of this study.

## British rule in the East.

(4.) And, lastly, if the provinces of India at any period during the last ten centuries, have enjoyed peace, or had any assured hope of development and progress; it has been only as, one after another, they have come under the dominion or protection of Great Britain. Is it not evident that India now beholds the dawn of a brighter day than she has ever yet seen? The analogy of history, and a consideration of the laws which seem to govern human affairs, forbid the expectation that the forms of Indian national life which have passed away should ever reappear. There is no second life for decayed civilisations and nationalities. No Râma will arise to reign, as in ancient fable, over the fifty-six Hindû nations; and Musalmân conquerors have had their day.

From shadowy and misleading phantoms of Hindû independence we must turn away our eyes.

The subjects of the "Empress of India" are admitted to share the responsibilities and rewards of high office in the Anglo-Indian Empire; and, if no fusion of races is probable, or even possible, nevertheless, in the highest sense, India and her rulers may be, and must be, **ONE**.

India's life in future must be identified with that of the **PARAMOUNT POWER**; and we trust that Great Britain has fully recognised, and is conscientiously striving to fulfil, in no selfish spirit, the duties which her guardianship of India involves.

If these pages shall help the student to estimate aright his own duties, and to endeavour, in his measure, to help forward the great and necessary work of assimilating more and more these Eastern dominions of the Queen to the most favoured regions of the West in all that is helpful and excellent, they will not have been written in vain.



## EXAMINATION QUESTIONS ON INDIAN HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHY.

### INTRODUCTION.

- I.—1. Fix the positions of Dondra Head, Singapore, Peshāwar, and the Salwin. § 1, 2.
2. Draw a sketch map of Bengāl, indicating round it the districts under the same administration. § 8.
3. What is to be observed regarding Sikhim, Munnipūr, and Tipperah? § 8.
1. Draw a sketch map of the course of the Ganges from Patna to Hardwār, putting in all the places of importance on its banks. § 9.
5. Draw a sketch map of the Panjāb territory, exhibiting its ten divisions. § 10.
6. Give a diagram showing the relative positions of the capitals of the six tributary states of Central India. § 12.
7. Where is Bandēlkhand? Give the chief states in it. § 12.
8. What are called the Central Provinces? What rivers have their rise there? § 13.
9. Fix the sites of the chief sea-ports of British Birma, and mention some particulars about them. § 15.
10. What dependent Rājas are there in the Madras Presidency? Give a few facts regarding the territory of each of them. § 16.
- II.—1. Mention the founders of Herāt, the fort of Attock, Madras, Indōr, Aunrūghābād, and Bījanagar. (Comp. Geog. Index.)
2. What French settlements are there in India? Give their positions. § 17.
3. What Portuguese settlements are there in India? Fix their positions. § 19. Ch. vi.
4. Draw a sketch map of the Madras Presidency, inserting the chief town of each collectorate. § 16.
5. Draw a sketch map of the Bombay Presidency, inserting the chief place of each district. § 18.
6. What *feudatories* are there within the limits of the Bombay Presidency? § 18.
7. Draw a sketch map of Berār. How did it come under British management? § 20.
8. Give the dates and circumstances of the acquisition of any six portions of territory by the English. § 23.
9. Give any six feudatories of Britain in India, and fix the position and extent of their states. § 24, 25.
10. What boon did Lord Canning confer on these feudatory chiefs? Ch. x. § 187.

\*\*\* Put dates to everything throughout.



## III. IV.

## Ancient India.

## CHAPTER I., &amp;c.

- III.—1. When does real Indian history begin? § 1.  
 2. Which are the most ancient Hindû books? § 2.  
 3. Distinguish the Vêdic system of religion from that of the Purânas § 2, 10.  
 4. Enumerate the chief Sanskrit compositions. § 2, 6, 7, 13, 14.  
 5. Which are the four great Hindû castes? How has the system of caste been modified? § 4.  
 6. What do you mean by village communities? § 4.  
 7. What tracts of country were called respectively Brahmâvarta and Brahmarshidêsa? What are they remarkable for? § 5.  
 8. Give an account of the "Institutes of Manu." § 3, 4.  
 9. What is recorded concerning Râma? Where is his history given? § 6.  
 10. What is the subject of the Mahâ Bhârata? § 7.

## CHAPTER I., &amp;c.

- IV.—1. What is the legend regarding Krishna? § 7.  
 2. What Kings of Magadha are important in history? § 8.  
 3. When and where did Buddhism originate? § 8, 11.  
 4. What king was the distinguished patron of Buddhism. § 8 (5), § 11.  
 5. Who was Sankara Âchârya? § 11.  
 6. What is known regarding the sage Agastya? Ch. iv. § 3.  
 7. Give an account of the Jain system. § 12; ch. iv. § 5.  
 8. Who was Parasu Râma? Ch. iv. § 8.  
 9. What is the Vêdânta system of philosophy? § 15.  
 10. What do you mean by the Periplus? Ch. iv. § 14.

CHAPTER I., &c.

- V.—1. What invasions of India are mentioned as having taken place before the birth of Christ? § 16, 20.  
 2. Which of these are of no historical importance? § 16, 17.  
 3. Give an account of the ancient Persian invasion. § 18.  
 4. Give a detailed account of Alexander's expedition to India. § 19.  
 5. Give an account of Herat. § 19; ch. x. § 110, c.  
 6. Write a summary of the history of the Greek kingdom of Bactria. § 19, 20.  
 7. Who were Skylax and Nearchus? § 18, 19.  
 8. Who were the contemporaries of Chandragupta? § 20.  
 9. What are the eras of Vikramāditya and Śālivāhana? § 9, 23.  
 10. Draw a sketch map of the Panjāb proper, inserting the Greek names. § 19, 20.

CHAPTER II., &c.

The Pre-Mogul Muhammadan History.

- VI.—1. Give the names of the first six Muhammadan invaders of India. Ch. ii. table.  
 2. Draw a sketch map of Trans-Oxiana. Ch. ii. § 5.  
 3. Enumerate the Muhammadan dynasties in Delhi before Bāber. Ch. ii. table.  
 4. Write a detailed life of Jeipāl I. Ch. ii. § 6, 7; xi. § 12.  
 5. Fix the situations of Batiinda, Nāgarkōt, and Tanēsiwar. Give some account of each of these places. Ch. ii. § 7, 8, 16; xi. § 8.  
 6. Why is the tenth expedition of Mahmūd of Ghazni very important? Ch. ii. § 10.  
 7. Give some account of Anhalwāra. Ch. ii. § 11, 32.  
 8. Who were Firdousi, Khāfi Khān, Kālidāsa, and Forishta? Where and when did they live? Ch. ii. § 12; iii. § 9; i. § 13; iv. § 23.  
 9. Three Beirāms (Beyram) are mentioned in this history; give some account of each. Ch. ii. § 15, 26; iii. § 6.  
 10. Who were respectively called the Burner of the World, and the Sanquinary? Why? Ch. ii. § 15, 32.

## CHAPTER III., &amp;c.

1556-1605.

- VII.—1. Write a list of the Mogul Emperors in three sections—the great ones, the nominal ones, and the mere pensioners. § 2.  
2. Write a life of Sultân Bâber. § 3.  
3. Recount the great struggle of the Râjpûts for empire. § 3 (12).  
4. Write a life of Humâ'yûn. § 4, 5.  
5. Give a summary of the history of the Sâr dynasty. § 5.  
6. Divide Akbar's life into six periods, and state the chief events in each. § 6.  
7. Draw a sketch map, showing the eighteen Subâhs into which his empire was divided. § 6.  
8. Give an account of the two sieges of Ahmadnagar in this reign. § 6.  
9. State a few particulars regarding—(1.) Akbar's guardian; (2.) his brother-in-law; (3.) his sons; (4.) his chief friends; (5.) his chief opponents. § 6.  
10. What are his chief claims to be considered an exceedingly great ruler? § 6.

## CHAPTER III., &amp;c.

1605-1707.

- VIII.—1. Write a sketch of Jehângîr's history. § 7.  
2. Give a brief account of his queen, and of his great general, Muhâbat Khân. § 7.  
3. Write an account of Sir T. Roe's embassy to his court. § 7.  
4. What events occurred in 1626-27? § 7.  
5. Divide Shâh Jehân's life into three periods, and give a summary of the events of each. § 7, 8, 9.  
6. What Portuguese affair is important in this reign? § 8.  
7. Give a brief account of each of Shâh Jehân's children. § 8.  
8. Divide Aurungzîb's life into four periods, and give a short account of the events of each portion. § 9.  
9. Compare his character and policy with those of Akbar. § 9.  
10. Who was Jeswant Sing? What is known of him? § 9.

AURUNGZIB. (Ch. iii. § 8, 9.)

1658-1707.

- IX.—1. Give a summary of Aurungzib's career before 1658. Ch. iii. § 8 (7, 9).  
 2. What gave him an advantage over his brothers?  
 3. Give details of his treacherous conduct to his relatives.  
 4. How did he behave—(1.) to Sivaji; (2.) to Sambaji; (3.) to Sahu?  
 5. Who were his great generals?  
 6. In what way did Jeswant Sing act, and how did Aurungzib behave to him and his?  
 7. What places are most connected with his history?  
 8. Who were his sons? Trace their history to 1707.  
 9. How did Aurungzib differ essentially from Akbar?  
 10. What conquests did he achieve in the Dakhan?

AURUNGZIB—Continued.

- X.—1. Wherein was he impolitic?  
 2. What connection had he with the English?  
 3. Who was the historian of the time? His history?  
 4. What circumstances led to the immediate break-up of the Mogul power in 1707?  
 5. When did he become Emperor *de facto*, and when *de jure*?  
 6. Draw a sketch map, putting in all the places referred to in the summary. § 9 (19).  
 7. Had the limits of the empire extended from 1658 to 1707?  
 8. Was there anything in English history to parallel the bigotry of Aurungzib about the same time?  
 9. What peculiarity of his character most hindered his success?  
 10. What was the real result of his policy in the Dakhan?

## CHAPTER III. § 10, 11 ; VII.

1707-1718.

- XI.—1. Give an account of the SEVENTH Mogul Emperor.  
 2. Who was the EIGHTH Mogul Emperor, and who was his supporter ?  
 What was their fate ?  
 3. Give an account of the Dutch East India Company to 1700.  
 4. Give a brief summary of the early history of the French in India to 1725.  
 5. What places did the Danes occupy ?  
 6. Give an account of the English factories in India to 1700.  
 7. What especial circumstances in reference to the English East India Company are to be referred to the reigns of Shâh Jehân and Farukhshîr ?  
 8. What places around the coast were in European occupation in 1725 ?  
 9. Which Mahratta leaders were contemporaries of Zulâkâr Khân ?  
 10. What was the state of affairs at that period in Mysôr, the Panjâb, and in Delhi ?

## CHAPTER III.

1718-1748.

- XII.—1. Who were the Barha Seids ? Ch. iii. § 12 (2).  
 2. What Emperors did they set up, and whom did they depose ?  
 3. Who were their great rivals ? § 15.  
 4. What treaty did one of them make with a Mahratta leader, and what were its results ?  
 5. How were they overthrown ?  
 6. Give a sketch of the history of Zulâkâr Khân. Ch. iii. § 11.  
 7. What circumstances are worthy of note connected with the marriage of Farukhshîr ? Ch. iii. § 12.  
 8. What did the Sikhs suffer under the government of these Seids ? § 12.  
 9. Give some account of Âsaph Jâh.  
 10. And of Sâdat Khân.

## CHAPTER III. § 12-19.

- XIII.—1. Give an account of affairs in Delhi from 1713 to 1738.  
 2. What was the occasion, and what the result, of the battle of Shāhpūr? § 15.  
 3. Give a short sketch of the history of the Nazāms of Hindustān.  
 4. What provinces became virtually independent during the reign of Muhammad Shāh? Who were his great Generals?  
 5. What was the history of the battle of Sirhind?  
 6. Write a short account of Nādir Shāh.  
 7. Who was All Vardi Khān?  
 8. Give the history of AHMAD SHĀH, the Emperor.  
 9. Write an account of AHMAD SHĀH ABDĀLĪ.  
 10. Give the life of Ghāzi-ud-din (IV.), grandson of Nizām-ud Din.

## CHAPTER III. § 20-25.

- XIV.—1. How did the Mahrattas get a footing in Delhi? when did they, for a time, lose it? when regain it? and when did they finally lose it?  
 2. Who was Gholām Kādir?  
 3. Give the names of the last two Moguls, and a particular or two about them.  
 4. In 1757 what was the state of affairs in all the principal centres of political life in India?  
 5. Which Mogul Emperors were fugitives? which were assassinated? which were mere puppets? which did most to establish the empire? and which most hastened its downfall?  
 6. Who were the Rohillas?  
 7. Which Emperor met Clive, and under what circumstances?  
 8. How many times, and by whom, was Delhi taken between 1206 and 1803?  
 9. Who were the descendants of Ahmad Shāh Abdālī?  
 10. Which six battles were most important in the Mogul history?

## CHAPTERS IV. AND V., &amp;c.

- XV.—1. Draw a sketch map of the Mahratta country. Ch. v. § 2-4.  
 2. What do we know of the Mahratta people before the rise of Sivaji? Ch. iv. § 14, 15.  
 3. How have the hill-forts been connected with Mahratta history? Ch. v. § 5, 9, 11, 18, 21, 22.  
 4. Give a brief account of Sivaji's ancestors. Ch. v. § 9.  
 5. Trace the history of the Mahratta dominion in the Carnatic. Ch. v. § 7, 17, 23, 24, 55, 108. (See Tanjore.)  
 6. Give a short life of the great Sivaji. Ch. v. § 9-26.  
 7. State precisely the position of the various kingdoms of the Dakhan in 1627. Ch. iv. § 23-29; vi. § 20.  
 8. Give an account of Sivaji's conduct towards Afzal Khân and Shayista Khân. Ch. v. § 14-16.  
 9. In what matters did Sivaji come into contact with the English. Ch. v. § 17-22; vii. § 6.  
 10. Compare Sivaji with Hyder Ali. Why was the success of the former more complete than that of the latter?

## CHAPTER V., &amp;c.

- XVI.—1. What is remarkable about the history of Shayista Khân?  
 2. Give an account of Sivaji's successor. § 27-32.  
 3. Distinguish between Râja Râm and Râm Râj. § 27-29.  
 4. Write a life of Râja Sâhu. § 33-59.  
 5. What was the state of affairs among the Mahrattas from 1683 to 1707? § 30-37.  
 6. Who was Bâlâji Vishwanâth? Give an account of the transactions with. § 40-42.  
 7. Explain the terms *Chout* and *Surdêshmukht*. § 42.  
 8. Write a life of the second Peshwâ. § 44-53.  
 9. Name the principal Mahratta leaders who rose to eminence about 1724. Which of these founded independent states? § 45.  
 10. Give an account of the origin of the Kolhâpûr state. § 47.

## CHAPTERS V, VII, VIII.

1710-1748.

- XVII.—1. Give a sketch of the chief states in India in 1740. Ch. v. § 53.  
 2. Write an account of Chanda Sahib.  
 3. Who were the great French leaders in the Carnatic during this period?  
 4. Give an account of the first battle of Ambūr.  
 5. Exhibit the dynasty of Anwār-ud-dīn in a table. Ch. viii. § 7.  
 6. What sons of Nizām ul-Mulk were alive when he died?  
 7. Give an account of the first siege of Madras. Ch. viii. § 4.  
 8. What powers existed in India in 1748? Ch. viii. § 14.  
 9. Write an account of Bāljī Rāo. Ch. v. § 56-71.  
 10. Give a slight sketch of six important persons who died in or about 1748.

## CHAPTERS V.-IX.

1748-1765.

- XVIII.—1. Who was Ragobā? Give a sketch of his history. Ch. v. § 63.  
 2. Who was Clive? Trace his whole Indian career briefly.  
 3. Give an outline of events that led to the battle of Plassey. Ch. ix. § 6-10.  
 4. What brought about the conflict between the Marhattas and Ahmad Shāh Abdālī? Ch. v. § 64.  
 5. Give an account of the (second) battle of Pāripāt. (1761.) Ch. v. § 68.  
 6. Write a summary of affairs in Bengal during 1765.  
 7. Who destroyed the French power in the Carnatic? Trace its decline from 1748 to 1760. Ch. viii. § 15-32.  
 8. Who were the rival Nuwābs of Arcot? Discuss their claims.  
 9. Who were the rival Subādārs of the Dakhnā? Give their history.  
 10. Write an account of Bussy.—Ch. viii. § 18.



## CHAPTERS V.-IX.

1765-1782.

- XIX.—1. Write a life of Warren Hastings. Ch. ix. § 34 to x. § 14.  
 2. Give a sketch of the history of Nānā Farnavīs. Ch. v. § 70, 73-119.  
 3. Give an outline of the history of the life and times of Mādū Rāo, the fourth Peshwā. Ch. v. § 72.  
 4. What caused the first Mahratta war? Ch. v. § 90, 91.  
 5. Who was Goddard? Give an account of his services. Ch. v. § 96-102.  
 6. Give a summary of the history of the English in Bengāl from 1765 to 1782.  
 7. What was the Convention of Warglōm? Ch. v. § 97.  
 8. State the particulars of the treaty of Salbāi. Ch. v. § 102.  
 9. Give an account of the Indōr State from its rise to 1780.  
 10. What do we know of any Governors of Madras and Bombay during this period?

1782-1800.

- XX.—1. Write a full account of Mahādājī Sindia. Ch. v. § 77-110.  
 2. Give an account of the battle of Kūrdlā. Ch. v. § 114.  
 3. Write a life of the Marquis Cornwallis. Ch. x. § 18.  
 4. What was the permanent settlement? Ch. x. § 23.  
 5. Give an abstract of the history of the fifth and sixth Peshwās. Ch. v. § 83-87.  
 6. State the more important matters connected with Lord Teignmouth's administration. Ch. v. § 29.  
 7. What are the chief features of the English legislation for India between 1783 and 1793, both dates being included? Ch. x. § 15-28.  
 8. What Presidents of the "Board of Control" have been celebrated in history?  
 9. State fully all you know about the Treaty of Bassein. Ch. v. § 123.  
 10. Give a summary of the state of affairs at all the principal places in India in 1800.

---

## EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

---

491

The English Period.

XXI. XXII.

---

### CHAPTERS V.-X

1800-1805

(Ch. vii. § 54; xi. § 25)

- XXI.—1. Write an account of the Marquess of Wellesley's Indian administration. Ch. x. § 34-48.
2. What is the system which is called the *Sabkar System*? Ch. x. § 38-40.
3. What circumstances caused the minister's secretary to open with favourable auspices to Great Britain in India? Ch. x. § 42, 43; vi. § 121; xi. § 56.
4. Give an account of Jeswant Rao Holkar. Ch. x. § 113-116.
5. Give a slight sketch of the life of Daulat Rao Scindia. Ch. v. § 110-161.
6. What destroyed the Mahratta confederation? Ch. v. § 139.
7. Give an account of the second Mahratta war. Ch. v. § 124-130.
8. What were the provisions of the treaty of Bhangam? Ch. v. § 134.
9. What were the provisions of the treaty of Surj Anjengam? Ch. v. § 135.
10. Give a summary of the third Mahratta war. Ch. v. § 137.

1805-1819.

- XXII.—1. Give some account of Sir Barry Close, Sir John Malcolm, Sir C. Metcalfe, Mr. M. Elphinstone, and Sir T. Munro.
2. Write a brief history of Bajirao II. Ch. v. § 116.
3. Give, in a table, the battles of the fourth Mahratta or Pindari war.
4. State a few particulars regarding Trimbuckji, Appa Sahab, Amir Khan, Chitû, Ghâgê, Gokla.
5. Give the sequel of the history of the Râjas of Satârâ. Ch. v. § 164.
6. Who were the Pindâris? Ch. v. § 148.
7. Which were the principal hill-forts taken from the Mahrattas, to 1819, by the English? Ch. v. § 165.
8. Give an account of the Tanjore Mahratta Râj from its foundation. Ch. x. § 44.
9. State briefly the main circumstances connected with the Nuwâbe of the Carnatic from 1760 to 1801.
10. Give a short history of Sir G. Barlow's career as acting Governor-General, and as Governor of Madras. Ch. x. § 53-59.
-

## CHAPTERS X. § 53-78.

1805-1823.

- XXIII.—1. What may be said for and against the "Non-intervention Policy in India? § 53, 54.
2. Give an account of the Vellore Mutiny. § 55.
  3. Write a summary of Travancore history. § 61-64.
  4. State a few particulars about the Cochin state. § 64.
  5. Where are Mauritius and Bourbon important in Indian history § 66.
  6. Give a sketch of Lord Minto's embassies. § 67-69.
  7. Write a summary of the Marquis of Hastings' Indian administration. § 73-77.
  8. What was the cause of the Nipal war? How did it end? § 74.
  9. Write a short account of General Sir D. Ochterlony's services. § 7
  10. Who was Mr. Adam, and what did he do? § 78.

## CHAPTER X. § 78-105.

- XXIV.—1. Give an account of the first Birinese war. § 79.
2. What territory did England acquire by the treaty of Yendab? § 79.
  3. What mutinies, European and native, have taken place in the armies of England in India?
  4. Give an account of Bhartpûr. § 81.
  5. What rendered Lord W. C. Bentinck's administration remarkable? § 87.
  6. Give a summary of Kârg history. § 90.
  7. What is Thuggism? Who was most successful in its suppression? § 95.
  8. Give a short account of the Bhôpâl state.
  9. What changes were made in the Company's charter in 1833? § 10
  10. What did Sir C. Metcalfe do as acting Governor-General? Discuss its propriety. § 105.

## CHAPTER X. § 106 111.

- XXV.—1. Who were the rulers of Afghánistán from 1761 to 1840? § 110.  
 2. Give the descent of Sháh Shujá. § 110.  
 3. Write an account of Dóst Muhammad.  
 4. Draw a sketch map of Afghánistán, showing the chief places celebrated in the war.  
 5. Was the expedition wise or foolish? Why? § 110.  
 6. How did E. Pottinger, Sale, Nott, and Dennis distinguish themselves?  
 7. Give an account of the Kábul disasters. § 110.  
 8. Why was the garrison of Jellábhád called the *four*? § 116.  
 9. What do you know about Dóst Muhammad's fighting son?  
 10. Give an account of the results of the Afghan expedition.

## CHAPTER X. § 112 136.

- XXVI.—1. How many wars with China are mentioned? What have been the results?  
 2. What mistakes did the Earl of Ellenborough make as Governor-General?  
 3. What was the cause of the Gwáloh trouble? § 124.  
 4. What two battles were then fought, and what was their result? § 124.  
 5. How was Sind then governed? § 125.  
 6. What was the occasion of the British war with Sind?  
 7. What battles were fought in this war?  
 8. What were the chief characteristics of Lord Hardinge as Governor-General? § 132, 133.  
 9. What had been done by the British armies between 1843 1846?  
 10. What was done in Gúmsúr and adjacent districts at this period? § 133.

## CHAPTER X. § 137-183.

- XXVII.—1. What annexations took place in the Earl of Dalhousie's time?  
2. Give a summary of the second Birmese war. § 140.  
3. The years 1848-1856 were years of great *progress*. Illustrate this.  
4. What change in the Company's charter was made in 1853? § 145.  
5. What were the chief events of Lord Canning's administration?  
6. What was the origin and the result of the second Persian war? § 155.  
7. Give an account of the exploits of Sir James Outram and Sir Herbert Edwardes. § 156.  
8. Give a sketch of the histories of Sir Henry Lawrence and of Sir J. Lawrence, before he was Governor-General.  
9. Distinguish between "epidemic" and "endemic" civilisation.  
10. Give a sketch of the principal events of the "Sepoy mutiny." § 159-183.

## CHAPTER X. § 161-183.

- XXVIII.—1. Who were the principal traitors in 1857? § 163, 164.  
2. Who were the great heroes of that rebellion?  
3. What native princes were especially loyal to the paramount power?  
4. What arrangements were made in 1858 for the government of British India? § 185.  
5. Give an abstract of the Queen's proclamation. § 186.  
6. What is the "patent of nobility"? § 187.  
7. Give a list of the Governors-General. § 192.  
8. Select the four greatest, and give reasons for your selection.  
9. Who were the most eminent of the Acting Governors-General?  
10. What great calamities have befallen the English in India from 1756 to the present?

## CHAPTER XI. (X.)

- XXIX.—1. The Panjáb has been the battle-field of Afgháns, Moguls, and Hindús. Illustrate this. § 1.  
 2. Give a sketch of the geography of this province. § 2.  
 3. Give the history of Múltán in detail. § 37.  
 4. How many invaders have passed the Attock?  
 5. Which are the Cis-Satlaj states? § 8.  
 6. What Governors-General have had most to do with Panjáb affairs, and how?  
 7. Write a history of the rise and progress of the Sikhs to 1800. § 22-24.  
 8. Give a life of Ranjít Sing in detail. § 25.  
 9. Enumerate the various rulers of the Panjáb from the earliest times. § 9-23.  
 10. Trace the descent of Dhulip Sing. § 27.

## CHAPTER XI.

- XXX.—1. Who were Múlráj, Lál Sing, Goláb Sing, and Chánd Kowr? § 35, 36.  
 2. Give in detail the history of the first Panjáb war. § 29.  
 3. And of the second Panjáb war. § 10.  
 4. Mention the chief military men connected with the two Panjáb wars.  
 5. How has the Panjáb been administered since its annexation? § 45.  
 6. What is the meaning of the word *Sikh*, of *Khillat*, of *Misl*, and of *Sing* or *Singh*? § 22.  
 7. Justify the annexation of the Panjáb. § 44.  
 8. What great engineering works have been carried out there?  
 9. What is now the north-west frontier of British India?  
 10. Give a sketch of the history of Káshmir from the earliest times.

## CHAPTER XII.

- XXXI.—1. Draw a sketch map of Mysôr, putting in all the places mentioned in the chapter. Comp. Intro. § 14.
2. For what are Manzerâbâd, Dêonhalli, Bednûr, and Mangalôr remarkable? § 1, 11, 14, 20, 36.
3. Who were the ancient sovereigns of the Karnâtika country, and what was their capital? § 2.
4. Mention the six most important kings of the old Hindû dynasty, and give one particular regarding each. § 2-12.
5. Trace the history of the city of Seringapatam from 1565-1799.
6. What dealings with the Mahrattas had Chick Dêo Râj? § 8.
7. What analogy do you trace between Mysôr and Mahratta history? § 9.
8. Give a short history of the life of Haidar Ali. § 13.
9. What events happened in 1749, 1760, 1769, 1780, 1782?
10. What part did Warren Hastings take in Mysôr affairs? § 26-29.

## CHAPTER XII.

- XXXII.—1. How was Sir Eyre Coote connected with Mysôr affairs? Give a sketch of his services Ch. viii., ix., xii. § 28.
2. Give a short account of Flint Baillie, and Matthews.
3. What were the respective issues of the two battles of Pollilore? § 27, 29.
4. Give a sketch of Colonel Smith's exploits. § 17-21.
5. What was Haidar's great complaint against the English in 1772? § 22.
6. Give particulars of any transactions with the Mahrattas in which Haidar was worsted. § 15, 22.
7. Give a summary of the second Mysôr war. § 27.
8. How did Haidar and Tippû treat Kûrg? § 23, 37.
9. Write a short life of Tippû Sultân. § 33-56.
10. What was the state of Mahratta affairs at the date of the death of Haidar?

## EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

497

Mysôr. General.

XXXIII.  
XXXIV.

### CHAPTER XII.

- XXXIII.—1. Give particulars of the four treaties made by the English with the Mysôreans. § 21, 38, 44, 56, 60.  
2. What did the Marquis Cornwallis accomplish in regard to Mysôr?  
3. How was the Marquis Wellesley concerned with Mysôr affairs?  
4. What battles preceded the final siege of Seringapatam?  
5. Give a sketch of Hartley's history from the Convention of Wangam to 1799.  
6. How did Tippû resemble Jâna Khân Tughlak?  
7. Give a short account of each member of the commission that settled Mysôr affairs in 1799.  
8. Write a life of the late Râja of Mysôr.  
9. What Mahratta chieftains were alive in 1799?  
10. Give an account of three persons from whom Tippû sought aid § 47, 50.

### GENERAL.

- XXXIV.—1. Compare Albuquerque, Clive, and Dupleix, as to their Indian careers.  
2. What wars has England waged in India?  
3. Enumerate all the massacres that occur in British Indian history.  
4. What is the general impression produced on your mind as to the results of Muhammadan rule in India?  
5. What was the great fault of the French in India?  
6. What innovations has England made in religious matters in India? Defend them.  
7. What campaign was the most trying to England, and why?  
8. Which Governor-General displayed the greatest genius? Defend your answer.  
9. What great wrongs have been committed by English rulers in India?  
10. What powers were in existence in India in 1650?



## CHAPTER VI.

1498-1656.

- XXXV.—1. Trace the progress of Portuguese maritime discovery from 1420 to 1500. § 1-5.
2. Write a summary of the state of affairs in India in 1498. § 5.
3. Who was De Gâma's patron? his opponents? his crimes? what is his great glory? § 2, 4, 6.
4. Give a summary of the Indian career of (1) Cabral; (2) Duarte Pacheco; (3) Soarez. § 2-9.
5. Write a life of the first and second Portuguese viceroys. § 10-14.
6. What sieges are of importance in Indo-Portuguese history? Relate briefly their histories. § 8, 12, 16-18, 19, 20.
7. When and with what result did the Portuguese come into contact with the Mahrattas? Ch. v. § 30, 51.
8. What was the nature of the Portuguese dominion in the East? How far did it extend? § 15.
9. Relate the circumstances under which the Portuguese came into contact with the rulers of Gujarât. § 10, 16-18.
10. Trace the decline and fall of Portuguese power in the East. § 20, 21.

## CHRONOLOGICAL TABLES OF INDIAN HISTORY.

**NOTE 1.** This table is intended to connect the several parts of the History. The student should practise himself in writing out all the events in every part of India, in any given year or period.

**2.** The most important dates are marked (\*).

### I. PRE-HISTORIC TIMES. Ch. i. iv.

B.C.		
1400	Arrangement of the Vêdas by VYÂSA .	Ch. i. § 2.
1400-1300	The war of the Mahâ Bhârata. <i>Sahâ Dêva</i>	Ch. i. § 7, 8.
1308	Invasion of India by Sesostris (mythical)	Ch. i. § 17.
1200	RÂMA's invasion of the Dakhan .	Ch. i. § 6.
800	The date of MENU .	Ch. i. § 3.
700	AGASTYA in the South .	Ch. iv. § 3.
543	Ajâta Satru. Death of GÔTAMA, or SÂKYA MUNI .	Ch. i. § 8, 11.

### II. SEMI-HISTORIC PERIOD, FROM THE INVASION OF THE PANJÂB BY THE PERSIANS TO THE RISE OF THE GHAZNÎVIDES B.C. 518-A.D. 978.

Compare Ch. iv. with Ch. i.

B.C.		
518	Persian invasion under DARIUS HYSTASPES .	Ch. i. § 18.
400-500	PÂNDYA kingdom of Madura founded .	Ch. iv. § 5.
330	HERÂT founded by Alexander .	Ch. i. § 19.
326	Invasion of the Panjâb by Alexander the Great .	Ch. i. § 19.
315	CHANDRA-GUPTA, or Sandracottus .	Ch. i. § 8, 20.
260-220	ASÔKA, or Piyadâsi, the great patron of Buddhism .	Ch. i. § 8.
249	The Buddhist Council .	Ch. i. § 11.
126	Tartars from Trans-Oxiana conquer the Bactrian kingdom .	Ch. i. § 20.
57	VIKRAMÂDITYA, King of Ūjein .	Ch. i. § 9.

II.	Indian History.	
A.D.		
78	SÂLIVÂHANA, King of Paithun . . . . .	Ch. i. § 9.
214	Tanjore founded . . . . .	Ch. iv. § 5.
327-473	YÂVANAS in Orissa . . . . .	Ch. iv. § 13.
524	Noushîrvân . . . . .	Ch. iii. § 6 (12).
600	The JAIN system founded . . . . .	Ch. i. § 12.
700-800	SANKARA ÂCHÂRYA . . . . .	Ch. i. § 11.
1050	KÔNA PÂNDYA in Madura . . . . .	Ch. iv. § 5.

III. THE PRE-MOGUL MUHAMMADAN PERIOD: FROM THE BEGINNING OF AUTHENTIC NATIONAL HISTORY IN INDIA TO 1526. AFGHÂNS, BÂHMÎNÎ, TEIMÛR, BÎJANAGAR, MYSÔR, GOA.

[See Ch. ii. Introductory Table.]

A.D.		
878-1186	The Ghaznivides . . . . .	Ch. ii. § 1-15.
1009	Râmânûja born . . . . .	Ch. iv. § 9.
*1022	LÂRÛR becomes a <i>Muhammadan city</i> . . . . .	Ch. ii. § 10.
1152	Sack of Ghazni by <i>Allâ-ud-dîn Ghôrî</i> . . . . .	Ch. ii. § 15.
1186-1206	MUHAMMAD OF GHÔR . . . . .	Ch. ii. § 16.
1100-1200	Basava . . . . .	Ch. iv. § 11.
*1206-1288	The first slave dynasty in Delhi. (KUTB-UD-DÎN.) . . . . .	Ch. ii. § 18-30.
1217	GHENGIZ KHÂN. First Mogul irruption . . . . .	Ch. ii. § 22.
1288-1321	The Khiljis . . . . .	Ch. ii. § 31-33.
*1294	The first <i>Muhammadan invasion of the Dakhan</i> . . . . .	Ch. ii. § 31. Ch. iv. § 16.
1306, 1309, } 1310, 1312 }	<i>Malik Kâfûr's</i> invasions of the Dakhan . . . . .	Ch. iv. § 17; xii. § 2.
1318	Malabâr conquered by Khûsrû . . . . .	Ch. iv. § 18.
1321-1412	The TUGHLAKS . . . . .	Ch. ii. § 34-44.
1323	<i>Warangal</i> taken by the Muhammadans . . . . .	Ch. iv. § 12.
1336	BÎJANAGAR founded . . . . .	Ch. iv. § 19.
*1347	Foundation of the BÂHMÎNÎ kingdom } in the Dakhan, till 1526 . . . . .	Ch. ii. § 36; iv. § 20, 21.
*1398	TEIMÛR in Delhi. Second great Mogul expedition . . . . .	Ch. iv. § 21; ii. § 43.
1482	Bâber . . . . .	Ch. iii. § 3; iv. § 21.
1486	Bartholomew Diaz . . . . .	Ch. vi. § 2.
1494	. . . . .	Ch. iii. § 3.

# CHRONOLOGICAL TABLES.

501

## Pre-Mogul Period.

III.

A.D.		
*1498	VASCO DE GÁMA in Calicut . . . . .	( Ch. iv. § 23; ii. § 47. Ch. vi. § 2.
1489-1526	The Bâhmanî kingdom breaks up. Bt- ) JAPÔR kingdom founded . . . . . )	Ch. iv. § 21, 23.
1500	Cabral in Calicut . . . . .	Ch. vi. § 5; ii. § 47; iv. § 21.
1504	<i>Duarte Pacheco in Cochîn</i> . . . . .	Ch. iii. § 3; vi. § 8.
1505-1508	FRANCISCO ALMEYDA, the first Portu- guese viceroy . . . . .	Ch. iv. § 21; vi. § 10.
1507	<i>Châm Râj</i> , the six-fingered, in the Mysôr country . . . . .	Ch. xii. § 3.
1508-1515	Alphonso ALBUQUERQUE, the second ) Portuguese viceroy . . . . . )	Ch. iv. § 21, 23; vi. § 12, 14.
1515	Lope Soares, the third Portuguese vice- roy . . . . .	Ch. iii. § 3; vi. § 14.
1524	<i>Châm Râj</i> , the bald, founds the city of Mysôr . . . . .	Ch. xii. § 4.

## IV. MOGUL PERIOD. 1526 to 1716.

### Twelve Mogul Emperors. (I.) The six great Moguls.

A.D.		
§ 1526	{ The (first great) battle of PÂNIPAT . . . BÂBER founds the Mogul empire in India. Mogul emperors. LÔnt: driven away . . . . . }	Ch. ii. § 47; iii. § 13.
	NANAK . . . . .	Ch. xi. § 22.
1527	SIKRI The Râjpûts conquered . . . . .	Ch. iii. § 3.
1528	Storming of CHANDÂNî . . . . .	Ch. iii. § 3.
1529	. . . . .	Ch. iii. § 3 (13).
§ 1530	HUMÂÏÛN, the second Mogul . . . . .	Ch. iii. § 3, 4.
1535	<i>Champanîr</i> stormed . . . . .	Ch. iii. § 4.
1538	The siege of <i>Diû</i> . . . . .	Ch. vi. § 17.
1540	Restored Afghâns of the Sôr dynasty . . . . .	Ch. iii. § 4.
1541	<i>Xavier</i> in India . . . . .	Ch. vi. § 17.
1542	Birth of <i>Akbar</i> . . . . .	Ch. iii. § 46.
1544	. . . . .	Ch. iii. § 4 (7).
1545	JUAN DE CASTRO, Portuguese viceroy . . . . .	Ch. iii. § 4, 5; vi. § 18.
1555-1556	Return and death of HumâÏÛn . . . . .	Ch. iii. § 5.
§ 1556	Accession of <i>AKBAR</i> , the third Mogul . . . . .	Ch. iii. § 5.

## CHRONOLOGICAL TABLES.

IV.	Mogul Period.	
A.D. 1559 1560	Nāyakar rulers of Madura till 1736 Akbar, 18 years old, assumes the govern- ment . . . . .	Ch. iv. § 6. Ch. iii. § 6.
	<i>The real Mogul conquest of India.</i> — 1567. Conquers his own feudatories . . . — 1572. Subdues the Rājpūts . . . — 1573. Conquers Gujarāt . . . — 1581. Fort of Attock built . . . — 1592. Annexes Bengal, Bahār, and Oīssa . . . — 1592. Conquest of Sind . . . — 1594. Afghanistan subdued . . . — 1599-1601. Akbar in the Dakhan . . .	Ch. iii. § 6.
1565 1570	The battle of Talikôt (Telli cotta) Dakhan Muhammadan confederacy against the Portuguese . . .	Ch. iv. § 29. Ch. vi. § 19. Ch. iii. § 6.
1580 1580-1656	Foundation of OUDIPŪR <i>Downfall of the Portuguese</i> . . .	Ch. vi. § 20. Ch. iii. § 6; xi. § 20.
1581 1583	The first ENGLISH in India . . . FERISHTA in Bijapur . . .	Ch. vii. § 6. Ch. iv. § 23.
1589-1612 1594	The Dutch in India . . . Two sieges of Ahmadnagar. CHÂND	Ch. vii. § 3, 4.
1595-1599	Bibi . . . Synod of Diamper . . .	Ch. iii. § 6. Ch. iii. § 6 (20); vi. § 21.
1599 1600	THE INCORPORATION OF THE BRITISH INDIA COMPANY . . .	Ch. vii. § 6. Ch. iii. § 7.
1603 § 1605	Assassination of ÂB-UL-FAZL . . . Death of Akbar. JEHÂNGĪR, the fourth Mogul . . .	Ch. iii. § 7. Ch. vii. § 6.
1608 1610	Hawkins in Sûrat . . . Seringapatam became the capital of Mysôr . . .	Ch. xii. § 6.
1611	Marriage of the emperor with NŪR JEHÂN. She died in 1646 . . .	Ch. iii. § 7; vii. § 6. Ch. vii. § 6.
1615-1618 1626	Sir T. Roe, ambassador . . . Death of Malik Ambar . . .	Ch. iii. § 7; iv. § 24.
§ *1627	Jehāngir's death. Accession of SHÂN JEHÂN, the fifth Mogul emperor . . .	Ch. iii. § 8. Ch. v. § 9.
1631 1636	Birth of SIVAJĪ . . . Portuguese driven out of Bengāl . . .	Ch. iii. § 8. Ch. v. § 9; vii. § 6.
1637	Mr. Boughton in Delhi . . . Ahmadnagar taken by Shâh Jehân . . .	Ch. iii. § 8; iv. § 24 v. § 7.

# CHRONOLOGICAL TABLES.

503

Mogul Period.		IV.
A.D.		
1640	MADRAS founded . . . . .	Ch iv § 29.
1646	TORNEA . . . . .	Ch v § 11.
1657	Civil war breaks out between the sons of the emperor . . . . .	Ch iii § 8 (11).
1651	. . . . .	Ch v § 13
1652	. . . . .	Ch iii § 8.
§ 1658	AURUNGSZIB, the sixth Mogul emperor, imprisons his father and seizes the empire . . . . .	Ch iii § 8. (11, 12).
1659	Tirumala Nāyaka died in Madura . . . . .	Ch iv § 6
	Murder of Afzal Khān . . . . .	Ch v § 14.
1662	. . . . .	Ch v § 15, 16
1663	Sack of Sūrat . . . . .	Ch v § 17; vii § 6
1664	FRENCH in India . . . . .	Ch v § 17, vi § 7
1665	. . . . .	Ch vii § 6
1666	Death of Shāh Jehān. Shivaji in Delhi . . . . .	Ch v § 19; iii § 9
1668	BOMBAY made over to the Company . . . . .	Ch vii § 6; v § 20
1670	. . . . .	Ch v § 21.
1673-1704	Chick Dēo Rāj in Mysor . . . . .	Ch xii § 8.
1674	Shivaji enthroned . . . . .	Ch v § 22
1675	SIKHS . . . . .	Ch iii § 10 (5) xi § 22
1676	Shivaji in the Carnatic . . . . .	Ch v § 23
1678	. . . . .	Ch iii § 9
1680	Death of Shivaji . . . . .	Ch v § 26
1683-1707	Aurungzib's wars in the Dakhn . . . . .	Ch iii § 9
1686	Bijapur taken . . . . .	Ch iii § 9
1687	Golconda taken . . . . .	Ch iii § 9
1689	SAMBHJI, the second Mahratta Rājā, slain by Aurungzib . . . . .	Ch v § 32
1695	. . . . .	Ch iii § 9 (20)
1700	Aurungzib in Satārā . . . . .	Ch v § 31
1702	Birth of HAIDAR ALI of Mysor . . . . .	Ch xii § 13
1706	. . . . .	Ch iii § 9

## II The six lesser Moguls.

§ *1707	Death of Aurungzib. Accession of SHĀH ĀLAM I, the seventh Mogul . . . . .	Summary ch iii § 9 (19)
1708	Liberation of Rāhu . . . . .	Ch v § 30
§ 1712	JEHANDAR SHĀH, the eighth Mogul . . . . .	Ch iii § 10, v § 30, 40.

IV	Mogul Period.
A.D.	
§ 1713	The SEIADS, Hussein and Abdullah Khân put ZULFIKÂR KHÂN and the emperor to death, and set up FARUKH-SIÂ (1713-1719), the ninth Mogul . . . Ch. iii. § 11, 12.
1714	BALÂJÎ VISHWANÂTH, the first great PESHWÂ . . . Ch. v. § 40.
1716	Gabriel <i>Hamilton</i> at the court of Farukh-shîr . . . Ch. iii. § 12 (8).
1717	The Sikhs almost exterminated . . . Ch. iii. § 12. Mahrattas under BALÂJÎ Vishwanâth in Delhi . . . Ch. v. § 42; iii. § 12.
§ 1719	Two puppet emperors, Rafi-ud-darajât the tenth Mogul, and Rafi-ud-dowla, the eleventh Mogul. MUHAMMAD SHÂH, the twelfth Mogul, placed on the throne by the Seiads . . . Ch. iii. § 13-15.
*1720	Battle of SHÂHPÛR. Muhammad Shâh is really emperor to 1748. Death of BALÂJÎ Vishwanâth. BÂJÎ RÂO I., the second PESHWÂ . . . Ch. iii. § 15.
*1724	NIZÂM-UL-MULK and SÂDAT KHÂN become virtually independent in the Dakhan and in Oudh respectively. <i>The great Mahratta chieftains rise to importance</i> . . . Ch. v. § 43, 44.
1725	Robert CLIVE born . . . Ch. v. § 45.
1727	. . . Ch. ix. § 35.
1730	. . . Ch. v. § 46.
1732	Warren Hastings born . . . Ch. v. § 47.
1736	CHANDÂ SAHÊB in Trichinopoly . . . Ch. ix. § 35.
*1738	Invasion of NÂDIR SHÂH . . . Ch. vii. § 7.
1739	Bassein stormed by the Mahrattas . . . Ch. v. § 50; iii. § 15.
*1740	The first battle of AMBÛR. Death of BÂJÎ RÂO I. He is succeeded by BALÂJÎ BÂJÎ RÂO, third PESHWÂ . . . Ch. v. § 51.
1741-1754	DUPLÈX in Pondicherry . . . Ch. vii. § 7; v. § 53.
1744	R. CLIVE lands in India . . . Ch. vii. § 7.
1744-1761	<i>Struggles of French and English in the Carnatic</i> . . . Ch. viii. § 11.
1746	Madras taken by the French . . . Ch. viii.
	Paradis gains a signal victory . . . Ch. viii. § 4.

# CHRONOLOGICAL TABLES.

## The English Period.

### V. THE ENGLISH PERIOD.

A.D.		
§ *1748	Death of Muhammad Shâh Ahmad Shâh succeeds the thirteenth Mogul Death of Nizâm ul-Mulk Death of Sâhu, the third Mahratta Râja Battle of Carhind <i>The two Ahmads</i> LAWRENCE comes to India	Ch iii § 15. Ch v § 59, 60, 61 Comp Ch viii § 14, Summary.
1749	Siege of Dêonhall	Ch xii § 11.
1760	TIPPÛ born WARREN HASTINGS landed in India The second battle of AMBÛR. Death of Anwâr-ud dî	Ch. x. § 35. Ch. viii § 16.
*1751	Defence of Arcot	Ch viii. § 20, &c ; xi. § 23 ; v § 57, 63
1752	Trichinopoly relieved. Chandâ Sahâb slain. Clive's triumph	Ch viii § 23
§ 1754	Ahmad Shâh blinded and imprisoned Âlamgir II, the fourteenth Mogul, succeeds. Dupleix leaves India	Ch. i. § 18 Ch iii § 19, ch viii § 24
1756	CLIVE and WATSON on the Western coast The <i>Black Hole</i> massacre Seringapatam besieged by the Mahrattas	Ch ix § 1, 4, 5, viii § 27 Ch xii § 12
*1757	AHMAD SHÂH A HAIL in Delhi PLEASURY	Ch iii § 19, v. § 66 ; ix § 7 12.
1758	Ragobâ in the Panjâb LALÛ lands in India	Ch iii § 20 ; v § 69. viii § 30.
§ 1759	Âlamgir II. assassinated SHÂH ÂLAM II, the fifteenth Mogul emperor	Ch iii § 19 ; v § 67 ix § 13, 14.
1760	Battle of Wandiwash (Jan. 22) Ôdghir Resignation of MIR JAFFÛR. Mir Kâsim elevated. Clive sails for England Haidar makes himself master of Mysôr	Ch ix § 1, 4, 5, viii § 27 Ch xii § 12 Ch v § 69, 70, 71 ; ix. § 18.
*1761	The (FOURTH) battle of PÂNIPAT. French power destroyed in India Death of BALÂJÛ BÂJÛ RÂO. Accession of MÂDU RÂO, the fourth PESHWÂ	Ch viii. § 32. Ch v. § 72.



V.	The English Period.
A.D.	
1762	Ch. v. § 72.
1763	Ch. ix. § 21, 22.
	Ch. xii. § 14.
1764	Ch. ix. § 23, 24; viii. § 24.
*1764-1765	Ch. v. § 74; ix. § 29.
1765	Ch. v. § 74; ix. § 26, 29; xii. § 15.
1766	Ch. v. § 75; xii. § 16, 17.
1766-1769	Ch. xii. § 17-21.
1767-1772	Ch. ix. § 32, 33.
1769	Ch. v. § 76; xii. § 21.
1770	Ch. v. § 79; xii. § 15, 17.
1771	Ch. v. § 81; iii. § 22; xii. § 22.
*1772	Ch. v. § 76, 79, 85; ix. § 35; xii. § 22.
1773	Ch. v. § 83, 84; ix. § 36, 37; x. § 29.
§ *1774	Ch. v. § 87, 88; ix. § 36, 37; x. § 3, 108.
*1775	Ch. v. § 90, 91; x. § 4; xii. § 57.
1776	Ch. x. § 5, 32, 64; v. § 92; xii. § 23.
1778	Ch. iii. § 24; v. § 107.
1779	Ch. v. § 96, 97, 98; xii. § 23, 25.
*1780	Ch. v. § 97.
1781	Ch. v. § 100, 101; ch. xi. § 25; xii. § 27.
1782	Ch. xii. § 28-30.
1783	Ch. v. § 102; xii. § 31.
1780-1784	Ch. vii. § 4; viii. § 31; xii. § 30.
	Ch. xii. § 27-36.

# CHRONOLOGICAL TABLES.

507

## The English Period.

A.D.		
*1784	Pitt's Indian Bill	Ch v 5108, x § 12
1785	Hastings leaves India	15, xi § 36.
\$1786-1793	EARL CORNWALLIS second Governor General	(Ch v 119)
1788	The Declaration of Arbroath	(Ch v 125, 128)
1789	Tippu's attack on the British	(Ch v 8)
1790-1792	The THIRD MYSOR WAR	(Ch v 108, x § 40)
1792	Sindia in Puna Battle of Lakkar	(Ch v 114)
§ 1793	Lord TRIGMOUTH, third Governor General Renewal of the Company's charter Lord Cornwallis PERMANENT SETTLEMENT	(Ch v 109, 110, x § 64)
1794	Death of MAHARAJA SINGHA	(Ch v 23, 28, 158)
1795	Mutiny of Bengal officers KURNA	(Ch v 77)
1796	Elevation of the seventh and last Peshwa, Baji Rao II	(Ch v 21, x § 57.)
§ 1798	Marquis of WELLINGTON fourth Governor-General Battle of SHIVAJI	(Ch v 115)
*1799	veinor of the Punjab The FOURTH MYSOR WAR Death of Tippu	(Ch v 25, x § 47)
1800	The establishment of the first Fort William	(Ch x § 50) 54
	The Tanjore Rupa pensioned Death of NANA PARNAVE	(Ch v 46.)
1801	The Nuwar of the Cutch taken and Holkar at Puna the Peshwa dies	(Ch v § 110, 121, x 41)
1802	TREATY of BASSIST	(Ch v § 120, 121)
1803	Bar da under the subsidiary system	(Ch v § 123, x § 48)
	THE SECOND MARHATTA WAR	(Ch v § 122)
		(Ch v § 124.)

April 20 WELLINGTON reaches Puna  
May The Peshwa resigns

## BATTLES AND SIEGES

- 1 August 12 Ahmadnagar taken (WELLINGTON)
- 2 August 24 Colaba taken (LAKH)
- 3 September 9 Jintan taken (WELLINGTON)
- 4 September 11 Battle of D. LAKH
- 5 September 17 Chompa taken (WELLINGTON)
- 6 September 21 Battle of Assai (WELLINGTON)

V.	- The English Period.
A.D.	<p>7. October 10. <i>Kutlack</i> taken (HARCOURT).  8. October 13. Conquest of <i>Bandālkhand</i> complete (FOWELL).  9. October 18. <i>Agra</i> taken (LAKE).  10. October 21. <i>Burhānpūr</i> and <i>Asirghar</i> (STEVENSON).  11. November 1. <i>Laswāri</i> (LAKE).  12. November 28. <i>Argdom</i> (WELLESLEY).  13. December 15. <i>Gāwligarh</i> taken (STEVENSON).  December 17. Treaty of <i>Dō-gdom</i>.  December 30. Treaty of <i>Sirjā Anjengdom</i>.</p>
1804	The THIRD MAHRATTA WAR . . . Ch. v. § 136, 137.

## COMPARATIVE TABLE

of half a century of Akbar, the real founder of the MOGUL EMPIRE;  
and of the

Founders of the ANGLO-INDIAN EMPIRE.

AKBAR. 1556-1605.

CLIVE, HASTINGS, CORNWALLIS, WELLESLEY. 1756-1805.

A.D.		A.D.	
1556	<i>Humāyūn</i> killed. AKBAR on the throne.	1756	Black Hole. CLIVE in Bengal.
1557	<i>Sikander Sūr</i> , the last Afghān, submits.	1757	<i>Plassey</i> .
1560	AKBAR assumes authority.	1760	Second Bengal revolution.
1560, 7	Rebellious chieftains subdued	1764, 5.	BUXAR to Treaty of <i>Allahābād</i> .
1572	<i>Edipāis</i> conquered and conciliated	1772	HASTINGS in Calcutta.
1582	<i>Kābūl</i> occupied.	1782	<i>Salbāi</i> . Death of <i>Haidar</i> .
1592	Conquest of Hindūstān complete.	1792	CORNWALLIS overcomes Tippū.
1598	AKBAR in the <i>Dakhan</i> .	1798	WELLESLEY in India.
1599	<i>Ahmadnagar</i> taken.	1799	<i>Seringapatam</i> taken.
1605	AKBAR dies.	1803	<i>Assāi</i> , &c. (LAKE, WELLINGTON).
		1805	WELLESLEY leaves India.

A.D.		
§ 1805	Lord Cornwallis's second administration; his death at <i>Ghāzi-pūr</i> . . .	Ch. v. § 137; x. § 52
	<i>Sir G. Barlow</i> , acting Governor-General	Ch. x. § 53.
	First siege of <i>Bhart-pūr</i> . . .	Ch. v. § 137.
-06	Accession of Akbar II. sixteenth Mogul	Ch. iii. § 25.
	The <i>Vellōre mutiny</i> . . .	Ch. x. § 55, 58.
§ 107	The Earl of Minto, sixth Governor-General . . .	Ch. x. § 188.
1806-1809	The Madras mutiny . . .	Ch. xi. § 24, 26.

# CHRONOLOGICAL TABLES.

509

The English Period.		V.
A.D.		
1810	<i>Mauritius</i> taken . . . . .	Ch. v. § 141.
1811		Ch. v. § 140, 144.
1812-1814	Sir S. Raffles, Governor of Java, &c. .	Ch. x. § 68; xii. § 59
1813	Renewal of the Charter . . . . .	Ch. v. § 146; x. § 64.
	Trade to India thrown open. Bishop of Calcutta appointed . . . . .	Ch. x. § 72.
§ 1814	The Marquis of HASTINGS, or Earl of MOIRA, seventh Governor-General. The war with NIPAL . . . . .	Ch. x. § 66, 68.
1815		Ch. x. § 74.
1816		Ch. v. § 147.
*1817	FOURTH MAHRATTA WAR. Battle of MEHIDPÜR. <i>Pána, Nágpár</i> . . . . .	Ch. v. § 160; v. § 161, 164.
1818	End of the PINDÁRI war. Treaty of <i>Mundisár, Satárá</i> . . . . .	Ch. v. § 157, 160, 162.
1818	Death of Warren Hastings . . . . .	Ch. x. § 13.
	ASIRGHAR taken . . . . .	Ch. v. § 162, 165.
1822		Ch. xi. § 25.
§ 1823	LORD AMHERST, eighth Governor-General	Ch. xi. § 79, 189.
1823-1826	FIRST BURMESE WAR. Treaty of <i>Yendabá</i> (February 1826) . . . . .	Ch. x. § 79.
1824	The Straits Settlements ceded to English by the Dutch . . . . .	Ch. x. § 82.
1825		Ch. x. § 81.
1826	Storming of <i>Bharipár</i> . . . . .	Ch. x. § 81, 83.
1827	Death of SIR T. MUNRO. D. R. Sindia . . . . .	Ch. v. § 161.
§ 1828-35	LORD W. BENTINCK, ninth Governor-General . . . . .	Ch. x. § 56, 85, 188.
1829	Major Sleeman appointed commissioner of Thuggee . . . . .	Ch. x. § 95.
	Abolition of Sati . . . . .	Ch. x. § 87.
1831	Meeting between Ranjit Sing and Lord W. Bentinck at ROPAR . . . . .	Ch. x. § 101.
	The Indus thrown open . . . . .	Ch. xi. § 26.
1832		Ch. xii. § 40.
1833-1834	Renewal of the Charter . . . . .	Ch. x. § 97, 98, 99, 103.
	Trade with China thrown open . . . . .	Ch. x. § 103.
1834	Conquest of KÁNG . . . . .	Ch. x. § 9, 102, 110.
1835		Ch. x. § 104.
1836	Liberation of the Indian Press by Sir C. METCALFE . . . . .	Ch. x. § 105.
§ 1836	MARCH. LORD AUCKLAND, tenth Governor-General, to 1842 . . . . .	Ch. x. § 106.

V.	The English Period.	
A.D.		
1837	Accession of Muhammad Bahádar, seven-teenth and last Mogul emperor . . .	Ch. iii. § 25.
1837		Ch. x. § 108.
1838	Defence of <i>Herát</i> . . . . .	Ch. x. § 125.
1839	The <i>AFGHÂN EXPEDITION</i> . Death of	
	Ranjit Sing . . . . .	Ch. xi. § 27.
1840-1842	The Opium war . . . . .	Ch. x. § 111; xi. § 27.
1841	Outbreak in <i>Kábul</i> , November 2 . . .	Ch. x. § 110.
§ 1842	Earl of ELLENBOROUGH, eleventh Go-vernor-General. Conquest of <i>SIND</i> . Afghán disasters retrieved . . .	Ch. x. § 111, 116, 125.
1843	Gwálior. Battles of MAHARÁJPÚR and PUNNIAR . . . . .	Ch. x. § 124; xi. § 27.
§ 1844	Lord HARDINGE, twelfth Governor- General . . . . .	Ch. x. § 126, 188.
1845-1846	The FIRST PANJÁB WAR . . . . .	Ch. xi. § 27-34.
1845	<i>Tranquebár</i> and <i>Serampore</i> bought from the Danes . . . . .	Ch. vii. § 5.
§ 1848	Earl of DALHOUSIE, thirteenth Governor- General . . . . .	Ch. x. § 137.
1848-1849	SECOND PANJÁB WAR. Annexation of } the Panjáb . . . . .	Ch. x. § 137; xi. § 40-41.
1852-1853	The <i>Second Burmese war</i> . Annexation of <i>PEGU</i> . . . . .	Ch. v. § 140.
1853	Sir G. Lawrence, chief commander of the Panjáb. <i>Nágpúr</i> lapsed . . .	Ch. xi. § 46; x. § 144.
1855	The opening of the first Indian railway	Ch. x. § 142.
§ 1856-1862	Lord CANNING, fourteenth Governor- General. Annexation of <i>Oudh</i> . <i>Tun- júr</i> lapsed . . . . .	Ch. x. § 149.
1856-1857	War with Persia. War with China . .	Ch. x. § 150, 152, 154.
1857-1858	The SEPOY MUTINIES break out, May 10. <i>DELHI</i> retaken . . . . .	Ch. x. § 155-158.
1858	INDIA UNDER THE CROWN . . . . .	Ch. x. § 159, 184.
1859		Ch. x. § 179-181, 185, 186.
§ 1862	Lord ELGIN, fifteenth Governor-General	Ch. x. § 181.
§ 1864-1869	Sir J. Lawrence, sixteenth Governor- General . . . . .	Ch. x. § 189.
1868	Death of the Rájá of <i>Mysór</i> . . . .	Ch. x. § 190.
§ 1869	The Earl of MAJO, seventeenth Go- vernor-General . . . . .	Ch. xii. § 61.
		Ch. x. § 191.

## BIOGRAPHICAL INDEX.

## A

*N.B.*—This may be used as a table for examination with much advantage.

- Abbot, Colonel A.*, ch. xi. § 39, 41.  
*Abû-bekr-Tugh'al*, ch. ii. § 38.  
*Abdullah Kutb Shâh*, of the Golconda dynasty, ch. iii. § 8.  
*Abdullah, the Seiad*, one of the famous king makers, ch. iii. § 11, 12.  
*Abdûl-melk*, ch. ii. § 5.  
*Abercrombie, Sir R.*, Governor of Bombay, ch. xii. § 40.  
*Abingdon, Major*, ch. xii. § 31.  
*Abûl Path Lâdi*, ch. ii. § 8.  
*Abûl Fazl*, Akbar's great minister, ch. iii. § 6.  
*Abûl Rischîd*, Sultân, ch. ii. § 11.  
*Abu Sahêb*, of Kohlapûr, ch. v. § 17.  
*Adam, Mr.*, Acting Governor-General, ch. x. § 79.  
*Adil Shâhî Kings*, the Muhammadan dynasty of Bijapûr, ch. v. § 23; v. § 7.  
*Adina Beg Khân*, ch. iii. § 19.  
*Afzal Khân*, murdered by Sivaji, ch. v. § 11.  
*Afzal-ud-daulat*, Nizâm of Haidarâbâd, ch. iii. § 16.  
*Agastya*, one of the Hindû sages, regarded as the star Campus, ch. iv. § 3.  
*Agnew, Colonel*, ch. xii. § 52.  
*Ajmer, Mr. Vans*, murdered in Mûltân, ch. xi. § 36, 41, 44.  
*Ahalyâ Bâi*, the greatest of Hindû women, Râni of Iddâr (1786), ch. v. § 75.  
*Ahmad Shâh*, the thirteenth Mogul emperor, ch. iii. § 15, 18, v. § 68.  
*Ahmad Shâh* (or, *Khân*) *Abdûl*, the Afghan invader of India, ch. v. § 54, 70;  
     iii. § 15, 19; xi. § 7; xi. § 28.  
*Ahmad Shâh Bihmîni I.*, ch. iv. § 20, 21.  
*Ahmad Shâh Bâhmîni II.*, ch. iv. § 21.  
*Ahmad Shâh*, of Gujarât, ch. ii. § 41.  
*Aîz Sultân*, ch. vi. § 10.  
*Ajit Sing*, father-in-law of Farukhshîr, ch. iii. § 9, 12, 15.  
*Akbar (I.)*, the third and greatest Mogul emperor, ch. iii. § 4, 6.  
*Akbar (II.)*, sixteenth Mogul emperor, ch. iii. § 25.  
*Akbar, Prince*, son of Aurangzîb, ch. iii. § 9; v. § 24.  
*Akbar Khân*, Dôst Muhammad's fighting son, ch. x. § 110, 122.  
*Alai Khân*, ch. ii. § 32.  
*Alamgîr I.*, This was the title of Aurangzîb.

## A.

## Alamgir II.—Auckland.

- Alamgir II.*, the fourteenth Mogul emperor, ch. iii. § 19.  
*Albuquerque*, the greatest of the Portuguese in India, ch. vi. § 7, 11, 12.  
*Alexander the Great*, ch. i. § 19.  
*Alt Adil Shâh*, ch. iii. § 6; iv. § 23.  
*Alt Gohar* (Shâh Âlam II.), ch. iii. § 19.  
*Allard, Colonel*, one of Ranjît Singh's generals, ch. xi. § 25.  
*Allâ Sing*, ch. xi. § 8.  
*Allâ-ud-dîn II., III.*, ch. iv. § 21.  
*Allâ-ud-dîn Ghôri*, the "Burner of the World," ch. ii. § 15.  
*Allâ-ud-dîn Hussain Gangu Bâhmint*, founder of the Kulbûrga dynasty, ch. iv. § 20.  
*Allâ-ud-dîn Khiljî*, second emperor of the Khiljîs, first Muhammadan invader of the Dakhan (1294), ch. ii. § 26; iv. § 1, 16.  
*Allâ-ud-dîn Seiad*, ch. ii. § 46.  
*Alt Merdan Khân*, the Architect, ch. iii. § 8.  
*Alt Muhammad*, the Rohilla, ch. iii. § 15; v. § 53.  
*Altwardî Khân*, ch. v. § 57; iii. § 15; viii. § 14.  
*Alt Bahâdar*, ch. v. § 132.  
*Almeida, Francisco*, the first Portuguese viceroy, ch. vi. § 10.  
*Almeida, Lorenzo*, son of the above, ch. vi. § 10.  
*Alompra*, founder of a dynasty in Birma, ch. x. § 19.  
*Alp Khân*, ch. ii. § 32.  
*Altamish*, the Prudent, ch. ii. § 22, 23.  
*Alptegin*, founder of the kingdom of Ghaznî, ch. ii. § 5.  
*Althunia*, ch. ii. § 25.  
*Amber Râi*, of Orissa, ch. iv. § 21.  
*Amherst, Earl*, eighth Governor-General, ch. x. § 78.  
*Amîr Khân*, ancestor of the Nuwâbs of Tonk, ch. v. § 142, 148.  
*Amîr Khûsru*, a Persian poet, ch. ii. § 29.  
*Amout-ul-Omra*, ch. x. § 44.  
*Amrit Râo*, adopted son of Ragobâ, ch. v. § 100.  
*Anangpâl*, Râja of the Panjâb, ch. ii. § 7, 8.  
*Anandâ Bât*, the ambitious and unprincipled wife of Ragobâ, ch. v. § 83.  
*Ananda Râo Phâr*, ch. v. § 56.  
*Anderson, Lieutenant*, murdered in Mûltân, ch. xi. § 36, 41, 44.  
*Anson, General*, ch. x. § 173.  
*Anudâr-ud-dîn*, Nuwâb of the Carnatic, ch. viii. § 5, 7.  
*Appâ Sahêb*, treacherous Nuwâb of Nâgpur, ch. v. § 150, 153, 159.  
*Aram*, ch. ii. § 21.  
*Arrian*, supposed author of the *Periplûs*, ch. iv. § 14.  
*Assâd Khân*, one of Aurungzib's generals, ch. iii. § 9, 10.  
*Asôka (Piyâdsî)*, the patron of Buddhism, ch. i. § 8, 11.  
*Auckland, Lord*, tenth Governor-General, ch. x. § 106.

# BIOGRAPHICAL INDEX.

513

Auchmuty—Beirám.

B

- Auchmuty*, Sir S., ch. x. § 68.  
*Aurangzib*, the sixth Mogul emperor, ch. iii. § 9.  
*Avitabile*, General, one of Ranjit Sing's generals, ch. xi. § 25.  
*Azam*, Prince, son of Aurangzib, ch. iii. § 9, 10.  
*Azám-ulla*, ch. x. § 163.  
*Azám-u-shán*, ch. iii. § 10, 11, 12; vii. § 6 r.  
*Azín*, ch. iii. § 7.

## B

- Báber*, Sultán, founder of the Mogul empire, ch. iii. § 1, 3.  
*Bacchus*, a mythic invader of India, ch. i. § 16.  
*Baghrá Khán*, son of Balban, ch. ii. § 30, 35.  
*Báhmíní Kings of Kulbúrga*, ch. iv. § 21.  
*Bahádar Nizám Sháh*, grand-nephew of Chánd Bibí, ch. iv. § 23; iii. § 6.  
*Bahádar Sháh*, of Gujarát, its greatest king, ch. ii. § 40, 41; iii. § 4, 6.  
*Bahádar Sháh*, seventh Mogul, ch. iii. § 10.  
*Bahára Mal*, ch. iii. § 6.  
*Baillie*, Colonel, defeated by Haidar, ch. xii. § 27, 36.  
*Baird*, Sir D., ch. xii. § 52, 54.  
*Báldy Vishwanáth*, the first of the Peshwás, ch. v. § 40, 43.  
*Báldy Bády Ráo*, third Peshwá, ch. v. § 56, 71.  
*Báldy Jemárdán* (Náná Farnavis), ch. v. § 70.  
*Balban* (Balín), ch. ii. § 29.  
*Bády Ráo I.*, the second Peshwá, ch. v. § 44, 53.  
*Bády Ráo II.*, the last Peshwá, ch. v. § 88, 115, 116, 154.  
*Bakhtár Khilyt*, of Bengál, ch. ii. § 19, 23.  
*Banda*, a Sikh leader, ch. iii. § 10, 12.  
*Bappu*, Rána of Chitór, ch. ii. § 4.  
*Bappu Goklá*, the last Mahratta hero, ch. v. § 154, 157.  
*Barlow*, Sir G., Acting Governor-General and Governor of Madras, ch. v. § 53, 59.  
*Barnard*, Sir H., ch. x. § 176.  
*Barr*, Colonel, ch. v. § 155.  
*Barwell*, Mr., one of Warren Hastings' council, ch. x. § 3.  
*Basálat Jung*, son of Nizám-ul-mulk, ch. iii. § 16.  
*Basava*, founder of the sect of Jangams or Virá-Saivas, born near Beirám (A.D. 1130), ch. iv. § 11.  
*Bayley*, Mr. Butterworth, Acting Governor-General, ch. x. § 85.  
*Behlál Lódt* (Belól), founder of the Lódt dynasty, ch. ii. § 47.  
*Beirám*, of Ghazni, cause of the destruction of his dynasty, ch. ii. § 17.  
*Beirám* (Khán), guardian of Akbar, ch. iii. § 6.  
*Beirám*, the slave, brother of Rezla, ch. ii. § 26.



- Bentinck, Lord W.*, Governor of Madras; ninth Governor-General; ch. x. § 55, 58, 86.
- Bernadotte* (King of Sweden), a prisoner, ch. xii. § 35.
- Beschi, R. C.*, a missionary and distinguished Tamil scholar, ch. iv. § 6.
- Bhaskar Pandit*, ch. v. § 57.
- Bhām Sing*, Rāna of Oudipūr, ch. x. § 102.
- Bhāma Sēna*, father of Damayanti, ch. iv. § 20.
- Bhōja Rāja*, King of Mālwa, ch. i. § 23; ii. § 17.
- Bickerton, Admiral*, ch. xii. § 32.
- Bidar Bakht*, ch. v. § 107.
- Bird, Mr. R.*, a distinguished revenue officer, ch. x. § 92.
- Bird, Mr. Wilberforce*, Acting Governor-General, ch. x. § 126.
- Boigne, De, General*, ch. v. § 107, 110, 125. (He was a subaltern under Baillie at the first battle of Pollilore.)
- Boscawen, Admiral*, ch. viii. § 11.
- Bourdonnais, De la*, the fourth great Frenchman in India, ch. vii. § 7; viii. § 2-4.
- Bourquin, Louis*, a French commander, ch. v. § 130.
- Bouchier, Mr.*, Governor of Bombay, ch. v. § 65.
- Boughton, Mr.*, surgeon, ch. vii. § 6.
- Bowring, Mr.*, ch. xii. § 60.
- Boyle, Mr.*, of Arrah, ch. x. § 175.
- Braithwaite, Colonel*, defeated by Tippū, ch. xii. § 31.
- Bramha*, ch. i. § 10.
- Briggs, Captain*, political officer and historian, ch. v. § 165.
- Britto, John de*, missionary and martyr, ch. iv. § 6.
- Broadfoot, Major*, ch. x. § 110, 117; xi. § 31.
- Brown, Colonel*, ch. xii. § 51.
- Brydon, Dr.*, the only survivor of the Afghān massacre, ch. x. § 110.
- Burhān Nizām Shāh*, founder of Burhānpūr, ch. iii. § 5.
- Burke, Edmund*, impeacher of Hastings, ch. x. § 15.
- Burnes, Alexander (Sir)*, murdered in Kābul, ch. x. § 110; xi. § 26.
- Bussy, M.*, the French Olive, ch. iii. § 16; viii. § 16-32; xii. § 35.

## C

- Cabral, Alvarez*, the discoverer of the Brazils, ch. vi. § 5.
- Calliaud, Colonel*, ch. ix. § 13.
- Campbell (Sir Colin)*, (Lord Clyde), ch. x. § 178; xi. § 44.
- Campbell, Sir A.*, Governor of Madras, ch. xii. § 40; x. § 79.
- Canning, George*, ch. x. § 76, 78.

- Canning, Lord*, first Viceroy of British India, ch. x. § 152-153.  
*Carnac, Sir James*, Governor of Bombay, ch. v. § 164; x. § 109.  
*Carnac, Mr.*, ch. v. § 97.  
*Carnac, Colonel*, ch. ix. § 18, 25.  
*Caron*, a leader of the French settlers, ch. vii. § 7.  
*Carey, Dr.*, one of the "Serampore" missionaries, ch. vii. § 5.  
*Castro, Juan de*, a Portuguese Viceroy, ch. vi. § 18.  
*Catherine of Braganza*, Queen of Charles II., ch. vii. § 6.  
*Cautley, Colonel*, engineer of the Ganges canal, ch. x. § 146.  
*Châm Râj*, of Mysôr, the six-fingered. There were many of the name.  
 Ch. xii. § 3.  
*Châm Râjendra*, ch. xii. § 61.  
*Champion, Colonel*, ch. ix. § 86.  
*Chandâ Sahêb*, rival Nuwâb of Arcot, ch. v. § 55; vii. § 7; viii. § 14, 16, 23.  
*Chând Bibi*, the heroine of Ahmadnagar, ch. iv. § 24; iii. § 6.  
*Chând Kowr*, the wife of Kurruk Sing, ch. xi. § 28.  
*Chandragupta* (Sandracottus), King of Palibothra, ch. i. § 8, 20.  
*Charnock, Job*, founder of Calcutta, ch. iii. § 9.  
*Chatter Sing*, ch. xi. § 28.  
*Cherry, Mr.*, murdered at Benâres, ch. x. § 32.  
*Cheyte Singh*, Zamindâr of Benâres, ch. x. § 4, 11.  
*Chick Dêo Râj*, ch. xii. § 8.  
*Chick Kistna Râj*, ch. xii. § 11.  
*Child, Sir Josiah*, ch. iii. § 9.  
*Chimnajt Appâ*, son of Bâjî Râo, ch. v. § 51.  
*Chittu*, a Pindârî chief, ch. v. § 159-162.  
*Clavering, General*, one of Warren Hastings' council, ch. x. § 3.  
*Clive, Robert Lord (I.)*, the founder of the British Indian empire, ch. v. § 63; viii. § 22; ix. § 1-32.  
*Clive, Robert, Lord (II.)*, Governor of Madras, ch. x. § 48; xii. § 51.  
*Close, Barry (Sir)*, soldier and statesman, ch. v. § 121; x. § 43; xii. § 52, 54.  
*Coats, Dr.*, ch. v. § 151.  
*Cockburn, Colonel* (Wargâom!), ch. v. § 97.  
*Colbert*, the great French financier, ch. vii. § 7.  
*Colebrooke, Mr.*, ch. x. § 43.  
*Collins, Colonel*, ch. x. § 43.  
*Colvin, Mr.*, ch. x. § 171.  
*Coote, Sir Eyre*, ch. viii. § 31; ix. § 6; x. § 8; xii. § 23, 20, 32.  
*Cotton, Bishop*, of Calcutta, ch. x. § 72, 190.  
*Combermere, Lord*, Commander-in-Chief, captor of Bhartpûr, ch. x. § 81.  
*Confians, Marquis of*, who lost the Northern Circars, ch. iii. § 16.  
*Cornwallis, Marquis*, second Governor-General, ch. v. § 106; x. § 18, 40; xii. § 39, &c.  
*Cortlandt, Colonel*, ch. xi. § 37.

- Court, General*, ch. xi. § 25.  
*Crabbon, Sir Mark*, Commissioner of Mysôr, ch. x. § 89; xii. § 60.  
*Cunningham, Colonel*, ch. v. § 165.  
*Cureton, General*, ch. xi. § 40.  
*Currie, Sir F.*, ch. xi. § 34.

## D

- Dadajî Konedêo*, guardian of Sivajî, ch. v. § 9.  
*Dalhousie, the Marquis of*, thirteenth Governor-General, ch. x. § 137.  
*Damajî Gaekwâr*, ch. v. § 52-60, 70; § 89.  
*Damayantî*, heroine of Sanskrit poetry, ch. iv. § 20.  
*Daniyâl*, son of Akbar, ch. iii. § 6.  
*Dârâ Shako*, son of Shâh Jehân, ch. iii. § 8.  
*Darius Hystaspes*, Persian invader of India, ch. i. § 18; xi. § 9.  
*D'Ataide, Luis*, ch. vi. § 19.  
*Dâûd Khân of Bengâl*, ch. iii. § 6.  
*Dâûd Khân Panîh*, one of Aurungzib's generals, ch. iii. § 9; v. § 34.  
*D'Aché, Count*, ch. viii. § 30.  
*Daulat Khân Lôdî (I.)*, ch. ii. § 45.  
*Daulat Khân Lôdî (II.)*, ch. ii. § 47.  
*D'Auteuil, M.*, a French commander, ch. viii. § 16.  
*Day, Mr.*, founder of Madras, ch. vii. § 6.  
*De Kantzow, Lieutenant*, ch. x. § 170.  
*Denison, Sir W.*, ch. x. § 189.  
*Denme, Colonel*, ch. x. § 110, 117.  
*Dennis, General*, ch. x. § 1124.  
*Deo Râj (Dodda)*, Râja of Mysôr, ch. xii. § 8.  
*Deo Râj (Chick)*, Râja of Mysôr, ch. xii. § 8.  
*Deo Râj*, a minister of Mysôr, ch. xii. § 9-12.  
*Dêwal Dêvî*, ch. ii. § 32.  
*Dhulip Sing, ex-Mahârâja of Lâhôr*, ch. xi. § 27, 44.  
*Dhundû Pant*, ch. v. § 154, 158.  
 — (*Nana Sahib*), ch. x. § 163-172, 181.  
*Dia Bahâdur of Mâlwâ*, ch. v. § 48.  
*Dian (Dyan) Sing*, ch. xi. § 27.  
*Diaz (Bartholomew)*, a great navigator, ch. vi. § 2-5.  
*Dick, Sir R.*, ch. xi. § 33.  
*Dildwar Khân Ghôrî*, ch. ii. § 40.  
*Dîlîr Khân*, one of Aurungzib's generals, ch. iii. § 9; v. § 24, 25.  
*Diodorus Siculus*, ch. i. § 17.

# BIOGRAPHICAL INDEX

Dixon—Fath Khān

517

E F

- Dixon, Captain*, ch. x. § 95.  
*Dōst Ali of Arcot*, ch. v. § 55; vii. § 7.  
*Dōst Muhammad*, ch. x. § 110, 123, 119.  
*Douglas, Captain*, ch. x. § 166.  
*Doveton, General*, ch. v. § 162; xii. § 51.  
*Duff, Captain Grant*, historian of the Mahrattas, ch. v. § 164, 165.  
*Dumas, M.*, a great French governor of Pondicherry, ch. vi. § 7.  
*Dundas, Mr.*, ch. x. § 15, 35.  
*Dundia Wāg*, a freebooter, put down by Wellesley, ch. v. § 120.  
*Dunlop, Colonel*, ch. xii. § 51, 54.  
*Dupleix, M.*, the greatest Frenchman in India, ch. vii. § 7.  
*Dūrḡa Dās*, ch. iii. § 9.  
*Durjan, Sāl of Bhartpūr*, ch. x. § 81.

## E

- Eden, Mr.*, ch. x. § 190.  
*Edwardes (Sir Herbert)*, the hero of Māltān, ch. x. § 130, 156; xi. § 37.  
*Egerton, Colonel (Wargāom!)*, ch. v. § 97.  
*Ēkojī, or Venkajī*, founder of the Tanjūr Mahratta state, ch. v. § 53.  
*Elgin, Lord*, fifteenth Governor-General of India, ch. v. § 154, 159.  
*Ellis, Mr.*, murdered at Patna, ch. ix. § 20.  
*Elphinstone, Mountstuart*, historian, political agent, and governor, ch. v. § 134, 165.  
*Elphinstone, Lord*, Governor of Madras and Bombay, ch. v. § 164, 168.  
*Elphinstone, General*, died in Afghanistan, ch. x. § 110.  
*Elridge, Major*, ch. v. § 165.  
*Ellenborough, Earl of*, eleventh Governor-General of India, ch. x. § 114-126.  
*England, General*, ch. x. § 118.  
*Eyre, Major Vincent*, ch. x. § 175.

## F

- Fabricius*, a learned missionary, ch. vii. § 5.  
*Fārukshāh*, ninth Mogul emperor, ch. iii. § 12.  
*Fath Ullā Ummad-ul-Mulk*, the founder of the Berār Muhammadan kingdom, ch. iv. § 28.  
*Fath Khān*, ch. iii. § 8 (or, Fātih = victory. See also ch. xi. § 4.)

- Fatih Sing Bhonslê*, Râja of Akulkôt, ch. v. § 45.  
*Fatih Haidar*, son of Tippû, ch. xii. § 55.  
*Ferdoust*, the "Persian Homer," ch. ii. § 12.  
*Perishta*, the Persian historian, ch. iv. § 23.  
*Perôs Shâh (Khiljî)* or *Jeldâl-ud-dîn*, founder of the Khiljî dynasty, ch. ii. § 31.  
*Perôs Sôr*, ch. iii. § 5.  
*Perôs-ud-dîn Tughlak*, ch. ii. § 37.  
*Fitch*, a traveller, ch. vii. § 6.  
*Fitz-Gerald, Captain*, ch. v. § 159.  
*Fitz-Gerald, Sir Seymour*, ch. x. § 188.  
*Fitzpatrick, Colonel*, ch. xii. § 56.  
*Flint, Lieutenant*, hero of Wandiwash, ch. xii. § 28.  
*Floyd, General*, ch. xii. § 52.  
*Floyer, Mr.*, Governor of Madras, ch. viii. § 17.  
*Ford, Major*, ch. v. § 154.  
*Fordæ, Colonel*, captor of Masulipatam, &c., ch. iii. § 16; viii. § 25.  
*Francis, Philip (Sir)*, one of Hastings' council, ch. x. § 3.  
*Frazer, General*, ch. v. § 137.  
*Frere, Sir Bartle*, ch. x. § 188.  
*Fullerton, Colonel*, ch. xii. § 36.

## G

- Gaekwâr, Pilajî*, of Gujarât (Barôda), ch. v. § 45, 89.  
*Gaekwâr, Damajî*, ch. v. § 70.  
*Gaekwâr Govind Râo*, ch. v. § 89, 91, 98, 112, 122.  
*Gaekwâr Fatih Sing*, ch. v. § 89, 112.  
*Gâma, Vasco de*, the great navigator, ch. vi. § 2-4.  
*Ghâtigé*, ch. v. § 116; x. § 124.  
*Ghâzi Khân*, ch. xi. § 4.  
*Ghâzi-ud-dîn (I.)*, ch. iii. § 9. (Ghâzi = *champion*.)  
*Ghâzi-ud-dîn (II.)* (Nizâm-ul-Mulk), ch. iii. § 12.  
*Ghâzi-ud-dîn (III.)*, ch. iii. § 16.  
*Ghâzi-ud-dîn (IV.)*, ch. iii. § 18.  
*Ghoids-ud-dîn*, of Bengâl, ch. ii. § 23.  
*Ghoids-ud-dîn Balban*, ch. ii. § 28.  
*Ghoids-ud-dîn Tughlak I.*, ch. ii. § 34.  
*Ghoids-ud-dîn Tughlak II.*, ch. ii. § 38.  
*Ghengis Khân* (Chenjiz), ch. ii. § 22.  
*Gholdm Kâdir*, ch. iii. § 24.  
*Gilbert, General*, "the flying general," ch. x. § 141; xi. § 30, 43.

## BIOGRAPHICAL INDEX

19

### Gillespie-Harris.

- Gillespie* (Colonel, General), of Arc and Nid, ch. x. § 55.  
*Goddard*, Colonel, the hero of the battle of M... ch. x. § 11.  
*Godeheu*, M., a French governor ch. viii. § 24.  
*Godwin* General, ch. x. § 140.  
*Goha*, ch. iii. § 6.  
*Gold Singh*, Râja of Kâshmir, ch. vi. § 13.  
*Gôtama* (Gautama), or S... ch. x. § 11. He was son of a Râja of Kâshmir who had a... He is represented as being from his childhood... intelligence, physical, mental, and moral. He... Gopâ and became an ascetic. At... the system of which he is the founder. The name of Buddha...  
*Gough*, Lord, a general, ch. x. § 124, 129, 131, 133, xi. § 39-41.  
*Gouramma*, princess of Kâng, ch. x. § 90.  
*Gracio de Noronha*, a Portuguese viceroy, ch. vi. § 17.  
*Grant*, Sir P., ch. x. § 173.  
*Grant*, Sir Hope, ch. x. § 176.  
*Grant*, Mr. Charles, ch. x. § 24.  
*Grey* General, ch. x. § 124.  
*Griffin*, Admiral, ch. viii. § 7.  
*Gros*, Baron, ch. x. § 158.  
*Gubbins*, Mr. F., Judge of Benâres, ch. x. § 173.  
*Guru Govind*, a great teacher of the Sikhs, ch. iii. § 10, xi. § 22.

## H

- Haidar Ali* = *Hyder Ali*.  
*Hafiz*, ch. iv. § 20.  
*Hafiz-Rahmat*, ch. ix. § 36.  
*Hall*, Captain, ch. x. § 95.  
*Halliday*, Sir P., ch. x. § 148.  
*Hamida*, mother of Akbar, ch. iii. § 6.  
*Hamilton*, Gabriel, a surgeon, ch. iii. § 12.  
*Harcourt*, Colonel, ch. v. § 131.  
*Hardinge*, Sir. H. (Lord), twelfth Governor General of India, ch. vi. § 28-35; x. § 127.  
*Hart Pant Pharke*, a great Mahratta general ch. v. § 78, xi. § 44. (Pharke, Phakre, Phurky = hero.)  
*Harpâl*, ch. iv. § 18.  
*Harris*, General, Lord, captor of Seringapatam ch. xii. § 51, Ac.  
*Harris*, Lord, Governor of Madras, ch. x. § 148.

- Hartley, James (General)*, a great soldier in the south, ch. v. § 97-101; xii. § 43, &c.
- Hastings, Warren*, first Governor-General, ch. x. § 3; xii. § 26.
- Hastings, Marquis (Lord Moira)*, seventh Governor-General, ch. x. § 73.
- Havelock, Sir Henry*, ch. x. § 173, 178.
- Havelock, Colonel*, ch. xi. § 40.
- Hawkins, Captain*, ch. vii. § 6.
- Hearsay, General*, ch. x. § 161.
- Heber, Reginald*, Bishop of Calcutta, ch. x. § 72.
- Hemu*, ch. iii. § 5.
- Hindāl*, son of Bāber, ch. iii. § 4.
- Hira Sing*, ch. xi. § 27.
- Hodson, Captain*, of the Guides, the captor of the last Mogul, ch. iii. § 25; x. § 176.
- Holkar, M.*, founder of the Indōr state, ch. v. § 45, 56, 70, 75.
- Holkar Tukajī*, Ahalyā Bāī's general, ch. v. § 75, 98, 110, 118.
- Holkar, Jeswant Rāo*, ch. v. § 118, 140.
- Holkar, Mulhār Rāo*, ch. v. § 160.
- Hornby, Mr.*, Governor of Bombay, ch. xii. § 26.
- Hoshung Ghōrē*, ch. ii. § 40.
- Houtman*, ch. vii. § 4.
- Hubb Khan*, ch. v. § 57.
- Hughes, Admiral*, ch. xii. § 32.
- Hulākū Khan*, ch. ii. § 28.
- Humāyūn Tughlak*, ch. ii. § 38.
- Humāyūn*, second Mogul emperor, ch. iii. § 4, 5.
- Humberstone, Colonel*, ch. xii. § 34.
- Husain Ali*, ch. xii. § 43.
- Husain Nizām Shāh*, ch. iii. § 6; iv. § 23.
- Hyder (Haider) Ali*, ruler of Mysōr, ch. xii. § 11-32.

## I

- Ibu Batuta*, the traveller, ch. ii. § 36.
- Ibrahim Khan Ghardē*, ch. v. § 68-70.
- Ibrahim Lōdī*, the last of his dynasty, ch. ii. § 47.
- Ibrahim Sūr*, ch. iii. § 5.
- Impey, Sir Elijah*, ch. x. § 5.
- Ishmael Khan*, ch. ii. § 36. [See also ch. xi. § 4.].

## J

- Jacob, Colonel Le Grand*, ch. v. § 47.  
*Jaipál, I.*, Râja of Delhi and Lâhôr, ch. ii. § 6, 7; xi § 12.  
*Jaipál, II.*, ch. ii. § 10.  
*Jalâl-ud-dîn of Khartam*, ch. ii. § 22.  
*Jalâl-ud-dîn Khiljî*, or *Ferîz Shâh*, ch. ii. § 31.  
*Janojî Bhonslâ*, second Râja of Nâgpur, ch. v. § 62, 72, 76, 86.  
*Jayapa Sindia*, ch. iii. § 18; v. § 45, 64.  
*Jehândâr Shâh*, eighth Mogul emperor, ch. iii. § 11.  
*Jehângîr*, fourth Mogul emperor, ch. iii. § 7.  
*Jennings, Mr.*, ch. x. § 166.  
*Jenkins, Sir R.*, Resident of Nâgpur, ch. v. § 137, 150.  
*Jeswant R. Pâr*, ch. v. § 70.  
*Jeswant Sing*, the great chief of Jôdhpûr, ch. iii. § 9; v. § 18, 20, 21.  
*Jey Sing I.*, ch. v. § 18, 20.  
*Jey Sing II.*, ch. iii. § 10.  
*Jijî Bâi*, mother of Sivaîjî, ch. v. § 8.  
*Jowaher Sing*, ch. xi. § 28.  
*Jûna Khân, Tughlak*, the "magnificent madman," ch. ii. § 35, 36; iv. § 19, 20.  
*Jung, Sir Bahâdar*, of Nîpâl, ch. x. § 177.

## K

- Kalidâsa*, a poet, the Sanskrit Virgil, ch. i. § 13.  
*Kâm Bakesh*, ch. iii. § 9.  
*Kâm (Châm) Bâj*. See *Châm*.  
*Kâmrân*, son of Bâber, ch. iii. § 4.  
*Kamr-ud-dîn*, ch. iii. § 15; xii. § 55.  
*Kantî-Rava Naras Bâj*, King of Mysôr, ch. xii. § 7.  
*Keane, Sir John (Lord)*, of Ghasnî, ch. x. § 110.  
*Keating, Colonel*, of Aras, and the first Mahrattâ war, ch. v. § 91.  
*Kei Khâsâr*, ch. ii. § 30.  
*Kei Kobâd*, grandson of Balban, ch. ii. § 30.  
*Khâfî Khân*, the historian, ch. iii. § 9.  
*Khâja Jehân*, ch. ii. § 42.  
*Khâjî Jehân Gawân*, ch. iv. § 21.  
*Khân Jehân*, ch. iii. § 9.  
*Khân Jehân Lôdi*, ch. iii. § 8.



L

Khân Sing—Lakr.

- Khân Sing*, ch. xi. § 36.  
*Khân Zemân*, ch. iii. § 6.  
*Khandi, R.*, a Mysôr general, ch. vii. § 13.  
*Khânsu Ghôri*, ch. vi. § 10.  
*Kharâm*, the Pindârî, ch. v. § 160-162.  
*Khizr Khân*, son of Allâ-ud-dîn Khiljî, ch. ii. § 32.  
*Khizr Khân*, *Seiâd*, ch. ii. § 46; xi. § 15.  
*Khusrâ*, son of Jehângîr, ch. iii. § 7; xi. § 21.  
*Khusrâ Ghaznivide*, ch. ii. § 15.  
*Khusrâ Malik*, ch. ii. § 15; xi. § 13.  
*Khusrâ Vazir*, ch. ii. § 33, 34.  
*Kishna, R.*, minister of Tippû, ch. xii. § 33.  
*Koula Dêv*, ch. ii. § 32.  
*Krishna*, a Hindû divinity, deified king of Gujarât, ch. i. § 7, 10.  
*Krishnarâj Udaiyâr*, of Mysôr, ch. xii. § 56-61.  
*Krishna Râya*, ch. iv. § 6, 29. A famous king of Bijanagar, 1559.  
*Komâr Pâl*, ch. ii. § 11. A Jain king of Gujarât, 1166.  
*Koer Sing*, a rebel, ch. x. § 175.  
*Kullöttunga*, ch. iv. § 5.  
*Kulusha*, Sambajî's minister, ch. v. § 31-32.  
*Kûna Pândiyân*, of Madura, ch. i. § 12; iv. § 5. In the eleventh century.  
*Kutb Shâh* of Golconda, ch. iv. § 25; v. § 23. The founder of the Kutb Shâhî dynasty, 1512.  
*Kutb-ud-dîn*, the first Muhammadan ruler of Delhi, ch. ii. § 16-20. 1206.  
*Kurruk Sing*, ch. xi. § 1, 27.

## L

*Lake, Lord*, ch. v. § 125-137.

1. Born 1744; 2. With Cornwallis when he surrendered at York Town, 1782; 3. In the campaign against France, 1793; 4. Appointed Commander-in-Chief in India, 1800; 5. Battle of Coel, August 29, 1803; 6. Storming of Alighar, September 4, 1803; 7. Battle of Delhi, September 11, 1803; 8. Liberates Shâh Âlâm, September 14, 1803; 9. Takes Âgra, September 18, 1803; 10. Battle of Laswârt, November 1, 1803. (In two months he had destroyed thirty-one battalions, officered and led by Frenchmen, stormed Alighar, taken Delhi and Âgra, and captured 426 pieces of cannon.) 11. Receives thanks of Parliament, and is created Lord Lake, September 1, 1804; 12. Pursues Holkâr; 13. Storms Dîg, Christmas Day, 1804; 14. Siege of Bhartpûr; the Râja submits, April 10, 1804; 15. Pursues Holkâr into the Panjâb, December, 1804; 16. Embarks for Europe February 1807; 17. Is created Viscount, October 31, 1808; 18. Dies, February 21, 1809.

## Lake-Mahmūd.

## M

- Lake, Lieutenant*, ch. xi § 37.  
*Lakshman Sēna*, ruler of Bengāl, ch. ii § 19.  
*Lāl Sing*, ch. xi § 28.  
*Lally, Count*, the last distinguished Frenchman in India, ch. xii § 29-72.  
*Lamert, Commodore*, ch. x § 140.  
*Lauderdale, Lord*, ch. x § 59.  
*Lau, M.*, a French officer, ch. viii § 10-23.  
*Lawrence, Major (General)*, the friend of Clive, ch. viii § 32.  
*Lawrence, Sir John*, sixteenth Governor-General of India, ch. iii § 17, x § 141, 156, 168, 185, 190; xi § 15, 16.  
*Lawrence, Sir Henry*, ch. x § 139-141, 174, xi § 34-35.  
*Laurence, General George*, ch. xi § 39.  
*Leedes*, a traveller, ch. vii § 6.  
*Leslie, Colonel*, ch. v § 96.  
*Light, Captain*, ch. x § 82.  
*Linga Rāi*, a Diwān of Mysōr, ch. xii § 59.  
*Little, Captain*, ch. xii § 43.  
*Littler, General*, ch. x § 124; xi § 31.  
*Iōdīe, The*, a Panjāb dynasty of emperors, ch. ii § 45-47, xi § 16-17.  
*Lushington, Mr. (Sir S.)*, Governor of Madras, ch. x § 86.

## M

- Macartney, Lord*, Governor of Madras, ch. x § 17, xii § 39.  
*Maseulay, T. B. (Lord)*, ch. x § 96.  
*McCaskill, General*, ch. xi § 80.  
*Macdonald, Colonel*, ch. x § 111.  
*Macdonald, Colonel*, ch. xii § 34.  
*McDonnell, Colonel*, ch. v § 165.  
*Macnaghten, Sir W.*, assassinated by Akbar Khān, ch. x § 110.  
*Macpherson, Mr.*, ch. v § 105; x § 17.  
*Madden Pāl*, ch. x § 147.  
*Madhavāchārya*, a great reviver of the worship of Vishnu in the South, ch. ii § 17.  
*Mādhava Vidhyāraṇya*, ch. iv § 19.  
*Mādu Rāo*, the fourth Peshwā, ch. v § 72-82; xii § 15. (*Mādu* = *mahā-dēva* = great god, a name of Siva.)  
*Mādu Rāo Nārāyana*, fifth Peshwā; ch. v § 87-115.  
*Mahā Sing*, ch. xi § 47.  
*Mahā Bandula*, the Birmese general, ch. x § 79.  
*Mahāvīra*, ch. i § 12.  
*Mahmūd, Tughlak*, ch. ii § 39-44.

- Mahmūd of Ghazni*, ch. ii. § 7.  
*Mahmūd Bégara*, of Gujarāt, ch. ii. § 41.  
*Mahmūd Shāh*, ch. ii. § 7.  
*Maldão*, ch. iii. § 6.  
*Malik Kāfūr*, ch. ii. § 32; iv. § 17; xii. § 2.  
*Malik Ambar*, of Ahmadnagar, ch. iii. § 7 (5); iv. § 24.  
*Malik Ahmad*, ch. iv. § 24.  
*Malcolm*, Sir John, Central India, &c., ch. v. § 135-165; xii. § 49, 51, &c.  
*Maloji*, grandfather of Sivaji, ch. v. § 7.  
*Manaji Angria*, ch. v. § 113.  
*Manaji Rao*, ch. v. § 112.  
*Mangal Pāndit*, ch. x. § 161.  
*Mansell*, Mr., ch. xi. § 45.  
*Mān Sing*, ch. x. § 164.  
*Mān Vikrama*, ch. iv. § 8.  
*Māphuz Khān*, son of Anwār-ud-dīn, ch. viii. § 5.  
*Marco Polo*, a Venetian traveller who visited Tartary, China, and India in 1275.  
*Markham*, Lieutenant, ch. xi. § 41.  
*Marshman*, Dr., a "Serampore missionary," ch. vii. § 5.  
*Martin*, F., founder of Pondicherry, ch. vii. § 7.  
*Masūd I.*, son of Mahmūd of Ghazni, ch. ii. § 13.  
*Masūd II.*, ch. ii. § 14; xi. § 13.  
*Masūd III.*, slave dynasty, ch. ii. § 27.  
*Mashūr-ul-mulk*, ch. v. § 114.  
*Matthews*, General, ch. xi. § 14, 34, 36.  
*Maudūd*, grandson of Mahmūd of Ghazni, ch. ii. § 14.  
*Meade*, Colonel, ch. xii. § 60; x. § 181.  
*Medni Rāi*, ch. ii. § 40; iii. § 3.  
*Medows*, General, Governor of Madras, ch. xii. § 40.  
*Megasthenes*, ch. i. § 20.  
*Menezes*, Archbishop of Goa, ch. vi. § 21.  
*Mennu (Manu)*, the Hindū lawgiver, ch. i. § 3-5.  
*Metcalfe*, C. T., ch. x. § 103, 105.  
*Middleton*, Thomas, first Bishop of Calcutta, ch. x. § 72.  
*Milman*, R., Bishop of Calcutta, ch. x. § 190.  
*Mir Jaffr*, Nuwāb of Bengāl, &c., ch. ix. § 9-26.  
*Mir Kāsim*, ch. ix. § 27.  
*Mir Munu*, ch. iii. § 18, 19.  
*Mir Jāmla*, ch. iii. § 8, 12.  
*Mir Shahāb-ud-dīn*, ch. iii. § 18.  
*Mirza Askar*, son of Bāber, ch. ii. § 4.  
*Mirza Hakim*, ch. iii. § 6; xi. § 20.  
*Mirza Khān*, ch. iii. § 6.  
*Moazzim Sultān*, ch. iii. § 9, 10; v. § 21.

- Monim Khân*, ch. iii. § 10.  
*Monson, Colonel*, ch. v. § 137; x. § 3.  
*Montgomery, Sir R.*, ch. xi. § 45.  
*Montessor, Colonel*, ch. xii. § 51.  
*Moor, Commodore*, ch. v. § 91.  
*Moore, Captain*, ch. x. § 172.  
*Morârê Râo*, ch. v. § 99; viii. § 22-24.  
*Moraba Farnavis*, ch. v. § 95.  
*Morse, Mr.*, Governor of Madras, ch. vii. § 7; viii. § 16.  
*Mostyn, Mr.*, ch. v. § 97.  
*Mubârik Khiljî*, ch. ii. § 33; iv. § 18.  
*Mubârik Seiad*, ch. ii. § 46.  
*Mûdâjî Bhonslê*, Regent of Nâgpur, ch. v. § 86, 111.  
*Muhâlib*, ch. ii. § 3; xi. § 11.  
*Muhammad, Prince*, son of Balban, ch. ii. § 29.  
*Muhammad*, of Kharism, ch. ii. § 22.  
*Muhammad, Dôst*, of Kâbul, ch. x. § 110, 123, 149.  
*Muhammad*, son of Mahmûd of Ghazni, ch. ii. § 13, 14.  
*Muhammad Âli*, Nuwâb of Arcot, ch. viii. § 17-32.  
*Muhammad Âdil Shâh*, ch. iii. § 8; iv. § 23.  
*Muhammad Bahâdar Shâh*, the assassin, ch. iii. § 24, 25.  
*Muhammad Ghôrî*, the first and last of his dynasty in India, ch. ii. § 16.  
*Muhammad Kâsim*, invader of Sind, ch. ii. § 4; xi. § 11.  
*Muhammad, Seiad*, ch. ii. § 46.  
*Muhaminad Shâh*, twelfth Mogul emperor, ch. iii. § 15.  
*Muhammad Shâh Lohânî*, ch. iii. § 3.  
*Muhammad Sâr*, the Adâli, ch. iii. § 5.  
*Muhammad, Tughlak*, ch. ii. § 36.  
*Muhâbat Khân*, the great general of Jehângîr, ch. iii. § 7, 8.  
*Mulhâr Râo Holkâr*, ch. iii. § 18; v. § 75.  
*Mûlraj*, ch. xi. § 36-44.  
*Mumtâz Mahâl*, ch. iii. § 8.  
*Munro, Sir Hector*, a distinguished general, ch. ix. § 23, 24; xii. § 27.  
*Munro, Sir T.*, Governor of Madras, ch. iii. § 16; v. § 156, 165; x. § 84; xii. § 56.  
*Murâd*, son of Akbar, ch. iii. § 6.  
*Murâd*, son of Shâh Jehân, ch. iii. § 6.  
*Murray, General*, ch. v. § 125, 137.  
*Mûrshêd Kûlî Khân*, ch. iii. § 15.  
*Murteza Âli*, of Arcot, ch. vii. § 7.  
*Murteza Nizâm Shâh*, ch. iv. § 28; iii. § 8.  
*Muzaffir Jung*, grandson of the Nizâm-ul-mulk, ch. viii. § 16, 17; vii. § 7.  
*Muzaffir Shâh*, of Gujarât, ch. ii. § 41.

## N

- Nâdir Shâh*, King of Persia, ch. iii. § 15; v. § 50.  
*Nala*, ch. iv. § 20.  
*Nânâ Farnavîs*, ch. v. § 73-119; xii. § 38-41.  
*Nânâ Sahêb*, a name of Bâji Râo I., ch. v. § 44.  
*Nânâ Sahêb* (Dhundu Pant), ch. x. § 163, 172, 181.  
*Nanak*, founder of the Sikh system, ch. iii. § 10; xi. § 22.  
*Nanda*, King of Magadha, ch. i. § 8.  
*Nandirâj*, the elder, } ministers of nominal } ch. xii. § 9. 13.]  
*Nandirâj*, the younger, } Kings of Mysôr, } ch. v. § 66; viii. § 23; xii. § 11,  
*Nand Kumâr* (Nuncomar), ch. x. § 5.  
*Napier*, Sir C., conqueror of Sind, ch. x. § 125, 139, 141; xi. § 42.  
*Napier*, Colonel (Lord R., of Magdâla), Engineer Officer in Panjâb, conqueror of  
 Abyssinia, ch. x. § 141.  
*Napier*, Lord, of Merchistoun, ch. x. § 188, 190.  
*Nâsir-ud-dîn*, of Sind, ch. ii. § 19-23.  
*Nâsir-ud-dîn Mahmud* (II.), ch. ii. § 28.  
*Nâsir-ud-dîn Tughlak*, ch. ii. § 38.  
*Nawâz Khân*, ch. iii. § 16.  
*Nastr-ud-daulat*, ch. iii. § 16.  
*Nazib-ud-daula*, ch. iii. § 10.  
*Nearchus*, Admiral of Alexander the Great, ch. i. § 19.  
*Neill*, Lieutenant-Colonel James, ch. x. § 173.  
*Newberry*, a traveller, ch. vii. § 6.  
*Nihâl Sing*, ch. xi. § 27.  
*Nizâm-ud-dîn*, the evil Vazîr of Kei Kobâd, ch. ii. § 30.  
*Nizâm-ul-mulk*, founder of the Haidarâbâd dynasty, ch. iii. § 12, 15, 16.  
*Nizâm All*, son of the above, ch. iii. § 16; v. § 72.  
*Nizâm Shâhî*, Kings of Ahmadnagar, ch. iv. § 21.  
*Nobilibus*, Robertus de, a great missionary in Madura, ch. iv. § 6.  
*Norris*, Sir W., ch. iii. § 9.  
*North*, Lord, Prime Minister of England, ch. x. § 2.  
*Nott*, General, the defender of Kandahâr, ch. x. § 110, 118-121.  
*Noushtirvân*, ch. i. § 25.  
*Nunho de Cunha*, a Portuguese Viceroy, ch. vi. § 16.  
*Nâr Jehân*, ch. iii. § 7, 8.

## O

- Ochterlony, Sir David*, a distinguished general, ch. x. § 43, 74, 81.  
*Omîr Khiljî*, ch. ii. § 83.  
*O'Shaughnessy, Sir William*, founder of Indian telegraphic system, ch. x. § 143  
*Outram, Sir James*, ch. x. § 148-150, 157, 174, 188.  
*Oxenden, Mr. Henry*, ch. v. § 23.  
*Oxenden, Sir G.*, ch. vii. § 6.

## P

- Pacheco, Duarte*, a distinguished Portuguese soldier, ch. vi. § 8.  
*Padmanî*, Queen of Chitôr, ch. ii. § 32.  
*Padshâh Begum*, ch. iii. § 8.  
*Paget, Sir E.*, ch. x. § 80.  
*Pâla Kings of Bengâl*, ch. i. § 22.  
*Palmer, Colonel*, ch. v. § 119.  
*Palmer & Co.*, of Haidarâbâd, ch. iii. § 16; x. § 78.  
*Paṇini*, the great Sanskrit grammarian, whose probable date is 600 B.C.  
*Paradis, M.*, a distinguished French officer, ch. viii. § 5, 11.  
*Parasu Râma*, ch. iv. § 8.  
*Parêshram Bhîto*, ch. v. § 108.  
*Parsajî Bhonslê*, ch. v. § 150.  
*Pârsuanîth*, ch. i. § 12.  
*Parvîz*, son of Jehângîr, ch. iii. § 7.  
*Pearce, Colonel*, ch. xii. § 29.  
*Peel, Sir W.*, ch. x. § 182.  
*Perron, M.*, Holkâr's general, ch. v. § 110-130.  
*Phayre (Sir A.)*, Colonel, ch. x. § 140.  
*Pigot, Mr. (Lord)*, Governor of Madras, died in prison, ch. x. § 9.  
*Pitt, Mr. Thomas*, Governor of Madras, ch. vii. § 7.  
*Pitt, William*, ch. x. § 15, 35.  
*Piyadâsî*, or *Asôka*, ch. i. § 8.  
*Pollock, General*, the avenger of the Afghân disasters, ch. x. § 110, 117, 121.  
*Popham, Captain*, captor of Gwâliôr, ch. v. § 100.  
*Pôrus*, Alexander's antagonist, ch. i. § 19; xi. § 9.  
*Pottinger (Sir Henry)*, Governor of Madras, ch. v. § 165; x. § 148.

- Pottinger, Eldred*, defender of Herāt, ch. x. § 110.  
*Powell, Colonel*, ch. v. § 132.  
*Prámaras*, ch. i. § 9.  
*Pratábh, S.*, ch. v. § 107.  
*Pratábh of Tanjör*, ch. viii. § 15, 24.  
*Pritvot, Rája*, the great Rájput knight, ch. ii. § 16.  
*Pritzier, General*, ch. v. § 165.  
*Púar, Udajit*, Rája of Dhâr, ch. v. § 45.  
*Párnica*, the able Mysôr minister, ch. xii. § 33, 55, 58.

## R

- Raffles, Sir S.*, ch. x. § 68.  
*Raft-ud-darajât*, ch. iii. § 13.  
*Raft-ud-daula*, ch. iii. § 14.  
*Raghujit Bhonslé I.*, ch. v. § 56, 62.  
*Raghujit Bhonslé II.*, ch. v. § 86-150.  
*Raghujit Bhonslé III.*, ch. v. § 159.  
*Ragobâ*, ch. v. § 63-102; xii. § 15.  
*Ragunâtha Rao (Ragobâ)*, ch. v. § 63-102.  
*Rája Bhagavân Dâs*, ch. iii. § 6 (15); xi. § 20.  
*Rája Mân Sing*, ch. iii. § 6.  
*Rája Rám*, son of Sivaji, ch. v. § 27, 34.  
*Rája Sahéb*, son of Chandâ Sahéb, ch. viii. § 22.  
*Ráj Sing*, ch. iii. § 9.  
*Rája Toda Mal*, ch. iii. § 6.  
*Ráj Udeiyâr*, of Mysôr, ch. xii. § 6.  
*Rájis Rât*, ch. v. § 47.  
*Râm Déo*, of Déo-giri, ch. ii. § 31; iv. § 16.  
*Râm Rája*, of Bijanagar, ch. iv. § 29.  
*Râm Rája (Mahratta)*, ch. v. § 59, 72, 94.  
*Râm Sing*, ch. iii. § 9.  
*Râma*, ch. i. § 6, 10.  
*Râmânand*, ch. ii. § 47.  
*Râmânuja Áchárya*, founder of a sect of Vaishnavas, born at Sri Permatûr, near Madras, 1009 A.D.  
*Râmâyana*, ch. i. § 6.  
*Râmmohan Roy*, ch. x. § 99.  
*Râna Pertâb*, ch. iii. § 6.  
*Ranjit Sing*, the Lion of the Panjâb, ch. xi. § 25.  
*Rāvāna*, the giant ruler of Ceylon, who stole away Sitâ, the wife of Râma, ch. i. § 6; Intro. § 37.

- Rawlinson, Sir H.*, ch. x. § 110.  
*Raymond, M.*, a French officer at Haidarâbâd, ch. v. § 114.  
*Râz Bahâdur*, ch. iii. § 6.  
*Read, Colonel*, ch. xii. § 51.  
*Rasîa Begum*, the only Queen of Delhi, ch. ii. § 24, 25.  
*Robertson, Captain*, ch. v. § 165.  
*Roe, Sir T.*, ambassador, ch. iii. § 7; vii. § 6.  
*Rose, Sir Hugh*, ch. x. § 181, 183, 189.  
*Roshenrâi*, ch. iii. § 8.  
*Rukn-ud-dîn*, fourth of the first Slave dynasty, ch. ii. § 24.  
*Rumbold, Sir T.*, Governor of Madras, ch. x. § 9.

## S

- Saad-ullâ Khân*, a great finance minister, ch. iii. § 8.  
*Sabâjt*, usurper in Nâgpur, ch. v. § 86.  
*Sabuktegin*, ch. ii. § 6.  
*Sâdat Âlî*, Nuwâb of Oudh, ch. x. § 32, 39.  
*Sâdat Khân*, founder of the Oudh dynasty, ch. iii. § 12-17.  
*Sâdat-ulla-Khân*, ch. vii. § 7.  
*Sâdt*, a poet, ch. ii. § 29.  
*Safder Jung*, ch. iii. § 18.  
*Safder Âlî*, of Arcot, ch. v. § 55; vii. § 7.  
*Sahâ-dêva*, ch. i. § 8.  
*Sâhu*, Sivaji's grandson, ch. v. § 33-59.  
*Sâhu II.*  
*Sâhuji*, of Tanjôr, ch. vii. § 7; viii. § 15.  
*Sâkya Munt* (or *Gautama*), the founder of Buddhism, ch. i. § 8, 11.  
*Salâbat Jung*, son of Nizâm-ul-mulk, ch. iii. § 16; v. § 72; viii. § 31.  
*Salar Jung, Sir*, ch. iii. § 16.  
*Sâlivâhana*, ch. i. § 9; iv. § 14.  
*Sale* (*Sir R. and Lady Sale*), ch. x. § 79, 110, 122; xi. § 30.  
*Salâh Muhammad Khân*, ch. x. § 122.  
*Sambâjt*, son of Sivaji, ch. iii. § 9; v. § 25, 28.  
*Sambâjt of Kolhâpûr*, ch. v. § 47.  
*Sandracottus*, ch. i. § 8.  
*Sanga Râna*, ch. iii. § 3.  
*Sankara Acharya*, ch. i. § 11.  
*Saunders, Mr.*, Governor of Madras, ch. viii. § 22.  
*Schwartz*, the missionary, ch. xii. § 25; vii. § 5.



- Seiads* (four emperors), ch. ii. § 3.  
*Seiads* (*Barha*), the king-makers, ch. iii. § 11, 12.  
*Seiad*, *Muhammad Khân*, of Arcot, ch. vii. § 7.  
*Seleucus*, ch. i. § 20.  
*Selim*, or *Jehângir*, fourth Mogul emperor, ch. iii. § 6, 7.  
*Selim Shâh Sâr*, second of restored Afghân dynasty, ch. iii. § 5.  
*Sesostris*, ch. i. § 17.  
*Shahâb-ud-dîn* (*Muhammad Ghôrî*), ch. ii. § 16.  
*Shayista Khân*, ch. iii. § 9; v. § 16.  
*Shâh Jehân*, fifth Mogul emperor, ch. iii. § 8.  
*Shâh Shûja*, the King of Kâbul, ch. x. § 69, 110, 119.  
*Shâhji*, father of Sivaaji, ch. iii. § 8; v. § 7.  
*Shâm Shîr Bahâdar*, ch. v. § 132.  
*Shâm Sing*, of Attâri, ch. xi. § 33.  
*Shams-ud-dîn Khân*, murderer of Mr. Fraser, ch. x. § 100.  
*Sherbrooke*, Colonel, ch. xii. § 54.  
*Sheriâr*, son of Jehângir, ch. iii. § 7.  
*Shîr Âlî Khân*, ch. x. § 123, 190.  
*Shîr Khân Sâr*, ch. iii. § 4, 5; xi. § 18.  
*Shîr Sing*, ch. xi. § 27-43.  
*Shore*, *Sir John* (*Lord Teignmouth*), third Governor-General of India, ch. x. § 29.  
*Shuja*, son of Shâh Jehân, ch. iii. § 8.  
*Shuja-ud-daula*, of Oudh, ch. v. § 70.  
*Sikander Sâr*, ch. iii. § 5; xi. § 19.  
*Sikander Lôdt*, ch. ii. § 47.  
*Sikander Jâh*, ch. iii. § 16.  
*Sikander*, Begum of Bhôpâl, ch. x. § 102.  
*Sindia*, the Gwâliôr family, ch. v. § 45-161.  
*Sitâ*, the wife of Râma.  
*Siva*, ch. i. § 10.  
*Sivadasha Rao*, ch. iii. § 21; v. § 70.  
*Sivaji I.*, the great *Mahratta*, ch. v. § 7-26.  
*Skyllas*, admiral of Darius, ch. i. § 18.  
*Sleeman*, *Sir Henry*, ch. x. § 95, 150.  
*Smith*, General, ch. v. § 155.  
*Smith*, Colonel, antagonist of *Haidar*, ch. xii. § 17.  
*Smith*, *Sir Harry*, ch. xi. § 30, 32.  
*Smythe*, *Thomas*, first Chairman of the Court of Directors, ch. vii. § 6.  
*Soares*, *Lope*, ch. vi. § 9, 14.  
*Soyera Bât*, ch. v. § 27.  
*Spencer*, Mr., ch. ix. § 27.  
*Staunton*, Captain *Francis*, hero of *Korrigâom*, ch. v. § 155.  
*St. Lubin*, a French impostor, ch. v. § 95.

## St. Thomas—Trevelyan.

- St. Thomas*, ch. iv. § 3.  
*Stevens*, a traveller, ch. vii. § 6.  
*Stevenson, General*, ch. v. § 124-128.  
*Stevenson, Mr. R.*, ch. v. § 142.  
*Stewart, Captain*, the "Hero," ch. v. § 97.  
*Stewart, General*, ch. v. § 125.  
*Storey*, a traveller, ch. v. § 6.  
*Stuart, General*, ch. xii. § 35, 51.  
*Sufferin, Admiral*, ch. xii. § 32.  
*Suleimân*, of Baġlakshân, ch. iii. § 6.  
*Suleimân*, ch. ii. § 32.  
*Suleimân*, son of Dâra, ch. iii. § 9.  
*Sultân Mahmud*, of Ghazni, ch. ii. § 3.  
*Sultân Muhammad*, son of Aurangzib, ch. iii. § 8.  
*Sâr Afghân*, restored dynasty, ch. iii. § 4, 5.  
*Surâj Mal*, ch. iii. § 18; v. § 70.  
*Surâj Sîng*, ch. xi. § 8.

## T

- Takt Sing*, ch. x. § 102.  
*Tannajî Malusrdî*, ch. v. § 21.  
*Tantia Tôpî*, a brave rebel, ch. x. § 181.  
*Târd Bât*, ch. v. § 34, 39.  
*Taviles*, ch. i. § 19.  
*Teignmouth, Lord* (Mr. Shore), third Governor-General, ch. x. § 38.  
*Teimûr Lenc* (Tamerlane), ch. ii. § 39.  
*Teimûr Shâh*, son of Ahmad Abdâlî, ch. iii. § 19.  
*Têj Sing*, ch. x. § 169; xi. § 31.  
*Temple, Sir R.*, ch. x. § 190.  
*Thackwell, Sir J.*, ch. xi. § 43.  
*Thomas, St.*, the Apostle, ch. iv. § 3.  
*Thomason Mr.*, ch. x. § 141.  
*Thompson, Major*, the real taker of Ghazni, ch. x. § 110.  
*Timmujî*, ch. vi. § 12.  
*Tippû, the Tiger*, Sultân of Mysôr, ch. xii. § 1, 18, 22, 38.  
*Tirumala Nâyakan*, of Madura, ch. iv. § 6.  
*Tokarraġ Khân*, ch. iii. § 9.  
*Trevelyan, Sir C.*, ch. x. § 188.

- Triampāra*, ch. vi. § 7.  
*Trimbak Rāo Mamā*, ch. v. § 73-87; xii. § 22.  
*Trimbakjī*, ch. v. § 146, 158.  
*Tākakjī Holikār I.*, ch. v. § 75.  
*Tākakjī Holikār II.*, ch. v. § 160.  
*Tulakjī Angria*, ch. v. § 65.  
*Tulsī Bāt*, ch. v. § 140-160.

## U

- Udi Sing*, or *Oudi*, founder of Oudipūr, ch. iii. § 6. □  
*Unsurī*, a poet, ch. ii. § 12.  
*Upton, Colonel*, negotiates the treaty of Pārandar, ch. v. § 92.

\*

## V

- Vajid Ali Shāh*, the last King of Oudh, ch. x. § 150.  
*Vālmīki*, ch. i. § 6.  
*Valiant, General*, ch. x. § 124.  
*Vansittart, Mr.*, ch. ix. § 15.  
*Vans Agnew, Mr.*, ch. xi. § 36, 41.  
*Venables, Mr.*, ch. x. § 182.  
*Venkajī of Tanjūr*, or *Ēkajī*, ch. v. § 53.  
*Ventura, Colonel*, one of Ranjīt Sing's generals, ch. xi. § 25.  
*Vereist, Mr.*, ch. ix. § 33.  
*Vikramāditya*, ch. i. § 9, 23.  
*Vīra Rajēndra Udaiyār*, of Kūrg, ch. x. § 90.  
*Visajī Kishen*, ch. v. § 81.  
*Vishnu*, ch. i. § 10.  
*Vishnu Verddhana*, ch. iv. § 9.  
*Vishwa Nātha Nāyakan*, ch. iv. § 6.  
*Viswas Rāo*, eldest son of Bālājī Rāo, ch. v. § 70.  
*Vitāla Dēva*, ch. iv. § 9.  
*Vyāsa (Vīda-vyāsa)*, ch. i. § 2, 7.

## W

- Wāji Balā Permāl*, founder of the Travancore state, ch. x. § 81.  
*Wake, Mr.*, of Arrah, ch. x. § 175.  
*Walīd Khalīf*, ch. ii. § 4.  
*Walker, Major*, of Gujarāt, ch. v. § 122, 147.  
*Ward, Dr.*, a "Serampore missionary," ch. vii. § 5.  
*Wasil Muhammad*, the Pindārī, ch. v. § 160-162.  
*Watson, Admiral*, Clive's coadjutor, ch. v. § 65; ix. § 8.  
*Webbe, Mr.*, an able Madras civilian, ch. x. § 43, 48.  
*Wellesley, Marquis*, fourth Governor-General, ch. iii. § 16; x. § 44; v. § 117; xii. § 50.  
*Wellesley, General* (Duke of Wellington), ch. v. § 120, 124; xii. § 50, &c.  
*Wellesley, Henry* (Lord Cowley), ch. xii. § 56.  
*Welsh, General*, ch. x. § 63.  
*Wheeler, Sir Hugh*, ch. x. § 172.  
*Whish, General*, taker of Mūltān, ch. xi. § 38-41.  
*Whitehill, Mr.*, Governor of Madras, ch. x. § 9.  
*Willoughby, Lieutenant*, of Delhi! ch. x. § 166.  
*Wittajī Holkār*, ch. v. § 121.  
*Whitlock, General*, ch. x. § 178.  
*Wilson, Daniel*, Bishop of Calcutta, ch. x. § 72.  
*Wilson, Mr.*, an eminent financier, ch. x. § 188.  
*Wylde, Sir Alfred*, ch. x. § 190.  
*Wynch, Mr.*, Governor of Madras, ch. x. § 9.

## X

- Xavier, Francis*, the "Apostle of the Indies," ch. vi. § 17.

## Y

- Yār Muhammad*, ch. xi. § 4.  
*Yeh*, the Chinese Governor, ch. x. § 158.  
*Yusuf Ādil Shāh*, ch. iv. § 23.

## Z

*Zabîta Khân*, ch. iii. § 23; v. § 107.

*Zafur Khân*, ch. ii. § 32.

*Zalim Sing*, ch. v. § 153.

*Zemân Shôh*, ch. x. § 38, 110 B.; xi § 25; xii. § 50.

*Ziegenbalg*, the Danish (German) missionary, ch. vii. § 5.

*Zuffir Khân* (*Zafur*), ch. ii. § 36; iv. § 20.

*Zulfikâr Khân*, the king-maker, ch. iii. § 9-11; v. § 34-39.

## GEOGRAPHICAL INDEX.

## A

- Abu* (*Aboo*), the chief peak of the Aravulli mountains, about 5,000 feet above the level of the sea, intro. § 36.
- Accessines* (*Chináb*), intro. § 34; ch. i. § 29; xi. § 3.
- Aden*, in S. Arabia. A peninsula, under Bombay, ch. vi. § 18.
- Adjunta* (*Ajunta*, *Ajayanth*), at the mouth of a pass through the Berár hills. Celebrated caves, 53 miles from Aurungábád, ch. v. § 135.
- Adjyghur*, Bandélkhand, feudatory, intro. § 12, 24.
- Adóni* (*Adwáni*), ch. v. § 151; xii. § 38.
- Afghánistán*, ch. ii.; x. § 101, 110, 115, 116.
- Agra*, Akbar made it his capital, hence called Akbarábád, intro. § 9, 23; ch. iii. § 3, 8; v. § 130.
- Ahmadábád* (*Gujarát*), intro. § 18; ch. ii. § 41; v. § 63, 100. Here are magnificent ruins.
- Ahmadábád* (*Bidar* [*Vidarb'ha*]), ch. iv. § 20.
- Ahmadnagar* (*I.*), intro. § 18; ch. ii. § 41; iii. § 4, 6-9; iv. § 24; v. § 7, 37, 123, 147, 165; vi. § 19.
- Ahmadnagar* (*II.*), ch. ii. § 41.
- Ahmadpúr*, intro. § 34.
- Ahu*, intro. § 36.
- Ájmir*, a city and territory in Rájputána. The city is about 203 miles south of Delhi, lying on the eastern slope of the Aravulli hills. It is probably the highest point in the plains of Hindústán, being about 2,000 feet above the level of the sea; intro. § 9, 36; ch. i. § 23; ii. § 16; iii. § 7; v. § 163.
- Akola*, is 47 miles S.S.W. from Ellichpúr, intro. § 20.
- Akultót*, feudatory Rája, intro. § 24; ch. v. § 45, 166.
- Akyáb*, sea-port in Birma, intro. § 15.
- Alcananda*, intro. § 34.
- Alghar*, taken by Lake, intro. § 9; ch. v. § 130.
- Alémpura*, Bandélkhand, tributary, intro. § 24.
- Alé-rájpúr*, intro. § 12.

## A

## Alīwāl—Armogam.

- Alwāl*, battlefield, ch. xi. § 32; x. § 128.  
*Alāhābād*, at the confluence of the Ganges and Jamna, intro. § 9, 34; ch. iii. § 22; v. § 125; ix. § 1, 25-29.  
*Allepie* (*Alapalli*), on the coast, midway between Cochin and Quilon, ch. x. § 62. It is the chief sea-port of Travancore.  
*Almora*, the chief town in Kumāon.  
*Alwār* (*Uludr*), a city in Rājputāna. The district is sometimes called *Mēwāt*, or *Machēri*.  
*Amārapura*, capital of Birma [see *Mandalay*] till 1860, now almost deserted.  
*Amber*, ch. iii. § 6.  
*Amboyna*, one of the Moluccas, ch. x. § 68.  
*Ambār*, two battles, fifty miles west of Arcot, ch. vii. § 7; viii. § 16.  
*Ambār Pass*, ch. xii. § 41.  
*Amerkōt* (*Umerkōt*), birthplace of Akbar, ch. iii. § 4, 6; x. § 125.  
*Amherst*, intro. § 15.  
*Amravatī* (= immortal) (*Oomrawutty*), intro. § 20. A great cotton mart.  
*Amritsīr* (*Umrītsīr*), the holy place of the Sikhs; and Ranjīt Sing's second capital, ch. xi. § 3, 20, 24.  
*Andaman Islands*, intro. § 38.  
*Anhalwāra*, ch. i. § 26; ii. § 11, 19.  
*Animalli*, intro. § 33.  
*Anjengo*, on the western coast, south of Quilon, was the seat of a factory from 1684 to 1813. Orme, the historian, was born here.  
*Anupshuhur*, ch. iii. § 20.  
*Arakān*, intro. § 15, 23; ch. x. § 79.  
*Arambūli Lines*, ch. x. § 63.  
*Arambūli Pass*, ch. x. § 63.  
*Aravulli Hills*, east of the desert of *Sind*, intro. § 29, 33, 36.

In front of these to the west is the noble mountain of *Abu*, rising as abruptly from the sandy plain as an island from the ocean. It seems one vast bubble of granite that has risen through what then was the sea, the summit of which in cooling has sunk back on itself, forming a valley on its summit six or eight miles long, which affords a most enchanting contrast to the desert below. These are remarkable for peaks of rose-coloured quartz, and for slates and schists, which furnish roofs for houses and temples.

- Arcot* (*Ār-Kādu* = 6 jungles) Town, in the Carnatic, ch. vii. § 7; viii. § 22.  
*Arcot District, North* (*Arcot*), intro. § 16; ch. x. § 44.  
*Arcot District, South* (*Cuddalōr*), intro. § 16; ch. x. § 44.  
*Argāom* (= *Harigrāma*), it is 38 miles from Ellichpūr W.S.W., ch. v. § 133.  
*Arianāpūm*, near Pondicherry, ch. viii. § 10.  
*Arikēra*, Mysōr, battle, ch. xii. § 41.  
*Ariyankōl Pass*, goes into Tinnevely, ch. x. § 63.  
*Armogam* (*Āru-mugam*), ancient settlement, before Madras, 36 miles N. of Pulicat. ch. vii. § 6 (?).

## Arni—Bancoora.

## B

- Arni*, seventy-four miles S.W. from Madras, ch. xii. § 32. Olive fought here and defeated Rāja Sahēb.
- Arrah*, heroic defence in 1857, ch. x. § 175.
- Arras*, first English battle with the Mahrattas, ch. v. § 91.
- Ashtagrām* (eight villages), Mysōr, intro. § 14; ch. xii. § 1.
- Ashtē*, near Punderpūr, last battle of the Peshwā, ch. v. § 151, 157.
- Asirghar*, in Kāndēsh, twelve miles from Burhānpūr, ch. iii. § 6; v. § 128, 132.
- Aska*, in the N. Sirkārs. Here are great sugar-works.
- Assat* (*Assye*), this is twenty-eight miles north from Jālā, ch. v. § 127.
- Assam*, intro. § 8, 23, 27; ch. x. § 79.
- Attollons*, intro. § 38.
- Attock*, ford of the Indus, a fort, ch. iii. § 6.
- Attūr*, pass, ch. xii. § 41.
- Aurangābād*, is the principal city in Bērār, on the left bank of the Dādna, a tributary of the Godāvari, ch. iii. § 7, 9; v. § 16, 29; viii. § 20. [First called Khirkī.]
- Āva*, ch. x. § 79.
- Azinghar*, intro. § 9.

## B

- Backergunj*, about 120 miles east of Calcutta, intro. § 8.
- Bactria*, ch. i. § 19, 20.
- Baddāmi*, ch. v. § 106, 165. Taken by Sir T. Munro in 1818. Near it are very interesting cave temples.
- Bādra*, ch. xii. § 1; intro. § 34. (Bhadra.)
- Baglā*, intro. § 12.
- Bagul*, intro. § 24.
- Bahār*, province, intro. § 8, 23; ch. i. § 8; ix. § 1.
- Baiswāra* (I.), intro. § 11. An important town on the Kishna, which is here 1,160 yards broad.
- Baitāl*, near this are the sources of the Tapit, intro. § 13.
- Bākmant*, kingdom, ch. ii. § 36.
- Balabht*, a magnificent ancient city in Gujarāt, submerged by a natural convulsion in A.D. 319, ch. i. § 25.
- Bālasinār*, intro. § 18. In the Rēwa Kānta, Bombay.
- Balastār* (= Bālāsahwar), intro. § 8; ch. v. § 62.
- Balkh*, ch. iii. § 3.
- Bāmganga* (River), intro. § 36.
- Banass* (River), intro. § 34, 36.
- Bancoora*, intro. § 8.



- Banda*, intro. § 9; ch. v. § 132; ch. x. § 68.  
*Bandélkhand*, a district, governed originally by Bandéla Râjas. It came under the English in 1817. There are in it thirty-six feudatory states. It is included in the Central India agency, intro. § 12, 23; ch. v. § 132; x. § 70.  
*Bangalôr*, ch. v. § 7; xii. § 1, 8, 41.  
*Bangampully*, Zemindâr. Ceded districts, intro. § 24.  
*Bankât*, ch. v. § 65.  
*Bantam*, in Jâva, ch. vii. § 6.  
*Bannu*, intro. § 10; ch. xi. § 4.  
*Banâda*, intro. § 24.  
*Banswâra*, intro. § 24, 36.  
*Baoni*, intro. § 24.  
*Baraitch*, intro. § 11.  
*Baramahâl*, intro. § 23; ch. xii. § 21, 44, 45.  
*Barâmatî*, ch. v. § 9.  
*Bardô*, a district in Kâttiwâr.  
*Bareilly*, intro. 9; ch. x. § 39, 75.  
*Barcelôn*, fifty-five miles north by west from Mangalôr. Formerly a place of great trade, ch. i. § 29; v. § 17.  
*Bârta*, intro. § 18. In the Rêwa Kântâ, Bombay.  
*Barî Dôbb*, ch. xi. § 3.  
*Baroach* (Baryagaza), Broach, ch. iv. § 14.  
*Barôda*, intro. § 18, 24, 25; ch. v. § 112, 122.  
*Barrackpûr*, on the east of the Hûglî, about sixteen miles above Calcutta, ch. x. § 80.  
*Barren Island*, intro. § 38.  
*Basôda*, intro. § 12.  
*Bassahr*, intro. § 24.  
*Bassein* (1), Birma, intro. § 15; ch. x. § 79.  
*Bassein* (2), near Bombay, ch. v. § 51, 53, 88, 101, 121-124; x. § 34; vi. § 16, 20.  
*Batavia*, Java, on the north-west coast, ch. vii. § 4.  
*Batinda*, ch. ii. § 7; xi. § 8.  
*Battâla*, ch. xi. § 3.  
*Bednôr* (Bednûr, Nagar), Mysôr, ch. xii. § 14, 34.  
*Beghram*, ch. i. § 19.  
*Beerbhûm* (Vira-bhûmi = land of heroes), intro. § 8.  
*Behrî* (Bandélkhand, feudatory), intro. § 24.  
*Behut* (Bandélkhand, feudatory), intro. § 24.  
*Belaspûr*, intro. § 13, 24.  
*Belgûm*, intro. § 18. Taken by Sir T. Munro in 1818.  
*Bellary* (Ballârî), intro. § 16; ch. iii. § 16; x. § 40.  
*Belûchistân*, ch. i. § 29.  
*Benâres* (Kâçi), the most populous city in India, very sacred, on the Ganges, intro. § 9, 24; ch. ii. § 16; ix. § 36; x. § 11, 32, 173.

## Bengál-Bolán Pass.

B

- Bengál*, intro. § 7, 8, 23; ch. ix.  
*Berár*, intro. § 20, 23; ch. iii. § 16; v. § 56.  
*Berhámputr*, ch. x. § 161.  
*Beronda* (Bandélkhanda, feudatory), intro. § 24.  
*Betwa* (River), intro. § 34.  
*Bhadwara*, intro. § 12.  
*Bhadra*, intro. § 34.  
*Bhagrathi*, two rivers, one near the source of the Ganges; the other the upper Hugli, intro. § 34.  
*Bhágulpur* (Boglipore), a town and district in Bengál proper, intro. § 8.  
*Bháonagar*, intro. § 18, 24. In Káttiwár.  
*Bhartpur*, a Ját city, thirty-one miles from Ágra, intro. § 24-36; ch. v. § 53, 137; x. § 81.  
*Bhatta*, ch. ii. § 8.  
*Bhavání*, intro. § 34.  
*Bháwalpur*, intro. § 10; ch. xi. § 37.  
*Bhilsa*, ch. v. § 96.  
*Bhópál*, intro. § 12, 24, 25; ch. i. § 23; v. § 96; x. § 102.  
*Bhór Ghát*, intro. § 33.  
*Bhótán* (Bútán), ch. x. § 190.  
*Bítán*, ancient capital of Ágra. It is sixty-five miles from the city of Ágra. Now Kerowli.  
*Bías* (Beas), River (Hyphasis), intro. § 34.  
*Bibbigung*, ch. x. § 175.  
*Bidar* (Ahmadábád, Vidharba), ch. iv. § 19, 20, 27. On the Manjira R.  
*Bija*, intro. § 24.  
*Bijanagar* (Vijaya-nagar, Narsinga), ch. iii. § 3; iv. § 2, 19-29; xii. § 5.  
*Bijapur*, ch. iii. § 9; iv. § 23; vi. § 3.  
*Bijáwar*, intro. § 24.  
*Bijnár*, intro. § 9.  
*Bikanér*, a city and district in Rájputána, intro. § 24, 36.  
*Bima*, intro. § 34; ch. v. § 2, 155.  
*Bimlpatam*, about fifteen miles north-east of Vizagapatam, on the coast of Orissa, a place of considerable trade, ch. vii. § 4.  
*Bindrabund* (Vrindavana), near Mathura, the scene of Krishna's youthful frolics, thirty-five miles N.N.W. from Ágra.  
*Birma*, intro. § 15; ch. x. § 79.  
*Bisnagar*.  
*Bítúr*, near Khánpur; x. § 173.  
*Bogra*, intro. § 8.  
*Bokerdán*, ch. v. § 127.  
*Bokhára*, ch. ii. § 5; iii. § 3; x. § 190.  
*Boláram*, a cantonment, twelve miles north of Haidarábád.  
*Bolán Pass*, ch. x. § 110, 118.

*Bombay (Mahim)*, capital of Western India, population, 730,000, intro. § 18, 23; ch. iii. § 9; vii. § 6. (Not from *buon-bahia* = good harbour; but *Mahratta* word *Mumbā*.)

*Boolumishukhur* intro. § 9.

*Bourbon*, ch. vii. § 7; x. § 66.

*Brāhmanī* (River), intro. § 34. (= Bahmini.)

*Brahmaputra* (River), intro. § 34.

*Brahmārshidēsa*, ch. i. § 5.

*Brahmāvarta*, ch. i. § 5.

*Brazil*, ch. vi. § 5.

*Brimhāpuri*, ch. iii. § 9.

*Broach* (Bardach, Barūch), intro. § 18; ch. i. § 29; v. § 97, 102, 129.

*Buddon*, intro. § 9; ch. x. § 39.

*Buddowāl*, ch. xi. § 32.

*Budge-Budge*, a battle, below Calcutta, ch. ix. § 6.

*Bughat*, intro. § 24.

*Bukkur*, ch. x. § 110.

*Bulsun*, intro. § 24.

*Bundara*, intro. § 13.

*Bāndī*, city and state in Rājputāna, intro. § 24, 36; ch. v. § 163.

*Burdwan*, intro. § 8, 23; ch. ix. § 16.

*Burhānpār*, the residence of the Mogul Viceroys of the Dakhan, ch. iii. § 6, 7, 9; v. § 128.

*Burwānī*, intro. § 12.

*Bustar*, or *Jugdālpār*, its aborigines are Gōnds, a people formerly addicted to cannibalism and human sacrifices, intro. § 13, 24.

*Busti*, intro. § 9.

*Būtān* (Bhōtān, Bootan), intro. § 23.

*Bātval* (Butool, Butan), in Oudh, ch. x. § 74.

*Buzār*, south-east of the Ganges, fifty-eight miles E.N.E. from Benāres, ch. ix. § 22-24.

*Byturnī* (River), intro. § 34.

## C

[See under K.]

*Cabūl* (Kābul), ch. x. § 110, 119, 122.

*Cachār*, intro. § 8, 23.

*Caggar* (River), ch. i. § 5.

*Calcutta* (City), intro. § 8, 23; ch. iii. § 12; vii. § 6; ix. § 5.

*Calicut*, ch. iv. § 8; vii. § 7; xii. § 16, 34, 43.

*Callian* (Kalyāna).

*Calpt* (Kalpi).

*Cambay*, intro. § 24. (Khambāyat.)

*Canara* (South), intro. § 16, 23; ch. x. § 42; xii. § 37, 56.

*Canara* (North), intro. § 18.

*Kandahār* (Khandahār, Kandahār), ch. x. § 110.

*Candŷ* (Kandŷ), intro. § 37.

*Cannanūr* (Cannanōr), intro. § 16; ch. vi. § 5.

*Cape de Verde Islands*, ch. vi. § 2.

*Cape of Good Hope*, ch. vi. § 2.

*Caricāl* (Kāricāl), intro. § 17; ch. vii. § 7.

*Carnatic* (Karnatic), intro. § 23, 32; ch. iii. § 18; iv. § 2; v. § 53, 55; vii. § 7; x. § 44.

*Carūr* (Karūr = Blacktown), intro. § 34; ch. xii. § 36.

*Cashmīr* (Kāshmir), intro. § 24, 25, 27; ch. xi. § 2, 7, 34.

*Catmandoo* (Katmandū), the capital of Nīpāl, ch. x. § 74.

*Cāvērt* (River), (Chaberis, Kāvērt), intro. § 34; ch. xii. § 1.

*Cawnpūr* (Khānpūr), ch. x. § 39.

*Ceded Districts of Haidarābād*, intro. § 23; ch. iii. § 16.

*Ceded Districts of Oudh*, intro. § 23; ch. x. § 39.

*Cēra Kingdom*, ch. i. § 28; iv. § 8.

*Ceylon* (Lanka), intro. § 22, 37; ch. vi. § 10.

*Chaberis* (Cāvērt), q.v., intro. § 14.

*Chāḍkan*, a fort, 18 miles N. of Pāna. It was taken in 1662 by Shayista Khān, after a siege of two months, and with a loss of 900 men. Ch. v. § 16; and by the British in 1818.

*Chakawāl*, ch. xi. § 8.

*Chamba*, intro. § 10, 24.

*Chambal* (River), intro. § 12, 34, 36.

*Champāntr*, ch. iii. § 4; v. § 129.

*Chanda*, a large town on the West Warda; coal has been found here, intro. § 13.

*Chandernagor*, about sixteen miles above Calcutta, intro. § 17; ch. vii. § 7; ix. § 8.

*Chandragirt*, ch. iv. § 29.

*Changāma* (Singarpetta), ch. xii. § 17, 27, 41.

*Chattīghūr*, intro. § 13.

*Chatterpūr*, Bandēlkhand, feudatory, intro. § 12, 24.

*Chaul* (Choul), it is thirty miles south by east from Bombay, on the coast, ch. vi. § 10.

*Cheduba*, an island in Arakān, a few miles from Rāmri, ch. x. § 79.

*Chērkāl*, ch. v. § 79; xii. § 22.

*Chicacole* (Shrikākolam), the chief civil station in Ganjam; capital of an ancient Hindū kingdom, ch. iv. § 11; iii. § 16 (6).

*Chillianwallah*, ch. xi. § 40, 42.

*Chillumbrum* (Sitambaram), on the sea-coast, three miles south of Porto Novo, ch. viii. § 31.

*Chimalart*, intro. § 33.

*China*, ch. x. § 158.

*Chináb*, intro. § 34; ch. xi. § 3.

*Chindavára*, intro. § 13.

*Chingleput* (Fort), intro. § 16, 23; ch. iv. § 29; viii. § 24. Taken by Clive in 1752.

*Chinsura*, on the west bank of the Hugli, eighteen miles from Calcutta, ch. ix. § 5, 14.

*Chittôr*, a strong fortress in Râjpûtâna, ch. ii. § 32; iii. § 6.

*Chittûr* (Chittore), an old fort and town, in N. Arcot. Near it are an immense number of ancient sepulchres, or *cromlechs*.

*Chittagong*, intro. § 8.

*Chittapet*, it is seventy-eight miles south-west from Madras, ch. viii. § 31.

*Chittledrûg* (Chitradrûg, Chitrakal = the umbrella rock), ch. xii. § 1.

*Chôla*, ch. i. § 28.

*Chôla Nagpûr*, intro. § 8.

*Chowghât Pass*, going into Coimbatâr, ch. x. § 63.

*Chumparun*, or *Bhuttit*, intro. § 8.

*Chundâr*, on the Ganges, between Benâres and Mirzâpûr, ch. iii. § 4; v. § 158.

*Churkart*, Bandêlkhand, faithful in 1857, feudatory, intro. § 12, 24.

*Chuttanatti*, ch. vii. § 6.

*Circârs* (Northern), intro. § 23; ch. iii. § 16; ix. § 14. The ancient name was *Kalinga*.

*Cis-Satlaj States*, intro. § 23; ch. x. § 169; xi. § 8.

*Cochin* (*Kochin*; Ant. Colchi), intro. § 16, 21; ch. i. § 29; vi. § 5, 8; x. § 64.

Here are colonies of white and black Jews. These latter seen to have been on the western coast from the third century A.D.

*Coel*, ch. v. § 130.

*Coimbatôr* (*Koyimbatôr*), intro. § 16, 23; ch. iv. § 8; x. § 42; xii. § 56.

*Colleroon*, R., intro. § 34.

*Colombo*, intro. § 37.

*Comorin* (Cape), (*Kumari*), intro. § 1, 2.

*Conjeveram* (*Kâncîpuram*), ch. iv. § 5. One of the seven sacred Hindû cities. Its great temple was built by Krishna Râya, 1509. Ch. iv. § 29.

*Cooch Bahâr*, intro. § 8, 24.

*Corah* (*Karrah*), ch. ix. § 28.

*Corigâom* (*Korigâom*).

*Cornwallis* (Fort), intro. § 38; x. § 79.

*Cossimbazaar* (*Kâsim-bazâr*), ch. ix. § 4.

*Cossyah* (Hills), (*Kosiya*), intro. § 8.

*Coulon* (*Quilon*), ch. i. § 29.

*Covelong*, ch. viii. § 24.

- Cranganôr*, sixteen miles north of Cochin, ch. vi. § 9.  
*Cuddalôr* (Cuddalore, *Gûdal-âr*), intro. § 16; ch. viii. § 9, 31; xii. § 35.  
*Cuddapa* (Kadapa, *Kûrpa*), intro. § 16; ch. iii. § 16; viii. § 18; x. § 40.  
*Cûrg* (*Kûrg*, *Coorg*), intro. § 23.  
*Cutch* (*Katch*), intro. § 18.  
*Cuttack* (Kuttaek), capital of the Gajapati Râjas of Orissa, at the mouth of the Mahânâdi, intro. § 8, 23, 24.

## D

- Dâbul* ch. vi. § 11.  
*Dacca*, intro. § 8.  
*Dakhan*, intro. § 30; ch. i. § 6; iv.  
*Dâmâlchêri Pass*, ch. v. § 55.  
*Dâmân* (Dâman), it is one hundred miles from Bombay. Intro. § 19; ch. vi. § 22. It is the capital of a district ten miles by five.  
*Damâda*, intro. § 34.  
*Darjeeling*, intro. § 8.  
*Daulêshwaram*, on the Godâvarî. Here is the great dam, or *unsikat*.  
*David*, Fort St., intro., § 23; viii. § 21.  
*Dêra Dîn*, intro. § 9; ch. x. § 74.  
*Delhi* (Indrapashtre), intro. § 9, 10, 23; ch. ii. § 16, 19; v. § 130; vii. § 7; x. § 166.  
*Dêogâom*, ch. v. § 134.  
*Dêogiri*, ch. ii. § 19; iv. § 15.  
*Dêoghar* (Barla), (1) intro. § 18; (2) ch. iv. § 14, 15.  
*Dêonhalli*, ch. xii. § 1, 11.  
*Dêra Fatih Khân*, ch. xi. § 4.  
*Dêra Ghâzî Khân*, intro. § 10; ch. xi. § 4.  
*Dêra Ishmael Khân*, intro. § 10; ch. xi. § 4, 37.  
*Dêrajât*, intro. § 10; ch. xi. § 2, 4.  
*Dêvaprayâga*, intro. § 34.  
*Dêvikôta*, ch. viii. § 21, 31.  
*Dêwas*, intro. § 12, 24.  
*Dêwâl*, ch. ii. § 4.  
*Deybur*, intro. § 36.  
*Dhamê*, intro. § 24.  
*Dhâr*, intro. § 12, 24.  
*Dharampûr*, intro. § 24.

- Dharmasāla*, ch. x. § 189.  
*Dhārwar*, intro. § 18. Taken in 1780.  
*Dhauri*, ch. i. § 8.  
*Dhāvāla-Giri* (= the white mountain), intro. § 33.  
*Dholapūr*, a principality of Rājputāna, sometimes called Gōhud, intro. § 24;  
 ch. v. § 137.  
*Dhund*, R. intro. § 36.  
*Dhuruyi*, intro. § 24.  
*Diampar*, fourteen miles east from Cochin, ch. vi. § 21.  
*Dig* (Deeg), ch. v. § 137.  
*Dinanagar*, ch. xi. § 3.  
*Dvndagal*, intro. § 23; ch. xii. § 13, 36, 45.  
*Dvā*, intro. § 19; ch. vi. § 11, 16, 17, 22.  
*Doāb*, ch. xi. There are besides the Doābs in the Panjāb, that between the Ganges and the Jamna, and the S. Mahratta Doāb, between the Kishtna and the Tāmbhadra. [= two rivers. The land between two rivers. "Mesopotamia," "Al Jezirah."]  
*Dōdda-betta* (Mt.), intro. § 33.  
*Dōjana*, intro. § 24.  
*Donabew*, Mahā Bandūla was killed there, ch. x. § 79.  
*Dondra Head*, intro. § 1, 2.  
*Daulatābād* (= the abode of pleasure), ch. iv. § 14, 15. Anciently, Dēogiri, some imagine it to be the ancient Tagara.  
*Dubhoy* (Dubhāl), ch. v. § 100.  
*Duflékār*, of Jāt, intro. § 24.  
*Dumoh*, intro. § 13.  
*Dungarpūr*, intro. § 24, 36.  
*Durkōti*, intro. § 24.  
*Durriābād*, intro. § 11.  
*Durrang*, intro. § 8.  
*Duttā*, intro. § 12, 24.  
*Dvāra Samudra*, ch. iv. § 9; xii. § 2.

## E

- Edar* (Idar), intro. § 18, 24; ch. iii. 6.  
*Elephanta*, an island six miles from Bombay, celebrated for its cave temples.  
*Ellōra*, ch. v. § 7. Famous for its sculptured caves.  
*Ellōre* (Ellār), in the N. Sirkars, close to the Kolār lake, ch. iii. § 16 (5).  
*Ellipūr*, the ancient capital of Beīār, ch. ii. § 31; iv. § 16, 26.

## Esa Keyl Valley—Gerseppa Falls.

F—G

*Esa Keyl Valley*, ch. xi. § 4. [The tribe of Esau.]

*Etah*, intro. § 9.

*Etawah*, intro. § 9.

*Eusofzye*, division of Peshâwar, ch. xi. § 4.

*Everest (Mt.)*, intro. § 33.

## F

*Farghânah*, or *Transoxiana* (Mawarân-Nâhr), ch. iii. § 3.

*Fatihghur*, ch. v. § 137.

*Ferbz-pâr*, intro. § 10; ch. ii. § 37; xi. § 8, 29; x. § 121, 123.

*Ferbz-shâh*, ch. xi. § 31.

*Fulda* (Fulta), on the east of the Hâgl, twenty miles S.S.W., in a straight direction from Calcutta, ch. ix. § 5, 35.

*Furrâkôt*, intro. § 24.

*Furrâpâr*, intro. § 8.

*Furruckâbâd*, a city on the Ganges. In 1802 its Nuwab surrendered it to the British, receiving a large pension. His descendant rebelled in 1857, and was sent into exile, intro. § 9.

*Futtehpâr*, intro. § 9. [Fatih-pâr.]

*Fyzâbâd*, intro. § 11.

## G

*Galle* (Point de), in Ceylon, intro. § 37.

*Galna*, ch. v. § 137.

*Gambhîr R.*, a tributary of the Bâmganga, intro. § 36.

*Ganges* (River) intro. § 34.

*Ganges* (Canal), ch. x. § 146.

*Gangam*, intro. § 18.

*Garra* (River), intro. § 34; ch. xi.

*Garrow* (Hills), intro. § 8, 33.

*Gâwîlgarh*, ch. v. § 133, 134.

*Gerouli*, Bandâlkhand, intro. § 24.

*Gerseppa Falls*, on the Gerseppa (or Kural or Bârdwan) river, near Honâwar, are the largest in India.



- Ghâts* (Eastern and Western), intro. § 31, 32, 33.  
*Ghâzîpûr*, Lord Cornwallis died there, intro. § 9; ch. x. § 52.  
*Ghazni*, Afghanistan, ch. ii. § 5-18; x. § 110-116, 121.  
*Gheriah* (= *fort*), Western Coast, (1) ch. v. § 65; viii. § 27; ix. § 21. [See *Vizianâg.*]  
*Ghôr*, ch. ii. § 15.  
*Ghurra*, intro. § 12.  
*Ginji*, ch. v. § 34; viii. § 18.  
*Girnar*, ch. i. § 8.  
*Goa*, intro. § 19; vi. § 12, 14-22. There is Panjim or New Goa; old Goa; and five miles distant the ruins of the Hindû Goa.  
*Godâvarî* (River and District), intro. § 16, 34.  
*Gôgra* (River), intro. § 34.  
*Gôhûd* (Dholapûr), a city twenty-three miles north of Gwâliôr, capital of a district, intro. § 36; ch. v. § 137.  
*Golconda*, ch. iii. § 9; iv. § 25.  
*Gonda*, intro. § 11.  
*Gondwâna*, intro. § 13.  
*Good Hope* (Cape of), ch. vi.  
*Gooty* (Gûti), ch. xii. § 56; v. § 99; x. § 84.  
*Gorruckpûr*, intro. § 9.  
*Gôrihâr*, intro. § 24.  
*Gohelwâd*, a district in Kâttiyawâr. Here is Bhâonagar.  
*Gour*, ruins near Mâlda, in Dînâjpûr, ch. ii. § 19; iii. § 4; i. § 22.  
*Govindpûr*, a town in the Panjâb.  
*Gowalpara*, intro. § 8.  
*Gujarât* (I.), a district of Western India, intro. § 18; ch. i. § 7, 25, 28; ii. § 11; iii. § 4; v. § 147.  
*Gujarât* (II.), battlefield in the Panjâb, intro. § 10; xi. § 42.  
*Gujaramwâla*, Panjâb, intro. § 10.  
*Gûmsâr*, in Orissa, ch. x. § 133.  
*Gûmtî* (River), intro. § 34.  
*Gûna*, intro. § 12.  
*Gundamuck*, ch. x. § 110, 120.  
*Gundigûma* (River), intro. § 34.  
*Gunduck* (Sâlagrâmî), intro. § 34.  
*Guntûr*, intro. § 23; x. § 21; iii. § 16 (5).  
*Gurdaspûr*, intro. § 10.  
*Gurgâon*, intro. § 10.  
*Gurhâl*, sub-Himâlayan province, intro. § 9, 24, 27; x. § 74.  
*Gurramcotta*, ch. xii. § 56.  
*Gûti*, ch. xii. § 56; v. § 99; x. § 84.  
*Gutpârba*, a tributary of the Kistna, intro. § 34. On this are the magnificent falls of Gokâk.

*Gwalior*, the “*Bastille* of India”: the state prison of the Moguls; *Sindia*’s capital, intro. § 12, 25; ch. ii. § 23; v. § 100, 103, 137, 141, 161; x. § 124.

*Gya* (*Gaya*), intro. § 8; ch. i. § 11.

## H

*Hála* (Mountains, *Hála-Hála*), intro. § 1, 33.

*Haláá*, a district in *Káttawád*. *Nowánagar* is in it.

*Hallabád*, ch. xii. § 2. Here are fine ancient temples, both *Saiva* and *Jain*.

*Haráott*, south-east division of *Rájpútána*, picturesque, well-wooded, and fertile, intro. § 36.

*Hardwar*, ch. ii. § 43.

*Hastinápúra*, ch. i. § 7.

*Hastnagar*, *Pesháwar*, ch. xi. § 4.

*Hazara*, intro. § 10; ch. xi. § 2, 6.

*Hazarbágh*, intro. § 8.

*Helmund* (River), the *Elymandrus*, rises in the *Paropamisus M.*, and flows into the lake of *Zúr*.

*Herát* (*Artachoana*), ch. i. § 19, 29; x. § 110.

*Himáláya* (Mountains), intro. § 1, 27, 33.

*Hindú Koosh*, the *Himáláya* range north of *Afghánistán*, intro. § 33.

*Hindústán*, intro. § 28; ch. i. § 29.

*Hingluaghar*, intro. § 36.

*Hissar*, capital of *Hurriána*, 105 miles W.N.W. from *Delhi*, intro. § 10.

*Hong-Kong*, ch. x. § 111.

*Honore* (*Onore*, *Honáwar*), ch. xii. § 20, 34.

*Hoshungábád*, intro. § 13.

*Howrah*, intro. § 8.

*Hurdut*, intro. § 11.

*Háglit*, intro. § 8, 34; ch. i. § 29; ix. § 6.

*Hugrt*, intro. § 34; ch. xii. § 1.

*Hummeerpúr*, intro. § 9.

*Humpi*, ch. iv. § 29.

*Hushiarpúr*, intro. § 10.

*Hydaspes*, intro. § 34.

*Hyderábád* (*Sind*), intro. § 18; ch. x. § 125.

*Hyderábád* (*Dakhan*), intro. § 20, 23-25; ch. iii. § 12; x. § 78.

*Hydraotes* (*Ravi River*), intro. § 34.

*Hyndras* (*Satlaj River*), intro. § 34.

*Hubli*, a great cotton mart in the *S. Maratta* country. Here was one of the earliest English factories.

## I

- Ikery*, ch. xii. § 14.  
*Imdn-ghur*, ch. x. § 125.  
*India*, further, hither, intro. § 26.  
*Indôr*, intro. § 12; ch. v. § 45, 75, 121, 137.  
*Indraprastha*, ch. i. § 7.  
*Indravati* (River), intro. § 34.  
*Indus*, intro. § 10, 34; ch. i. § 18, 19; x. § 101, 125.  
*Irawaddy*, ch. x. § 79.  
*Islamâbâd*, ch. xi. § 7.  
*Istailiff*, ch. x. § 122.

## J

- Jaffrâbâd*, ch. v. § 127, 137.  
*Jaffna*, North Ceylon, intro. § 37.  
*Jâlâna* (Jaulnah), ch. v. § 126. On the River Gandalka, tributary of the Dâdhna, tributary of the Godâvari.  
*Jaloun*, in Bandêlkhand, was annexed in 1840, intro. § 9.  
*Jamkandî*, intro. § 18.  
*Jamna* (River), [*Jumna* S. YAMUNÂ], rises in Gurhwâl, and joins the Ganges at Allâhâbâd, intro. § 12, 34; ch. i. § 29.  
*Jât*, intro. § 36; ch. xi. § 37.  
*Jâva*, ch. i. § 8.  
*Jawartes*, or *Syr Daria*, falls into the Sea of Âral.  
*Jetsalmtr*, Râjpûtâna, intro. § 24.  
*Jelidâbâd*, Afghânistân, the immortal garrison, ch. x. § 110, 117.  
*Jemla*, in Nîpâl.  
*Jessôr*, intro. § 8.  
*Jetch* (Doâb), Panjâb, ch. xi. § 3.  
*Jeypâr* (I.), Orissa, intro. § 16, 36.  
*Jeypâr* (II.), the largest city in Râjpûtâna—regular, clean. The ancient capital was Ambêr, intro. § 24, 25, 36; ch. iii. § 6.  
*Jhabbâa*, intro. § 12.  
*Jhalidwar*, intro. § 24, 36.  
*Jhalra Patân*, intro. § 12.  
*Jhânset*, in Bandêlkhand, annexed in 1853, intro. § 9, 23; ch. x. § 147, 181.  
*Jhilam* (River), Panjâb, intro. § 10, 34; ch. i. § 29; xi. § 3.

## Jhind-Kampti.

K

- Jhind*, Cis-Satlaj state, intro. § 24; ch. xi. § 8.  
*Jhung*, intro. § 10.  
*Jignit*, Bandélkhand, feudatory, intro. § 24.  
*Jinjira*, Western Coast, ch. v. § 15, 29, 65, 118.  
*Jobutt*, intro. § 12.  
*Jōdhpūr*, capital of Mārwar, Rājputāna, intro. § 24, 25, 36; ch. iii. § 6.  
*Joobal*, intro. § 24.  
*Jounpūr* (Juanpoor), intro. § 9; ch. ii. § 42; iii. § 3 (11).  
*Jowra*, intro. § 12, 24.  
*Juah* (Jewah), a small river, near to which is Assai, ch. v. § 127.  
*Jubbulpūr*, a well-built town, 160 miles from Nāgpur, tents are manufactured there, intro. § 13.  
*Jullindhur* (Julindar), Panjāb, intro. § 10, 23; ch. x. § 120; xi. § 3, 34.  
*Jumouri*, intro. § 33.  
*Jumu*, ch. xi. § 34.  
*Jānaghar*, intro. § 18, 24; ch. i. § 8.  
*Junir*, ch. v. § 9.  
*Jussel*, Bandélkhand, feudatory, intro. § 24.  
*Jyntia* (Hills), intro. § 8.

## K

- Kābul* (I.), ch. i. § 18; iii. § 3, 4, 6; x. § 69, 110, 120.  
*Kābul* (II.), (River), intro. § 34.  
*Kailāsa* (Mountain), intro. § 33, 34.  
*Kailāś* (Khelnā), a small river near to which is Assai, ch. v. § 127.  
*Kaira* (Kheda), the chief station in the eastern division of Gujarāt, intro. § 14.  
 It is very unhealthy and nearly deserted by Europeans.  
*Kālabāgh*, ch. xi. § 4.  
*Kālē Sind* (River), intro. § 34.  
*Kalingsr*, Bandélkhand. The district belongs to six chobays, intro. § 24; ch. ii. § 6, 10; iii. § 6.  
*Kalyān* (Kaliān, Calian), ch. v. § 15, 100. A town in the Konkan, thirty-three miles from Bombay. There was a Christian bishop here in the sixth century. It was anciently a great capital.  
*Kalikot* (Kalyān, Kaliān), ch. iv. § 11.  
*Kālunga*, twenty-six miles north from Hurdwar, ch. x. § 74.  
*Kālpi*, ch. ix. § 26; x. § 181.  
*Kamrāp*, intro. § 3.  
*Kampti*, on the Kanhan, a tributary of the Wain Gangā, about ten miles from Nāgpur.

- Kanara* (Canara), intro. § 18, 23.  
*Kandahâr* (Candahâr, Khandahâr), ch. iii. § 3; x. § 110, 118.  
*Kândêsh*, intro. § 18.  
*Kangra* (Nâgarkôt), intro. § 10; ch. ii. § 8; xi. § 5.  
*Kanauj*, ch. i. § 6, 27, 28; ii. § 9, 16.  
*Kapurthala*, Panjâb, intro. § 10, 24; ch. xi. § 5.  
*Kâpur-di-giri*, ch. i. § 8.  
*Karâchî*, Sind, intro. § 18.  
*Kâricâl*, French settlement, intro. § 17; ch. vii. § 7.  
*Kârlî*, a village near the top of the Bhor Ghât. Here is the largest and finest chaitya or Buddhist cave-temple in India. Its date is about 70 B.C. Ch. i. § 11.  
*Karna-nâsa* (River), ch. ix. § 13. [= destruction of merit.]  
*Karnâtaka*, ch. xii. § 2.  
*Karrack*, ch. x. § 155.  
*Karrah*, ch. ii. § 31.  
*Kâshmîr*, see *Cashmîr*.  
*Katch*, (Cutch), intro. § 18, 24.  
*Katmandû*, Nipâl, ch. x. § 74, 181.  
*Kâvêrî* (Câvêrî), intro. § 34.  
*Kelât*, ch. x. § 110.  
*Keonikul*, intro. § 24.  
*Kerowlî* (Kerâoli), city and principality in Râjpûtâna, formerly Biâna, intro. § 24, 36; ch. x. § 147.  
*Khânepûr* (Cawnpore), intro. § 9; ch. x. § 172, 173.  
*Kharîsm* (now *Khiva*), ch. ii. § 22.  
*Kharond*, intro. § 13, 24.  
*Khorasân*, Persia, ch. ii. § 5; iii. § 6.  
*Khulsia*, intro. § 24.  
*Khyber Pass*, Afghânistân, ch. x. § 110, 117; xi. § 4.  
*Khyrâbâd*, intro. § 11.  
*Khyrpûr*, Sind, ch. x. § 125.  
*Kilchipûr*, intro. § 12.  
*Kinerî*, ch. xi. § 37.  
*Kirkî*, ch. v. § 151. [Khirkî, Kirkee.] A few miles from Pûna, and a cavalry station. Also, the original name of Aurungâbâd. Ch. iii. § 7.  
*Kishna* (River), (*Kistna*, *Krishna*), intro. § 16, 34.  
*Kishnagar*, intro. § 24, 36.  
*Kittâr*, a small Mahratta fief, which lapsed in 1824. Southern Mahratta country, ch. v. § 106.  
*Kohât*, intro. § 10; ch. xi. § 4.  
*Kojut Pass*, ch. x. § 110.  
*Kokhân*, ch. iii. § 3.  
*Kolâba*, ch. v. § 113.

# GEOGRAPHICAL INDEX.

551

Kolār—Leia.

L

- Kolār*, ch. v. § 7.  
*Kolār Lake* (Kolair), is 100 square miles in area. It is south of *Rājmandarī*, ch. iii. § 16 (5).  
*Kolhāpār*, it is 121 miles S. by E. from Pāna, intro. § 18; ch. v. § 47, 166.  
*Kondapilly*, ch. iii. § 16 (5).  
*Konkan*, ch. v. § 4.  
*Kopergāom*; death of Ragobā, ch. v. § 102.  
*Korigāom*, famous battle, ch. v. § 151, 155.  
*Kōsi* (River), rises near Catmandu, intro. § 34.  
*Kota*, on the right bank of the Chambal, strongly fortified, intro. § 24, 36.  
*Kotār*, ch. x. § 68.  
*Kothar*, intro. § 24.  
*Kothī*, in Bandēlkhand, intro. § 24.  
*Kulbūrga*, capital of the Bāhminī dynasty, ch. iv. § 20-23.  
*Kumaōn*, sub-Himālayan province, between Nīpāl and Gurhwāl, intro. § 9, 27.  
*Kunmya Dhāna*, intro. § 24.  
*Kunchinganga*, intro. § 33.  
*Kunwār*, intro. § 18.  
*Kārdlā*, famous battle, ch. v. § 114.  
*Kūrg* (Cūrg), S.E. of Mysōr. Here are the sources of the Kāvēri. Capital, Markāra—population 113,000, intro. § 14; ch. x. § 90; xii. § 23, 44, 46.  
*Kurnāl*, intro. § 10.  
*Kurnāl*, intro. § 16; ch. iv. § 25; x. § 112.  
*Kārpa* (Kādapa), ch. iv. § 25; xii. § 23.  
*Kuru-Kshētra*, the battlefield between Delhi and the Saraswatī river, ch. i. § 7.  
*Kurwāt*, intro. § 12.  
*Kāshāb*, ch. x. § 157.  
*Kāsi*, intro. § 34.  
*Kuttack* (Cuttaek), intro. § 23; ch. v. § 57, 131.  
*Kytul*, ch. xi. § 26.

L

- Laccadives*, intro. § 38.  
*Lahār*, ch. v. § 100.  
*Lāhōr*, intro. § 10; ch. ii. § 10; v. § 70; xi. § 3.  
*Lakairi*, ch. v. § 110.  
*Landour*, in Gurhwāl, sanitarium.  
*Lanka*, Sanskrit name for Ceylon, intro. § 37; ch. i. § 6, 29.  
*Leia*, ch. xi. § 45.

- Logassi*, intro. § 24.  
*Lohardugga*, intro. § 8.  
*Loharoo*, intro. § 24.  
*Luckimpôr*, intro. § 8.  
*Lucknow*, intro. § 11; ch. x. § 174, 180.  
*Lûdîâna*, intro. § 10; ch. xi. § 8.  
*Lullutpûr*, intro. § 9.  
*Lundânâra*, intro. § 18. In the Rêwa Kântâ, Bombay. Râjpût chief.  
*Lûni*, intro. § 34, 36.

## M

- Machêri* (Mêwât Alwâr), ch. iii. § 4.  
*Madeira*, ch. vi. § 2.  
*Madras*, intro. § 16, 23; ch. iv. § 29; vii. § 6, 7; viii. § 32; x. § 9.  
*Madura* (Mað'hurâ), intro. § 16; ch. i. § 12; iv. § 5, 6.  
*Magadhâ*, ch. i. § 8, 28.  
*Mahâbalêshwar Hills*, a part of the Western Ghâts. The village stands on the highest ground between the Himâlayas and the Nîlagiris. Here rise the Kistna and the Yêna. Intro. § 34 (8).  
*Mahaban Peak*, intro. § 34.  
*Mahâbalipûr* (= the city of great Balu). This is called generally "the seven pagodas." It is thirty-five miles S. of Madras. Here are the remains of several splendid temples.  
*Mahânadî* (River), intro. § 34.  
*Mahârâppûr*, a few miles from Gwâliôr, ch. x. § 121.  
*Mahârâshtra* (Mahratta country), ch. iv. § 14; v. § 2.  
*Mahé*, intro. § 17; ch. xii. § 25.  
*Mâht-kânta*, intro. § 18.  
*Mâhulî*, ch. v. § 155.  
*Mahundî*, intro. § 11.  
*Mâi* (River), (Mahî, Mhye), intro. § 34; ch. v. § 91.  
*Mairwarra*, intro. § 13, 36; ch. v. § 163; x. § 95.  
*Makrûî*, intro. § 13, 24.  
*Makwanpûr*, a fortress in Nîpâl, seventeen miles south of Catmandû, ch. x. § 74.  
*Malabâr*, intro. § 16, 23; ch. iv. § 8; vi. § 4; xii. § 16, 39, 45. Its ancient name was Kêrala.  
*Malacca*, intro. § 21, 23; ch. vi. § 13; vii. § 4.  
*Malapûrba*, intro. § 34.  
*Malavelli*, battle, Mysôr, ch. xii. § 52.

- Malda*, close to it are the ruins of Gour, intro. § 8. "The "Hindú" capital of Bengal.]
- Maldives*, intro. § 38.
- Malebum*, a fort and town in Nipál.
- Malleir-kolla*, intro. § 24.
- Maloun*, ch. x. § 74.
- Máhwá*, intro. § 12; ch. i. § 24; ii. § 16, 19, 40; v. § 44.
- Malwán*, an island on the west coast, thirty-three miles N N W from Goa, ch. v. § 113, 145.
- Manantoddy* (Manantawádi), the chief town of the Wynnad.
- Manbhám*, intro. § 8.
- Mandalay*, capital of Birma, founded in 1860, seven miles from Amarapura.
- Mandaví*, the principal seaport in Katch.
- Mandí*, intro. § 10, 24.
- Mándú*, ch. ii. § 23, 40; iii. § 5.
- Mangalore*, S. Canara, intro. § 16; ch. xii. § 20, 36.
- Manjéra* (River), intro. § 34; ch. v. § 69, 70.
- Mánpúr*, intro. § 12.
- Manzerábád*, ch. xii. § 1.
- Markára*, ch. x. § 90.
- Martaban*, a town on the north bank of the Salwin river, in Pegu, ch. x. § 79.
- Márwár*, intro. § 36; ch. i. § 27, 28; iii. § 6.
- Masulipatam* (Masolia), intro. § 16, 23; ch. i. § 29; vii. § 7, ix. § 14.
- Mauritius* (Île de France), an East African island, one of the Mascarenhas (from a Portuguese navigator) in the Indian Ocean, discovered, but not occupied, by the Portuguese; then taken possession of by the Dutch, who named it from Prince Maurice, and abandoned it in 1710, being driven out by rats. The French then took it, and held it till it was taken from them by the English in 1810. Its capital is Port Louis, ch. xii. § 47; vii. § 7; x. § 60.
- Marwat Valley*, ch. xi. § 4.
- Maver-ul-nahar*, ch. ii. § 5.
- Máwala*, ch. v. § 4.
- Mégna*, intro. § 34.
- Mehrápúr*, ch. v. § 151.
- Mehlour*, intro. § 20.
- Melápur* (St. Thomé, near Madras), ch. vii. § 7.
- Melinda*, Africa, ch. vi. § 2.
- Mergui*, Birma, intro. § 15; x. § 79.
- Méwár*, Rájputána, intro. § 24, 36; ch. i. § 25, 28; iii. § 6.
- Méwát*, Rájputána, ch. ii. § 29.
- Mhow* (Mahu), the frontier cantonment of the Bombay Presidency, thirteen miles S W. of Indór, on the Gambhír R.
- Miánt*, Sind, ch. x. § 125.



*Midnapûr*, it is seventy miles south by west from Calcutta, intro. § 8, 23; ch. ix. § 16.

*Mirdj*, intro. § 18.

*Mirpûr*, Sind, ch. x. § 125.

*Mirut*, intro. § 9; ch. ii. § 43; x. § 165.

*Mirzâpûr*, intro. § 9.

*Mithan Kôt*, ch. xi. § 4.

*Mithila*, ch. i. § 28, 29.

*Mohan*, intro. § 18. Called also Chotâ Udeipûr.

*Mokhundra Pass*, intro. § 36; ch. v. § 137.

*Monghyr*, a town and district in Bahâr, on the south bank of the Ganges, intro. § 8.

*Montgomery*, intro. § 10.

*Mordâbbâd*, intro. § 9.

*Moulmein*, ch. x. § 79.

*Mountains*, intro. § 33.

*Moyâr*, intro. § 34.

*Mowlee* = *Mâhull*, ch. v. § 155.

*Mûdhûl*, intro. § 18, 24.

*Mâkt*, ch. xi. § 30; x. § 123.

*Mâglî Pass*, ch. xii. § 41.

*Muhammadghar*, intro. § 12.

*Mâlâ R.*, intro. § 34.

*Mâlân*, intro. § 10; ch. ii. § 4; xi. § 36, 37.

*Mundla*, intro. § 13.

*Mungal*, intro. § 24.

*Munnipûr*, ch. x. § 79.

*Mârsheddâbâd*, it is 120 miles above Calcutta, intro. § 8; ch. iii. § 9; ix. § 4.

*Must*, intro. § 34.

*Mûth R.*, intro. § 24.

*Mutira* (Mat'hura), intro. § 9; ch. ii. § 9.

*Muzandanghar*, intro. § 12.

*Musaffirghar*, intro. § 10.

*Musaffir Nagar*, intro. § 9.

*Myanowng*, intro. § 15.

*Myhere*, intro. § 24.

*Mylog*, intro. § 24.

*Mymensing*, intro. § 8.

*Mynpûrt*, intro. § 9; ch. x. § 170.

*Mysôr* (Maisûr), intro. § 14, 24; ch. x. § 89; xii.

## N

- Nabha*, Cis-Satlaj state, intro. § 24; ch. xi. § 8.  
*Nāga* (Hills), intro. § 8.  
*Nagar* (Bednôr, Mysôr), intro. § 14; ch. xii. § 14.  
*Nāgarkôt*, ch. ii. § 8; xi. § 5.  
*Nagôde*, intro. § 24.  
*Nāgpur* (Snake-town), the district is called Gondwāns, from its aborigines, the Gonds, intro. § 13, 23; ch. v. § 159.  
*Nahun*, intro. § 24.  
*Nalaghar*, intro. § 24.  
*Nandā Dêvî*, intro. § 33.  
*Nandair*, ch. iii. § 12. See map of the Nizām's dominions.  
*Nandīdrâg*, intro. § 14, 34; ch. xii. § 1. The Pālār and Pounār rise near here.  
*Nargund*, intro. § 18. Rebelled in 1857. Cruel massacre.  
*Narrain*, ch. i. § 7.  
*Narsinga* (name of the Bīja-nagar kingdom), ch. iii. § 3.  
*Narsinghâr*, intro. § 13.  
*Nāsik* (*Nassuck*), 100 miles north of Pūna, on the Godāvari, whose source is close by (see Trimbak), intro. § 34.  
*Negapatam* (Nāgapatnam), ch. x. § 82; xii. § 30.  
*Nellore* (Nellûr), intro. § 16, 34; ch. x. § 44.  
*Nelîsuram*, ch. i. § 29.  
*Nerbudda* (River), (*Narmada*), intro. § 34.  
*Newâj*, intro. § 36.  
*Nicobâr* (Islands), intro. § 38.  
*Nīlagiri* (Hills), intro. § 16, 23, 31; ch. x. § 42; xii. § 8 (= the blue mountains).  
*Nīma* (River), intro. § 34.  
*Nīmar*, intro. § 13.  
*Nīpal*, sub-Himālayan state, intro. § 23, 27; ch. x. § 74.  
*Noakhally*, intro. § 8.  
*Nowānagar*, intro. § 18, 24.  
*Nowgong*, intro. § 8.  
*Nowshêra*, ch. iii. § 5 (6).  
*Nudda* (*Nava-dvîpa* = new island), intro. § 8; ch. ii. § 19.

## O

*Okhamandel*, a district in Kāttiyawār. Here, dwell the Wāghars, pirates and robbers.

*Omri*, Bandēlkhand, intro. § 12.

*Onore* (Honore, Honāwar), ch. xii. § 20.

*Omravutty* (Amravati), intro. § 20.

*Oonao*, intro. § 11.

*Oorcha* (Tehri), intro. § 21.

*Ooskatta*, ch. v. § 7. Hosa-Kōtta = *new foot*.

*Ootacamund*, intro. § 16; ch. x. § 98.

*Orissa*, intro. § 8, 17, 23, 28, 33; ch. iv. § 13; x. § 190.

*Ormuz*, ch. vi. § 13-20.

*Oudh* (Ayodhya, Kōshala), intro. § 11; ch. i. § 6; iii. § 12, 17; x. § 4, 32, 34, 39, 103, 150, 151.

*Oudipūr* (Ūdipūr), intro. § 24, 25, 36; ch. xii. § 6, 10; v. § 112.

*Oujein* (Ūjein), ch. i. § 9, 23; iii. § 8; v. § 110.

*Ovus*, or *Amu Daria*, falls into the sea of Aral, ch. i. § 20.

## P

*Pahar*, intro. § 24.

*Pāhlunpūr*, intro. § 18, 24.

*Pain-Gangā*, falls into the N. Warda, near Chanda, intro. § 34.

*Pasthun*, ch. i. § 9; iv. § 14.

*Palamanēr* (Pulamanair), near Chittōr, in the Mūglī pass.

*Pālar* (River), intro. § 34.

*Pālgahāt*, this is sixty-eight miles S.E. from Calicut, ch. xii. § 36.

*Palibothra* (Patna?), ch. i. § 8, 19, 29.

*Palikāḍ Pass*, ch. xii. § 41.

*Palmyras*, Pt., intro. § 34.

*Palni* (Hills), intro. § 33. In the Madura district.

*Palpa*, a district of Nipal, ch. x. § 74.

*Panch Mahāls*, intro. § 18.

*Pāndya*, ch. i. § 28.

*Pānpat*, battlefield, ch. ii. § 16, 47; iii. § 1-3, 6, 15, 19, 20, 22, 23; v. § 1, 58, 68-70; viii. § 32; x. § 38.

*Panjāb*, intro. § 10, 23; ch. xi.

- Panjim* (Pangaum), is New Goa, about three miles from Old Goa, intro. § 14, ch. vi. § 12, 14, 22.
- Parbatti* (River), intro. § 36. A tributary of the Chambal.
- Parone* (Narwâr), intro. § 12.
- Patdla*, ch. i. § 19.
- Patharea*, intro. § 12.
- Patna* (Padmavati), intro. § 8; ch. ix. § 13, 22. At the junction of the Gunduck and the Ganges.
- Patowâk*, intro. § 24.
- Pattan*, ch. i. § 26; ii. § 32.
- Pattidla*, Cis-Satlaj state, intro. § 24, 25; ch. xi. § 8; ii. § 7.
- Pâwanganh*, ch. v. § 129.
- Pedro* (Point), intro. § 37. In North Ceylon.
- Pegu*, intro. § 15, 23; ch. x. § 79, 140, 151.
- Penang*, intro. § 23.
- Penkonda*, ch. iv. § 29.
- Pennâr* (River), intro. § 34. The Punâr is sometimes called the Southern Pennâr.
- Pergunnahs*, the twenty-four, intro. § 23; ch. ix. § 11.
- Periapatam*, ch. xii. § 51.
- Persia*, ch. x. § 69, 155.
- Pertabghar*, (1) intro. § 11; (2) ch. v. § 14; (3) intro. § 36.
- Peshdwar*, intro. § 1, 2, 10; ch. xi. § 4.
- Pind Dâdan Khân*, ch. xi. § 3.
- Plassey* (Palasi), ch. ix. § 1, 10.
- Point de Galle*, intro. § 37.
- Pollilore*, Battles, ch. xii. § 27, 29.
- Ponâni* (Paniani), ch. xii. § 34. On the river of the same name. The headquarters of the Moplas.
- Pondicherry* (*Pudu chéri* = new town), ch. vii. § 7; viii. § 32.
- Porebunder*, intro. § 18.
- Port Blair*, intro. § 38.
- Port Cornwallis*, intro. § 38.
- Porto Novo*, ch. xii. § 28. On the sea-coast, eighteen miles S. of Cuddalôr.
- Pratâpghar* = *Pertabghar*.
- Prayâg* (S.), ch. i. § 29. (= confluence.)
- Prome*, intro. § 15; ch. x. § 79.
- Pubna*, intro. § 8.
- Pudukkôta*, intro. § 16, 24.
- Pâna*, intro. § 18, 23; ch. v. § 9, 11, 56. Near the junction of the Mûlâ and Mûlâ rivers.
- Pulicat*, ch. xii. § 32; vii. § 4.
- Punâr*, intro. § 34.
- Punderpâr* (Punya-d'hara-pura = merit bestowing), ch. v. § 147.

*Punna*, intro. § 12, 24.

*Punniar*, a few miles from Gwâliâr, ch. x. § 124.

*Pûrandar* (Poorundhur), ch. v. § 12, 92, 165. 4,472 feet above the level of the sea.

*Pûrb*, intro. § 28.

*Pûrt* (Pooree), intro. § 8.

*Purinda*, ch. v. § 124.

*Pârna*, N. (River), intro. § 34.

*Pârna*, S. (River), intro. § 34.

*Pârnia* (Pârneah), intro. § 8.

## Q

*Quilon* (*Kulam*, anc. Coulan), ch. vi. § 10. Founded A.D. 825.

## R

*Radhanpûr*, intro. § 18, 24.

*Ræpûr*, intro. § 13.

*Râgûghur*, intro. § 12.

*Raighur*, this is on the Ghâts, to the east of the Konkan, thirty-four miles south-west from Pûna, ch. v. § 15, 19, 21, 24, 165.

*Raisin*, ch. iii. § 5.

*Râjamandrî* (Râjahmundry), ch. iv. § 11; iii. § 16 (5).

*Râjapûr*, ch. v. § 61. A flourishing port, north of Viziadrûg

*Râjghar*, intro. § 12.

*Râjkôt*, intro. § 18.

*Râjmahâl* (Hills), intro. § 33; ch. x. § 149.

*Râjnagar*, intro. § 36.

*Râjptla*, intro. § 18, 24. In the Rêwa Kânta, Bombay.

*Râjpâtâna*, intro. § 13, 36; ch. v. § 153; x. § 102, 190.

*Râjshâht*, intro. § 8.

*Râmadrûg*, intro. § 24.

*Râm Gangâ* (River), intro. § 34.

*Râmiseram* (Râméswarem), ch. iv. § 17.

*Râmnagar*, ch. xi. § 3, 40.

*Râmpûr*, intro. § 24; ch. ix. § 36.

*Rangoon*, intro. § 15; ch. x. § 79.

*Rapti*, intro. § 34.

- Rasul*, ch. xi. § 42.  
*Ratnagerry*, intro. § 18. (*Ratna-giri* = *hill of jewels*.) The principal civil station in the S. Konkan.  
*Rauzah*, six miles from Aurungābād: the burial-place of Aurungzib, ch. iii. § 9 (18).  
*Ravi* (River), intro. § 34; ch. i. § 29; xi. § 3.  
*Rawal Pindt*, intro. § 10; ch. xi. § 3, 43.  
*Raya Kotta*, ch. xii. § 52. A strong fort, commanding the Ambūr Pass.  
*Retchmā Dobb*, ch. xi. § 3.  
*Rēwa*, intro. § 12, 24.  
*Rēwa Kānta*, intro. § 18.  
*Rēwāri*, S.W. of Delhi, ch. v. § 151.  
*Rintambōr*, ch. ii. § 23.  
*Rivers of India*, intro. § 34.  
*Rohilkhand*, ch. ix. § 36; iii. § 15.  
*Rohlak*, intro. § 10.  
*Rōhtas*, (1) ch. iii. § 4; (2) xi. § 18.  
*Roy Bareilly*, intro. § 11.  
*Rungpūr*, intro. § 8.  
*Rāpar*, ch. x. § 101; xi. § 26.  
*Rārkt*, ch. x. § 136.  
*Rutlam*, intro. § 12.

## S

- Sabmurika*, intro. § 34.  
*Sadras*, ch. vii. § 4. A ruined Dutch settlement.  
*Sāgar*, intro. § 13.  
*Sagres*, ch. vi. § 1.  
*Salbāi*, ch. v. § 102; xii. § 31.  
*Salem*, intro. § 16.  
*Salsette*, ch. v. § 88. An island N. of Bombay, and now joined to it by a causeway. Here are the Kanari caves and the fort of Tannah.  
*Salt Range*, in the Panjāb, ch. xi. § 3.  
*Salwin* (River), intro. § 1; ch. x. § 79.  
*Samarkhand*, taken by Russia, May 2, 1868, ch. ii. § 43; iii. § 3.  
*Sambal*, ch. iii. § 4.  
*Sambhur*, intro. § 36.  
*Sangamēshwar*, ch. v.  
*Sangli*, intro. § 18.

- Santál Pergunnahs*, intro. § 8.  
*Saraswati* (River), between the Satlaj and the Jamna (See sooty), ch. i. § 5.  
*Sarun*, intro. § 8.  
*Satdārā*, intro. § 18; ch. iii. § 9; v. § 9, 40, 157, 164; x. § 109.  
*Satlaj* (River), (Satlej), (Hysudras), intro. § 34; ch. i. § 29; xi. § 3.  
*Sāthpūrā* (Hills), (Injādrī), intro. § 33; ch. i. § 29. (Sautpoora.)  
*Savanār* (Shāhnūr), intro. § 18; ch. iv. § 25; viii. § 18; xii. § 38.  
*Saverndrāg* (Swarna Durga, the Golden Fortress), a small island, eighty-six miles south by east from Bombay, (1) ch. v. § 65; (2) xii. § 1.  
*Sāwant-Wādā*, intro. § 18, 24; ch. v. § 113, 145. One of the oldest Mah-ratta fiefs.  
*Sealkōt*, intro. § 10; ch. xi. § 3.  
*Secunderābād* (Alexander's Town), ch. iii. § 16.  
*Sedastī*, ch. xii. § 51.  
*Seebāgar*, intro. § 8.  
*Shārunpūr*, intro. § 9.  
*Serampore*, on the Hāglī, ch. vii. § 5.  
*Serendīb*, intro. § 37.  
*Seringapatam*, intro. § 34; ch. xii. § 5, 6, 54.  
*Sewālik* (Hills), intro. § 33.  
*Sevnert*, ch. v. § 9.  
*Shāhābād*, intro. § 8.  
*Shāhjahānpūr*, intro. § 9; x. § 39.  
*Shāhpārt*, ch. x. § 79.  
*Shāhpūr*, intro. § 10; ch. iii. § 15.  
*Shāhpūra*, intro. § 9, 24.  
*Shedbād*, intro. § 18.  
*Shevaroy* (Hills), (Siva-rāya), intro. § 33.  
*Shikarpūr*, intro. § 18.  
*Shiva Samudram*, falls on the Kāvēri, about forty miles from Seringapatam.  
*Shoayghoon*, intro. § 15.  
*Shōlapūr*, on the Sina, about sixty-five miles from Bijapūr, intro. § 18; ch. v. § 165.  
*Sikhim*, intro. § 8, 27.  
*Sikri* (Fatihpūr), ch. iii. § 3.  
*Sillāna*, intro. § 12.  
*Simla*, intro. § 10; ch. x. § 85; xi. § 8.  
*Simoga*, ch. xii. § 43.  
*Sina*, intro. § 34.  
*Sind* (1), intro. § 23; ch. ii. § 4; iii. § 6; x. § 69, 125.  
*Sind* (River), (2), intro. § 34.  
*Sindidrāg*, ch. v. § 145.  
*Sind-sāgar Dōb*, ch. xi. § 3, 6.  
*Singapore* (Island), intro. § 1, 21, 23; ch. x. § 82.

## Singala-Sunderbands.

S

- Singala* (Ceylon), intro. § 37.  
*Singbhām* (*Simha* + *b'hāmi* = *lion's land*), intro. § 8.  
*Singhur*, strong fort, twelve miles south of Pūna, ch. v. § 12, 16. It was originally called *Kondaneh*; but *Sivaji* called it *the lion's den*.  
*Sioni*, intro. § 13.  
*Sipra*, intro. § 34; ch. v. § 160.  
*Sira*, in Mysor, ch. v. § 7.  
*Sirhind*, ch. ii. § 47; iii. § 6, 15; v. § 58; vi. § 19.  
*Sirjt Angenghom*, ch. v. § 135.  
*Sirkars*, see *Circars*.  
*Sirmār*, intro. § 27; ch. x. § 85.  
*Sirōhi*, intro. § 24, 36.  
*Sirsa* (Sirst), intro. § 12.  
*Sitābaldī*, two hills about a mile from Nāgpūr. Here is the British Residency, ch. v. § 159.  
*Sita-mhow*, intro. § 12.  
*Sitāpūr*, intro. § 11.  
*Sittāna*, ch. x. § 189.  
*Soānth*, a small state in the Rēwa Kānta. Intro. § 18. Chiefly inhabited by Bhils.  
*Sobradon*, battle, ch. xi. § 33.  
*Sohāwul*, intro. § 24.  
*Sōlinghar*, ch. xii. § 29.  
*Sōmnāth*, ch. ii. § 11; x. § 121.  
*Sōne* (River), intro. § 34.  
*Sōpa*, ch. v. § 12, 15.  
*Sorath*, a most beautiful and interesting district in Kāttiwād.  
*Strāvana Belgula*, thirty-three miles N.W. from Seringapatam, the chief place of the Jains. Here is a gigantic image of Gōmatārāya, sixty feet high, cut out of the rocky hill.  
*Strīnagar*, ch. xi. § 7.  
*Strīrangam* (*Trichinopoly*), intro. § 34; ch. viii. § 23.  
*St. David* (Fort), ch. viii. § 6, 7.  
*St. Thomē* (Meilāpūr), ch. vii. § 7.  
*Succhee*, intro. § 24.  
*Suddosam*, ch. xi. § 37.  
*Sukhēt*, intro. § 10, 24.  
*Suleimān* (Mountains), intro. § 1, 33.  
*Sultānpūr*, intro. § 11.  
*Sumbulpūr*, intro. § 13.  
*Sumptur*, intro. § 12, 24.  
*Sundār*, intro. § 24.  
*Sunderbands* (=beautiful woods), marshy islands in the delta of the Ganges.



- Surāshtra* (=excellent land), the ancient name for Kāttiwār and Gujarāt.  
*Sūrat* is a corruption of it, intro. § 18.  
*Sūrat*, a very ancient city. It is 180 miles from Bombay, intro. § 18; ch. v. § 63, 67, 90, 122; vii. § 7.  
*Surtia*, intro. § 24.  
*Sylhet*, intro. § 8.

## T

- Tagara*, ch. iv. § 14.  
*Takht-i-Suleimān*, intro. § 33.  
*Taligdom* (Wargāom), ch. v. § 97.  
*Tāmbarapūrnt*, intro. § 34.  
*Tanēshwar*, ch. i. § 7; ii. § 8, 16; xi. § 8.  
*Tanjore*, intro. § 16, 23; ch. v. § 17, 24; vii. § 7; viii. § 15; x. § 44.  
*Tank Valley*, ch. xi. § 4.  
*Tannah*, intro. § 18; ch. v. § 147. In the island of Salsette.  
*Taprobane* (Ceylon), intro. § 37; ch. i. § 29.  
*Tapti*, intro. § 34.  
*Tatta*, ch. ii. § 36; iii. § 6; x. § 125.  
*Tavoy*, intro. § 15; ch. x. § 79.  
*Tehrī*, intro. § 24.  
*Tellichēri*, ch. xii. § 31.  
*Tenasserim*, intro. § 15; ch. x. § 79.  
*Tēl*, intro. § 34.  
*Terāi*, intro. § 27.  
*Thurr*, intro. § 18.  
*Tinnevelly*, intro. § 16; ch. x. § 44.  
*Tipperah*, intro. § 8.  
*Tirhāt*, intro. § 8.  
*Tirāri*, ch. i. § 7.  
*Tista River*, intro. § 34.  
*Tolapūr*, ch. v. § 32.  
*Tondimān's Country*, intro. § 16.  
*Tongā*, intro. § 15.  
*Tonk*, intro. § 24, 36; ch. v. § 137, 153.  
*Tonār*, ch. xii. § 2.  
*Toree*, intro. § 24.  
*Tornea*, ch. v. § 11.  
*Tranquebār*, ch. vii. § 5, 7.  
*Travancore* (Tiruvankōdu), intro. § 16, 24, 25; ch. i. § 28; iv. § 8; x. § 61, 62; xii. § 40.

*Trichinopoly* (Srīrangam), intro. § 16; ch. v. § 53, 55; vii. § 7; viii. § 32; x. § 44.

*Trimbak*, close to the sources of the Godāvari, intro. § 34.

*Trimu Ghāt*, intro. § 34.

*Trincomalee*, intro. § 37; ch. vii. § 7; xii. § 30, 32.

*Trinomali*, ch. xii. § 17.

*Tripetti* (Tirupathi, or Vēngadam), in N. Arcot, given as the northern limit of the Tamil language, intro. § 16.

*Trivandram* (*tiru-ananḍa-puram* = town of sacred delight), the capital of Travancore.

*Tsanpu*, intro. § 34.

*Tūljapūr*, ch. v. § 7.

*Tūmbhadrā* (River), intro. § 34; ch. v. § 106.

*Tūnga* (River), intro. § 34; ch. xii. § 1, 43.

*Turoch*, intro. § 24.

*Tuticorin* (Tuttukudi), a harbour in Tinnevely, an old Dutch settlement; now a cotton mart. There are pearl banks here.

## U

*Udapi*, ch. ii. § 17.

*Udgāhīr* (Oudgheer), battle, ch. v. § 68. (Udaya-giri = the hill of the sunrise.)

*Ūjein* (see Onjein).

*Ulwar* (Alwar), intro. § 24, 36.

*Umarkōt* (see Amerkōt).

*Umbāla*, intro. § 10; ch. xi. § 8.

*Umbeyla Pass*, ch. x. § 189. A town and pass in the hills between the Kābul and the Indus.

*Umritsīr*, intro. § 10; ch. xi. § 3.

*Urghundāb*, rises in the Paropamisus mountains, and flows into the Helmand, near Kandahār.

## V

*Vaigai* (River), intro. § 34.

*Valdār*, ch. viii. § 17.

*Vastrābād*, ch. xi. § 43.

*Vellora* (Allōra), ch. v. § 7.

*Vellore* (Vēlūr), a town eighty-five miles from Madras, founded in A.D. 1800, ch. v. § 24; x. § 55.

*Verole*, ch. v. § 7.

*Vindhya* (Mountains), intro. § 33.

*Vingorla*, in the Konkan, twenty-nine miles N.N.W. from Goa, ch. v. § 145.

*Visdīgurh*, ch. v. § 34.

*Vizagapatam* (*Mars' Town*), intro. § 16.

*Vizadrūg*, south of Bombay. Splendid harbour, ch. v. § 65, 113. (*Vijaya-durg* = *fort of victory*. Called also *GHERIA*, or *fort*.)

*Vizianagaram* (*Vijaya-nagaram* = *town of victory*), intro. § 16.

## W

*Wāṭ*, a beautiful town near the sources of the Kishtna, thirty-five miles south from Pūna, ch. v. § 42.

*Wain Gangā*, intro. § 34.

*Wanaolt*, ch. v. § 110.

*Wandiwash* (*Vandivāsam*), ch. viii. § 31; xii. § 28.

*Warangal*, ch. i. § 28; ii. § 19; iv. § 11-19.

*Warda*, there are two rivers of this name. The northern *Warda* is a tributary of the *Godāvarī*, ch. v. § 2; the southern *Warda* is an affluent of the *Tāmbhadra*, ch. v. § 15. The town is the head of a small district—(= *VARADA* = *granting boons*), intro. § 13, 34.

*Wargdom* (*Taligāom*), ch. v. § 97.

*Wassota*, a fort thirty miles S.S.W. of *Satārā*, ch. v. § 164, 165.

*Wellesley*, ch. x. § 82.

*Woon*, intro. § 20.

*Wudwar*, intro. § 18.

*Wynaad*, intro. § 28, 33; x. § 42; xii. § 56.

## Y

*Yādavapuri*, ch. xii. § 2.

*Yandon*, intro. § 17. (*Yanam*.)

*Yeh*, ch. x. § 79.

*Yēna R.*, intro. § 34 (8); ch. v. § 155.

*Yendabū*, ch. x. § 79.

## GENERAL INDEX.

---

ARGHÂN expedition, ch. x. § 110-123.

AFRÎDIS, ch. xi. § 4.

AMÎRS of Sind, ch. x. § 125.

ANCIENT India, ch. i.

ANCIENT States, ch. i. § 28.

ANCIENT names, ch. i. § 29.

ANDERAS, ch. i. § 21; ch. iv. § 12.

ANNEXATION policy, ch. x. § 141.

— of Jhânsî, ch. x. § 147.

— of Oudh, ch. x. § 150.

— of Nâgpur, ch. x. § 144.

— of the Panjâb, ch. xi. § 41.

— of Tanjôr, ch. x. § 41.

ARCHITECTS, ch. iii. § 8.

ÂRYAS, ch. i. § 4.

ASHWAMÊDHA (= *horse - sacrifice*). A horse, chosen for peculiar qualities, was, after the performance of certain ceremonies, let loose, and the Râja followed it for a year with his army, thus invading the territories into which the horse wandered. At the end of a year the horse was sacrificed and eaten in a splendid banquet by the Râja and those whom he had overthrown.

### ASSASSINATION—

Ganghâdhâr Sâstî, ch. v. § 147.

Colonel Mackeson, ch. x. § 141.

Mr. Cherry, ch. x. § 32.

Mr. Fraser, ch. x. § 190.

Râja of Kurnâl, ch. x. § 112.

Ambayna, ch. vii. § 4.

AYIN-AKBARî, ch. iii. § 6.

BACTRIAN kings, ch. vi. § 10; i. § 20.

BHUMINî kingdom—

Established, ch. ii. § 36; iv. § 20.

It; kings, ch. iv. § 21.

Broken up, ch. iv. § 24.

BÂLAHÎ princes, ch. i. § 25.

BALLÂLA kings, ch. xii. § 2.

BATTA, ch. ix. § 30; x. § 91.

### BATTLES—

Âgra (I.), ch. iii. § 8.

Âgra (II.), ch. iii. § 10.

Âlîwâl, ch. x. § 128.

Ambûr (I.), ch. vii. § 7.

Ambûr (II.), ch. viii. § 16.

Arghôm, ch. v. § 138.

Arikêra, ch. xii. § 41.

Arras, ch. v. § 9.

## BATTLES—cont.

- Ashit, ch. v. § 157.  
 Assai, ch. v. § 127.  
 Changama, ch. xii. § 17.  
 Chillianwallah, ch. x. § 137.  
 Chèrkùl, ch. v. § 79; xii. § 22.  
 Chanl, ch. vi. § 10.  
 Delhi (I.), ch. v. § 70.  
 Delhi (II.), ch. v. § 85.  
 Delhi (III.), ch. v. § 180.  
 Diu, ch. vi. § 16.  
 Dubba, ch. x. § 125.  
 Feròzshâh, ch. x. § 128.  
 Gujârât (I.), (Panjâb), ch. i. § 19.  
 Gujârât (II.), ch. xi. § 42.  
 Haidarâbâd, ch. x. § 125.  
 Kanouj, ch. iii. § 4.  
 Kirki, ch. v. § 151, 154.  
 Korrîgâom, ch. v. § 151, 155.  
 Kùrdlâ, ch. v. § 114.  
 Lakari, ch. v. § 110.  
 Laswari, ch. v. § 130.  
 Mahârâjpûr, ch. x. § 124.  
 Malavelli, ch. xii. § 52.  
 Mehîdpûr, ch. v. § 151.  
 Mîânî, ch. x. § 125.  
 Mûdkî, ch. x. § 128.  
 Nâgpûr (Sitabaldi), ch. v. § 151, 159.  
 Nowshêra, ch. iii. § 5 (6).  
 Pânîpat (I.), ch. ii. § 16.  
 Pânîpat (II.) I., ch. ii. § 47; iii. § 3.  
 Pânîpat (III.) II., ch. iii. § 6.  
 Pânîpat (IV.) II., ch. v. § 69, 70.  
 Peddapûr, ch. ix. § 14.  
 Peshawar, ch. ii. § 7.  
 Pollilore I., ch. xii. § 27.  
 Pollilore II., ch. xii. § 29.  
 Porto Novo, ch. xii. § 28.  
 Pûna, ch. v. § 121.  
 Punâr, ch. viii. § 18.  
 Punniâr, ch. x. § 124.  
 St. Thomâ, ch. viii. § 5.  
 Shâhpûr, ch. iii. § 15. 1720.  
 Sidâstr, ch. xii. § 51.

## BATTLES—cont.

- Sikri, ch. iii. § 3.  
 Sirhind, ch. iii. § 15. 1748.  
 Sobrâon, ch. x. § 128.  
 Sôlunghar, ch. xii. § 29.  
 Tanêshwar (I.), ch. i. § 7.  
 Trinomali, ch. xii. § 17.  
 Udgâr, ch. v. § 68.  
 Wandiwash, ch. viii. § 31.  
 BAZAAR at Kâbul destroyed, ch. x. § 122.  
 BEGUMS of Oudh, ch. x. § 4.  
 BHAGAVAT Gîtâ, ch. i. § 13.  
 BHÂTS, bards (*vates*), a wild race in Kâttuawâr.  
 BHÎLS, a race of people inhabiting the districts about the Vindhya mountains, ch. v. § 4, 165.  
 BILL—  
 Fox's India, ch. x. § 15.  
 Pitt's, ch. x. § 15.  
 For bringing British India under the Crown, ch. x. § 185.  
 BOARD of Control, ch. x. § 15, 35, 59, 114.  
 BRÂHMANS, ch. i. § 4.  
 BRAHMOISM, ch. x. § 191.  
 BUDDHISM, ch. i. § 8, 11.  
 BURGHERS, ch. xii. § 8.  
 CASTES, ch. i. § 4.  
 ÇERA kingdom, ch. iv. § 8.  
 CHABIER of the English East India Company, ch. vii. § 6.  
 — Renewed, 1773, 1793, 1813, 1833, 1853, ch. x. § 2, 26-72, 103, 145.  
 CHÂRANS, a wild race, the Chroniclers of the Bhîls.  
 CHÔLA kingdom, ch. iv. § 5, 7.  
 COINS of the Bactrian Greek kingdom, ch. i. § 20.  
 COLLEGE of Fort William, ch. x. § 46.  
 — Engineering at Rûrkî, ch. x. § 136.  
 DANES in India, ch. vii. § 5.  
 DÂSTAS, ch. i. § 4.  
 DECLARATORY Act, ch. x. § 28.





